

*Intuit QuickBooks® SDK*

*Programmer's Guide*

Version 16.0

SDK version 16.0, released November 2022. (c) 2022 Intuit Inc. All rights reserved.

QuickBooks and Intuit are registered trademarks of Intuit Inc. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners and should be treated as such.

Intuit Inc.  
P.O. Box 7850  
Mountain View, CA 94039-7850

For more information about the QuickBooks SDK and the SDK documentation, visit  
<http://developerintuit.com/>.

# CONTENTS

## About This Manual

Who Should Read This Manual? . . . . .	19
Before You Begin . . . . .	19
What's New in This Guide? . . . . .	20

## Chapter 1: Introduction to QBSDK Programming

What is the SDK? . . . . .	21
What Kinds of Integrations are Possible with the SDK? . . . . .	22
Which QuickBooks Editions/Versions Support My Application? . . . . .	23
What's Included in the QuickBooks SDK Package? . . . . .	23
What is the QuickBooks API Reference? Why Must I Use It? . . . . .	24
How Does QuickBooks Toggling Affect My Application? . . . . .	24
Do I Have to Use XML? Or are Convenience Libraries Available? . . . . .	24
Which Programming Languages Can I Use? . . . . .	25
What Do I Need to Know Before I Start Programming? . . . . .	25
What Kind of Technical Support is Available? . . . . .	25

## Chapter 2: Jumpstart

After the Tech Overview and the SDK Essentials Video. . . . .	27
---	----

## Chapter 3: The Communication Model and Ways of Implementing It

The Basic Communication Pattern. . . . .	29
Authorizations You Need to Know About . . . . .	29
Company Owner Authorization of SDK Applications . . . . .	30
Intuit Gateway Authorization of SDK Applications . . . . .	30
Messages: The Content of the Communication. . . . .	30
What's in a Message? . . . . .	31
Ways to Implement Communication With QuickBooks. . . . .	31
Desktop Applications Accessing Local QuickBooks . . . . .	32
Web Services Accessing QuickBooks via QB Web Connector . . . . .	32

## Chapter 4: Specifying Authorization Preferences

How the QuickBooks UI Supports Authorization/Access. . . . .	35
When is the Authorization Dialog Displayed? . . . . .	35
The Default Authorization Dialog . . . . .	35
How the AuthPreferences Object Works. . . . .	37
How to Use the AuthPreferences Functionality. . . . .	38
What Happens as a Result of the AuthPreference Settings? . . . . .	40
Setting Authorization Preferences Within QuickBooks. . . . .	42

## Chapter 5: Accessing Desktop QuickBooks Editions

Using Java with QB SDK . . . . .	45
A Note About the Request Processor . . . . .	45
How to Access QuickBooks . . . . .	46
VB Code Snippets for Access if You Use qbXML . . . . .	46
VB Code Snippets for Access if You Use QBFC . . . . .	47
What Happens in the Call to BeginSession? . . . . .	47
Troubleshooting Errors in the BeginSession Call . . . . .	48
Multiple Sessions versus a Single Session . . . . .	48
Using AuthFlags to Specify Support for QuickBooks Editions . . . . .	49
Setting AuthFlags to Specify Support for a QuickBooks Edition. . . . .	50
More Information about Login Modes . . . . .	51
Setting Up Auto-Login. . . . .	52
Only One Auto-Login User per Application . . . . .	53
Limitations on Accessing Company Files . . . . .	53
Allowing Application Access to Personal Data . . . . .	54
Single-User vs. Multi-User Mode . . . . .	54
Trade-offs of Using Single-User Mode . . . . .	55
Microsoft Windows Vista & Windows 7 and UAC. . . . .	55

## Chapter 6: Building Requests In QBFC and in qbXML

A Few Notes About Using QBFC . . . . .	57
Building a Request using QBFC . . . . .	57
What You Need to Do in QBFC . . . . .	58
Sample: Building a SalesOrder Using QBFC . . . . .	58
The Importance of the CreateMsgSetRequest Call . . . . .	59
Background Details About the MsgSetRequest Object . . . . .	60
Another View of the Message Set Request Structure . . . . .	61
Building a qbXML Request . . . . .	62
What You Need to Do in qbXML using a DOM Document . . . . .	62

## Chapter 7: Handling Responses Using QBFC or qbXML

Processing a Response Using QBFC . . . . .	65
Background Information: Understanding IMsgSetResponse . . . . .	68
Background Information II: IResponse . . . . .	69
Processing a qbXML Response . . . . .	72
What You Need to Do to Process a Response in qbXML . . . . .	73
Processing a Response Message Set: Sample Code. . . . .	73

## Chapter 8: Creating Queries

When to Use a Query vs a Report. . . . .	75
Different Ways of Using Queries to Get the Same Data . . . . .	75
Getting a Count of Query Objects. . . . .	76
Filters . . . . .	76

LIMITING THE NUMBER OF OBJECTS RETURNED	76
Using Iterators to Walk Through Large Query Returns	77
Limiting Returned Data Using IncludeRetElement	79
Using MaxReturned	80
LIST QUERIES: COMMONLY USED FILTERS	81
ListID or FullName	81
Active Status	82
Filtering by Date Modified	82
Match Criterion for Names	83
Ranges for Names	83
Special Information Contained in an AccountRet Object	84
Special Filters	85
TRANSACTION QUERIES: COMMONLY USED FILTERS	86
TxnID or Reference Number	86
Date Filters	86
Entity Filters	87
Account Filters	88
Reference Number Filters	89
Paid Status	90
Requesting Additional Data	90
SPECIAL QUERIES	90
The Generic TransactionQuery	90
TransactionQuery and Access Permissions	91
Filters for TransactionQuery	91

## Chapter 9: Generating Reports

BEFORE YOU BEGIN	93
CATEGORIES OF REPORTS	93
General Summary Reports	94
Job Reports	95
Time Reports	95
Aging Reports	95
Budget Summary Reports	96
General Detail Reports	96
Payroll Summary Reports	97
Payroll Detail Reports	97
Custom Summary and Detail Reports	98
DEFAULT REPORTS	98
A PRACTICAL APPROACH	99
CREATING A REPORT REQUEST	99
Modifying a Profit and Loss Standard Report	99
Setting Up Filters for a Profit and Loss Standard Report	103
"IncludeColumn" Field	104
Required Filter for Certain Job Reports	105
Required Filter for Missing Checks Report	105
Example of a Report Request	105
Creating Requests for Budget Reports	105

Interpreting the Report Response . . . . .	107
Report Meta-data . . . . .	107
Report Data . . . . .	109
Example . . . . .	109
Enumerated Values for "ClearedStatus" Column . . . . .	110
Transaction Detail Reports . . . . .	111
Order Column . . . . .	113
Including Personal Data in Reports . . . . .	113
Including Payroll Data in Reports . . . . .	114
My Report Has No Data! . . . . .	114
Valid Request Options for Individual Report Types . . . . .	115

## Chapter 10: Modifying and Deleting Transactions and List Objects

Modifying Objects in General . . . . .	125
Edit Sequence . . . . .	125
One Way to Delete an Element's Value . . . . .	125
Clearing References . . . . .	126
Clearing Aggregates . . . . .	126
How to Modify Transactions . . . . .	127
Parts of a Transaction . . . . .	128
Modifying the Body of a Transaction . . . . .	128
Modifying Transaction Body Without Modifying Line Items . . . . .	130
Shortcut Way to Retaining a Line Item Exactly As Is . . . . .	130
Modifying a Line Item . . . . .	131
Inserting a New Line Item In a Mod Operation . . . . .	131
Deleting a Line Item . . . . .	131
Example: Modifying Transaction Lines . . . . .	131
Example: Modifying Groups within the Line Item Table . . . . .	132
Example: Modifying Item Lines in an Item Group . . . . .	133
About Modifying Rate, Quantity, and Amount Line Item Fields . . . . .	134
Deleting an Object . . . . .	134
Must be in Single-User Mode (Except for Enterprise) . . . . .	135
Accountant Copy Restrictions . . . . .	135
Locked Transactions . . . . .	135
About Closed Transactions . . . . .	135
About Permissions . . . . .	136
Voiding an Object . . . . .	136

## Chapter 11: Data Ext: Using Custom Fields and Private Data

Core Differences Between Custom Fields and Private Data . . . . .	137
How Do I Create Data Extensions? . . . . .	139
Enough Pictures: Show Me Some Code . . . . .	141
What Makes a Data Ext Definition a Custom Field vs Private? . . . . .	143
But There is More To It . . . . .	143
A Cool Feature: Transactions Inherit From Customer, Item . . . . .	143
Inheriting from Customer to Transactions . . . . .	143

Inheriting from Item to Transactions . . . . .	145
Do Individual Transactions Also Inherit Custom Field Values? . . . . .	146
Writing to Custom Fields Only Affects the Current Transaction . . . . .	146
How Do I Get DataExt Data Back Using Queries? . . . . .	146
Writing Data to a Data Extension . . . . .	147
Clearing a Value from a Data Extension. . . . .	148
Deleting a Data Extension Definition: Limitations . . . . .	148
Deleting Custom Fields From the QuickBooks UI . . . . .	148
Making Custom Fields Show Up In QuickBooks and in Print . . . . .	148
I Want to Use Private Data: How Do I Use GUIDs? . . . . .	151
The Format of the GUID within the Request . . . . .	151
How Do I Retrieve OwnerIDs? . . . . .	151
What is an OwnerIDList? . . . . .	151
Using Other, Other1, Other2 in Transactions . . . . .	151
Writing Custom Field Data to Transaction Lines . . . . .	152
Modifying Custom Field Data in Transaction Item Lines . . . . .	153

## Chapter 12: Using Macros In Requests

What is a Macro? . . . . .	155
Must Macro Names be Unique? . . . . .	155
A Sample Macro . . . . .	156
Where Can You Define a Macro? Use a Macro? . . . . .	157
Using Macros to Set Cleared Status . . . . .	157

## Chapter 13: Objects, ObjectRefs, Fullnames, and Attributes

Lists . . . . .	159
Transactions . . . . .	161
Identifiers. . . . .	162
ListID. . . . .	162
FullName . . . . .	164
Object References . . . . .	167
About DateTimes. . . . .	167
Templates. . . . .	167
Operations. . . . .	167
Adding an Object: Example of a Request and Response . . . . .	168
Querying for Objects . . . . .	170
Attributes in the SDK . . . . .	171
Message Set-Level Attributes . . . . .	171
Request Attributes. . . . .	172
Response Attributes. . . . .	172
Query Attributes . . . . .	173

## Chapter 14: Event Notification

Using the C# App Template to Implement Eventing . . . . .	175
What Requests Do I Use and How Do I Invoke These? . . . . .	175

How Do I Invoke Subscription Events? . . . . .	176
Overview: The Event Notification Framework . . . . .	176
QuickBooks Events and Event Notification . . . . .	176
Subscribing to Events . . . . .	178
Authorizing a Callback Application to Receive Events . . . . .	181
Processing Events in a Callback Application . . . . .	182
Handling Special QuickBooks Operations . . . . .	189
Putting it All Together: The Event Notification Flow . . . . .	191
Implementing Event-Awareness in qbXML . . . . .	191
Subscribing, Unsubscribing, and Querying Subscriptions in qbXML . . . . .	191
Implementing a qbXML-based Callback (IQBEventCallback) . . . . .	196

## Chapter 15: Integrating with the QuickBooks UI

Using the C# App Template to Implement UI Events . . . . .	199
What Types of Integrations Can I Do? . . . . .	199
Before Your Application Can Extend the QuickBooks UI . . . . .	200
Subscription . . . . .	200
Authorization . . . . .	201
Authorization Scenarios Affecting UI Extensions . . . . .	201
UI Guidelines . . . . .	204
Menu-Extension Guidelines . . . . .	204
Adding a Menu Item to QuickBooks . . . . .	206
Where Your Menu Item Will Appear . . . . .	206
Menu Item Names . . . . .	207
Display Conditions . . . . .	209
Getting QuickBooks Context Information From a Menu Item Click . . . . .	211
Error Handling . . . . .	211
When the Authorization Level Changes . . . . .	212
Lost UI Events . . . . .	212
Invoking the QuickBooks UI . . . . .	213
Opening Transaction Forms . . . . .	213
Opening and Prefilling a New Transaction . . . . .	214
Opening List Windows . . . . .	215
Displaying Reports . . . . .	216

## Chapter 16: Handling Receive Payment, Bill Payment, and Deposit Transactions

Core Concepts for Receive Payment and Bill Payment . . . . .	217
Applying Payments, Credits, and Discounts . . . . .	217
Linked Transactions . . . . .	218
Returned Object for AppliedToTxnAdd . . . . .	219
Creating Links Instead of Transactions . . . . .	219
Receive Payment Transactions . . . . .	219
Applying a Payment . . . . .	219
Setting Discounts . . . . .	221
Setting Credits . . . . .	221

Using ReceivePayment for Credit Card Authorization and Capture . . . . .	224
Modifying a ReceivePayment Transaction . . . . .	224
Bill Payment Transactions . . . . .	224
Payment Method . . . . .	225
Paying the Bill . . . . .	225
Setting a Credit . . . . .	226
Setting a Discount . . . . .	227
Bill Payment Examples . . . . .	227
Modifying a BillPaymentCheck Transaction . . . . .	229
Deposits . . . . .	230

## **Chapter 17: Linking ItemReceipt/Bill to PurchaseOrder, Invoice to Sales Order**

Important Note about Querying for Linked Transactions . . . . .	233
Linking Bill or ItemReceipt to PurchaseOrder . . . . .	234
The Basic User Scenario in the QuickBooks UI . . . . .	234
Linking an ItemReceipt or Bill to PurchaseOrder Using the SDK . . . . .	237
Rules For Linking a Bill or ItemReceipt to a PurchaseOrder . . . . .	242
Why Does the API reference List LinkToTxn for Unsupported Transactions? . . . . .	242
Converting ItemReceipts to Bills . . . . .	243
Limitations and Pitfalls of Modifying a Bill or ItemReceipt . . . . .	243
ItemReceipt and Bill Split Option for QuickBooks Enterprise . . . . .	243
Re: "Is Manually Closed" in Purchase Orders and Sales Orders . . . . .	244
Linking Invoices to SalesOrders . . . . .	244
The Basic User Scenario in the QuickBooks UI . . . . .	245
Linking Invoices to SalesOrders in the SDK . . . . .	248

## **Chapter 18: Using SalesReceipt Functionality**

Adding a SalesReceipt . . . . .	255
Some Expected Data May be Missing from the Response . . . . .	262
Adding a SalesReceipt in QBFC . . . . .	262
Adding a SalesReceipt in qbXML . . . . .	265
Modifying a SalesReceipt . . . . .	266
Special Limitations Imposed By Credit Card Payment Method . . . . .	267
Which SalesReceipt Fields Can Be Modified? . . . . .	267
Which SalesReceipt Fields Can Be Cleared? . . . . .	267
Modifying a SalesReceipt in qbXML . . . . .	268
Modifying a SalesReceipt in QBFC . . . . .	269
Querying for SalesReceipts . . . . .	273
Querying for SalesReceipts in qbXML . . . . .	273
Querying for SalesReceipts in QBFC . . . . .	273
Deleting and Voiding SalesReceipts . . . . .	273

## **Chapter 19: Using Credit Card Refund Functionality**

Adding a Credit Card Refund Transaction . . . . .	275
---	-----

Adding a Credit Card Refund in QBFC . . . . .	278
Adding a Credit Card Refund in qbXML . . . . .	280
Querying for ARRefundCreditCard Transactions . . . . .	282
Deleting and Voiding ARRefundCreditCard Transactions . . . . .	282

## Chapter 20: Using Price Levels in Transactions

What is a Price Level? . . . . .	283
The Two Types of Price Levels Supported by QuickBooks . . . . .	284
Why Are Price Levels Useful? . . . . .	284
Are Price Levels Automatically Available? . . . . .	284
Using Price Level Functionality in Your Application . . . . .	284
How to Create a Price Level . . . . .	286
Creating a Fixed Percent Price Level . . . . .	286
Creating a Per Item Price Level . . . . .	287
How to Apply a Price Level to a Customer . . . . .	288
How to Apply a Price Level to a Line Item . . . . .	289

## Chapter 21: Using Billing Rates To Bill For Time

Which QuickBooks Editions Support Billing Rates? . . . . .	291
Key SDK Limitations You Need to Know Before You Start. . . . .	291
What Happens If I Use Both Price Levels and Billing Rates? . . . . .	292
What is a Billing Rate? . . . . .	292
What is the Workflow? How Do I use a Billing Rate? . . . . .	292
A Detailed Look at the Billing Rates Workflow . . . . .	293
Creating Service Items . . . . .	294
Creating Billing Rates in the UI . . . . .	299
Creating Billing Rates in the QB SDK. . . . .	301
Assigning Billing Rates to Employees, Vendors, Other Names. . . . .	303
Using Billing Rates in Time Transactions . . . . .	304
Invoicing Customers for Billable Time (UI Only) . . . . .	305

## Chapter 22: Using the Multicurrency Feature in the SDK

Impact of Multicurrency on Existing Applications . . . . .	309
Company Preferences and Multicurrency . . . . .	310
Getting Multicurrency and Home Currency from PreferencesQuery . . . . .	310
QuickBooks Currencies/Exchange Rates and the SDK. . . . .	310
“Built-in” Vs. User Defined Currencies. . . . .	310
Active Vs. Inactive Currencies . . . . .	311
How Do You Set Currency Exchange Rates? . . . . .	311
What Happens in Transactions When You Change Exchange Rate? . . . . .	311
Multicurrency Effect on Transaction Amounts and Balances. . . . .	311
Multicurrency Effect on List Objects Amounts and Balances . . . . .	311
Multicurrency Effects on Reports . . . . .	312
ARAccountRef/APAccountRef Guidelines . . . . .	312

## **Chapter 23: Using the Multi-Location Inventory Feature in the SDK**

Impact of Multi-Location Inventory on Existing Applications . . . . .	313
Company Preferences and Multi-Location Inventory . . . . .	313
Getting Multi-Location Inventory from PreferencesQuery . . . . .	313
InventorySite features for Multi-Location Inventory . . . . .	314
Transfer Inventory Transactions Feature . . . . .	314
Site Attributes for Transaction with Multi-Location Inventory . . . . .	315
Multi-Location Inventory Support for Group Items . . . . .	316

## **Chapter 24: Using the Quickbooks Vehicle Mileage Feature**

Key Limitations of QB SDK Support for Vehicle Mileage . . . . .	318
How the Vehicle Mileage Feature Works . . . . .	319
Setting Up an Item to be Used In Billable Mileage Transactions . . . . .	321
What Happens to Mileage Charges When I Create Invoices? . . . . .	322
Mileage Charges and Invoices in the UI . . . . .	322
Mileage Charges and Invoices in the SDK . . . . .	323
Adding a Vehicle Mileage Transaction . . . . .	324
Adding Vehicle Mileage in qbXML . . . . .	324
Adding Vehicle Mileage in QBFC . . . . .	324
Querying and Deleting Vehicle Mileage Transactions . . . . .	325
Modifying Vehicle Mileage Transactions . . . . .	325
Adding, Modifying, Querying Vehicles in the Vehicle List . . . . .	325

## **Chapter 25: Adding, Modifying, Querying Worker Comp Codes**

What Can I Do With the Comp Codes I Create? . . . . .	327
Workers' Comp Code Feature Requires Payroll Subscription . . . . .	327
How Can I Tell Whether the Company is Subscribed to Payroll? . . . . .	328
Workers Comp Codes in the UI and in the SDK . . . . .	328
Adding a Comp Code with Several Rates Possible via SDK . . . . .	329
Current Effective Date and Current Rate . . . . .	329
Rate History: Visible Only Through the SDK . . . . .	329
Adding a Workers Comp Code . . . . .	330
Adding a Comp Code Using QBFC . . . . .	330
Adding a Comp Code Using qbXML . . . . .	331
Querying for Workers Comp Codes . . . . .	331
Querying for Comp Codes in qbXML . . . . .	331
Modifying Workers Comp Codes . . . . .	332
Modifying a Comp Code in qbXML . . . . .	333

## **Chapter 26: Using the Unit of Measure Feature Via the SDK**

How Can I Tell If the UOM Feature is Available? . . . . .	335
Which SDK Requests Support UOM? . . . . .	335
How Does the UOM Feature Work? . . . . .	336
Creating a UOM Set in the UI . . . . .	340

How Do I Create a UOM Set in the SDK? . . . . .	341
Why Do I Need to Follow the UOM Set Naming Convention? . . . . .	342
Can I Modify a UOM Set in the SDK? . . . . .	342
Can I Set UOM Set Defaults for Purchase, Sales, and Shipping? . . . . .	342
How Do I Specify Which Units the UOM Set Contains? . . . . .	342
What Does the Abbreviation Field Do? Why's it Required? . . . . .	343
Creating a UOM Set in QBFC . . . . .	343
Creating a UOM Set in qbXML . . . . .	344
Specifying a UOM Set for an Item . . . . .	345
What You Must Do in an Item Mod . . . . .	345
Specifying a UOM Set in an Item* Add Request . . . . .	345
Specifying a UOM Set in an Item* Mod Request . . . . .	346
Using UOM in Transactions . . . . .	347
Using UOM in a Transaction Add Request . . . . .	347
Using UOM in a Transaction Mod Request . . . . .	348

## Chapter 27: Merging Accounts, Customers, Vendors, Classes

What Does ListMerge Do? . . . . .	351
What Happens in the ListMerge Operation? . . . . .	351
When Can I NOT Do a ListMerge? . . . . .	352
Can I Undo or Reverse a ListMerge? . . . . .	352
What Must I Do Before Merging? . . . . .	352
Merging Accounts . . . . .	353
Comparing AccountType and Changing Sublevel. . . . .	354
Merging Classes . . . . .	357
Merging Customers . . . . .	357
Code Sample . . . . .	358
Merging Vendors . . . . .	359

## Chapter 28: Using Assembly Item and BuildAssembly Functionality

Overview of QuickBooks Assembly Items and Build Assembly . . . . .	361
You Must Have Sufficient Components for the BuildAssembly . . . . .	362
QB Activities that Change BuildAssembly Transactions into Pending . . . . .	363
Consequences of Modifying an Existing Inventory Assembly Item . . . . .	363
Impact of SalesReceipts and Invoices on Assemblies in Inventory . . . . .	364
Disassembling Inventory Assemblies . . . . .	364
Getting BuildAssembly and Assembly Item Reports . . . . .	365
Adding an Inventory Assembly Item . . . . .	365
Adding an ItemInventoryAssembly in qbXML . . . . .	369
Adding an Assembly Item in QBFC . . . . .	370
Modifying an Existing Inventory Assembly Item . . . . .	372
Modifying an Assembly Item in qbXML . . . . .	372
Modifying an Assembly Item in QBFC . . . . .	372
Querying for Inventory Assembly Items . . . . .	374
Querying for Assembly Items in qbXML . . . . .	375
Querying for Assembly Items in QBFC . . . . .	376

Adding a BuildAssembly Transaction . . . . .	376
Adding a BuildAssembly Transaction in qbXML . . . . .	378
Adding a BuildAssembly Transaction in QBFC . . . . .	380
Modifying an Existing BuildAssembly Transaction . . . . .	380
Modifying a BuildAssembly in qbXML . . . . .	381
Modifying a BuildAssembly in QBFC . . . . .	383
Querying for BuildAssembly Transactions. . . . .	384
Querying For BuildAssembly Transactions in qbXML . . . . .	385
Querying For BuildAssembly Transactions in QBFC. . . . .	385

## **Chapter 29: Taxes and Discounts (US Versions)**

Calculating Sales Tax . . . . .	387
Applying Multiple Taxes . . . . .	387
Applying Discounts . . . . .	388
Flat vs. Percentage Discounts . . . . .	389
Nontaxable Flat Discount . . . . .	389
Taxable Flat Discount . . . . .	390

## **Chapter 30: Remote Data Sharing and Your Application**

What is Remote Data Sharing?. . . . .	391
Using RDS Client for Remote Access with QuickBooks Installed Locally . . . . .	391
RDS and Event Notification . . . . .	391
Compatibility with Older Versions of RDS . . . . .	392
About the RDS Server . . . . .	392
About the RDS Client . . . . .	394
Distributing RDS. . . . .	395
How to Use the SDK Installers and Merge Modules . . . . .	396
Choices in Implementing Your Installer . . . . .	398
Supporting RDS . . . . .	399
What Your Application Must Do to Use RDS. . . . .	399
Which Versions of QuickBooks Support RDS? . . . . .	400
What You Need to Tell Your Customers about RDS. . . . .	400
RDS-Specific HRESULTs Messages . . . . .	400

## **Chapter 31: Error Recovery**

The General Error Recovery Mechanism . . . . .	403
When to Invoke Error Recovery . . . . .	403
HRESULTs Returned by QuickBooks . . . . .	403
Automated Error Recovery in QBFC. . . . .	404
Implementing Automated Error Recovery . . . . .	404
Using Error Recovery in qbXML-based Applications . . . . .	405
Error Recovery Using Old and New Message IDs . . . . .	405
How to Clear All Error Recovery Information . . . . .	405
Steps for Using Error Recovery in qbXML-based Applications. . . . .	405
Example . . . . .	406

Message Set Status Code . . . . .	407
Request ID . . . . .	408
Comparing Requests (Performing a Checksum) . . . . .	408
Status for Individual Requests within a Message Set. . . . .	408
Clearing State (oldMessageSetID) . . . . .	409
Maintaining State within Your Application . . . . .	410
Clearing Error Recovery Records Maintained by QuickBooks. . . . .	411

## Chapter 32: How to Use the QBFC Convenience Library

Understanding QBFC Objects . . . . .	413
Objects, Objects Everywhere: Where Do I Start? . . . . .	413
Which Objects Do I Need to Create a Request? . . . . .	414
How Do I Use the API Reference to Fully Construct the Request? . . . . .	415
Other Useful IMsgSetRequest Methods . . . . .	417
Which Objects Do I Need to Process a Response? . . . . .	418
Getting Data from the Ret Object . . . . .	419
Objects and Methods Used in Processing Response Data . . . . .	420

## Chapter 33: QBFC Language Reference

QBSessionManager Object and Methods . . . . .	423
QBSessionManager.BeginSession. . . . .	425
QBSessionManager.ClearErrorRecovery . . . . .	428
QBSessionManager.CloseConnection . . . . .	429
QBSessionManager.CommunicateOutOfProcess . . . . .	430
QBSessionManager.ConnectionType . . . . .	431
QBSessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest . . . . .	432
QBSessionManager.CreateSubscriptionMsgSetRequest . . . . .	433
QBSessionManager.DoRequests . . . . .	434
QBSessionManager.DoRequestsFromXMLString . . . . .	435
QBSessionManager.DoSubscriptionRequests . . . . .	436
QBSessionManager.DoSubscriptionRequestsFromXMLString . . . . .	437
QBSessionManager.EnableErrorRecovery . . . . .	438
QBSessionManager.EndSession . . . . .	439
QBSessionManager.ErrorRecoveryID . . . . .	440
QBSessionManager.GetCurrentCompanyName . . . . .	441
QBSessionManager.GetErrorRecoveryStatus . . . . .	442
QBSessionManager.GetSavedMsgSetRequest . . . . .	443
QBSessionManager.GetVersion . . . . .	444
QBSessionManager.IsErrorRecoveryInfo . . . . .	445
QBSessionManager.OpenConnection2. . . . .	446
QBSessionManager.QBAuthPreferences . . . . .	447
QBSessionManager.QBXMLVersionsForSession. . . . .	448
QBSessionManager.QBXMLVersionsForSubscription . . . . .	449
QBSessionManager.SaveAllMsgSetRequestInfo . . . . .	450
QBSessionManager.ToEventsMsgSet. . . . .	451
QBSessionManager.ToMsgSetRequest. . . . .	452

QBSessionManager.ToMsgSetResponse . . . . .	453
QQBSessionManager.ToSubscriptionMsgSetResponse . . . . .	454
IQBAAuthPreferences Object and Properties . . . . .	455
IQBAAuthPreferences.GetIsReadOnly . . . . .	456
IQBAAuthPreferences.GetPersonalDataPref . . . . .	457
IQBAAuthPreferences.GetUnattendedModePref . . . . .	458
IQBAAuthPreferences.PutAuthFlags . . . . .	459
IQBAAuthPreferences.PutIsReadOnly . . . . .	460
IQBAAuthPreferences.PutPersonalDataPref . . . . .	461
IQBAAuthPreferences.PutUnattendedModePref . . . . .	462
IQBAAuthPreferences.WasAuthPreferencesObeyed . . . . .	463
IMsgSetRequest Object and Methods . . . . .	464
IMsgSetRequest.Append* . . . . .	466
IMsgSetRequest.Attributes . . . . .	467
IMsgSetResponse Object and Methods . . . . .	468
IRequest Object and Methods . . . . .	468
IResponse Object and Methods . . . . .	469

## Chapter 34: Digitally Signing Your Code

Can I Sign ActiveX or Java Applications? . . . . .	471
About Microsoft Authenticode. . . . .	471
What is a Digital Certificate? . . . . .	471
The Certificate Authority . . . . .	472
Code Signing . . . . .	472
Obtaining a Digital Certificate . . . . .	472
Commercial CA Entities You Can Use . . . . .	473
Obtaining the Certificate . . . . .	473
Signing Your Code . . . . .	473
Do You Have Everything You Need? . . . . .	473
An Example Using a Test Application . . . . .	474
Signing Code With the Internet Client Software Developer's Kit . . . . .	475

## Chapter 35: Tips and Techniques

Best Practices . . . . .	481
Validating Requests . . . . .	483
Investigating the Problem Thoroughly . . . . .	483
Building a Test Case to Make Available to Developer Support . . . . .	483
Sending a Test Case and the Log File to Developer Support . . . . .	484

## Chapter 36: Supporting Your User

Using the SDKDiag Tool to Support Your User . . . . .	485
Helping Users Troubleshoot and Resolve Problems . . . . .	485
Multiple Installed Versions of QuickBooks . . . . .	486
Incompatible Versions: QuickBooks and Company File . . . . .	486
Different Company File Is Already Open . . . . .	486

Warn Your Users to Complete Error Recovery before Upgrading . . . . .	487
Versions of Integrated Applications . . . . .	487
Provide a Means for Breaking Out of Error Recovery . . . . .	487
Topics to Include in Your Documentation . . . . .	488
Permissions Required for Auto-Login . . . . .	488
QuickBooks User Permissions . . . . .	488
Application Access to Personal Data . . . . .	489
Complete Error Recovery before Upgrading . . . . .	489

## Chapter 37: Making Your Application Robust

Types of Error Codes . . . . .	491
Appendix A for Status Code Information . . . . .	491
Monitoring HRESULTs and HTTP Errors . . . . .	492
Monitoring Message Set Status Codes . . . . .	492
Monitoring Status Codes . . . . .	492
Using the Log File . . . . .	493
Software Versions . . . . .	494
Checklist . . . . .	494
Checking the QuickBooks Version . . . . .	494
Dealing with Unsupported Features . . . . .	498
Error Recovery . . . . .	499
Synchronizing Data between Your Application and Quickbooks . . . . .	499
Monitor Status Codes . . . . .	499
Example of Synchronizing Data with QuickBooks . . . . .	500
Three-Month Limit for ListDeletedQueryRq . . . . .	503
Modification Time . . . . .	503
Cases Needing Complete Re-Sync . . . . .	503
Check with the User . . . . .	503

## Chapter 38: Redistributing SDK Components With Your Application

Using the Installers and Merge Modules . . . . .	505
Using the Stand-Alone Installers . . . . .	506
Using the Merge Modules . . . . .	506

## Appendix A: Status Codes for qbXML Responses

HRESULTS from qbXML COM Methods . . . . .	515
---	-----

## Appendix B: QuickBooks Data Accessible Via SDK Objects/Operations

Objects/Operations Supported by Desktop Editions . . . . .	519
SDK Requests Supported in QuickBooks Simple Start Edition . . . . .	522
Additional Differences for SDK Support of QB Simple Start . . . . .	529

## Appendix C: qbXML Specification for the Canadian and UK Editions

Notes for QB CA/UK 2008 and Newer . . . . .	.531
Canada . . . . .	.531
UK . . . . .	.531
Notes for QB CA/UK 2007 and Older . . . . .	.532
Differences Between the Canadian and UK Specs . . . . .	.532
Differences Between the US and Canadian qbXML Spec . . . . .	.534
Installation . . . . .	.536
About Units of Measure . . . . .	.536
About UI Integration . . . . .	.537

## Appendix D: qbXML RequestProcessor Method Reference

AuthPreferences . . . . .	.542
BeginSession . . . . .	.543
CloseConnection . . . . .	.545
EndSession . . . . .	.546
GetCurrentCompanyName . . . . .	.547
GetIsReadOnly . . . . .	.548
GetPersonalDataPref . . . . .	.549
GetUnattendedModePref . . . . .	.550
WasAuthPreferencesObeyed . . . . .	.551
PutAuthFlags . . . . .	.552
PutIsReadOnly . . . . .	.553
PutPersonalDataPref . . . . .	.554
PutUnattendedModePref . . . . .	.555
MajorVersion . . . . .	.556
MinorVersion . . . . .	.557
OpenConnection2 . . . . .	.558
ProcessRequest . . . . .	.559
ProcessSubscription . . . . .	.560
QBXMLVersionsForSession . . . . .	.561
QBXMLVersionsForSubscription . . . . .	.562
ReleaseLevel . . . . .	.563
ReleaseNumber . . . . .	.564

## Appendix E: Enterprise Edition and Single/Multi-User Issues

Enterprise Features Requiring Single User Mode . . . . .	.565
Enterprise List Operations Requiring Single User Mode . . . . .	.566
Enterprise Multi User Features . . . . .	.566

## Appendix F: Overpayments and Refunds

Overpayments and Refunds . . . . .	.569
The Manual Solution . . . . .	.572

Taking it to the SDK. . . . .	577
QuickBooks 2007 to the Rescue! . . . . .	582
Conclusion . . . . .	587

# ABOUT THIS MANUAL

This manual provides general and detailed information on how to create an application that effectively integrates with QuickBooks. A wide range of topics is covered, including how to make the communication work, how to build request messages, the structure and content of specific request messages, how to use the QBFC convenience library, and so forth. It assumes that you are familiar with and have read the Technical Overview, which introduces many of the concepts used in this document.

A very useful video called *QuickBooks SDK Essentials* is also available online at the IDG developer website to help you get started quickly and in the the right direction.

## Who Should Read This Manual?

---

This manual is a reference resource for all developers who are creating applications that integrate with QuickBooks. It provides practical information on how to create request messages and interpret response messages using the QuickBooks SDK, regardless of which API you choose (that is, qbXML or QBFC) or the QuickBooks product that is your target. It describes the details of how to create queries and reports and guides you through dealing with complex transactions such as receive payment and bill payment. Important new features such as event notification and integrating with the QuickBooks user interface are described in detail. This manual also focuses on general application concerns such as error recovery, how to synchronize application data with QuickBooks, and how to anticipate typical user problems in your application.

## Before You Begin

---

Before you read the rest of this manual, be sure you've read the *Technical Overview* for the QuickBooks Software Development Kit (SDK). This manual assumes you're already familiar with the introductory material and key concepts contained in the overview. Be sure to check out the [QuickBooks Desktop API Reference](#) for QuickBooks, which contains the syntax for each request and response message type for all of the SDK APIs.

This manual applies to integrating an application with any QuickBooks product. In many cases, developers may be creating an application that integrates with several QuickBooks products (for example, U.S. edition of QuickBooks, Canadian edition of QuickBooks, and UK edition of QuickBooks).

### **IMPORTANT**

The QuickBooks API Reference is central to your programming tasks. You need to refer to it when you are programming because it contains the syntax and tag names required.

## What's New in This Guide?

---

This version of the programmer's guide has been restructured to highlight important topics at the table of contents level. New chapters have been added to cover aspects of SDK programming that were troublesome for many developers and existing chapters have been revised for the same reason. Also new in this version is documentation on new features available in the SDK, such as billing rates, vehicle mileage, and so forth.

# CHAPTER 1

## INTRODUCTION TO QBSDK PROGRAMMING

This chapter provides answers to questions many developers have when they start investigating the QuickBooks SDK, which we'll call "QBSDK" or simply "SDK" from this point forward. What you should expect to find here are answers to many of the questions you are likely to have when you first pick up the QBSDK and try to figure out what it does and how you can use it:

- What is the SDK and why should I use it?
- What kinds of integrations are possible with the SDK? What kind of integrations with the QuickBooks UI and event flow are possible? Which QuickBooks features and data are accessible or not accessible?
- If I develop an application, which versions and editions of QuickBooks will support it?
- What is all this stuff included in the SDK package?
- What is the API Reference, and why do I need to use it?
- Do I have to use XML or are there convenience libraries to make life easier for me?
- Which programming languages can I use?
- What do I need to know in order to start programming?
- What kind of technical support is available? Where can I go for information that is not in the SDK documentation?
- What impact does the QuickBooks Accountant version's toggling feature have on integrated applications?

### What is the SDK?

---

The term "QuickBooks SDK" or simply "SDK" can refer either to the QBSDK package that contains the tools, samples, and documentation or it can refer to the QBXML request processor, which is a runtime component that is shipped with QuickBooks. In this guide, we'll use "SDK" to mean the runtime component and "SDK package" when we are referring to the set of tools, samples, and so on.

It is the QBXML request processor that provides the actual functionality that integrated applications use when these applications access QuickBooks. Your application uses the request processor whenever it accesses a QuickBooks company: the request processor does the qbXML validation, sends the requests to QuickBooks and returns the QuickBooks responses (see Figure 1-1 on page 22).

As shown in Figure 1-1 on page 22, the request processor provides QuickBooks access to your application for QuickBooks desktop edition. Notice that the input and the output is XML, even if you use the QBFC convenience library, but QBFC does all the XML work for you (more on the QBFC library later in this chapter).

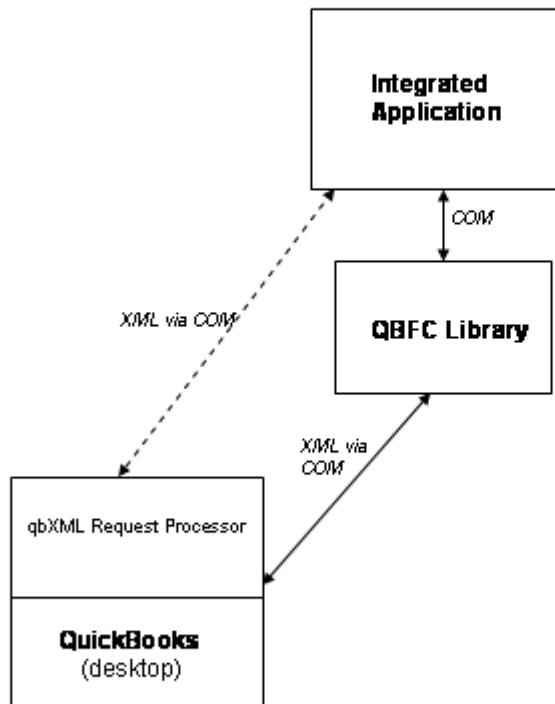


Figure 1-1 Accessing QuickBooks through the request processor

Notice that the Request Processor is a DLL that is installed during a QuickBooks installation, and runs in the same process as QuickBooks.

## What Kinds of Integrations are Possible with the SDK?

If you are scoping out a potential application, you'll want to know the kinds of integrations that are possible with the SDK. The SDK originally provided only data access integration, and data access is still the most prominent feature of the SDK. A list of the QuickBooks data and objects that are made accessible via the SDK is provided in Appendix B, "QuickBooks Data Accessible Via SDK Objects/Operations."

However, more recent releases of the SDK also provide integration with QuickBooks events, where your application can subscribe to various events and receive notification when certain types of QuickBooks activity occur, for example, you can be notified when a customer is added or modified, and so forth.

Another integration that is possible is to integrate with the QuickBooks UI in two specific areas:

- Menu, where your application can place a menu item within certain QuickBooks pulldown menus.'
- Displaying forms, where your application can cause certain QuickBooks forms to be displayed, and even prefill some of these forms.

The Programmer's Guide describes all of the integrations, the data integrations are covered throughout the guide. The UI and event integrations are covered in two chapters:

- Chapter 15, "Integrating with the QuickBooks UI."
- Chapter 14, "Event Notification,"

## Which QuickBooks Editions/Versions Support My Application?

---

The release notes provided with the QB SDK package include the latest tables listing the QuickBooks versions and editions and the corresponding level of the qbXML spec that they support. Please refer to the release notes for those details.

The SDK provides methods for querying which version of the qbXML specification is supported by the version of QuickBooks that is currently running on the user's system. (The QBXMLVersionsForSession) method can be called after the session begins.) If you write "smart" code that checks the version and responds accordingly, your application can run against multiple versions of QuickBooks.

## What's Included in the QuickBooks SDK Package?

---

Conceptually, the QuickBooks SDK includes the following software libraries, manuals, utilities, and examples. Remember that the qbXML Request Processor is a runtime component of QuickBooks itself and is shipped with QuickBooks.

- **Software libraries.** APIs for creating, sending, and receiving QuickBooks messages. These libraries, include
  - > qbXML Request Processor Interface
  - > QuickBooks Foundation Class (QBFC) Library
- **qbXML specification.** The qbXML specification is described in qbXML schema files that are distributed with QuickBooks. QuickBooks validates your application's requests against the qbXML specification.
- **QuickBooks Web Connector.** The QB Web Connector is a component that makes it easier for web services to access QuickBooks. Programming applications that work with the QB Web Connector is documented in the QuickBooks Web Connector Programmer's Guide, which is included with the SDK.
- **Example qbXML file.** This file (*qbxmllops\*.xml*) includes examples of all qbXML request and response messages.
- **Documentation.** In addition to this *Programmer's Guide*, the following QuickBooks SDK documentation is available:
  - > *API Reference*

- > *QuickBooks Web Connector Programmer's Guide*
- > *Technical Overview*

- **Utilities.** The SDK includes several utilities to aid in your development cycle. To verify that a given qbXML document conforms to the qbXML specification, use the *qbXML Validator* utility. To test the request/response cycle, use the *SDKTest+* utility, which accepts a qbXML request, sends it to QuickBooks, and returns the response. Source code for *SDKTest+* is available in multiple languages for desktop versions of QuickBooks.
- **Sample applications.** The SDK includes a large set of sample application programs, including both source code and executable files in Visual Basic, C, C++, and Java.

## What is QuickBooks Desktop API Reference? Why Must I Use It?

---

Once you're ready to program, you'll use the *API Reference* often to find out the exact syntax of a given request or response. It provides detailed reference information for all developer libraries—qbXML and QBFC for QuickBooks (U.S), QuickBooks (Canada), QuickBooks (UK).

The API Reference includes descriptions of each object, aggregate, and element in the SDK. For each element, it includes the data type, maximum length (for strings) or range (for numerical values), whether it is required or optional, and whether it is restricted to a particular release. This is also a handy place to look up the meaning of any SDK error code.

## How Does QuickBooks Toggling Affect My Application?

---

QuickBooks 2006 and later Premier and Enterprise Accountant versions support the toggling feature, in which the Accountant version can be toggled to become the other editions and flavors. Some developers use the Accountant version for just that toggling ability, to make sure their application works on targetted editions and flavors.

Notice that any SDK application with an open connection to the company file must close that connection prior to the toggling. After the toggling, the application can re-open the connection.

## Do I Have to Use XML? Or are Convenience Libraries Available?

---

An important initial decision you'll need to make is whether to use the qbXML Request Processor API or the QBFC API. The main difference between the two approaches is that the qbXML Request Processor API requires you to create and parse qbXML documents explicitly. With the QBFC interface, you are relieved of the task of parsing the qbXML content because you specify the data in terms of parameter/value pairs within COM methods.

There is little performance difference between the two approaches.

## Which Programming Languages Can I Use?

---

The QuickBooks SDK is designed for use by a wide variety of developers in many different development environments. Its application programming interfaces (APIs) can be used by any programming language that is compatible with Microsoft's Component Object Model (COM).

## What Do I Need to Know Before I Start Programming?

---

You need to know the functional area of QuickBooks that you intend to access in your program. You need to know how the UI works in that area: what you can do in the UI and what you cannot do. In general, the SDK simply mirrors the functionality provided in the UI.

## What Kind of Technical Support is Available?

---

The best source of additional information are the forums, knowledgebases, and FAQs that are provided free of charge at <https://developer.intuit.com>. If further assistance is required, use the technical support links provided at that site to contact technical support.



## CHAPTER 2

### JUMPSTART

If you are new to QB SDK programming, the fastest and surest way to get started in QB SDK programming is use the following two resources:

- The Technical Overview, which is supplied with the QB SDK installation.
- The QuickBooks SDK Essentials Video available free at the [IDG Website](#)

The video, which can be downloaded or viewed on the web, runs about one hour. It will save you many times over that amount of time in getting you on the right track. We highly recommend this video to newcomers and to anyone not entirely comfortable in SDK programming.

### After the Tech Overview and the SDK Essentials Video...

---

Once you read the Technical Overview and take a look at the SDK Essentials video, and are ready to investigate programming one of the SDK features, consider these resources in this recommended order:

1. Consult the QB SDK Programmer's Guide (this document) for the topic area you are interested in. Doing this can save you lots of time later.
2. Check out the API Reference for an understanding of the request features.
3. Check out the programming samples in the qbsdk\samples subdirectory, including the xmlfiles subdirectory. You should be able to find much of what you need there.
4. Search the *IDG Live Community forums*.



# CHAPTER 3

## THE COMMUNICATION MODEL AND WAYS OF IMPLEMENTING IT

This chapter describes the basic communication pattern used by all SDK applications, authorizations of SDK applications, which is part of that pattern, and the different ways that you can implement communication with QuickBooks.

### The Basic Communication Pattern

All communication between QuickBooks and SDK applications follow the same basic pattern. The application first establishes communication with QuickBooks (this involves both connection-related method calls AND human interaction (getting the company owner's authorization). The application then sends a request set containing one or more requests. QuickBooks processes the requests and sends back a response set containing one or more responses (Figure 3-1).

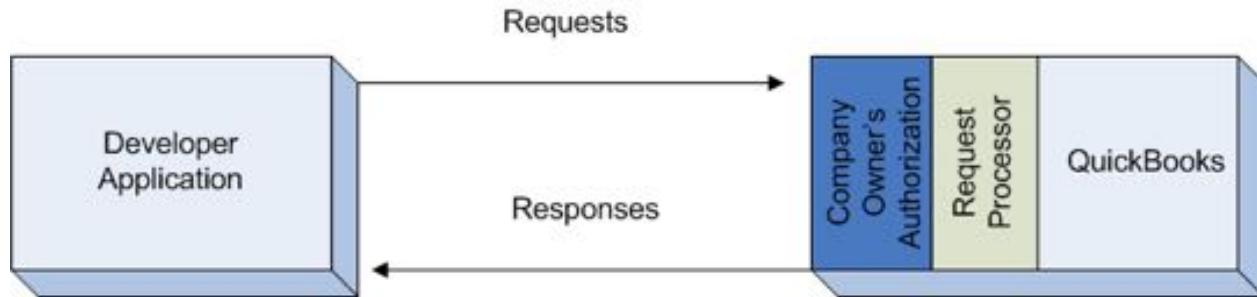


Figure 3-1 The Basic Communication Model

This is a pretty high level view of things, but it is general enough to serve for the various supported ways to access QuickBooks. Once you get down to particular types of access, such as desktop applications accessing local QuickBooks, you'll learn about request processor DLL running in the QuickBooks process to handle incoming requests and send out outgoing requests. We'll cover those details a little further on in this chapter.

### Authorizations You Need to Know About

There are two types of authorization that impact your application:

- Company owner authorization, which applies to all SDK applications
- Gateway authorization, which applies to applications using Intuit gateway such as QB Merchant Services.

## Company Owner Authorization of SDK Applications

---

No SDK application can access a QuickBooks company unless the company owner (your customer) authorizes that application. The first time your application accesses QuickBooks, the company owner is prompted to grant or deny the access and also limit the access to certain areas of QuickBooks data. The authorization grant can be a good-until-cancelled authorization or a single session authorization. The authorization also can restrict access to sensitive data, if desired by the company owner.

Once authorization is granted, the application can access the company, but you should be aware that the owner can revoke that authorization at any time from within QuickBooks.

The way authorization is granted and how your application responds to the authorization mechanism varies with the way you are communicating with QuickBooks. So we'll discuss authorization mainly from within each type of implementation.

## Messages: The Content of the Communication

---

Whatever the communication model, the “stuff” being communicated is qbXML message.

Messages are of two types:

- *requests* that your application sends to QuickBooks
  - *responses* that QuickBooks returns to your application
- 

One or more individual messages are grouped into a *message set*, which contains a collection of either requests or responses.

The name of a message indicates the QuickBooks *object* it deals with and the *operation* to be performed on that object, as described in the following sections. Request messages have the suffix *Rq*, and response messages have the suffix *Rs*. To get a feel for the messages you'll be working with, spend a few minutes exploring the *API Reference* for your target QuickBooks product.

## What's in a Message?

---

The smallest component of a message is an *element*. The exact form of an element depends on the API you're using—whether you're using the qbXML Request Processor API or the QBFC (QuickBooks Foundation Class) Library to create requests and interpret responses. Elements are *name/value pairs* and sometimes have associated *attributes*. Messages group elements into containers called *aggregates*.

Regardless of the API you choose, the concepts are the same, which is why this manual addresses the needs of multiple QuickBooks SDK audiences. For purposes of brevity, most of the examples are in qbXML. If you're using the QBFC COM API, the messages will be constructed differently, but the elements, aggregates, and attributes will be used in exactly the same manner.

For example, here is a request to add an account, *AccountAddRq*:

```
<AccountAddRq requestID="2">
  <AccountAdd>
    <Name>Checking Account</Name>
    <AccountType>Bank</AccountType>
    <BankNumber>0350039560</BankNumber>
  </AccountAdd>
</AccountAddRq>
```

In this example, *AccountAdd* is an aggregate that contains the essential data of the message. *Name*, *AccountType*, and *BankNumber* are all elements. *AccountAddRq* is also an aggregate and is often referred to as the *message aggregate* since it contains the entire message and its request ID (which, in qbXML, is an attribute).

In qbXML, an element or aggregate begins with its name in angled brackets:

```
<AccountAdd>
```

and ends with the name, preceded by a backslash, also in angled brackets:

```
</AccountAdd>
```

## Ways to Implement Communication With QuickBooks

---

Your application can communicate with QuickBooks in any of the following ways:

- A desktop application accessing a local QuickBooks

- A remote web application (web service) accessing a local QuickBooks via the local QuickBooks Web Connector (QBWC)

## Desktop Applications Accessing Local QuickBooks

The most typical communication is shown in Figure 3-2, where a desktop application accesses a QuickBooks installation running on the same machine.

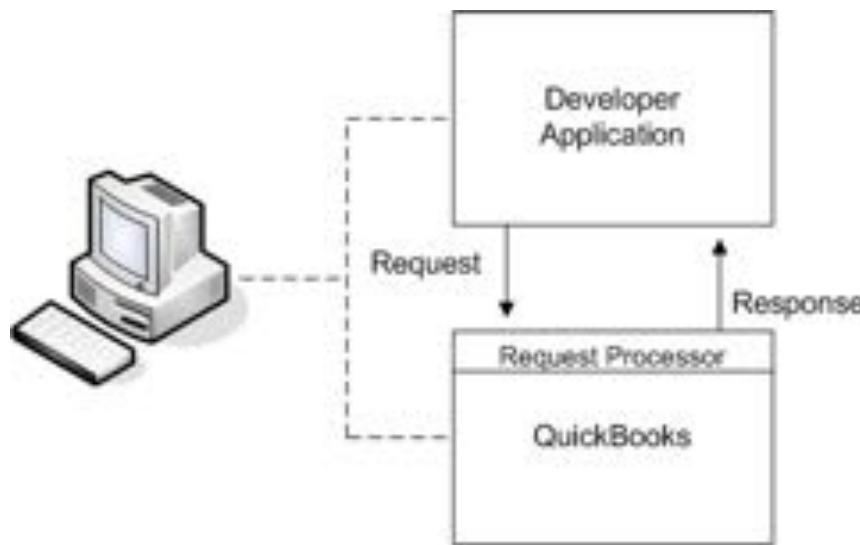


Figure 3-2 Desktop Application to Desktop QuickBooks Communication

In this implementation type, notice that the developer application drives the connection and data exchange.

### Where to Find More Details

This communication type has been around forever and so has the documentation for it. For all the details related to communication, including sample code, see Chapter 5, “Accessing Desktop QuickBooks Editions.”.

## Web Services Accessing QuickBooks via QB Web Connector

One of the more recent access types is a remote web service accessing a local QuickBooks (see Figure 3-3).

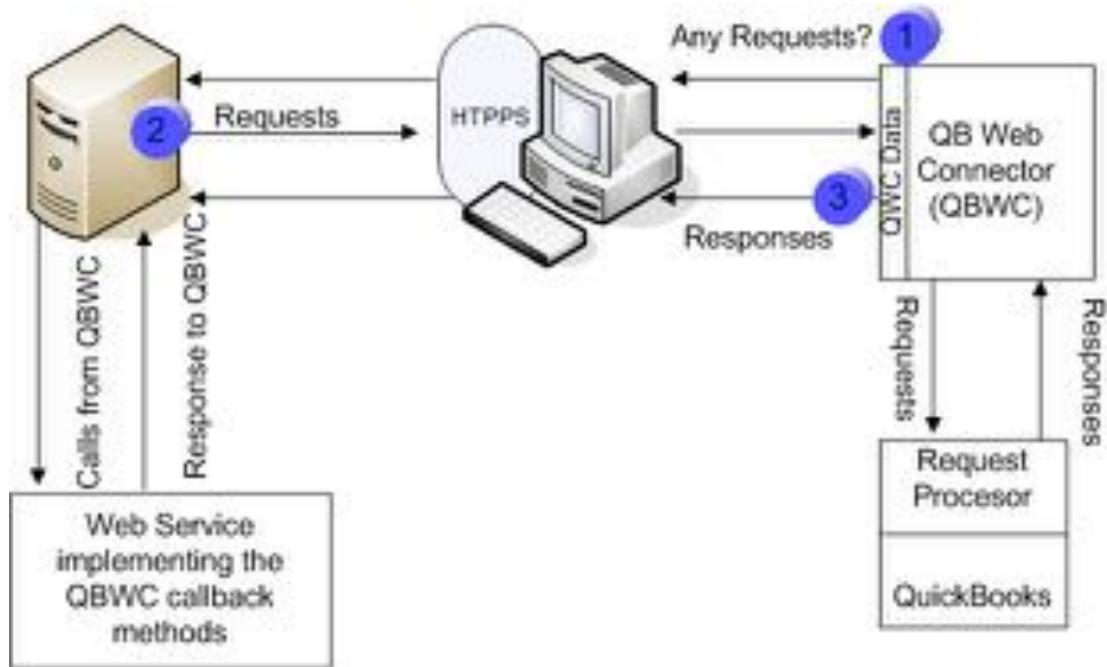


Figure 3-3 Remote Web Service Accessing Local QuickBooks

As shown in the figure, the Web Connector functions as the SDK application. At user specified intervals, the Web Connector asks the remote web service if it has any outstanding work to do. (QBWC knows how to contact the web service from a QWC file obtained from the web service provider.)

User name and password are supplied to the web service in this initial contact, so the web service can do the lookups and see what needs to be done for that user. If the web service has work for the user, it sends the proper qbXML requests to QBWC. QBWC passes them on to QuickBooks and then returns the QuickBooks response to the remote service.

All the communication between web service and QBWC is done over HTTPS for security purposes. This means a web service must obtain and use a standard industry certificate from providers like Thawte, Verisign, and so forth.

### Where to Find More Details

For complete details on implementing the required QBWC web service interfaces, see the *QBWC Programmer's Guide*, which is included in the QB SDK.



# CHAPTER 4

## SPECIFYING AUTHORIZATION PREFERENCES

The QuickBooks administrative user is the one who authorizes your application for access to the company, and can restrict that authorization in various ways, such as not allowing access to sensitive financial data. This can adversely affect your application if it needs more access permissions than the QuickBooks user grants it. How do you handle this situation?

For QB Simple Start edition, there is no built-in way using the SDK to solve this problem. However, for desktop editions of QuickBooks other than Simple Start, there is a way for your application to notify the user about required access permissions. You can use the AuthPreferences object to tell the QuickBooks user what your application needs.

This chapter describes the overall authorization behavior built into the QuickBooks UI, and how the AuthPreferences object works with it to prompt the user to grant needed access rights.

## How the QuickBooks UI Supports Authorization/Access

---

The first time your application logs in to QuickBooks, QuickBooks must already be launched and running in the foreground with a company file open and the administrator user logged in. These requirements prevent unauthorized applications from gaining access to QuickBooks. The authorization process is triggered by the call to BeginSession.

### When is the Authorization Dialog Displayed?

---

The authorization dialog appears when an application tries to access a QuickBooks company file for the first time. The authorization dialog is also displayed when

- A QuickBooks company file is opened for the first time by an application after it makes an event subscription
- An application previously authorized to access a particular QuickBooks company file attempts to access that file in a way different than authorized or with different preferences than the last time it accessed that file. This supports the AuthPreference functionality that allows your application to prompt the user to provide the type of authorization your application needs.

### The Default Authorization Dialog

---

The default authorization dialog is the one that QuickBooks presents to the user if the AuthPreferences property is not used. It is shown in Figure 4-1. In this authorization dialog, the QuickBooks administrator can

- Refuse authorization by selecting “No”
- Authorize for only the current session and force the application to be authorized again the next time the application attempts to access a company file by selecting "Prompt each time"
- Authorize the application to access QuickBooks with no additional authorization whenever that company file is open, regardless of which user is logged in by selecting “Yes, whenever this company file is open.”
- Authorize the application to log on in unattended mode (auto login) by selecting “Yes, allow access even if QuickBooks is not running.”
  - > If the user selects unattended mode authorization, and if there is more than one user (not just the administrative user) then the “login as” dropdown is visible and enabled, presenting the user with a list of login IDs currently able to log in to that company file.
- The checkbox at the bottom of the authorization dialog, if checked, authorizes your application to access sensitive personal data. However, the currently logged in user is still restricted by the permissions set up in QuickBooks, regardless of whether or not the checkbox is checked.

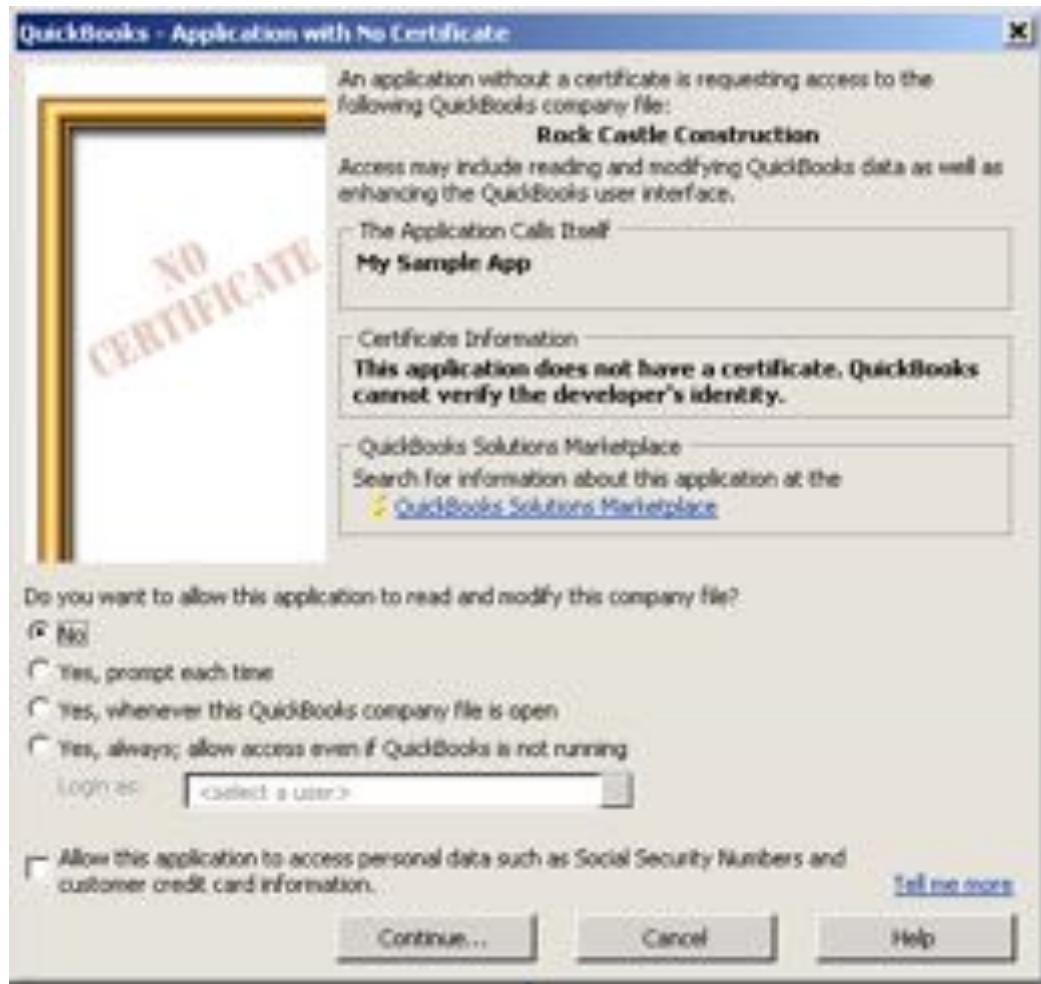


Figure 4-1 Default Authorization Form

## How the AuthPreferences Object Works

Starting with QuickBooks 2005, you can use the `AuthPreferences` object to inform the user via the QuickBooks authorization dialog itself, about the level of access that your application requires.

`AuthPreferences` allows you to let the user know immediately what your application requires, simplifies the user's choices by displaying only those authorization selections in the dialog that are relevant to your application, and eliminates unnecessary work by the user, such as navigating through multiple QuickBooks menus and dialogs. Notice that the user must be logged in as the QuickBooks administrative user in order to authorize these preferences.

## How to Use the AuthPreferences Functionality

---

The AuthPreferences object is a property of the QB XML request processor. We'll show you how to instantiate this and set it in a code sample in just a moment. But first, let's take a look at what you can do with the object and its methods.

The AuthPreferences object has three write methods, which must be invoked BEFORE the call to BeginSession:

- PutIsReadOnly. This causes the QuickBooks authorization dialog to display text informing the user that its access will be read-only.
- PutUnattendedModePref. This has different effects depending on the parameter specified:
  - > `umpRequired`, which causes the QuickBooks authorization dialog to display only the selection choices of "No" (no authorization) or "Yes, allow access even if QuickBooks is not running" (authorize unattended mode). In other words, you use this value to tell the user you need to run in unattended mode if you're going to run at all.
  - > `umpOptional`, which causes the QuickBooks authorization dialog to display its default selections and let the user pick. You would only use this setting if your application didn't need unattended mode.
- PutPersonalDataPref which has different effects depending on the parameter specified:
  - > `pdpRequired`, which causes the QuickBooks authorization dialog to not display the personal information checkbox for user selection, and instead display a warning that the application needs to access personal data such as SSN or credit card information.
  - > `pdpOptional`, which causes the QuickBooks authorization dialog to display a checkbox for user selection asking whether the user wants to allow the application to access personal data such as SSN or credit card information. That is, your application doesn't absolutely require the access, although it could use data from such access if it were granted.
  - > `pdpNotNeeded`, which causes the QuickBooks authorization dialog to not display the personal information checkbox for user selection, and instead display an informational message that the application will NOT access personal data such as SSN or credit card information. That is, if your application doesn't use any of that data, the nice thing to do is let the user know up front and not prompt the user for access you don't need.

There are three Get methods (`GetIsReadOnly`, `GetUnattendedModePref`, and `GetPersonalDataPref`) that return the authorization preferences currently in effect, but these methods can only be invoked AFTER the call to BeginSession.

### **IMPORTANT**

Your code implementing the new authorization capabilities will not set preferences on QB versions earlier than QuickBooks 2005. However, no errors will occur if you use `AuthPreferences` and its related methods, so you can safely write code and expect no failures. However, you may want to do a check, using the `AuthPreferences` method `WasAuthPreferencesObeyed` to determine whether the QuickBooks version supports `AuthPreferences` or not.

### **Code Sample: AuthPreferences via the Request Processor**

The following snippet shows the use of the `AuthPreference` object to set preferences in `AuthPreferences`. This sample uses the request processor directly (QBXMLRP2Lib). We'll give a short QBFC snippet shortly.

Notice that this does not set QuickBooks authorization preferences (only the QuickBooks administrator can do that) but it sets up `AuthPreferences` so that QuickBooks will display the authorization dialogs that correspond to the preferences your applications has specified.

```
If (frmSDKTestPlus3.AuthPrefsDirty) Then
    Dim prefs As QBXMLRP2Lib.AuthPreferences
    Set prefs = qbXMLCOM.AuthPreferences
    If (frmSDKTestPlus3.Unattended.Value) Then
        prefs.PutUnattendedModePref umpRequired
    Else
        prefs.PutUnattendedModePref umpOptional
    End If

    prefs.PutIsReadOnly frmSDKTestPlus3.ReadOnly.Value
    If (frmSDKTestPlus3.pdRequired.Value) Then
        prefs.PutPersonalDataPref pdpRequired
    ElseIf (frmSDKTestPlus3.pdNotNeeded.Value) Then
        prefs.PutPersonalDataPref pdpNotNeeded
    Else
        prefs.PutPersonalDataPref pdpOptional
    End If
End If
```

In this snippet, the parent form `frmSDKTestPlus3` is checked to see whether any preferences have been changed. If any changes were made, the various components in the form are checked for new user selections and those choices are then set in the `AuthPreferences` object.

### **NOTE**

This snippet is for a sandbox type application that allows for a toggling of the `AuthPreferences` requirements for test purposes. Your application probably would not do this, but would instead simply set the preferences in the way your application requires.

## Code Sample: AuthPreferences via QBFC

The following snippet shows the setting of the AuthPreferences object in QBFC.

```
Dim SessionManager As QBSessionManager
Set SessionManager = New QBSessionManager

Dim MyAuthPrefs As IAuthPreferences

Set MyAuthPrefs = SessionManager.QBAuthPreferences
MyAuthPrefs.PutIsReadOnly
SessionManager.OpenConnection2 appID, appName, ctLocalQBD
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare
```

### What Happens as a Result of the AuthPreference Settings?

The next time the application connects to QuickBooks after any change to AuthPreferences, the proper authorization dialog is displayed to the user. For example, if you set the AuthPreferences such that access to personal data was required, the ability to run in unattended mode was required, and you specified read-only access, then the authorization dialog shown in Figure 4-2 on page 41 would be displayed to the user.

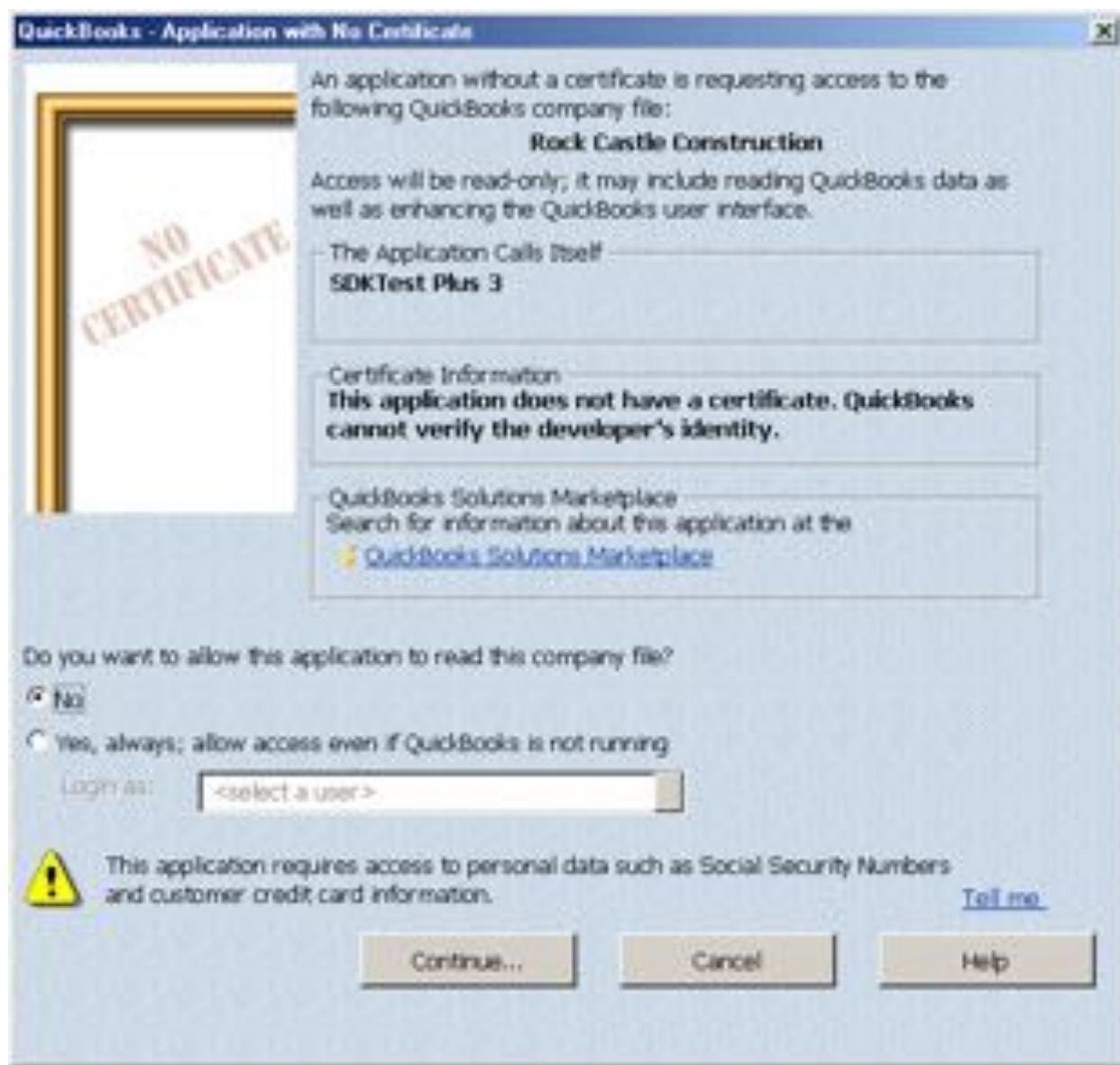


Figure 4-2 Authorization Dialog for Read-Only, Personal Data, and Unattended Mode

If the user chooses to authorize, QuickBooks pops up the confirmation message shown in Figure 4-3 on page 42.

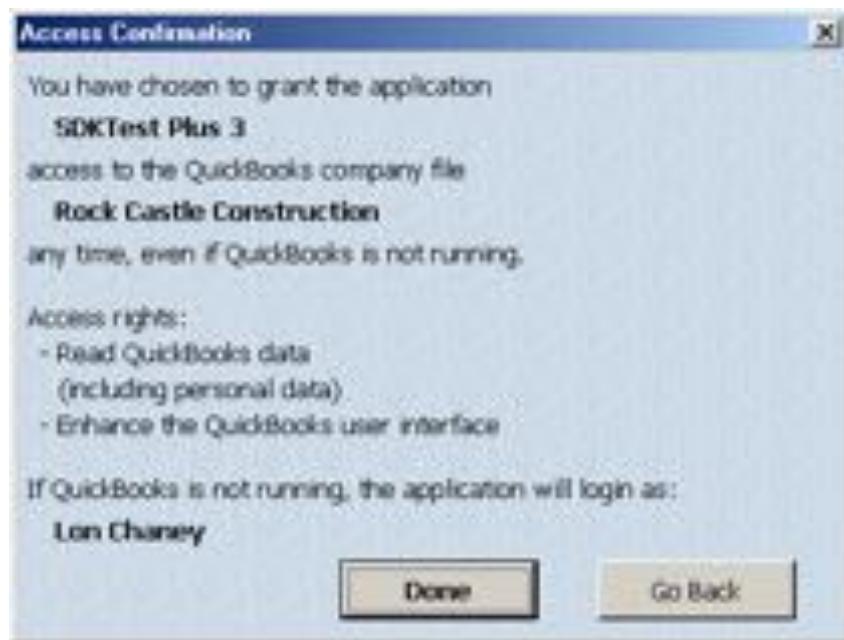


Figure 4-3 Authorization Confirmation

Notice that the confirmation messages lists all of the authorized access preferences.

## Setting Authorization Preferences Within QuickBooks

If your application does not use the `AuthPreferences` object and methods to help the QuickBooks administrator set authorizations properly, the QuickBooks administrator may need to set additional authorization preferences or change existing authorization preferences for integrated applications within QuickBooks by clicking on the Integrated Applications icon in the QuickBooks Preferences window, then selecting Company Preferences. Preferences that can be set by the administrator include the following:

- Disallowing or changing application access
- Enabling certificate date checking
- Listing authorized applications
- Granting auto-login privileges and assigning the name of the auto-login user
- Allowing application access to personal company data

Figure 4-4 on page 43 shows the window presented to the administrator for managing integrated applications and their access to QuickBooks.



Figure 4-4 Integrated Application Preferences



# CHAPTER 5

## ACCESSING DESKTOP QUICKBOOKS EDITIONS

This chapter assumes that you have read about the basic communication model used for accessing desktop QuickBooks editions, in Chapter 3, “The Communication Model and Ways of Implementing It.”

Accessing desktop QuickBooks editions is pretty straightforward whether you use the request processor or the QBFC convenience library. At bare minimum, there are only three lines of code for the access: OpenConnection2, BeginSession, and ProcessRequest (or DoRequests if you use QBFC). And two lines of housekeeping code when you’re finished: EndSession and CloseConnection. We’ll cover that simple case in this chapter.

But there are a couple of other things you may want to know about as well. Such as

- Single user mode vs multi-user mode.
- Auto-login mode, which allows your application to run without an interactive user.
- How to specify which QB editions your application supports and which ones it doesn’t.
- How to tell your user which access rights your application needs in order to work. (This isn’t covered here, but it is covered in Chapter 4, “Specifying Authorization Preferences.”)

These topics are covered in this chapter.

## Using Java with QB SDK

---

If you want to use Java with the QB SDK, you need to use a Java to COM bridge, for example the Jacob bridge product. For more information, search the web, and take a look at the blog *Using the QuickBooks SDK via JACOB Java-Com Bridge*.from Theoden’s Coding Tips.

The programming samples included with the SDK also include a sample implementation using a Java to COM bridge.

## A Note About the Request Processor

---

The qbXML Request Processor is the gatekeeper between your application and QuickBooks. The Request Processor implements the COM interface that allows your application to establish a connection to QuickBooks and set up a working session for a particular QuickBooks company file. Because it straddles the process boundary with QuickBooks, the Request Processor is available even when QuickBooks is not running or a working session for a specific company file has not yet been established.

**NOTE**

The Request Processor supplies an API that allows event subscriptions without requiring a QuickBooks session. The subscriptions go into effect the next time the company file is opened, or when QuickBooks is next started. (For more information, Chapter 14, "Event Notification.")

## How to Access QuickBooks

---

To access QuickBooks, your application needs to do this:

1. Open a connection to QuickBooks.
2. Start a session for working on a specific QuickBooks company file.
3. Send whatever requests you want to do something in QuickBooks.
4. When you're done or before your application exits, end the session.
5. Then close the connection.

### VB Code Snippets for Access if You Use qbXML

---

If you use qbXML, you need to use QBXMLRP2Lib, however your language does this, such as by an import statement, or by specifying it in your project reference, Then, here's what the above steps 1 through 5 look like in code:

```
Dim MyQbXMLRP2 As QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
Set MyQbXMLRP2 = New QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2

MyQbXMLRP2.OpenConnection2 "", "My Sample App", localQBD
Dim ticket As String
ticket = MyQbXMLRP2.BeginSession("", QBXMLRP2Lib.qbFileOpenDoNotCare)

' The variable "xml" here is a fully formed message request set:
' we left out that part to keep this as simple as possible
Dim sendXMLtoQB As String
sendXMLtoQB = MyQbXMLRP2.ProcessRequest(ticket, xml)
MyQbXMLRP2.EndSession ticket
MyQbXMLRP2.CloseConnection
```

### Some Commentary on the Code Snippet

The OpenConnection2 call is interesting partly because of the third parameter, which we've shown as localQBD. Other possibilities could be to use localQBDLaunchUI, which would start QuickBooks in interactive mode.

The first parameter to BeginSession is the full path to the QuickBooks company file you want to use. We show an empty string here because we are using whatever file is currently open in QuickBooks. The second parameter is the file mode. This is where you specify

whether you're accessing the company file in single user mode or multi-user mode, which we'll describe shortly. We specified the file mode of "do not care" which allows for either multi-user or single-user mode, depending on whether the file is currently opened or not.

If the BeginSession call succeeds, you get back a session ticket which you need to supply as a parameter for the various calls into the request processor, such as ProcessRequest and CloseConnection.

## VB Code Snippets for Access if You Use QBFC

---

If you use QBFC, you need to use the QBFC DLL however your language does this, such as by an import statement, or by specifying it in your project reference. Then, here's how you access QuickBooks:

```
Dim MySessionManager As QBSessionManager
Set MySessionManager = New QBSessionManager
MySessionManager.OpenConnection2 " ", "My Sample App", ctLocalQBD
MySessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

' "MyMsgRequestSet" here is a fully formed message request set:
' we left out that part to keep this as simple as possible
Dim MyDataExt_resp As IMsgSetResponse
Set MyDataExt_resp = MySessionManager.DoRequests(MyMsgRequestSet)

MySessionManager.EndSession
MySessionManager.CloseConnection
```

### Some Commentary on the QBFC Code Snippet

The same commentary provided for the qbXML snippet above applies here. One interesting difference you'll notice is the absence of the session ticket when you use QBFC. That is managed automatically by QBFC.

## What Happens in the Call to BeginSession?

---

When your application makes a BeginSession call to QuickBooks, the Request Processor checks to ensure that the following are true:

- The current QuickBooks supports the SDK (QuickBooks Version 10 or greater).
- The version of QuickBooks and the version of the company data file, if one was specified, match one another. (If NULL or an empty string was specified, this task is skipped.)
- The file access mode specified by your application and the mode in which the company data file is currently open are compatible.
- The Request Processor is able to successfully launch the located, required version of QuickBooks. If it cannot start QuickBooks, any number of problems might exist; for

instance, QuickBooks might not have been correctly installed (perhaps only partially installed) or there might be some other problem with QuickBooks.

- If the application attempts auto login and if this permission has not been granted by the QuickBooks administrative user, QuickBooks returns an error code to your application in the `BeginSession` call.

If any of these tasks fail, your application will not be able to complete the login process or connect to QuickBooks. However, in the event of failure, your application will have the opportunity to present the user with direction on how to resolve the problem. For related information, see Chapter 37, “Making Your Application Robust.”

## Troubleshooting Errors in the `BeginSession` Call

---

For help with these and other errors, check out the IDG Developer website for more information and a useful diagnostic tool called *qbSDKDiag*.

The *qbSDKDiag* tool turns on the maximum logging capability of QuickBooks and the SDK, gathers important registry data about QuickBooks, starts QuickBooks, and attempts to establish a connection with QuickBooks in interactive mode using QBXMLRP and QBXMLRP2.

Having successfully connected in interactive mode, the user is then asked to enable unattended access for the diagnostic tool and to close QuickBooks. The diagnostic tool then attempts to connect with both QBXMLRP and QBXMLRP2 using unattended mode. Finally, all the log files (qbsdklog.txt, qbinstancefinder.log, qbwin.log, and the diagnostic log itself) are zipped up and e-mailed to the address supplied in the diagnostic application, currently to IDG support.

## Multiple Sessions versus a Single Session

---

A *session* gives your application access to QuickBooks data belonging to *one* company file. Depending on whether your typical user deals with a single company file or multiple company files in QuickBooks, you will have one or multiple sessions within a connection. If your user typically deals with only one company’s data, you will probably open a connection, begin a session, process multiple requests, and then end the session, as shown in Figure 5-1 on page 49.



Figure 5-1 A single session within one connection.

If the user of your application often deals with multiple companies as, for example, a professional accountant who manages finances for multiple organizations, your application will probably open a connection and then begin and end several sessions on different company files before finally closing the connection, as shown in Figure 5-2 on page 49. Sessions do not overlap.

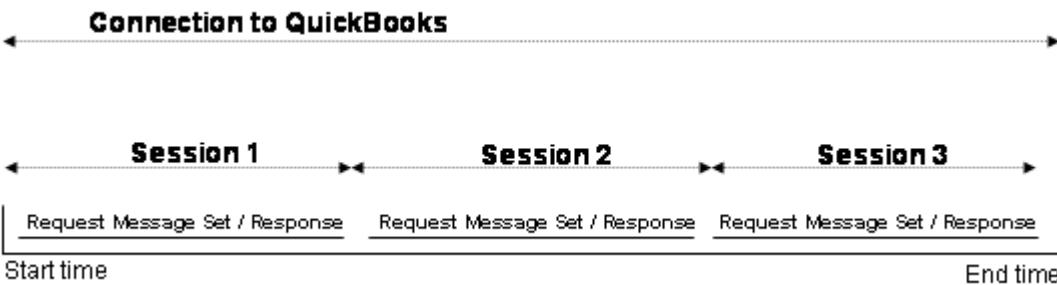


Figure 5-2 Multiple sessions within one connection.

In most cases, an application will send multiple requests to QuickBooks in a single session. The processing is synchronous: your application must wait until one ProcessRequest call completes execution and returns with the qbXML response data sent from QuickBooks before issuing the next ProcessRequest call.

## Using AuthFlags to Specify Support for QuickBooks Editions

Prior to QuickBooks 2006, the various editions of QuickBooks provided virtually the same support for the various SDK requests. However, beginning with QuickBooks 2006, a new edition called QuickBooks Simple Start provides support for a subset of SDK requests. Consequently, to prevent applications from behaving unexpectedly while running on QuickBooks Simple Start, the request processor now checks the AuthFlags property during the call to BeginSession to determine whether your application supports QuickBooks Simple Start.

For existing applications that aren't designed for QuickBooks Simple Start, no code changes are necessary, because by default, AuthFlags is set to support QuickBooks Pro, Premier, and Enterprise.

However, if you are writing an application that *does* support QuickBooks Simple Start, you need to explicitly set AuthFlags to indicate your application's support of that edition.

Otherwise, if your application attempts to begin a session with QuickBooks Simple Start, you will get an error when you call BeginSession.

## Setting AuthFlags to Specify Support for a QuickBooks Edition

To specify which editions your application supports, you invoke the PutAuthFlags method of the AuthPreferences object *before* you call BeginSession. The basic call sequence is straightforward:

1. Instantiate the request processor
2. Instantiate the AuthPreferences object.
3. Construct the desired AuthFlags value
4. Invoke the PutAuthFlags method on AuthPreferences using the AuthFlags value you just constructed.

The tricky part in all this is the constructing of the AuthFlags value. You need to know a few facts other than its data type, which by the way, is an integer value (a Long in VB). Internally, the editions are represented by the following enumerated values:

<b>Behavior Needed</b>	<b>Value</b>
SupportQBSimpleStart	0x1
SupportQBPro	0x2
SupportQBPremier	0x4
SupportQBEnterprise	0x8
ForceAuthDialog	0x80000000

The ForceAuthDialog value is included as a convenience: if you include it when you construct your AuthFlags, you cause QuickBooks to display the authorization dialog again for the user to change the permissions they may have already set for your application.

To specify support for each edition, you simply OR the values for each edition you are supporting. In the following VB snippet, we specify support for all of the QuickBooks editions and force the display of the auth dialog to boot.

```
Dim authFlags As Long
authFlags = 0
authFlags = authFlags Or &H8&
authFlags = authFlags Or &H4&
authFlags = authFlags Or &H2&
authFlags = authFlags Or &H1&
authFlags = authFlags Or &H80000000
```

When we finish constructing the AuthFlags, we set it as follows:

```
Dim qbXMLCOM As QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
Dim prefs As QBXMLRP2Lib.AuthPreferences
Set prefs = qbXMLCOM.AuthPreferences
prefs.PutAuthFlags (authFlags)
```

The SDK sample program SDKTestPlus3 provides an example of constructing the AuthFlags a bit more selectively, ORring only those editions you choose through UI components.

#### **IMPORTANT**

If you start your application by invoking BeginSession with LocalQBLaunchUI AND you have SimpleStart, but do not set the authFlags to specify Simple Start support, SimpleStart will launch with the company file specified, and you'll get an error regarding the fact that your application doesn't support SimpleStart. Once Simple Start is launched in this scenario, your application won't have SDK access to Simple Start.

## More Information about Login Modes

---

Integrated applications can log in to QuickBooks in one of two modes:

- In *interactive mode*, QuickBooks runs in the foreground, and its user interface is displayed. The user logs in to QuickBooks and opens a company file. Subsequently, your application is launched and “attaches” to the company file that has already been opened. The user can interact directly with your application and with QuickBooks.
- In *unattended mode* (auto-login), QuickBooks runs in the background, and its user interface may or may not be displayed, depending on the connection type you specify in the call to OpenConnection2. The ctLocalQBD type either uses the local QuickBooks currently running or, if not running, launches QB in unattended mode (without UI, thus non interactively). If QuickBooks is not running, the ctLocalQBDLaunchUI type launches it in interactive mode (the UI is displayed). If your connection type doesn't specify the launching of the QuickBooks UI, then QuickBooks features are fully available to your application but not to the user. Notice that whenever QuickBooks is started by the application rather than by the small-business owner, it is in auto-login mode.

#### **NOTE**

When an application accesses a company file that was opened by a user from the QuickBooks user interface, the application has the same privileges as that logged-in user. In some cases, the user can impose further restrictions via the preferences for the application. (In QuickBooks, bring up preferences by selecting Edit->Preferences->Integrated Applications->Company Preferences->Properties.)

## Setting Up Auto-Login

You use the `AuthPreferences` object to inform the user that auto-login (unattended) mode is required (Chapter 4, “Specifying Authorization Preferences.”). The proper dialog with the auto-login prompt will be presented to the user for confirmation. If the user chooses not to authorize your application’s requirements, then your application will not be allowed to access the QuickBooks company. Notice that this is “all or nothing.” Either your application gets all of its requirements or it is refused access to QuickBooks.

Alternatively, you can set up auto-login from within QuickBooks. Using this method, the QuickBooks administrator sets the user name under which your application will run in QuickBooks under Company Preferences, Properties, Access Rights, a window that is accessible only to QuickBooks administrators (see Figure 5-3 on page 52).

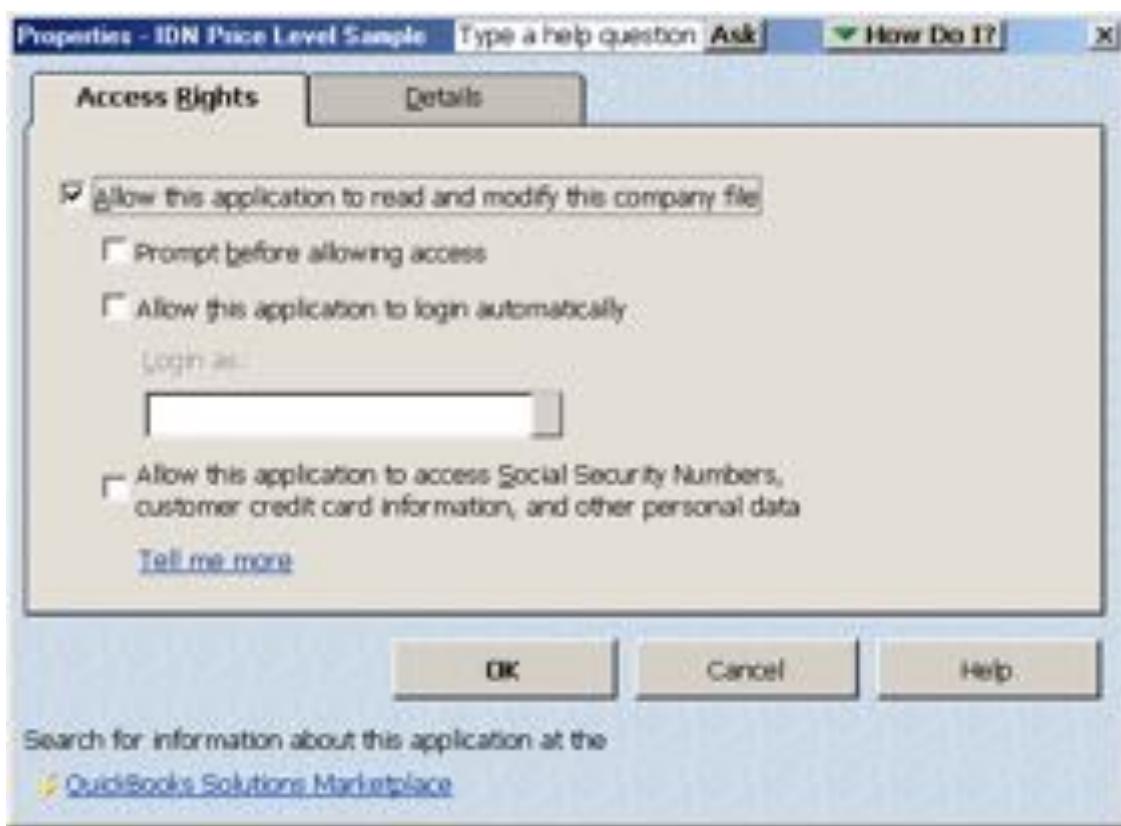


Figure 5-3 QuickBooks window for allowing auto-login by an integrated application

If you don’t use `AuthPreferences`, be sure to tell your user that the QuickBooks administrator must give your application the necessary authorizations.

### What Happens if the Administrative User Deletes the Auto-Login User?

If an application is set up for auto-login, then a warning message is displayed to the administrative user when that user attempts to delete. The message indicates that the user to be deleted is used by an integrated application.

### **IMPORTANT**

If an application starts QuickBooks in auto-login mode, any subsequent applications authorized for auto-login will have the privileges of the first application during that session. The first auto-login application sets the user for any subsequent applications during the session. This is the user that is the “active” user for all applications until all of the applications end their sessions and QuickBooks exits.

## Only One Auto-Login User per Application

Regardless of whether single-user or multi-user mode is specified for a given session, there can be only one auto-login active during that session. Figure 5-4 on page 53 illustrates a multi-user session, with four different users accessing the same company file. Because Joe is designated as an auto-login user on System 4, no other users can log in automatically until “Joe” (the auto-user) logs out. When multiple instances of an integrated application are running on different systems and accessing the same company file, as shown in Figure 5-4 on page 53, each user must have a different name.

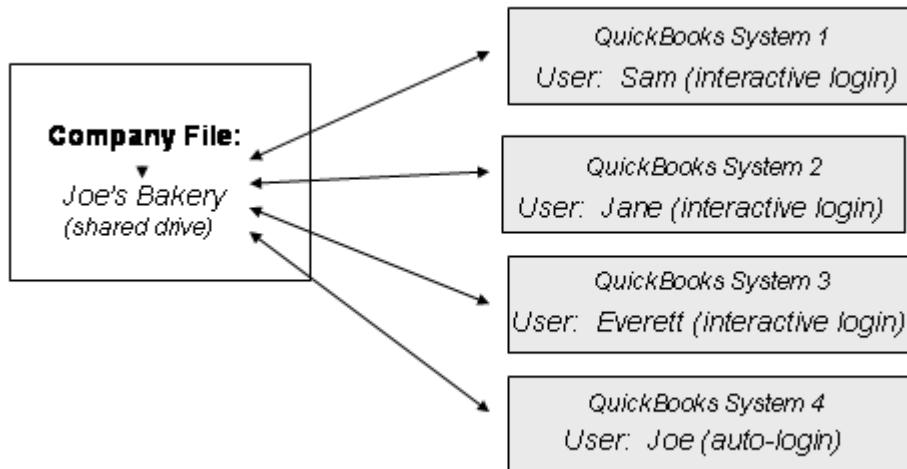


Figure 5-4    Multiple users accessing the same company file

## Limitations on Accessing Company Files

Only one company file at a time can be accessed by integrated applications on any given machine running QuickBooks. The company file that must be used by integrated applications is the one currently opened by the user from the QuickBooks user interface, or the company file that is currently open by an application that started QuickBooks in auto-login mode.

## Allowing Application Access to Personal Data

---

The Access Rights window shown in Figure 5-3 on page 52 also includes a checkbox that allows your application access to personal data in the company file. Personal data can include:

- Employee social security numbers
- Any field directly related to an employee's salary or wages
- Anything related to credit card numbers or bank account numbers

Be sure to instruct the QuickBooks administrator to check this box if your application requires access to personal employee or customer data. (Alternatively, your application can require access to personal data using the `AuthPreferences` object, which is available for QuickBooks 2005 and later.)

## Single-User vs. Multi-User Mode

---

During a QuickBooks session, your application specifies whether to open the company data file in single-user or multi-user mode. It is important to balance your needs with the overall implications of selecting one mode over the other. Table 5-1 on page 55 summarizes the different combinations. Another interesting case is that even when the integrated application opens a company file in multi-user mode, other integrated applications can access the company file, but no actual users can access that company file on the same system.

### **IMPORTANT**

If QuickBooks 2007 and later is running non hosted, SDK applications starting QuickBooks in `DoNotCare` mode will open QuickBooks in single-user mode.

Table 5-1 QuickBooks company file login mode access conditions and rights

Who started QuickBooks	Mode	Who may obtain access
Integrated Application	Single-user	All other integrated applications = access
Integrated Application	Multi-user	QB users on same machine = no access All other integrated applications = access QB users on other machines = access
QuickBooks User	Single-user	QB user already logged in Only one integrated application = access
QuickBooks User	Multi-user	QB users = access Integrated applications = access

## Trade-offs of Using Single-User Mode

---

Here are some of the advantages and disadvantages of using single-user mode.

### Advantages:

- Certain QuickBooks features require that a user operate in single-user mode. For instance, a company file must be open in single-user mode for you to delete any of its list items.
- Locking and opening protection. If the company file is not already opened by another QuickBooks-integrated application, your application will be able to open it with exclusive access (locking out other applications), gaining improved performance.

### Disadvantages:

- Lockout. If your application attempts to open a company file in single-user mode and that company file is already open in multi-user mode, your application will not be able to access the company data file. Your application will be locked out. (If your application specifies multi-user mode, it can share access to the company file.)

## Microsoft Windows Vista & Windows 7 and UAC

---

On the released version of Windows Vista & Win 7, applications built with any version of the QuickBooks SDK should work correctly with QuickBooks 2011 R7 and newer (and QuickBooks Enterprise Solutions 11.0 R7 and newer), the latest available update release, with the following additions:

With User Access Control (UAC) ON - Both QuickBooks and the application accessing it through the SDK can run with elevated user permissions (Run as Administrator) under following setup for a successful SDK connection.

- a. QuickBooks running as Administrator in AND Application accessing QuickBooks through SDK running as Administrator.
- b. QuickBooks in Unattended mode AND Application accessing QuickBooks through SDK running as Administrator.

The following limitations are still in place

With UAC ON, either one of these – QuickBooks or SDK application cannot be run in Elevated access.

- a. Unsuccessful connection when QuickBooks in Standard user permission and SDK Application running as Administrator.
- b. Unsuccessful connection when QuickBooks running as Administrator and SDK Application in Standard user permission.

Table 5-2 Use case for UAC

Cases	UAC	Mode Of Connection	Client	QuickBooks	SDK Connection in 2011 R7
a.	UAC ON	Attended	Elevated	Elevated	Successful
b.	UAC On	Unattended	Eleveated	Not Running	Successful
Limitations:	UAC ON	Attended	Standard	Elevated	Unsuccessful
a.	UAC ON	Attended	Elevated	Standard	Unsuccessful

# CHAPTER 6

## BUILDING REQUESTS IN QBFC AND IN QBXML

This chapter describes how to build requests using the QBFC library or the request processor directly, via qbXML. Because the request processor API method requires you to build valid qbXML request strings and parse the returned qbXML responses, this chapter shows the use of Microsoft's XML Services 4.0 DOM to build and parse the XML using DOM documents.

### A Few Notes About Using QBFC

The QBFC library provides a convenience layer that allows you to construct requests using the familiar object and object property paradigm. You will notice that the convenience layer is a thin layer, so consequently there are a lot of objects to contend with in QBFC. In fact, each request is a separate object, and each request object has its own unique sub objects, for example the line item add object for SalesOrders is different than the line item add object for SalesReceipts.

Fortunately, the abundance of objects is not as daunting as it might seem. All of the requests are built in the same way and in the same order, and the line items are appended to their parent object in the same way as well.

#### **NOTE**

If your development environment and language supports Intellisense, a list of the message set's Append methods are available from within your environment. You could also use the Visual Studio Object Browser to look up the Append methods.

Alternatively, you can look up the request name in the API Reference and prefix that name with Append and suffix it with Rq. Also, the top level object Tag name in the API Reference for each request entry is the name of the object that is returned by the message set's corresponding AppendRequest method.

### Building a Request using QBFC

In QBFC, you build a message set object and fill it with the requests you want to send to QuickBooks. You use the QBSessionManager object to do the building and the sending.

**IMPORTANT**

You'll notice there is no built-in way to get/set RequestID in QBFC. You don't need to manage RequestID when you use QBFC because QBFC automatically assigns requestIDs to requests within the message request set, from 0 to N. QBFC automatically returns the responses in the ResponseList in the exact order of the requests.

## What You Need to Do in QBFC

---

The following general process for building requests is illustrated in Listing 6-1.

1. Instantiate the QB SessionManager object.
2. Create the request message set object (SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest).
3. Set any desired message set-level attributes in that message set object.
4. Append the desired request objects to the message set object.
5. Set all required or desired field values (see API Reference) in that request object.
6. If the request contains line items, append the appropriate line item add object to the request and set its field values.
7. If you want to add more requests, append the desired request objects to the message set and set its values as described above.
8. Open a connection to QuickBooks.
9. Begin the session with the specified QuickBooks Company.
10. Invoke DoRequests to send the requests to QuickBooks.
11. Process the response.
12. If you're done, end the session and close the connection.

Notice that the open connection and begin session calls are shown after the request is constructed. This is not required. You can perform the open connection and begin session calls at any time before the call to DoRequests. We made these calls at the end mainly to point out that you don't need to be connected to QuickBooks in order to construct requests.

## Sample: Building a SalesOrder Using QBFC

---

Listing 6-1 shows an example in VB that constructs a SalesOrder request with two line items and sends it to QuickBooks.

---

Listing 6-1 Building a SalesOrderAdd Request

```
Dim SessionManager As QBSessionManager
Set SessionManager = New QBSessionManager
```

```

' We're going to use US QuickBooks and the 6.0 spec
Dim SalesOrderSet As IMsgSetRequest
Set SalesOrderSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 6, 0)

' Need a separate Append* for each request in the MsgSetRequest object
' First set properties in the main body of the sales order
Dim salesOrder As ISalesOrderAdd
Set salesOrder = SalesOrderSet.AppendSalesOrderAddRq
salesOrder.CustomerRef.FullName.SetValue "John Hamilton"
salesOrder.RefNumber.SetValue "121345"

' Now add the line items. Every transaction with line items will look very similar to this
Dim SOLineItemAdder As ISalesOrderLineAdd
Set SOLineItemAdder = salesOrder.ORSalesOrderLineAddList.Append.salesOrderLineAdd
SOLineItemAdder.ItemRef.FullName.SetValue "fee"
SOLineItemAdder.Quantity.SetValue 3
SOLineItemAdder.Other1.SetValue "gold"

' Add another line item. Notice our re-use of the SOLineItemAdder variable
Set SOLineItemAdder = salesOrder.ORSalesOrderLineAddList.Append.salesOrderLineAdd
SOLineItemAdder.ItemRef.FullName.SetValue "fee"
SOLineItemAdder.Quantity.SetValue 5
SOLineItemAdder.Other1.SetValue "silver"

' OK, we're done, send this to QB; for grins show results in a message box
' We close everything down when done for illustration only: you would keep the session and
' connection open if you were going to send more requests
SessionManager.OpenConnection2 appID, appName, ctLocalQBD

' Let's use whatever company file happens to be open now
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare
Dim SOAddResp As IMsgSetResponse
Set SOAddResp = SessionManager.DoRequests(SalesOrderSet)
MsgBox SOAddResp.ToXMLString

SessionManager.EndSession
SessionManager.CloseConnection
Set SessionManager = Nothing

```

## The Importance of the CreateMsgSetRequest Call

---

When you create the message set object, you need to specify the qbXML spec version that this message set supports. The sample above creates a message set that supports version 6.0 of the qbXML specification. The purpose of this is to make sure that the currently installed QBFC library and request processor can support the type of requests your application is going to make. (In our example, we could have used 2.1, since that was the spec version that first supported SalesOrderAdd.)

## Background Details About the MsgSetRequest Object

For the visually inclined, Figure 6-1 represents the message set request object.

### The Request Message Set Object

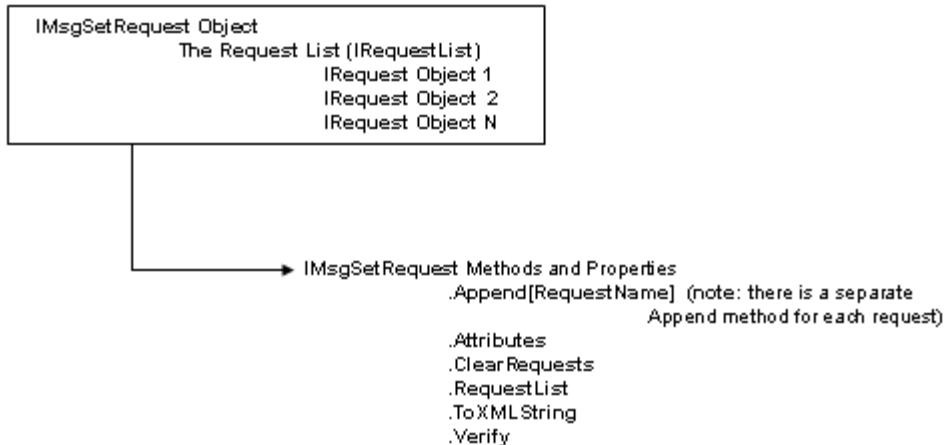


Figure 6-1 The Request Message Set Object

You need to be aware of the request message set methods and properties that are available for your use. The various Append methods are used to add request objects of a specific type to the message set. Each Append method call returns a corresponding request object that must be filled with property values as desired.

- **The Attributes property** is used to set message set-level attributes: currently continue on error and stop on error are the supported attributes. We'll describe this attribute later in this chapter.
- **The ClearRequests method** empties the message set once you've invoked DoRequests and are otherwise finished with the original request. After you clear out the message set object, you can fill it again with new requests that you want to send. It saves some overhead.
- **The RequestList method** returns the list (IRequestList) of request objects in the message set. IRequestList has a count property and a GetAt (index) method to support retrieval of requests from the list.
- **The ToXMLString method** returns a complete and valid qbXML string that represents the message set object and all its requests. This is useful for diagnostic purposes or if you simply want to make sure you are building the objects as you expect.
- **The Verify method** can be used before the call to DoRequests to make sure the requests are fully formed (all required fields have been set) and valid. However, the DoRequests method call also performs this checking automatically.

## Another View of the Message Set Request Structure

Figure 6-2 on page 61 shows a more detailed view of the logical arrangement of the individual requests in a request message set, along with some sample property values.

### QBFC Request Message Set Structure

```
IMsgSetRequest
  IRequestList
    ISalesOrderAdd
      IsalesOrderAdd.CustomerRef
      IsalesOrderAdd.BillAddress
      IsalesOrderAdd.ItemSalesTaxRef
      'All other required/desired object properties
      ISalesOrderAdd.I0RSalesOrderLineAddList
        ISalesOrderLineAdd '(for first line item)
          IsalesOrderLineAdd.ItemRef
          IsalesOrderItemAdd.Quantity
          'All other required/desired object properties
        ISalesOrderLineAdd '(for second line item)
          IsalesOrderLineAdd.ItemRef
          IsalesOrderItemAdd.Quantity
          'All other required/desired object properties
        .
        ISalesOrderLineAdd '(for nth line item)
          IsalesOrderLineAdd.ItemRef
          IsalesOrderLineAdd.Quantity
          'All other required/desired object properties

    ISalesOrderAdd
      IsalesOrderAdd.CustomerRef
      IsalesOrderAdd.BillAddress
      IsalesOrderAdd.ItemSalesTaxRef
      'All other required/desired object properties
      ISalesOrderAdd.I0RSalesOrderLineAddList
        ISalesOrderLineAdd '(for first line item)
          IsalesOrderLineAdd.ItemRef
          IsalesOrderLineAdd.Quantity
          'All other required/desired object properties
        .
        ISalesOrderLineAdd '(for nth line item)
          IsalesOrderLineAdd.ItemRef
          IsalesOrderLineAdd.Quantity
          'All other required/desired object properties
```

Figure 6-2 Request Message Set Structure

The figure shows a message set for a transaction containing two SalesOrderAdd requests. Each SalesOrder usually has a separate line item for each item ordered. Notice that the line item objects also have properties that need to be set in order to finish constructing the request. There can be as many line item objects as you need.

The basic message set structure shown in Figure 6-2 is the same for every request object that has line items: these are usually transactions. If the object is a *list* object, which does not contain line items, such as Customer, you don't add any line item sub objects as shown in the sample figure. Instead you simply set the object properties as shown in the top of the figure.

Notice the OnError attribute setting of the message set. This specifies how errors in the individual requests are handled. If you specify roeContinue, as the sample does, then the failure of one request in the message set won't prevent other requests from being processed. If you specify roeStop, then an error in one request stops the processing of any succeeding requests.

## Building a qbXML Request

---

Building a qbXML request and sending it to QuickBooks is simply a matter of writing out a valid qbXML string that contains the requests you want and then sending them to QuickBooks. However, because building syntactically correct XML "by hand" is so tedious and prone to error, we strongly recommend the use of technology that does all the tedious stuff for you (angle brackets, start and end tags, and so on), so you can focus on including those qbXML elements that you want.

### What You Need to Do in qbXML using a DOM Document

---

Our samples show the use of Microsoft XML (MSXML) API DOMDocument, a technology which is currently free from Microsoft. When you build the qbXML, you should refer to the QuickBooks API Reference for details on required request elements.

Figure 6-3 on page 62 shows the general steps in building a request using a DOM document.

#### Instantiate a DOM Document

Set the Node to QBXML

Add the message set (QBXMLMsgRq) to the Node as the first DOM element

Set any attributes on the message set

    Add the Request tag DOM element (i.e. AddCustomerRq) to the message set

    Set any attributes on the request

        Add a DOM element containing a desired request element tag (i.e., FirstName)

        Set the value for that element (i.e., John)

        Repeat for each desired request element

    If desired, add other Request tags and populate them as per the above pseudocode

Figure 6-3 Building a qbXML Request

The following VB code snippet shows the qbXML for adding a new customer, with just a few of the available fields filled out, to keep things simple. Once the request is filled out, our code snippet prepends the required header information and sends the completed XML string to qbXML via the request processor.

```

' Build the request XML
Dim builder As New DOMDocument40
Dim QBXML As IXMLDOMNode

'After the header tags, <QBXML> is always the first element tag,
'followed by the message set <QBXMLMsgsRq>

Set QBXML = builder.createElement("QBXML")
builder.appendChild QBXML
Dim msgsRq As IXMLDOMELEMENT
Set msgsRq = QBXML.appendChild(builder.createElement("QBXMLMsgsRq"))

'Set attributes on the message set
msgsRq.setAttribute "onError", "continueOnError"
Dim CustomerAddRq As IXMLDOMELEMENT
Dim CustomerAdd As IXMLDOMELEMENT

Set CustomerAddRq =
msgsRq.appendChild(builder.createElement("CustomerAddRq"))
CustomerAddRq.setAttribute "requestID", "1"
Set CustomerAdd = CustomerAddRq.appendChild(builder.createElement
("CustomerAdd"))

Dim dataElement As IXMLDOMELEMENT
If firstName <> "" Then
    Set dataElement = CustomerAdd.appendChild(builder.createElement
    ("FirstName"))
    dataElement.appendChild builder.createTextNode(firstName)
End If

If lastName <> "" Then
    Set dataElement = CustomerAdd.appendChild(builder.createElement
    ("LastName"))
    dataElement.appendChild builder.createTextNode(lastName)
End If

'The request is built except for the headers: so build these and
'append the request to them:
requestXML = "<?xml version="">" & "1.0" & """?>" +
requestXML = requestXML + "<?qbxml version="">" & "6.0" & """?>" +
builder.xml

'Start a QB session and send the request
Dim qbXMLRP As QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
Set qbXMLRP = New QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2

Dim Ticket As String
qbXMLRP.OpenConnection2 cAppID, cAppName, localQBD
Ticket = qbXMLRP.BeginSession(qbfilename, qbFileOpenDoNotCare)

```

```
responseXML = qbXMLRP.ProcessRequest(ticket, requestXML)
qbXMLRP.EndSession ticket
qbXMLRP.CloseConnection
Set qbXMLRP = Nothing
```

# CHAPTER 7

## HANDLING RESPONSES USING QBFC OR QBXML

This chapter describes how to handle responses using the QBFC library or the request processor API.

### ***IMPORTANT***

You'll notice there is no built-in way to get/set RequestID in QBFC. You don't need to manage RequestID when you use QBFC because QBFC automatically assigns requestIDs to requests within the message request set, from 0 to N. QBFC automatically returns the responses in the ResponseList in the exact the order of the requests.

## Processing a Response Using QBFC

---

Processing responses using QBFC is somewhat like building requests, only in reverse. When you invoke DoRequests to send the requests to QuickBooks, DoRequest returns an IMsgSetResponse object. This object contains all of the response data, so you need to know how to traverse this object and the other objects it contains.

### ***IMPORTANT***

Not all invocations of DoRequest will result in a response with StatusCode and StatusMessage. Certain failures will return only an HRESULT indicating the nature of the failure.

Figure 7-1 shows the generalized method for getting response data.

## Getting Response Data Pseudocode

```
IMsgSetResponse Object
Get the Response List Object (MsgSetResponse.ResponseList)
Get each IResponse object from the IResponseList
For index = 0 To IResponseList.Count -1
    IResponse = IResponseList.GetAt(index)

Check the status code. If there are any errors, there
normally is no Detail data.

If IResponse is not a query response get the Ret object
    RetObject = IResponse.Detail
    Then get desired data from Ret object fields

If IResponse IS a query response get the Ret list
    RetList = IResponse.Detail
    Get the Ret object from the list
    For j = 0 To RetList.retCount -1
        RetObject = RetList.GetAt(j)
        Then get desired data from Ret object fields
```

Figure 7-1 Getting Response Data

## Processing Responses: QBFC Sample Code

The following code snippet shows the response to an ItemInventoryAdd request. Because this is not a query, the response will contain only the Ret object and not the Ret list, which would have to be processed further.

### NOTE

In the sample, notice the response type. You can look up all the response types in the Visual Studio object browser under the ENResponseType or you can construct them from the response name by prefixing the response name with rt, for example, the type for an ItemInventoryAddRs response is rtItemInventoryAddRs.

Also, the QuickBooks Desktop API Reference is useful in looking up the Ret object and Ret list names for each Response.

```
'Send the request message and get the response message: then get the first
'response message. This sample only expects one response
Dim responseMsgSet As IMsgSetResponse
Dim response As IResponse
Set responseMsgSet = sessionManager.DoRequests(requestMsgSet)
Set response = responseMsgSet.ResponseList.GetAt(0)
```

```

'Make sure the response type is the expected ItemInventoryAddRs type
'then get the expected IIItemInventoryRet object data: we only want ListID
Dim itemInventoryListID As String
If (Not response. Is Nothing) Then
    Dim responseType As Integer
    responseType = response.Type.GetValue

    Dim j As Integer
    'Notice that we make an implicit upcast here (supported in VB),
    'upcasting the detail to the itemInventoryRet type. In other languages,
    'you must do an explicit upcast, for example, in VB.Net:
    'itemInventoryRet = response.Detail as itemInventoryRet
    If (responseType = rtItemInventoryAddRs) Then
        Dim itemInventoryRet As IIItemInventoryRet
        Set itemInventoryRet = response.Detail
        itemInventoryListID = itemInventoryRet.ListID.GetValue
    End If
End If

```

The code snippet below shows how to get data from a query response, which does have a Ret list of Ret objects.

```

'Send the request message and get the response message: then get the first
'response message. This sample only expects one response
Dim responseMsgSet As IMsgSetResponse
Dim response As IResponse
Set responseMsgSet = sessionManager.DoRequests(requestMsgSet)
Set response = responseMsgSet.ResponseList.GetAt(0)

'We're expecting an ItemInventoryQuery response.
If (Not response.Detail Is Nothing) Then
    Dim responseType As Integer
    responseType = response.Type.GetValue
    Dim j As Integer

    'Get the ret list
    If (responseType = rtItemInventoryQueryRs) Then
        Dim itemInventoryRetList As IIItemInventoryRetList
        Set itemInventoryRetList = response.Detail
        Dim itemInventoryRet As IIItemInventoryRet
        ItemFlexGrid.Rows = (1 + itemInventoryRetList.Count)
    End If
End If

```

```

'load each ret object from the list into a separate row in the
'grid control to display certain ret object fields
For j = 0 To itemInventoryRetList.Count - 1
    Set itemInventoryRet = itemInventoryRetList.GetAt(j)
    Set itemInventoryRet = itemInventoryRetList.GetAt(j)
    If (Not itemInventoryRet.Desc1 Is Nothing) Then
        ItemFlexGrid.Col = 0
        ItemFlexGrid.Row = j + 1
        ItemFlexGrid.Text = itemInventoryRet.ListID.GetValue
        ItemFlexGrid.Col = 1
        ItemFlexGrid.Text = itemInventoryRet.FullName.GetValue
        ItemFlexGrid.Col = 2
        ItemFlexGrid.Text = itemInventoryRet.SalesDesc.GetValue
        ItemFlexGrid.Col = 3
        ItemFlexGrid.Text = itemInventoryRet.QuantityOnHand.GetValue
    End If
    Next j
End If
End If

```

In the preceding code sample, an item inventory query is sent to get a list of inventory items and display the list ID, fullname, description, and on hand quantity from each item in a VB flex grid control. We just get the ret list, and in the same loop that we use to go through the ret list, we also populate each row in the flex grid control.

## Background Information: Understanding IMsgSetResponse

---

The IMsgSetResponse object is always returned unless DoRequest fails. IMsgSetResponse contains a response list that has one or more response objects, as shown in Figure 7-2.

## The Response Message Set Object

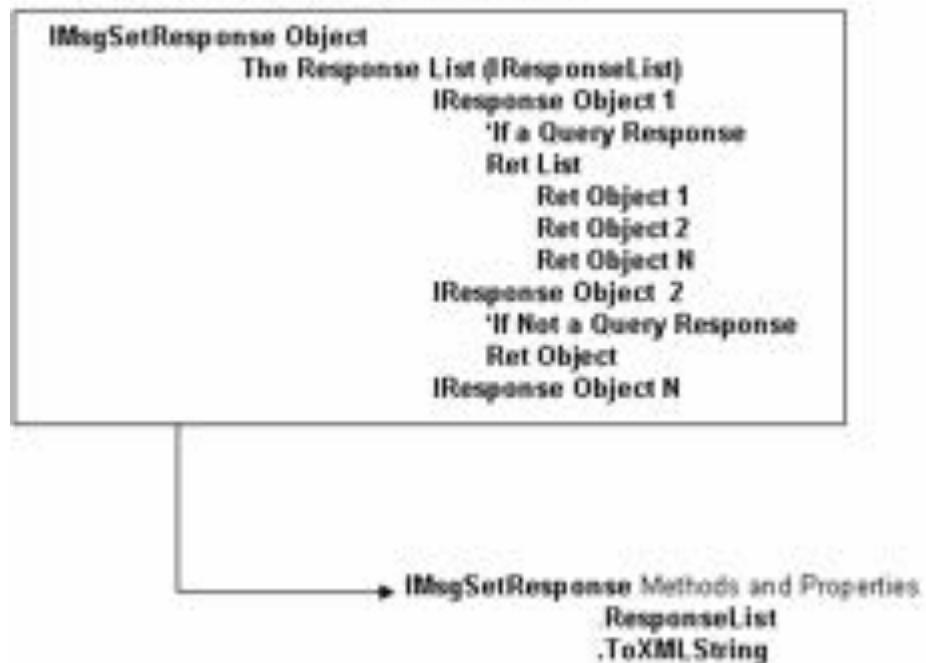


Figure 7-2 Response Message Set Structure

As shown in Figure 7-2, a response object that is a query response contains a Ret list object that contains potentially multiple Ret objects. A response object that is not a query response contains only one Ret object and no Ret list. This difference is crucial when it comes to processing the response data. We'll describe these in more detail shortly.

Also as shown in the figure, you'll need to be aware of these response object methods:

- **The ResponseList** method returns the IResponseList object containing the individual response objects in the message set. IResponseList has a count property and a GetAt (index) method to support retrieval of responses from the list.
- **The ToXMLString** method returns a complete and valid qbXML string that represents the response message set object and all its individual responses. This is useful if you want to dump out the response message to see the contents either for diagnostic purposes or if you want to make sure you are getting the data you expect.

## Background Information II: IResponse

The data, that you are interested in is contained in the IResponse. How do you get the IResponse from the response message set?

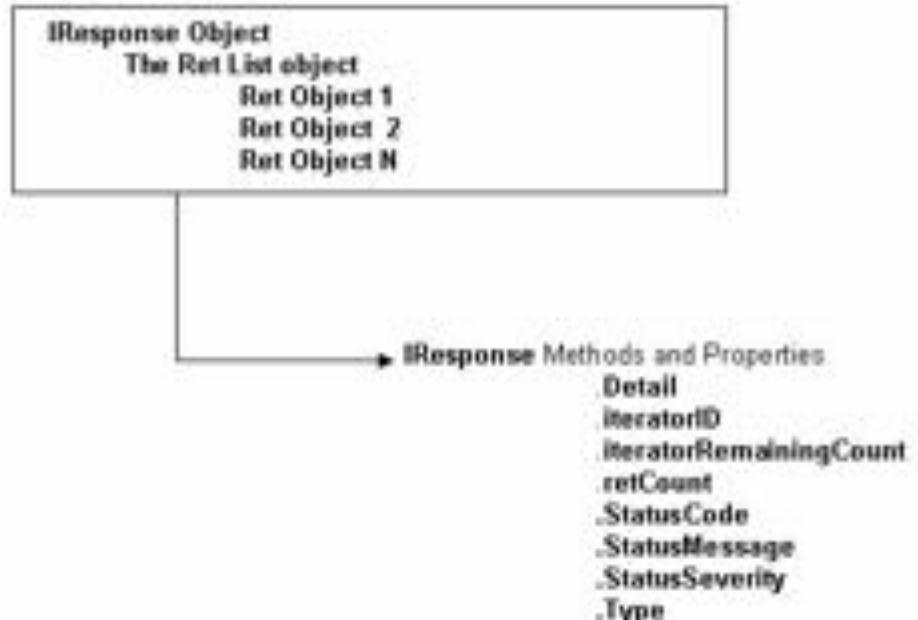
To get the individual responses contained in the response message set,

1. Invoke ResponseList on the response message object to get the IResponseList
2. Use the IResponseList Count and GetAt methods to get the individual IResponse objects.

Ok, you have an IResponse, which is response data to one of the requests that was sent to QuickBooks. How do you traverse IResponse to get the response data from it? This is a little tricky, since the IResponse can be either an object or another list.

To show you what we mean, take a look at Figure 7-3:

### The IResponse object for a query (except CompanyQuery)



### The IResponse object for responses that are NOT query responses

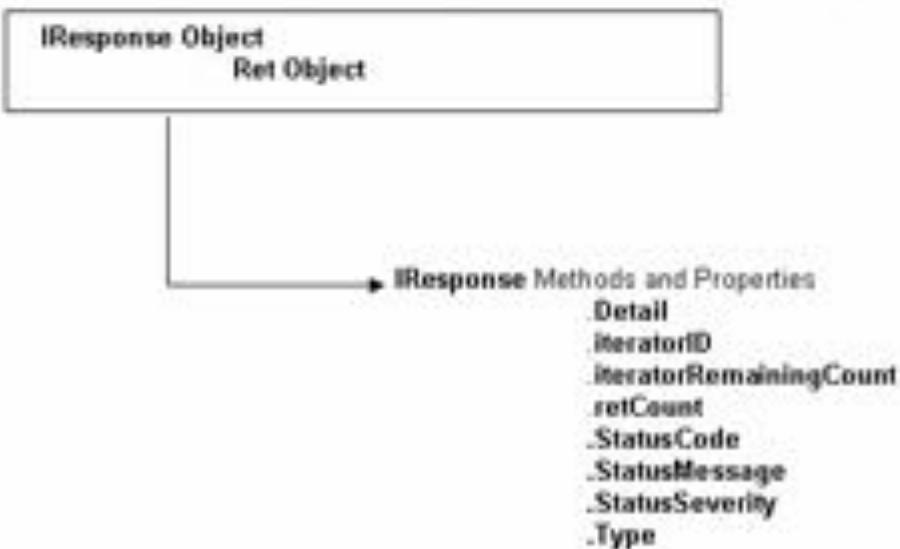


Figure 7-3 The IResponse Object

As shown in the figure, an IResponse that is a query response has a Ret list object containing one or more Ret objects. The retCount, iteratorID, and iteratorRemainingCount properties are provided to support getting the individual Ret objects from the Ret list.

The IResponse that is *not* a query response has *no* ret list. It has only the single Ret object, from which data can be extracted.

## Useful IResponse Methods/Properties You'll Need to Use

### IMPORTANT

Not all invocations of DoRequest will result in a response with StatusCode and StatusMessage. Certain failures will return only an HRESULT indicating the nature of the failure.

The IResponse object has these methods and properties:

- The **Detail** method does different things depending on whether the response is a query response or not. For a query response, the Detail method returns the Ret list, which can be looped through to get the individual Ret objects. For non query responses, Detail returns the Ret object itself.
  - Notice that each request has a corresponding Ret object, for example, ItemInventoryAddRq has the response Ret object of IIInventoryRet.
  - Notice also that CompanyQuery is a special request that is treated as a non-query request and response
- The **iteratorID** property returns the iterator ID, which is used only for query responses whose originating request was set up to use iterators.
- The **iteratorRemainingCount** property returns the number of objects remaining in the iteration. This is used only for query responses whose originating request was set up to use iterators..
- The **retCount** property returns the number of Ret objects contained in the Ret list. It is used only for query responses.
- The **StatusCode** property returns the status code of the response. Every response has a status code indicating success (the value zero) or a non zero code that indicating the nature of the failure.
- The **StatusMessage** property returns the a text description of the status code in the response. Every response has a status message.
- The **StatusSeverity** property returns the severity level of the error.
- The **Type** property identifies the response type. This is useful if you want to make sure the response you are processing is of the expected type. You can invoke GetValue to get the type as an enumerated value, which is the easiest way to do a comparison with an expected type. Alternatively, you can invoke GetAsString to get the string representation of the type.

## Processing a qbXML Response

The response XML string is returned from the ProcessRequests API call that sent the original request set to QuickBooks. The suggested way to process that qbXML response message set is to load it into a DOM document and walk its node list as shown in the following pseudocode and Visual Basic code sample.

## What You Need to Do to Process a Response in qbXML

---

Figure 7-4 on page 73 shows the general process of getting response data using DOM documents.

### Processing qbXML Responses

#### Instantiate a DOM Document

- Load the response XML string into the DOM document
- Return the responses into a DOM node list
- For each response in the list
  - Get the response attributes (status code, etc)
  - Walk the node list to get the response child nodes (elements) and data

Figure 7-4 Processing qbXML Responses

## Processing a Response Message Set: Sample Code

---

The following code snippet shows how to load the response message set into the DOM document and walk the node list for response data. Notice that there can be more than one response in the message set to process.

```
Dim retStatusCode As String
Dim retStatusMessage As String
Dim retStatusSeverity As String
' Create xmlDoc Obj

Dim xmlDoc As New DOMDocument40
Dim objNodeList As IXMLDOMNodeList
' Node objects
Dim objChild As IXMLDOMNode
Dim custChildNode As IXMLDOMNode

Dim attrNamedNodeMap As IXMLDOMNodeMap
Dim i As Integer
Dim ret As Boolean
Dim errorMsg As String

' Get CustomerAddRs nodes list
Set objNodeList = xmlDoc.getElementsByTagName("CustomerAddRs")
For i = 0 To (objNodeList.length - 1)
    ' Get the CustomerRetRs
    Set attrNamedNodeMap = objNodeList.Item(i).Attributes
    ' Get the status Code, info and Severity
    retStatusCode = attrNamedNodeMap.getNamedItem("statusCode").nodeValue
    retStatusSeverity = attrNamedNodeMap.getNamedItem
        ("statusSeverity").nodeValue
    retStatusMessage = attrNamedNodeMap.getNamedItem
        ("statusMessage").nodeValue
```

```

' Walk through the child nodes of CustomerAddRs node
For Each objChild In objNodeList.Item(i).childNodes
    ' Get the CustomerRet block
    If objChild.nodeName = "CustomerRet" Then
        ' Get the elements in this block
        For Each custChildNode In objChild.childNodes
            If custChildNode.nodeName = "ListID" Then
                resListID = custChildNode.Text
            ElseIf custChildNode.nodeName = "Name" Then
                resCustName = custChildNode.Text
            ElseIf custChildNode.nodeName = "FullName" Then
                resCustFullName = custChildNode.Text
            End If

            Next
        End If ' End of customerRet
    Next ' End of customerAddret
Next

```

# CHAPTER 8

## CREATING QUERIES

*Query requests* ask QuickBooks for data that meets specified criteria. Often, there are multiple ways to obtain the same data from QuickBooks, but depending on the type of query you send, the returned objects contain different elements and differing amounts of related detail.

There are several basic types of query:

- List query, which returns list objects.
- Object-specific transaction query, which returns complete data from the specified transactions.
- Generic transaction query, which returns a common subset of data (common to all transaction types) for the specified transactions.
- Reports

This chapter describes list queries, object-specific queries, and the generic transaction query. Reports are covered separately in due to their special characteristics.

### When to Use a Query vs a Report

---

Although reports are covered in a separate chapter, it may be helpful to consider upfront whether you need to use a simple query of the types described in this chapter or whether you should really be using a report.

Whether you use a simple query request or a report request depends on exactly what data you need and how you plan to use it. If you need a simple snapshot of one or more objects then try a query request. If you need a more complete view, across multiple objects and over a time period then use a report. Also, some collections of information are more simply expressed in a report.

### Different Ways of Using Queries to Get the Same Data

---

There are sometimes a number of ways to get at the same data. For example, suppose you wanted to obtain customers with unpaid balances:

- Suppose you want to write collection letters to the customers with unpaid balances. This task requires that you have both the names and addresses of the customers. In this case, you could use a `CustomerQueryRq` and specify a `TotalBalance` greater than zero. The response would return a list of customer objects.
- Suppose you want to create statements for the customers with unpaid balances. In this case, you could use an `InvoiceQueryRq` and specify `NotPaidOnly` for `PaidStatus`.

- A third way to obtain this information is to issue a Collections Report, which is a type of AgingReportQueryRq. This returns the data you’re seeking, but in report form rather than in the form of a particular QuickBooks object.

## Getting a Count of Query Objects

---

In some instances, you may want to get an approximate count of the objects that will be returned in a particular query, for example if you want to allocate enough memory or break down the returned data in manageable chunks. Queries have an attribute called metaData, which can be set so that no objects are returned in the query, just an approximate count. The reason the count is approximate is that other users can add or delete objects between the time you query for the count and the time you query for the objects.

## Filters

---

*Filters* enable you to specify selection criteria for the objects or categories of objects that are returned by QuickBooks in response to a query. If multiple filters are specified, the results are ANDed. In general, filters have two general purposes:

- To obtain a set of objects that meet specified criteria
- To limit the number of objects returned in a response to a manageable quantity

Filters can be grouped into two general categories: filters that operate on *lists* and filters that operate on *transactions*.

### **NOTE**

This chapter presents filters conceptually and, therefore, not always in the same order as they appear in the actual qbXML request. Be sure to check out the exact order and syntax for each request in the *API Reference* for your target QuickBooks product and the API you are using.

## Limiting the Number of Objects Returned

---

There are two ways to limit the data returned from a query. The best way is to use the iterator feature, which is specific to queries. This feature is available only to desktop editions QB 2006 and later using qbXML spec 5.0 and greater.

The second way is to use the IncludeRetElement feature, which is a feature common to nearly all qbXML requests, not just queries.

## Using Iterators to Walk Through Large Query Returns

The iterator attribute provided with most query types also allows you to break down query results in smaller and more manageable chunks of data. An iterator results in responses that contain only the specified number of objects. Iterators are only valid for the application that starts them, and they are only valid for the current QuickBooks session. (Once the current QuickBooks session ends, or QuickBooks is shut down, all the iterators go away.)

### **IMPORTANT**

Starting an iterator preloads the set of things that are going to be returned to you and gives you the specified number (MaxReturn) that you requested in each iteration. However, the iterator DOES NOT remember all aspects of your query (just the filters!). Accordingly, if you use other fields in the query, such as IncludeRetElement, then you have to repeat those in each continuation of the iterated query!

### Starting an Iteration

How do iterators work? The iterator is created when a query contains the iterator attribute set to Start, along with a MaxReturn value specifying how many records are to be returned in each iteration. The response to that first query iteration contains, along with the response data, an IteratorID value that uniquely identifies that iterator. This is important because you can have many iterators active at the same time. The following example shows how to start an iteration

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="5.0" ?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="stopOnError">
    <CustomerQueryRq requestID="5001" iterator="Start">
      <MaxReturned>10</MaxReturned>
      <IncludeRetElement>ListID</IncludeRetElement>
    </CustomerQueryRq>
  </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

The response contains the returned objects, with the iteration-related information returned in the response attributes, as shown in the following snippet:

```
<CustomerQueryRs requestID = "5001" statusCode = "0" statusSeverity = "INFO" statusMessage = "..." iteratorRemainingCount = "50" iteratorID = "D7355385-A17B-4f5d-B34D-F34C79C3E6FC">
```

In the query responses, notice the attribute called iteratorRemainingCount that contains the number of objects left in the iteration. You must check for a value of 0 because that means not only that there are no more objects, but more importantly, it means that the Iterator is now removed from memory and therefore further attempts to access it will fail: its

iteratorID is no longer valid. Other than checking for this remaining count value of 0, you can use this iteratorRemainingCount value any way you want, for example, to change the current MaxReturned settings.

#### **IMPORTANT**

When the remainingCount value returned in the query response contains a value of 0, this indicates that the corresponding Iterator can no longer be used.

### **Continuing the Iteration**

To continue a particular iteration, you simply issue the same query request again, but this time with the iterator value now set to Continue, and the IteratorID field set to the IteratorID value returned from the first query iteration. Remember that the iterator DOES NOT remember all aspects of your query (just the filters!). Accordingly, if you use other fields in the query, such as IncludeRetElement, then you have to repeat those in each continuation of the iterated query.

A qbXML example is shown below:

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="5.0" ?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="stopOnError">
    <CustomerQueryRq requestID="5001" iterator="Continue"
      iteratorID="{D7355385-A17B-4f5d-B34D-F34C79C3E6FC}">
      <MaxReturned>10</MaxReturned>
      <IncludeRetElement>ListID</IncludeRetElement>      </
    CustomerQueryRq
  </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

Once a query has been issued with an iterator, subsequent iterations (i.e., queries using that same iteratorID and the iterator attribute set to Continue) cannot change any filtering. The only thing that can be changed during an iteration is the MaxReturned value.

### **Stopping the Iteration**

At any point during an iteration, you can stop the iteration and destroy the iterator (freeing up memory) by issuing the query request with the iterator attribute set to “Stop” and the iteratorID set to the proper iterator ID. It is a good practice to do this if you want to stop an iteration before it is complete, otherwise the iterator will continue to be held in memory until the current QuickBook session ends, potentially occupying a large amount of memory. (If your application crashes before cleaning up its iterators, the iterators it was using can be removed from memory by stopping QuickBooks and starting it again.)

**IMPORTANT**

If you exhaust the iteration, so that the last query shows an iteratorRemainingCount value of 0, you need not and in fact cannot issue the query with the iterator attribute set to "Stop." The iteratorID you would have to supply is no longer valid.

## Limits Returned Data Using IncludeRetElement

**IMPORTANT**

Although IncludeRetElement is mentioned here for queries, it is designed for use with Add and Mod operations as well, to limit response data to those data that you want.

You use the IncludeRetElement tag in the request to limit the data that will be returned in the response. Inside this tag you specify the name of the top-level element or aggregate that is to be returned in the response to the request. You cannot specify elements within an aggregate, for example, you cannot specify a City within an Address: you must specify Address and will get the entire address.

**IMPORTANT**

You can specify multiple IncludeRetElement lines if you want multiple aggregates or elements returned. Each aggregate or element must be specified in a separate IncludeRetElement line. The specified tag name is not parsed, so you must be especially careful to supply a valid tag, properly cased, because no error is returned in the status code if you specify an invalid tag name.

The following sample customer query shows where you need to place the IncludeRetElement tag:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<?qbxml version="4.0"?>
<QBXML>
    <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="continueOnError">
        <CustomerQueryRq requestID="2">
            <IncludeRetElement>FullName</IncludeRetElement>
        </CustomerQueryRq>
    </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

The following response shows what would be returned in the customer query listed above:

```

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRs>
    <CustomerQueryRs requestID="2" statusCode="0" statusSeverity="Info"
      statusMessage="Status OK">
      <CustomerRet>
        <FullName>Abercrombie, Kristy</FullName>
      </CustomerRet>
      <CustomerRet>
        <FullName>Abercrombie, Kristy:Family Room</FullName>
      </CustomerRet>
      ....more customer names.....
    </CustomerQueryRs>
  </QBXMLMsgsRs>
</QBXML>

```

## EmployeeQuery and IncludeRetElement

Notice that prior to QuickBooks 2005, an EmployeeQueryRq would return a permissions error if the currently logged in QuickBooks user did not have “Payroll and Employees” permission. This would occur even if you only needed data that was not restricted.

However, because of IncludeRetElement (new in SDK 4.0), the situation has changed somewhat. You can use that new element to specify fields in the EmployeeRet object that do not require “Payroll and Employees” permissions. Such a query would return the unrestricted data (such as Name) from an EmployeeQueryRq even if the logged in user lacks “Payroll and Employees” permissions.

## Using MaxReturned

---

Most queries include the MaxReturned element, which is actually a *delimiter* that specifies the maximum number of objects to return in each response. If your application deals with large amounts of data, it is recommended that you use this delimiter to ensure acceptable application performance.

If you’re using filters, the filters are applied first and then the MaxReturned value is applied if needed. When you use MaxReturned, your application is responsible for keeping track of the last object returned and specifying the start of the next search, as described in the following paragraphs.

Basically, you’ll follow this technique:

1. Issue a query (for example, a CustomerQueryRq request) with a **MaxReturned** equal to a reasonable amount of data (for example, 100). This first query does not include a From/To specification.
2. For subsequent queries, issue the same type of query (here, a CustomerQueryRq request) and specify the starting point for the next query. For example, if you are dealing with an alphabetized list of names, you will use the **NameRangeFilter:FromName** field and specify the last object that was returned in the previous response. Do not specify the **ToName** field. (The value specified for MaxReturned will determine the number of objects returned in the response.)

# List Queries: Commonly Used Filters

---

List queries generally support the following types of filters:

- ListID or FullName
- Active status
- Filtering by date and time modified
- Matching criterion for names
- Ranges for names

You can optionally ask that each returned object also contain the Data Extension values for one or more Owner IDs.

## ListID or FullName

---

List queries allow you to specify a ListID or a FullName, or to specify other criteria for the list items that are to be returned. Specifying ListIDs is the fastest way to obtain list items with a query.

Listing 8-1 is an example of a customer query request that specifies ListIDs.

---

Listing 8-1 List filter using a set of ListIDs as the selection criteria

```
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "continueOnError">
    <CustomerQueryRq requestID = "101">
      <ListID>150000-933272658</ListID>
      <ListID>160000-933272658</ListID>
      <ListID>180000-933272658</ListID>
      <ListID>940000-1071506775</ListID>
      <ListID>950000-1071506823</ListID>
    </CustomerQueryRq>
  </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

Listing 8-2 shows a customer query request that specifies a FullName to obtain all customer objects for the purchase of an AirRow transporter by the customer DaVinci.

---

Listing 8-2 List filter using FullName as the search criteria

```
<CustomerQueryRq requestID = "591">
  <FullName>DaVinci:AirRow</FullName>
</CustomerQueryRq>
```

## Active Status

---

List queries allow you to select a list object based on whether it is currently active. The ActiveStatus filter allows you to specify ActiveOnly (the default), InactiveOnly, or All.

## Filtering by Date Modified

---

List queries can filter for objects modified during a specified range of dates. Using the FromModifiedDate and ToModifiedDate filters, you can specify “From” and “To” modification dates, or simply a beginning or ending cutoff modification date. Dates are of type DATETIMETYPE, which specifies both date and time (up to seconds). Listing 8-3 shows a customer query request for all customer objects that are currently enabled for use by QuickBooks and that also have been modified any time between the beginning of day on October 12, 2003, and end of day on October 15, 2003 (see “Default Values for Date/Time,” below).

---

Listing 8-3 List filter using ActiveStatus and inclusive date range

```
<CustomerQueryRq requestID = "541">
  <ActiveStatus>ActiveOnly</ActiveStatus>
  <FromModifiedDate>2003-10-12</FromModifiedDate>
  <ToModifiedDate>2003-10-15</ToModifiedDate>
</CustomerQueryRq>
```

## Default Values for Date/Time

The following tables list default values assigned by the SDK when all or part of the time is not specified. When a time zone is not specified, local time is assumed.

Table 8-1 Default values for “From” date/times

“From” is specified	Start period	Example
Date only	Beginning of the day	10/1/02 means 10/1/02 00:00:00
Date and hour only	Beginning of the hour	10/1/02 8 means 10/1/02 8:00:00
Date, hour, and minute only	Beginning of the minute	10/1/02 8:20 means 10/1/02 8:20:00
Date, hour, minute, and second	The second	10/1/02 8:20:40 means 10/1/02 8:20:40

NOTE: If “From” is not specified at all, the start period is the earliest date possible.

Table 8-2 Default values for “To” date/times

“To” is specified	Start period	Example
Date only	End of the day	10/1/02 means 10/1/02 23:59:59
Date and hour only	Beginning of the hour	10/1/02 8 means 10/1/02 8:00:00
Date, hour, and minute only	Beginning of the minute	10/1/02 8:20 means 10/1/02 8:20:00
Date, hour, minute, and second	The second	10/1/02 8:20:40 means 10/1/02 8:20:40

NOTE: If “To” is not specified at all, the end period is up to the last date used.

## Date Ranges (Versions 1.1 and 2.0)

The acceptable range of dates for FromModifiedDate and ToModifiedDate changed from SDK version 1.1 to version 2.0.

- For version 2.0 and above, the range is from 1970-01-01 to 2038-01-19T03:14:07 (2038-01-18T19:14:07-08:00 PST).
- For versions 1.1 and 1.0, the range is different for list objects and transaction objects. For list objects, the range is from 1970-01-01 and 2038-01-19T03:14:07 (2038-01-18T19:14:07-08:00 PST).

For transaction objects in versions 1.1 and 1.0, the range is from 01/01/1901 to 12/31/9999.

## Match Criterion for Names

---

Another useful filter available in most list queries is the NameFilter, which allows you to obtain list objects that match a specified string. You specify both the string itself (which can be all or a portion of a FullName value) and the MatchCriterion, which can be StartsWith, Contains, or EndsWith. For example, you could use this filter with a customer query and request all customers whose names start with “Mac.” Or you could perform a customer query for all elements that contain “kitchen” as part of their full name.

## Ranges for Names

---

Another alternative is to create a query that specifies a *range* of names for the list objects to be returned. Using the NameRangeFilter, you can specify both the starting and ending points of the range, only the start of the range, or only the end of the range. String values for names are case-insensitive. In a sorted list, punctuation characters are first, followed by numeric characters, and then alphabetical characters. Values progress from 0 to 9 and from A to Z. If both FromName and ToName are specified, ToName must be lexicographically higher than FromName. See the section “Limiting the Number of Objects Returned,” beginning on page 76, for information on how to use the name range filter in conjunction with MaxReturned.

## Special Information Contained in an AccountRet Object

---

This section provides information concerning the AccountRet object, which is contained in the response to an AccountQuery request.

### Special Account Type

Most QuickBooks accounts are created in response to an explicit request by the small business owner. “Special accounts” are accounts created automatically by QuickBooks for a special purpose, usually as a side-effect of creating some other transaction. The SpecialAccountType value is an enumerated type and is returned only if the queried account is a special account. Examples of special account types are AccountsPayable, AccountsReivable, CostOfGoodsSold, SalesOrders, UncategorizedExpenses, and UndepositedFunds.

If QuickBooks needs to create one of its special accounts and the name it uses for this account type has already been used (because a manually created account was assigned the same name), QuickBooks prepends an asterisk (\*) to the account name (for example, \*UndepositedFunds).

### Tax Line Information

The tax line information returned in the AccountRet response relates to the tax form the user selected for the Company (for example, Form1120, Form1120S, Form1065). To determine what tax form the tax lines relate to, you can query the Company object and inspect the TaxForm field returned in the CompanyRet object.

The tax line information (TaxLineInfoRet) contains two elements:

- **TaxLineID:** an internal number used by QuickBooks to identify a particular line in the specified tax form
- **TaxLineName:** a descriptive name of the line on the specified tax form

Note that if the user changes the specified tax form, or if the tax form changes from year to year, the tax line information previously returned is no longer accurate.

### Cash Flow Classification

If the user assigned a cash flow classification in QuickBooks, you can obtain the classification for a given account from the AccountRet object. The user assigns this value to an account in QuickBooks by selecting Preferences > Reports & Graphs > Company Preferences > Classify Cash. The SDK defines the following enumerated values for the CashFlowClassification element:

- Operating: corresponds to the Operating classification in QuickBooks
- Investing: corresponds to the Investing classification in QuickBooks
- Financing: corresponds to the Financing classification in QuickBooks
- NotApplicable: this account cannot be assigned a cash flow classification

- None: no cash flow classification has yet been assigned to this account

## Special Filters

---

Some queries contain special filters useful in a particular context. These filters include the following:

- Account type
- Total balance
- ToDo query

### **Account Type**

The AccountType filter, contained in the AccountQueryRq, allows you to specify an account type (Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, Bank, CreditCard, and so on) that enables you to focus on data for a particular type of account.

### **Total Balance**

Queries for customer and vendor entity lists allow you to specify a TotalBalance filter. This filter allows you to specify an amount and an operator (LessThan, LessThanEqual, Equal, GreaterThan, GreaterThanEqual). Only the customers or vendors with balances that meet the specified criteria for this total balance will be returned. The returned objects are sorted by TotalBalance, with items in ascending order (by TotalBalance) for the operators LessThan, LessThanEqual, and Equal—for example:

*LessThan 100:*

–50  
–10  
+10  
+70  
+99

The items are in descending order (by TotalBalance) for the operators GreaterThan and GreaterThanEqual—for example:

*GreaterThan 1000:*

50,000  
10,000  
5,000  
2,000

### **ToDo Query**

Queries for ToDo lists allow you to specify a DoneStatus filter for the elements to be returned. You can specify NotDoneOnly (the default), DoneOnly, or All for this filter.

# Transaction Queries: Commonly Used Filters

---

Transaction queries generally support the following types of filters:

- TxnID or reference number
- Date filters
- Entity filters
- Account filters
- Reference number filters

You can also modify the data returned to you by including one or both of these elements:

- IncludeLinkedTxns
- IncludeLineItems

## TxnID or Reference Number

---

Transaction queries allow you to specify a TxnID or a RefNumber, or to specify certain criteria for transaction objects to be returned. Remember that TxnIDs, because they are assigned by QuickBooks, are guaranteed to remain the same. Specifying TxnIDs is the fastest way to obtain transactions with a query.

## Date Filters

---

Because transactions are time-stamped, date filters are a useful query mechanism. You can filter dates based on the following:

- When the object was created or modified (ModifiedDateRangeFilter). This filter uses a timestamp assigned by QuickBooks.
- A date assigned to the transaction by the small business owner (TxnDateRangeFilter).
- A DateMacro (for example, ThisWeekToDate, ThisMonthToDate, LastWeek, LastFiscalQuarter, LastFiscalYear).

### **Filtering by Modification Date**

As with list queries, transaction queries can filter for transactions modified during a specified range of dates. Using the ModifiedDateRangeFilter, you can specify “From” and “To” modification dates, or simply a beginning or ending cutoff for the modification date. Dates are of type DATETIMETYPE, which specifies time in terms of year/month/day/hours/minutes/seconds.

## Filtering by Transaction Date

Similarly, transaction queries can filter for transactions that have dates assigned during a specified range of dates. You can specify “From” (FromTxnDate) and “To” (ToTxnDate) dates, or simply a beginning or ending cutoff date. Dates are of type DATETYPE, which specifies time in terms of year/month/day.

## Filtering by QuickBooks Date Macro

The SDK queries also support the date macros commonly used in QuickBooks, such as ThisWeekToDate, ThisFiscalQuarterToDate, LastMonth, and so on. Do not include DateMacro if you are specifying a FromTxnDate or ToTxnDate.

## Entity Filters

---

You will often use entity or name filters to specify names of customers, vendors, employees, or other names associated with a transaction object. Entity filters are often used, for example, to obtain invoices or payments for a specific customer or set of customers or to query bills received from a specific vendor.

The entity filter allows you to specify a ListID, FullName, FullNameWithChildren, or ListIDWithChildren. FullNameWithChildren and ListIDWithChildren include all objects pertaining to the specified FullName or ListID as well as all the descendants of those objects.

Listing 8-4 shows an example of an invoice query that includes both a date range filter and an entity filter. This request asks QuickBooks to return all invoices pertaining to the Jones’s kitchen that were modified between January 2 and January 5, 2002.

---

Listing 8-4 Transaction filter using date range and entity filters

```
<InvoiceQueryRq requestID = "73">
  <ModifiedDateRangeFilter>
    <FromModifiedDate>2002-01-02</FromModifiedDate>
    <ToModifiedDate>2002-01-05</ToModifiedDate>
  </ModifiedDateRangeFilter>
  <EntityFilter>
    <FullName>Jones:Kitchen</FullName>
  </EntityFilter>
</InvoiceQueryRq>
```

Listing 8-5 shows an item inventory query that asks for all items with the word *bolt* in their name. The filter is case-insensitive.

---

Listing 8-5 ItemInventoryQueryRq using a match criterion for a name filter

```
<ItemInventoryQueryRq requestID = "795944"/>
  <NameFilter>
    <MatchCriterion>Contains</MatchCriterion>
    <Name>bolt</Name>
  </NameFilter>
</ItemInventoryQueryRq>
```

---

## Account Filters

---

An account filter is another useful way to focus on transactions related to a particular account or set of accounts. You can specify a ListID, FullName, ListIDWithChildren, or FullNameWithChildren for the account.

Be sure you use an account in the account filter that is appropriate for the transaction you are querying for. For example, an account filter for invoices must be an Accounts Receivable type account or no transactions can be returned. (A common mistake is to expect transactions to be returned in a query for the accounts affected by item or expense lines.)

The account filter only operates properly on the main account associated with a transaction. For example, the main accounts for invoices are A/R accounts, bills are associated with A/P accounts, and so on. Suppose you have an invoice for the A/R account “My AR Account” that includes a line item, and the funds from that item are accounted for in an income account called “Sales.” Using “Sales” in the account filter will not return that invoice—in fact, it won’t return any invoices because “Sales” is not an A/R account. If you use the account “My AR Account” in the account filter, the invoice would be returned (assuming the rest of the filters included the invoice in the return list).

Listing 8-6 asks QuickBooks to return all invoices for the AccountsReceivable:SportingGoods account that were created during the last month.

---

Listing 8-6 Query request using date range and account filters

```
<InvoiceQueryRq requestID = "73">
  <TxnDateRangeFilter>
    <DateMacro>LastMonth</DateMacro>
  </TxnDateRangeFilter>
  <AccountFilter>
    <FullName>AccountsReceivable:SportingGoods</FullName>
  </AccountFilter>
</InvoiceQueryRq>
```

Listing 8-7 uses date range and entity filters to request all bills from its landlord, New World Real Estate, for rent in all of its San Jose offices from January 01, 2003, through March 31, 2003.

---

### Listing 8-7 Query request using modified date range and entity filters

```
<BillQueryRq requestID = "81">
  <ModifiedDateRangeFilter>
    <FromModifiedDate>2003-01-01</FromModifiedDate>
    <ToModifiedDate>2003-03-31</ToModifiedDate>
  </ModifiedDateRangeFilter>
  <EntityFilter>
    <FullNameWithChildren>NewWorldRealEstate:rent:SanJoseOffices
    </FullNameWithChildren>
  </EntityFilter>
</BillQueryRq>
```

---

## Reference Number Filters

You can filter for transactions by supplying specific reference numbers or by specifying a range of reference numbers. If you are interested only in a few invoices, you can filter by reference number. Such focused queries are particularly useful in the testing and development phases, where you will probably want to run repeated controlled tests on the same object or set of objects.

### Match Criterion for Reference Numbers

The RefNumberFilter allows you to obtain transactions that match a specified criterion. The match criterion can be StartsWith, Contains, or EndsWith.

### Ranges for Reference Numbers

Another alternative is to specify a range of reference numbers using the RefNumberRangeFilter and specifying the “From” and “To” reference numbers. You can specify the starting and ending points of the range, or only the starting or ending point of the range.

### What If a Transaction Has No Reference Number?

Some transactions do not have a reference number. These transactions are ignored by queries that use **RefNumber** or **RefNumberFilter**. When a **RefNumberRangeFilter** is used and both “From” and “To” fields are specified, these transactions are also ignored. However, if the **RefNumberRangeFilter** is used with only the “From” field or the “To” field specified, QuickBooks returns the transactions that have no reference numbers.

### Using **RefNumberCaseSensitive** Instead of **RefNumber**

Prior to QuickBooks 2006, if the reference number contained letters, not just numeric digits, RefNumber could be very slow. The RefNumberCaseSensitive tag was provided for this case to improve performance. However, starting with QuickBooks 2006, RefNumber and RefNumberCaseSensitive provide the same good performance. The RefNumberCaseSensitive tag can be used if case sensitivity is desired, however.

## Paid Status

---

The PaidStatus filter searches for invoices or bills on the basis of whether their balances are paid or not. If you specify PaidOnly for this filter, QuickBooks returns only those bills or invoices that are completely paid (that is, closed). If you specify NotPaidOnly, QuickBooks returns those bills or invoices that have a non-zero balance. (You will probably not bother specifying All for this filter, since that is the equivalent of not specifying the filter.)

## Requesting Additional Data

---

The following elements allow you to request that additional data be returned by a given query:

- `IncludeLinkedTxns`
- `IncludeLineItems`

A *linked transaction* is a transaction that is associated with the original transaction in some way. For example, a credit memo could be linked to a customer invoice, thereby adding credit to a customer's account. A *line item* is a line that adds detail to a transaction object such as an invoice or a bill. A transaction object can be composed of multiple line items.

By default, these flags are False: queries that lack these tags will not return any line items or linked transactions. If you are interested in this additional information, specify True.

## Special Queries

---

A number of special queries assist you with common tasks:

- **PreferencesQuery** - allows you to check whether certain operations will be permitted before you attempt to perform them. This way, you can anticipate errors that would be returned by QuickBooks and take appropriate action ead of time.
- **HostQuery** - returns information about the QuickBooks product and version as well as the versions of the qbXML specification.
- **CompanyQuery** - returns basic information about a QuickBooks company file
- **CompanyActivityQuery** - This query allows you to determine the date when the company file was last restored. If you receive Status Code 3240 (Time creation mismatch), you will need to identify the most up-to-date copy of the company file.
- **BillToPayQuery** - returns the transaction ID for all open bills and credits.
- **ReceivePaymentToDepositQuery** - returns the transaction IDs for all customer payments that need to be deposited.

## The Generic TransactionQuery

---

TransactionQuery is a generic transaction query that provides functionality (e.g. filters) similar to the Advanced Find window in the QuickBooks UI. It allows you to search for transactions across different transaction types. In contrast to the other transaction-specific queries, the TransactionQuery only returns data common to all transactions, such as TxnID, type, dates, accountRef, and so on.

Accordingly, if additional and more transaction-specific data is required, a subsequent call to the desired query can be used to get that transaction-specific data. For example, the TransactionQuery can be used to present all transactions in a certain date range, then the user can select a particular transaction, say an invoice transaction. In response to this choice, you could do an InvoiceQuery to pull up all of the invoice data, similar to QuickZoom in the QuickBooks UI.

#### **IMPORTANT**

TimeTracking transactions are not supported in the generic TransactionQuery. (This mirrors the QuickBooks UI where TimeTracking transactions aren't available in the Find functionality.)

## **TransactionQuery and Access Permissions**

QuickBooks access permissions are obeyed in this query. The behavior varies depending on how you use (or don't use) the transaction type filter. If you set the transaction type filter to "All" (or if you don't set it at all), the query searches only those transaction types that are permissible types for the user currently logged in. If instead of "all," you specify a transaction type that the currently logged in user is not permitted to access, you get a runtime error, even if other permissible transaction types were specified as well.

Finally, the transaction type filter is subject to sensitive data access level restrictions and payroll subscription status.

## **Filters for TransactionQuery**

The TransactionQuery has filters similar to those available for reports, although the filter names are special to TransactionQuery, including:

- TransactionFilter, where you can specify one or more specific transaction types or "All" types if you wish.
- TransactionDetailLevelFilter, where you can specify the detail level of the query results: all results, summary only (the default), or all except summary. (Summary only refers to the transaction as a whole, whereas all except summary refers to the transaction lines.)
- TransactionPostingStatusFilter, where you can specify transactions based on posting status. Valid values are posting, non-posting, or either (the default). (Posting status refers to whether QuickBooks records a transaction in one of your account registers.)

TransactionPaidStatusFilter, where you can search for "open" transactions, i.e. transactions with a remaining balance (for example, credits not fully applied or invoices not fully paid). Valid values are closed, open, or either (the default).

# CHAPTER 9

## GENERATING REPORTS

Reports provide the QuickBooks user with multiple views of data over a specified time period. They can span multiple data types and can be customized in a wide variety of ways. The QuickBooks SDK supports most of the report types and customizations and a number of the filters currently found in QuickBooks. The SDK also supports the Custom Summary and Custom Transaction Detail reports, which can be used when no preset report type exists to fill a given need.

### Before You Begin

---

Before you begin working with reports in the SDK, you need a thorough understanding of reports in QuickBooks. Specifically, you should be knowledgeable about the following:

- What preset reports are available in QuickBooks (both summary and detail reports)
- The purpose of these reports
- What features in the preset reports can be customized

The QuickBooks Report Finder is a useful tool that shows samples of all preset reports. It allows you to explore the different report types and discover exactly which parameters can be easily modified.

### Categories of Reports

---

For efficiency and convenience, the SDK groups QuickBooks reports into a number of logical categories. Each category has a corresponding request and response message, as shown in Table 9-1.

Table 9-1 Categories of Reports in the SDK

Category	Request Name	Response Name
Aging	AgingReportQueryRq	AgingReportQueryRs
BudgetSummary	BudgetSummaryReportQueryRq	BudgetSummaryReportQueryRs
Custom Detail	CustomDetailReportQueryRq	CustomDetailReportQueryRs
Custom Summary	CustomSummaryReportQueryRq	CustomSummaryReportQueryRs
General Detail	GeneralDetailReportQueryRq	GeneralDetailReportQueryRs
General Summary	GeneralSummaryReportQueryRq	GeneralSummaryReportQueryRs
Job	JobReportQueryRq	Job ReportQueryRs
PayrollDetail	PayrollDetailReportQueryRq	PayrollDetailReportQueryRs

Category	Request Name	Response Name
PayrollSummary	PayrollSummaryReportQueryRq	PayrollSummaryReportQueryRs
Time	TimeReportQueryRq	TimeReportQueryRs

All reports in a given category have similar customizable data. (The reports themselves, however, may differ widely from each other.)

Tables 4-2 through 4-9 list the reports in each category.

## General Summary Reports

---

The General Summary Reports category is the largest category for summary reports. In addition to common customizations, the reports within this category can be customized by the number of columns that are returned and by period comparisons for the data in the report.

Table 9-2 General Summary Reports

Balance Sheet Previous Year Comparison
Balance Sheet Standard
Balance Sheet Summary
Customer Balance Summary
Expense by Vendor Summary
Income by Customer Summary
Income Tax Summary
Inventory Stock Status by Item
Inventory Stock Status by Vendor
Inventory Valuation Summary
Physical Inventory Worksheet
Profit and Loss by Class
Profit and Loss by Job
Profit and Loss Previous Year Comparison
Profit and Loss Standard
Profit and Loss YTD Comparison
Purchase by Item Summary
Purchase by Vendor Summary
Sales by Customer Summary
Sales by Item Summary
Sales by Rep Summary
Sales Tax Liability
Sales Tax Revenue Summary
Trial Balance
Vendor Balance Summary

## Job Reports

---

The Job Reports category includes both summary and transaction detail reports. They can be customized only by date range, by column summarization, and by common filters. Some job reports require a customer:job reference in order to work.

Table 9-3 Job Reports

Item Estimates vs. Actual
Item Profitability
Job Estimates vs. Actuals Details
Job Estimates vs. Actuals Summary
Job Profitability Detail
Job Profitability Summary

## Time Reports

---

The Time Reports category includes summary and detail reports related by time. Summarized columns can be customized in these reports.

Table 9-4 Time Reports

Time by Item
Time by Job Detail
Time by Job Summary
Time by Name

## Aging Reports

---

The Aging Reports category includes summary and detail reports related to aging criteria.

Table 9-5 Aging Reports

AP Aging Detail
AP Aging Summary
AR Aging Detail
AR Aging Summary
Collections Report

## Budget Summary Reports

---

The Budget Summary Reports category consists of all summary budget reports.

Table 9-6      Budget Summary Reports

Balance Sheet Budget Overview
Balance Sheet Budget vs. Actual
Profit and Loss Budget Overview
Profit and Loss Budget vs. Actual
Profit and Loss Budget Performance

## General Detail Reports

---

The General Detail Reports category consists exclusively of transaction detail reports.

Table 9-7      General Detail Reports

1099 Detail
Audit Trail
Balance Sheet Detail
Check Detail
Customer Balance Detail
Deposit Detail
Estimates by Job
Expense by Vendor Detail
General Ledger
Income by Customer Detail
Income Tax Detail
Inventory Valuation Detail
Job Progress Invoices vs. Estimates
Journal
Missing Checks
Open Invoices
Open POs
Open POs by Job
Open Sales Order By Customer
Open Sales Order By Items
Pending Sales
Profit and Loss Detail
Purchase by Item Detail

Purchase by Vendor Detail
Sales by Customer Detail
Sales by Item Detail
Sales by Rep Detail
Transaction Detail by Account
Transaction List by Customer
Transaction List by Date
Transaction List by Vendor
Unbilled Costs by Job
Unpaid Bills Detail
Vendor Balance Detail

## Payroll Summary Reports

---

Payroll Summary Reports can be generated if your application is accessing a company file that is currently signed up for a subscription to a payroll service. (If your application is not signed up, it will receive an error when it attempts to generate a report in this category.)

The restrictions noted above about payroll reports requiring the use of the Intuit Payroll service do not apply to the QuickBooks sample companies. You can still test out these reports on the sample companies without subscribing to the payroll service. For all other companies, however, the company must be subscribed.

Table 9-8 Payroll Summary Reports

Employee Earnings Summary
Payroll Liability Balances
Payroll Summary

## Payroll Detail Reports

---

Payroll Detail Reports can be generated if your application is accessing a company file that is currently signed up for a subscription to a payroll service. (If your application is not signed up, it will receive an error when it attempts to generate a report in this category.)

The restrictions noted above about payroll reports requiring the use of the Intuit Payroll service do not apply to the QuickBooks sample companies. You can still test out these reports on the sample companies without subscribing to the payroll service. For all other companies, however, the company must be subscribed.

Table 9-9 Payroll Detail Reports

Employee State Taxes Detail
Payroll Item Detail
Payroll Review Detail
Payroll Transaction Detail
Payroll Transactions by Payee

## Custom Summary and Detail Reports

---

If you want complete control over the report content, you will be interested in both the Custom Summary Report and the Custom Transaction Detail Report. Custom reports do not make any assumptions about the data you are interested in—they require you to specify exactly what data you want included in the report. Your application has to select the row and column axes, and it controls the output using common customization parameters for dates and filters. For the Custom Transaction Detail Report, you must specify all the include columns for the transactions you want returned in the report. For these reports, you are also required to specify a date element (a DateMacro or a custom date range).

## Default Reports

---

A default report is generated when the application issues a request that contains only the type of the report. For example, the following report request would generate a default AP Aging Summary report:

```
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq>
    <AgingReportQueryRq>
      <AgingReportType>APAgingSummary</AgingReportType>
    </AgingReportQueryRq>
  </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

A default report generated by the SDK uses the same default parameters as are used in the QuickBooks user interface.

### **NOTE**

Different editions of QuickBooks (for example, the Accountant edition, the Contractor edition) may produce slightly different versions of a given report. For example, in a standard Profit and Loss report, the Accountant edition replaces the Amount column with two columns: Credit and Debit. If such

differences are a concern, you may want to test the different QuickBooks editions for a given report so that your application can handle them appropriately. To isolate your program from this uncertainty, always specify the columns that are needed by your application using the `IncludeColumn` element.

## A Practical Approach

---

Because the SDK produces the same reports and offers similar customizations as the QuickBooks user interface, the following practical approach is suggested for creating a report request using the SDK:

1. In the QuickBooks user interface, select the QuickBooks report that presents the basic type of data you need (for example, Purchase by Vendor Summary).
2. Also in the QuickBooks user interface, modify the report, if necessary. For example, you might want to display columns by quarter, and you might want to add subcolumns for the previous period.
3. In the QuickBooks user interface, generate the report and see if you're satisfied. If not, continue modifying the report until you have the desired results.
4. Make a list of the modifications you made to the preset report (fields and values).
5. Determine which fields in the SDK request for this report type correspond to each of the user interface features that you used to modify the report. (In our example, we would look at the fields for the request `GeneralSummaryReportQueryRq`, since the Purchase by Vendor Summary report is in the General Summary Report category.)
6. Construct the request in the SDK using either the qbXML Request Processor API or the QBFC API.

The request will specify the standard report name, as well as the fields and values for each of the modifications you want to make. The following section presents an example of how the user interface features in QuickBooks correspond to the fields in an SDK report request.

## Creating a Report Request

---

This section uses a common report, Profit and Loss Standard, as an example that shows the correspondence between user interface features in QuickBooks and fields in an SDK report request. First, it presents a general summary of how the SDK translates user interface features into name/value pairs. Subsequent sections provide further detail on how the SDK implements specific customizable features.

### Modifying a Profit and Loss Standard Report

---

This section shows how the QuickBooks user interface fields correspond to SDK fields used in request messages by qbXML and QBFC. As an example, it uses the Profit and Loss Standard Report. In the SDK, this report belongs to the `GeneralSummaryReport` category. In qbXML, the request begins:

```

<GeneralSummaryReportQueryRq requestID="4235">
  <GeneralSummaryReportType>ProfitAndLossStandard
  </GeneralSummaryReportType>
  .
  .
  .

</GeneralSummaryReportQueryRq>

```

The General Summary report request contains the following fields, which correspond to features on the QuickBooks Modify Report screen for the Profit and Loss report (see Figure 9-1):

- **ReportDateMacro** or **ReportPeriod** - for setting the Report Date Range
- **SummarizeColumnsBy** - specifies how data is organized in the report
- **IncludeSubcolumns** - specifies whether or not you want the extra subcolumns included in your report
- **ReportCalendar** - specifies whether you want the report for the fiscal, calendar, or income tax year. In QuickBooks, this choice appears when the user presses the Advanced button.
- **ReturnRows** - specifies whether you want the report to include only rows with active information, all rows, or only rows with nonzero values. In QuickBooks, this choice appears when the user presses the Advanced button.
- **ReturnColumns** - specifies whether you want the report to include only columns with active information, all columns, or only columns with nonzero values. In QuickBooks, this choice appears when the user presses the Advanced button.
- **ReportBasis** - specifies whether to use *accrual* or *cash* basis for the report. (A value of “None” is used only for reports that do not allow a report basis setting; see Table 9-18.)

## Date Range

The SDK parallels the QuickBooks user interface and allows you to choose whether you want the report to cover a date range explicitly specified by you in the FromReportDate and ToReportDate fields, or whether you want to choose one of the standard report date ranges using the ReportDateMacro. Enumerated values for the ReportDateMacro field correspond directly to those in the user interface drop-down list—for example, Today, ThisWeek, ThisWeekToDate, and so on.

## “SummarizeColumnsBy” Field

The SummarizeColumnsBy field specifies how the data is organized in the report and is a common modification to many reports. The enumerated values available in the SDK for this field parallel those of the QuickBooks user interface and are time-based, entity-based, item-based, and so on (for example: Day, Month, Year; Employee, Customer, Vendor; and PayrollItemDetail, ItemDetail, ItemType). In the example in “A Practical Approach” (page 99), you would set SummarizeColumnsBy equal to “Quarter.”

## **“SummarizeRowsBy” Field**

The SummarizeRowsBy field is used in the General Detail, Custom Detail, Custom Summary, and Payroll Detail reports. It is an optional element in the General Detail and Payroll Detail reports. Each transaction detail report has a default value for SummarizeRowsBy, and this is usually the value you will use. For custom reports, you must specify this field. This field determines the way QuickBooks will summarize the transaction data in the report.

Note that it is possible to select a combination of values for the SummarizeRowsBy and SummarizeColumnsBy fields that are valid but that do not make sense for a given report type. For example, specifying “Account” for SummarizeColumnsBy and “IncomeStatement” for SummarizeRowsBy does not generate a programmatic warning, but the returned report is invalid.

## **“IncludeSubcolumns” Field**

The IncludeSubcolumns field is a Boolean value. In general, False specifies not to include any subcolumn information. True specifies to include certain default subcolumns that have been defined for a given report type. You do not have to use all of the returned subcolumn information even if you ask for it. You can process only the data you’re interested in.

The following sections provide details on exactly which subcolumn information is returned for specific types of reports when you specify True for this field.

In the example in “A Practical Approach” (page 99), you would set IncludeSubcolumns to True because you want to add subcolumns for the previous period. When you process the response, you would simply discard the subcolumn information you weren’t interested in.

Subcolumns that are available in the user interface but unavailable in the SDK, such as *\$ Change* and *% Change*, can be calculated using values from returned data elements.

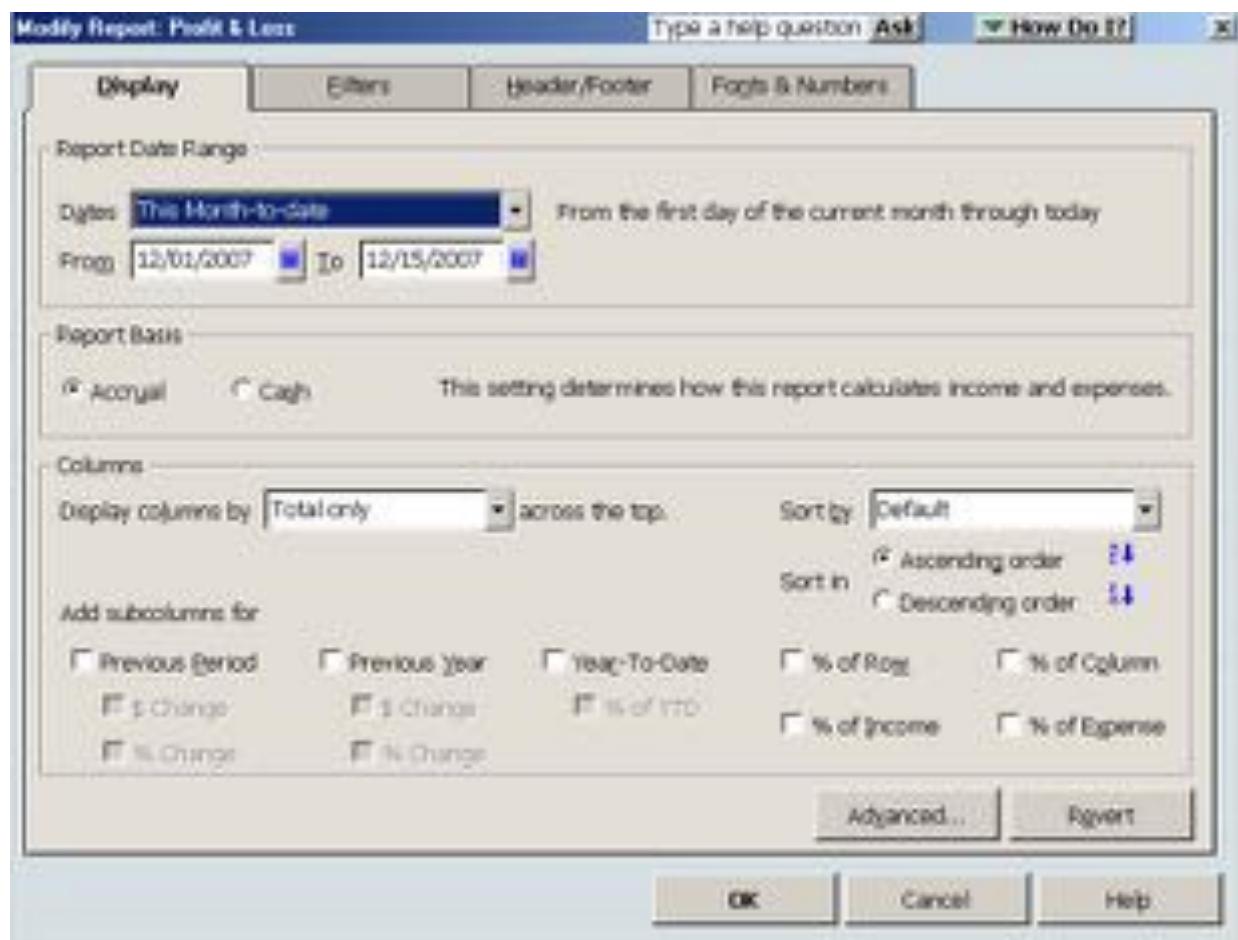


Figure 9-1 SDK field names for a General Summary report request

#### **Default Values for Time and Job Reports (IncludeSubcolumns)**

By default, all subcolumns are returned for Time and Job reports. If you specify False for IncludeSubcolumns, one subcolumn—Average Cost—will always be returned (otherwise the report would contain no data).

#### **Default Values for Summary Reports (IncludeSubcolumns)**

For Summary reports, specifying True for IncludeSubcolumns will cause the following default values to be turned on (with certain qualifications described in the next section):

- Previous Period
- Previous Year
- % of Row
- % of Column

### **Previous Period/ Previous Year (IncludeSubcolumns)**

If you specify True for IncludeSubcolumns, the PreviousPeriod and PreviousYear subcolumns will be turned on for reports that have this information, *provided that* ReportDateMacro is not set to ALL or FromDate is provided.

### **Special Case: Sales By ItemSummary Report**

The SalesByItemSummary report has eight subcolumns that are included by default: Qty, Amount, % of Sales, Avg. Price, Average Cost, COGS, Gross Margin, Gross Margin %. If you specify False, four columns are turned off and these columns remain: Qty, Amount, % of Sales, Avg. Price.

### **Report Basis**

Certain reports support ReportBasis, as shown in Table 9-18. If you specify ReportBasis for a report type that does not support it, an error is returned.

For requests that support ReportBasis, you can specify Cash, Accrual, or None. The value “None” in a report request is equivalent to omitting the ReportBasis field: it means “do not change this value; use the default setting.” This default setting can be either the setting used in the report Preferences or it can be the QuickBooks default setting for a given type of report. (In general, do not specify a ReportBasis unless you have a specific need to specify either Cash or Accrual.) QuickBooks follows the setting from *Preferences > Reports and Graphs*.

In the report response, the SDK returns “None” as the value for the ReportBasis field for reports that do not support this field.

## **Setting Up Filters for a Profit and Loss Standard Report**

---

The General Summary report request contains the ReportAccountFilter field, which corresponds to the Filter drop-down list in the QuickBooks Filters screen for the Profit and Loss report (see Figure 9-2). The SDK allows you to include the following types of filters:

- **ReportAccountFilter** - allows you to report on a specific account type or grouping of account types (for example, accounts payable, accounts receivable, liability) or an ID or FullName
- **ReportClassFilter** - Allows you to report on a particular class of transactions you have defined
- **ReportDetailLevelFilter** - allows you to limit the amount of detail returned in a given report
- **ReportEntityFilter** - allows you to report on a specified name type (for example, customer, employee, vendor, or other) or an ID or FullName
- **ReportItemFilter** - allows you to report on a specified item (for example, discount, inventory, non-inventory) or an ID or FullName
- **ReportModifiedDateRangeFilter** or **ReportModifiedDateRangeMacro** - allow you to report on transactions created or modified in a given time frame

- **ReportPostingStatusFilter** - allows you to report on only posting transactions or only nonposting transactions (for transactions with posting status)
- **ReportTxnTypeFilter** - allows you to report on one or more specific transaction types (for example, check, deposit, estimate)

Report filters are very similar, though not identical, to filters that are used in queries. For reports that require either a customer job reference or an account reference, the reference is specified using the appropriate filter.

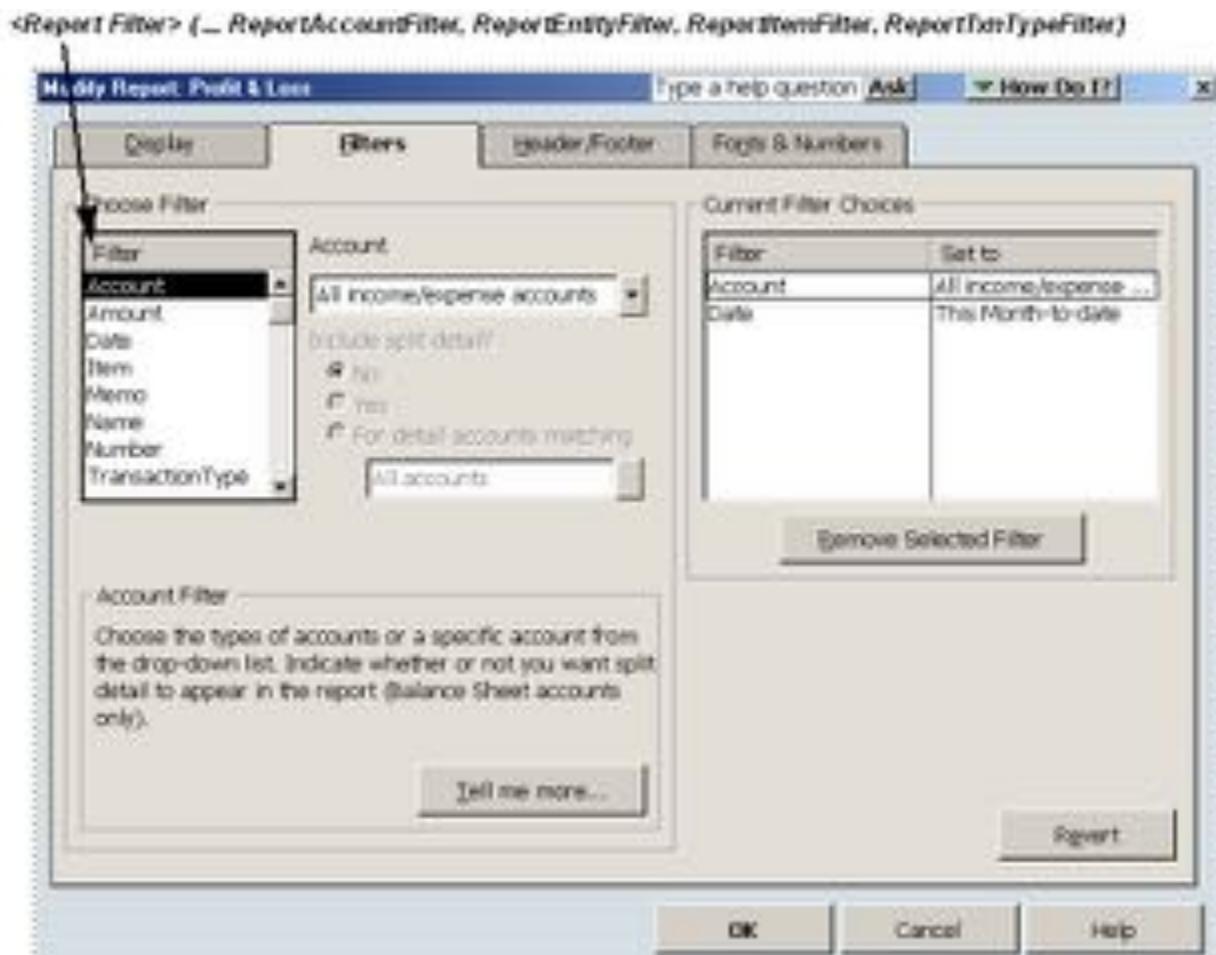


Figure 9-2 SDK fields for modifying report filters

### “IncludeColumn” Field

The **IncludeColumn** field is used in Aging, Custom Detail, PayrollDetail, and General Detail reports. If you specify a value for this field, the original checked items that appear in the QuickBooks user interface are cleared; if you want those values too, you'll need to specify them explicitly. Some choices available in the QuickBooks user interface for the

Columns scrollable listbox for a given report type are not available in the SDK. Table 9-19 lists the column types and their corresponding data types. It also indicates whether the column type can be used in the IncludeColumn field.

A convenient way to obtain a number of transaction IDs is to include TxnID in the IncludeColumn field of a report. (The PurchaseOrder Modify sample program included in the SDK provides an example of this technique.) This method is often more convenient than performing queries to obtain the TxnIDs.

## Required Filter for Certain Job Reports

---

For the JobEstimatesVsActualsDetail report and the JobProfitabilityDetail report, you must provide a ReportEntity filter that specifies a customer reference.

## Required Filter for Missing Checks Report

---

For the MissingChecks report (a General Detail report), you must provide an Account filter that specifies an account reference.

## Example of a Report Request

---

Here is a sample report request for a Purchase by Vendor Summary report, for the period This Month to Date. Columns are labeled by quarter. Subcolumn information is requested (for this report, subcolumn information includes Previous Period, Previous Year, and Year-To-Date). Only rows and columns with active information will be included in the response.

```
<GeneralSummaryReportQueryRq requestID = "928">
  <GeneralSummaryReportType>PurchaseByVendorSummary
    </GeneralSummaryReportType>
  <ReportDateMacro>ThisMonthToDate</ReportDateMacro>
  <SummarizeColumnsBy>Quarter</SummarizeColumnsBy>
  <IncludeSubcolumns>true</IncludeSubcolumns>
  <ReturnRows>ActiveOnly</ReturnRows>
  <ReturnColumns>ActiveOnly</ReturnColumns>
</GeneralSummaryReportQueryRq>
```

## Creating Requests for Budget Reports

---

Before you can obtain a Budget report, the “target” budget must be defined in QuickBooks. The type of this budget determines the valid combinations of rows and columns you can specify in a Budget report request. Budget reports fall into two general categories: *Balance Sheet* and *Profit and Loss*. In addition, each of these categories has both an *overview* and an *actual* projection of the budget. When you request a Budget report, you specify data associated with the budget itself, and then you specify the rows and columns for the report. There are three pieces of data you specify regarding the budget:

- BudgetSummary Report type
- Fiscal year
- Budget criterion

## Report Types

The following Budget Summary report types are supported:

- BalanceSheetBudgetOverview
- BalanceSheetBudgetVsActual
- ProfitAndLossBudgetOverview
- ProfitAndLossBudgetVsActual
- ProfitAndLossBudgetPerformance

## Fiscal Year

The fiscal year identifies the budget for the report.

## Budget Criterion

The BudgetCriterion you specify depends on the type of report you’re requesting *and* on the information that is defined in the target budget. If you select a Balance Sheet report, you must always specify “Accounts” for the BudgetCriterion. If you select one of the Profit and Loss report types, you can specify any of the values for BudgetCriterion, as long as your budget defines them for the appropriate year. The types are

- Accounts
- AccountsAndClasses
- AccountsAndCustomers

## Specifying Rows and Columns for the Budget Report

If the BudgetCriterion is set to “Accounts,” the only valid settings are

Row	Column
Account	Date

This rule applies to both BalanceSheetBudgetOverview and BalanceSheetBudgetVsActual.

If BudgetCriterion is set to “AccountsAndClasses,” the valid row/column combinations are

Row	Column
Account	Class
Account	Date
Class	Date

If BudgetCriterion is set to “AccountsAndCustomers,” the valid row/column combinations are

Row	Column
Account	Customer
Account	Date
Customer	Date

## Interpreting the Report Response

---

The report response contains two main types of information:

- Meta-data that describes the report as a whole, including its title, number of rows and columns, and column titles
- Report data, which is presented as sequential rows of data with accompanying descriptive information

### Report Meta-data

---

The first part of the report response contains information that pertains to the report as a whole:

- **Report Title** and **Subtitle** (see Figure 9-3)
- **Report Basis** (that is, Cash, Accrual, None). “None” indicates that the cash/accrual distinction does not apply to this type of report (for example, the 1099 report has its own basis for generation).
- **Number of rows** in the report
- **Number of columns** in the report
- **Number of rows in the column title**
- For each column in the report, a **column descriptor** that includes the ID, title, column type and data type.

### Column Descriptor

The column ID is the column number. Columns are numbered from the left, starting with 1.

Depending on the report, column titles may require one row or multiple rows. The NumColTitleRows element is an integer used to describe how many rows to allocate for column titles in a given report. Although this number is usually 1, with some reports it is 2 or 3. (For an example of column titles that span multiple rows, look at a ProfitAndLossByJob report. With the default settings, this report has 2 rows per column title. If you add subcolumns, it has 3 rows per column title.)

Examples of column types are Account, Amount, PaymentMethod, Percent, ClearedStatus, ShipToAddr1, and so on. Types are formatted qbXML types. A value of type Percent, for example, would have two digits after the decimal point: 7.90. A value of type Duration that is shown in QuickBooks as “hr:min” (for example “8:20”) would be returned in qbXML as “PT8H20M.” (See also Table 9-19.)

5:03 PM	<b>Rock Castle Construction</b>	
12/15/07	<b>Profit &amp; Loss</b>	
Accrual Basis	December 1 - 15, 2007	
	* <u>Dec 1 - 15, 07</u> *	
	<b>Ordinary Income/Expense</b>	
	<b>Income</b>	
	<b>Construction</b>	
	Labor	15,066.00
	Materials	31,898.01
	Miscellaneous	2,232.03
	Subcontractors	22,122.01
	<b>Total Construction</b>	<u>71,318.05</u>
	<b>Total Income</b>	71,318.05
	<b>Cost of Goods Sold</b>	
	<b>Cost of Goods Sold</b>	<u>4,669.78</u>
	<b>Total COGS</b>	<u>4,669.78</u>
	<b>Gross Profit</b>	66,648.27
	<b>Expense</b>	
	<b>Automobile</b>	
	Fuel	71.02
	<b>Total Automobile</b>	<u>71.02</u>

Figure 9-3 SDK field names for a report response

The column descriptor also includes the dataType of the values in the column. This information is more reliable than the column type in determining how the data is formatted. The dataType value may be overridden on a cell-by-cell basis but usually is not. Table 9-19 contains a complete list of all the possible values for ColType, what the corresponding DataType is, and whether the column can be used in the “IncludeColumn” field.

## Report Data

---

The report data consists of rows of data, expressed in name/value pairs. A row is one of the following types, as shown in Figure 9-3:

- Text row - contains only text and is used mainly for headings.
- Data row - contains the report data.
- Subtotal row - contains a calculated subtotal.
- Total row - contains a calculated total for the entire report. There will be only one Total row.

A text row contains one field, RowData, which contains the row type and the row value. The other types of rows contain two fields: RowData (a row type and a row value) and ColData (column ID and column value). The column ID refers to the column ID defined in the column descriptor meta-data.

Sometimes, the datatype within a given column differs from the overall column type specified in the column descriptor. In such exception cases, the datatype of the particular column is also listed with the ColData. In the following excerpt, for example, the datatype in the column descriptor is AMTTYPE, but the datatype for column 9 is QUANTYPE.

```
<ColDesc colID="9" dataType="AMTTYPE">
  <ColTitle titleRow="1" value="Sales Price" />
  <ColType>UnitPrice</ColType>
</ColDesc>

<ColData colID="9" value="57.75111" dataType="QUANTYPE" />
```

## Example

---

The following qbXML excerpt shows the beginning of the response for a standard Profit and Loss report (as shown in Figure 9-3).

```
<QBXMLMsgsRs>
  <GeneralSummaryReportQueryRs
    requestID="862" statusCode="0"
    statusSeverity="Info" statusMessage="Status OK">
    <ReportRet>
      <ReportTitle>Profit & Loss</ReportTitle>
      <ReportBasis>Accrual</ReportBasis>
      <NumRows>55</NumRows>
      <NumColumns>2</NumColumns>
      <NumColTitleRows>1</NumColTitleRows>
      <ColDesc colID="1" dataType="STRTYPE">
        <ColTitle titleRow="1" />
        <ColType>Label</ColType>
      </ColDesc>
      <ColDesc colID="2" dataType="AMTTYPE">
```

```

<ColTitle titleRow="1" value="Dec 1 - 15, 03" />
<ColType>Amount</ColType>
</ColDesc>
<ReportData>
    <TextRow lineNumber="1">
        <RowData rowType="label" value="Ordinary Income/Expense"/>
    </TextRow>
    <TextRow lineNumber="2">
        <RowData rowType="label" value="Income" />
    </TextRow>
    <DataRow lineNumber="3">
        <RowData rowType="account" value="Construction" />
        <ColData colID="1" value="Construction" />
    </DataRow>
    <DataRow lineNumber="4">
        <RowData rowType="account" value="Construction:Labor" />
        <ColData colID="1" value="Labor" />
        <ColData colID="2" value="12226.00" />
    </DataRow>

    <DataRow lineNumber="5">
        <RowData rowType="account"
            value="Construction:Materials"/>
        <ColData colID="1" value="Materials" />
        <ColData colID="2" value="27346.60" />
    </DataRow>
    <DataRow lineNumber="6">
        <RowData rowType="account"
            value="Construction:Miscellaneous"/>
        <ColData colID="1" value="Miscellaneous" />
        <ColData colID="2" value="2232.03" />
    </DataRow>
    <DataRow lineNumber="7">
        <RowData rowType="account"
            value="Construction:Subcontractors"/>
        <ColData colID="1" value="Subcontractors" />
        <ColData colID="2" value="16305.76" />
    </DataRow>
    .
    .
    .
    </ReportRet>
</GeneralSummaryReportQueryRs>
</QBXMLMsgsRs>

```

## Enumerated Values for “ClearedStatus” Column

---

Some columns, for example the “Clr” column in a transaction detail report, use symbols to indicate whether an item has cleared or not. The following enumerated values are used in the SDK in place of the symbols that appear in the QuickBooks user interface:

Table 9-10    Enumerated values used in a “ClearedStatus” column

Symbol	Enumerated Value
*	Pending
(checkmark)	Cleared
(lightning bolt)	Not cleared

## Transaction Detail Reports

---

In a transaction detail report, each column has a different label—for example, TxnNumber, PONumber, DeliveryDate, Quantity, SalesPrice, Clear. The following qbXML example shows the beginning of an A/P Aging Detail report. For purposes of comparison, the corresponding part of the report, as it appears in QuickBooks, is also shown in Figure 9-4.

```

<QBXMLMsgsRs>
  <AgingReportQueryRs statusCode="0" statusSeverity="Info"
    statusMessage="Status OK">
    <ReportRet>
      <ReportTitle>A/P Aging Detail</ReportTitle>
      <ReportSubtitle>As of December 15, 2003</ReportSubtitle>
      <ReportBasis>Accrual</ReportBasis>
      <NumRows>35</NumRows>
      <NumColumns>8</NumColumns>
      <NumColTitleRows>1</NumColTitleRows>
      <ColDesc colID="1" dataType="STRTYPE">
        <ColTitle titleRow="1" />
        <ColType>Blank</ColType>
      </ColDesc>
      <ColDesc colID="2" dataType="STRTYPE">
        <ColTitle titleRow="1" value="Type" />
        <ColType>TxnType</ColType>
      </ColDesc>
      <ColDesc colID="3" dataType="DATETYPE">
        <ColTitle titleRow="1" value="Date" />
        <ColType>Date</ColType>
      </ColDesc>
      <ColDesc colID="4" dataType="STRTYPE">
        <ColTitle titleRow="1" value="Num" />
        <ColType>RefNumber</ColType>
      </ColDesc>
      <ColDesc colID="5" dataType="STRTYPE">
        <ColTitle titleRow="1" value="Name" />
        <ColType>Name</ColType>
      </ColDesc>
      <ColDesc colID="6" dataType="DATETYPE">
        <ColTitle titleRow="1" value="Due Date" />
        <ColType>DueDate</ColType>
      </ColDesc>
      <ColDesc colID="7" dataType="INTTYPE">
        <ColTitle titleRow="1" value="Aging" />
      </ColDesc>
    </ReportRet>
  </AgingReportQueryRs>
</QBXMLMsgsRs>

```

```

        <ColType>Aging</ColType>
    </ColDesc>
    <ColDesc colID="8" dataType="AMTTYPE">
        <ColTitle titleRow="1" value="Open Balance" />
        <ColType>OpenBalance</ColType>
    </ColDesc>
    <ReportData>
        <TextRow lineNumber="1" value="Current" />
        <DataRow lineNumber="2">
            <ColData colID="2" value="Bill" />
            <ColData colID="3" value="2003-12-05" />
            <ColData colID="5" value="Hopkins Construction Rentals" />
            <ColData colID="6" value="2003-12-20" />
            <ColData colID="8" value="550.00" />
        </DataRow>
        <DataRow lineNumber="3">
            <ColData colID="2" value="Bill" />
            <ColData colID="3" value="2003-12-08" />
            <ColData colID="5" value="Hopkins Construction Rentals" />
            <ColData colID="6" value="2003-12-23" />
            <ColData colID="8" value="150.00" />
        </DataRow>
        <DataRow lineNumber="4">
            <ColData colID="2" value="Bill" />
            <ColData colID="3" value="2003-11-24" />
            <ColData colID="5" value="Middlefield Drywall" />
            <ColData colID="6" value="2003-12-24" />
            <ColData colID="8" value="1200.00" />
        </DataRow>
        <DataRow lineNumber="5">
            <ColData colID="2" value="Bill" />
            <ColData colID="3" value="2003-12-11" />
            <ColData colID="5" value="Lew Plumbing" />
            <ColData colID="6" value="2003-12-26" />
            <ColData colID="8" value="1200.00" />
        </DataRow>
    ...
    </ReportData>
  </ReportRet>
</AgingReportQueryRs>
</QBXMLMsgsRs>

```

5:26 PM  
12/15/07

## Rock Castle Construction

### A/R Aging Detail

As of December 16, 2007

Type	Date	Num	P. O. #	Name	Terms	Due Date	Aging
<b>Current</b>							
Invoice	11/15/2007	51		Pretell Real Estate	Net 30	12/15/2007	
Invoice	12/15/2007	72		Robison, Daniel Ro...	Net 15	12/24/2007	
Invoice	12/09/2007	67		Shalton, Fran O...	Net 30	12/25/2007	
Invoice	11/25/2007	57		Cook, Brian Kitchen	Net 30	12/25/2007	
Invoice	11/25/2007	58		Cook, Brian 2nd s...	Net 30	12/25/2007	
Invoice	11/05/2007	59		Jacobsen, Doug K...	Net 30	12/25/2007	
Invoice	11/05/2007	75		Burch, Jason Ree...	Net 30	12/25/2007	
Invoice	11/05/2007	80		Abercrombie, Kris...	Net 30	12/25/2007	
Invoice	12/11/2007	70		Tschirner, Anton S...	Net 15	12/26/2007	
Invoice	11/30/2007	62		Ecker Designs Of...	Net 30	12/30/2007	
Invoice	11/30/2007	63		Melton, Johnny De...	Net 30	12/30/2007	
Invoice	12/01/2007	63		Pretell Real Estate	Net 30	12/31/2007	
Invoice	12/10/2007	69		Pretell Real Estate	Net 30	01/09/2008	
Invoice	12/15/2007	FC 6		Cook, Brian Kitchen	Net 30	01/10/2008	
Invoice	12/15/2007	73	A005-01	Ecker Designs Of...	Net 30	01/14/2008	
Invoice	12/15/2007	74		Baker, Chris Farm...	Net 30	01/14/2008	
Invoice	12/15/2007	76		Cook, Brian Kitchen	Net 30	01/14/2008	
Invoice	12/15/2007	77		Pretell Real Estate	Net 30	01/14/2008	
Invoice	12/15/2007	78		Ecker Designs Of...	Net 30	01/14/2008	
Invoice	12/05/2007	66		Violette, Mike Wo...	Net 60	02/03/2008	
<b>Total Current</b>							

Figure 9-4 Sample transaction detail report (see corresponding qbXML report response)

## Order Column

The Order column that appears in the user interface on some reports includes a checkmark to indicate when a particular item should be reordered. In the SDK, this column is represented by the Suggested Reorder field. Report responses use a Boolean value for this field (True = checkmark).

## Including Personal Data in Reports

In QuickBooks, the application must have special permission to view fields that contain personal data such as SSNOrTaxID. If your application requests a report that contains such data, QuickBooks checks the required permission before it returns the personal data. If the application does not have the appropriate permission, the following status message is returned:

status code 3261: The integrated application has no permission to access personal data.

This status message might be generated, for example, when an application issues a request for a report that shows columns for SSN and the application does not have the required permission to view that data.

## Including Payroll Data in Reports

---

The following payroll data has several restrictions associated with it:

- IncomeSubjectToTax
- PayrollItemDetail
- WageBase
- WageBaseTips

In order to be included in a payroll report

- The administrative user must have granted the application permission to view personal data, as described in the previous section, and
- The application must be accessing a company file that is currently signed up for a subscription to a payroll service

If you send a report query and do not have the proper access to the company file, the following status message is returned:

status code 3262: In order to complete this request, the company data file has to be subscribed to the Intuit Payroll Service.

It is important to note that if you request a Detail report and specify a restricted value for an *IncludeColumn* field *and* you do not have the appropriate access to view that information, the entire request fails.

## My Report Has No Data!

---

Each category defines a request for a group of different QuickBooks reports. Not all fields defined for the request apply to all reports within the group. Because of this, it is possible to create a request that is programmatically correct (that is, is valid qbXML or compilable QBFC code) but that asks for fields that are invalid for the particular report type. In these cases, no data is returned. (In other cases, data is not returned because the particular type of data is not implemented in the SDK.)

As you create the report request, check the QuickBooks user interface to determine whether the relevant fields are actually included in the report type you're interested in. Also, check that the SDK supports all the fields you're requesting (Table 9-11 through Table 9-17).

Status code 3151 and the following status message are returned when you request a field that is not supported by the requested report:

Cannot use the element XXX in this request.

This message would be generated, for example, if you requested a Physical Inventory Worksheet along with an entity filter. The entity filter is not used by this report.

A different status code is returned when a field is supported, but a particular value for that field is not supported. In this case, you receive status code 3152, along with the following message:

The enumerated value XXX may not be used in the element YYY in this request.

For example, in a PurchaseByVendorSummary report, the element SummarizeColumnsBy is supported, but the value Vendor is not supported.

## Valid Request Options for Individual Report Types

Tables 4-11 through 4-18 list valid request options for different report types. An “X” in the column indicates that this is a valid request option. Each table contains reports for a given report category.

Table 9-11 Aging Reports: Valid Options

Report	Include Columns	ReportAgingAsOf	IncludeAccounts
APAgingDetail	Supports all	X	
APAgingSummary	(none)	X	
AR AgingDetail	Supports all	X	
AR AgingSummary	(none)	X	
CollectionsReport	Supports all	X	X

NOTE ReportAgingAsOf is an enum (Today, ReportEndDate); in this table an “X” indicates the SDK supports this report option. IncludeAccounts is also an enum (InUse or All); as in QuickBooks, this option is supported only in the Collections Report.

Table 9-12 Job Reports: Valid Options

Report	SummarizeColumnsBy	Subcolumns	Entity Filter
ItemEstimatesVsActuals	Dates and Class	X	
ItemProfitability	Dates and Class	X	
JobEstimatesVsActualsDetail	Dates and Class	X	Required
JobEstimatesVsActualsSummary	Dates and Class	X	
JobProfitabilityDetail	Dates and Class	X	Required
JobProfitabilitySummary	Dates and Class	X	

NOTE Dates includes TotalOnly, Day, Week, TwoWeek, FourWeek, HalfMonth, Month, Quarter, Year. Reports support either all dates or no dates.

Table 9-13 Time Reports: Valid Options

Report	SummarizeColumnsBy	Report Calendar	Return Rows	Return Columns
TimeByItem	Dates only	X	X	X
TimeByJobDetail	no columns			
TimeByJobSummary	Dates only	X	X	X
TimeByName	Dates only	X	X	X

NOTE Time Reports do not support AccountFilter or TxnTypeFilter.

Table 9-14 General Detail Reports: Valid Options

Report	Dates Allowed	Account Filter	Include-Accounts	Report-Balance-AsOf
1099Detail	X		InUse	Current
AuditTrail	X		None	None
BalanceSheetDetail	X		All	Current
CheckDetail	X		InUse	Current
CustomerBalanceDetail	X		InUse	Current
DepositDetail	X		InUse	Current
EstimatesByJob	X		InUse	Current
ExpenseByVendorDetail	X		InUse	Current
GeneralLedger	X		All	Current
IncomeByCustomerDetail	X		InUse	Current
IncomeTaxDetail	X		InUse	Current
InventoryValuationDetail	X		InUse	Current
JobProgressInvoicesVs-Estimates				
Journal	X		InUse	Current
MissingChecks	X	Required	None	None
OpenInvoices	X		InUse	Current
OpenPOs	X		InUse	Current
OpenPOsByJob	X		InUse	Current
OpenSalesOrderByCustomer	X		InUse	Current
OpenSalesOrderByItem	X		InUse	Current
PendingSales	X		InUse	Current
ProfitAndLossDetail	X		InUse	Current
PurchaseByItemDetail	X		InUse	Current
PurchaseByVendorDetail	X		InUse	Current
SalesByCustomerDetail	X		InUse	Current
SalesByItemDetail	X		InUse	Current
SalesByRepDetail	X		InUse	Current
TxnDetailByAccount	X		InUse	Current
TxnListByCustomer	X		InUse	Current
TxnListByDate	X		InUse	Current
TxnListByVendor	X		InUse	Current
UnbilledCostsByJob	X		InUse	Current
UnpaidBillsDetail	X		InUse	Current
VendorBalanceDetail	X		InUse	Current

NOTE Values shown for IncludeAccount and ReportBalanceAsOf are the default values used by QuickBooks if not specified in the request. "None" means the report doesn't use the setting.

Table 9-15 General Summary Reports:  
Valid Options for SummarizeColumnsBy (Part 1 of 4)

Report	Dates*	Customer-Job	Vendor	Employee	Payroll-Item-Detail
BalanceSheetPrevYearComp	X				
BalanceSheetStandard	X				
BalanceSheetSummary	X				
CustomerBalanceSummary	X				
ExpenseByVendorSummary	X				
IncomeByCustomerSummary	X				
IncomeTaxSummary					
InventoryStockStatusByItem					
InventoryStockStatusByVendor					
InventoryValuationSummary					
PhysicalInventoryWorksheet					
ProfitAndLossByClass	X	X	X	X	X
ProfitAndLossByJob	X	X	X	X	X
ProfitAndLossPrevYearComp	X	X	X	X	X
ProfitAndLossStandard	X	X	X	X	X
ProfitAndLossYTDComp	X	X	X	X	X
PurchaseByItemSummary	X	X	X	X	
PurchaseByVendorSummary	X				
SalesByCustomerSummary	X				
SalesByItemSummary	X	X	X	X	
SalesByRepSummary	X				
SalesTaxLiability					
SalesTaxRevenueSummary	X	X	X	X	X
TrialBalance					
VendorBalanceSummary	X				

\*All reports except PhysicalInventoryWorksheet also support macro/custom Dates

NOTE Dates includes TotalOnly, Day, Week, TwoWeek, FourWeek, HalfMonth, Month, Quarter, Year. Reports support either all dates or no dates.

NOTE All report types support the value "Total Only" for SummarizeColumnsBy.

Table 9-16 General Summary Reports:  
Valid Options for SummarizeColumnsBy (Part 2 of 4)

Report	Payee	Rep	Class	ItemType	ItemDetail
BalanceSheetPrevYearComp					
BalanceSheetStandard					
BalanceSheetSummary					
CustomerBalanceSummary					
ExpenseByVendorSummary					
IncomeByCustomerSummary					
IncomeTaxSummary					
InventoryStockStatusByItem					
InventoryStockStatusByVendor					
InventoryValuationSummary					
PhysicalInventoryWorksheet					
ProfitAndLossByClass	X	X	X	X	X
ProfitAndLossByJob	X	X	X	X	X
ProfitAndLossPrevYearComp	X	X	X	X	X
ProfitAndLossStandard	X	X	X	X	X
ProfitAndLossYTDComp	X	X	X	X	X
PurchaseByItemSummary	X	X	X		
PurchaseByVendorSummary		X	X	X	X
SalesByCustomerSummary		X	X	X	X
SalesByItemSummary	X	X	X		
SalesByRepSummary		X	X	X	X
SalesTaxLiability					
SalesTaxRevenueSummary	X	X	X	X	X
TrialBalance					
VendorBalanceSummary					

Table 9-17 General Summary Reports:  
Valid Options for SummarizeColumnsBy (Part 3 of 4)

Report	ShipMethod	Terms	Payment-Method	SalesTax-Code	Account
BalanceSheetPrevYearComp					
BalanceSheetStandard					
BalanceSheetSummary					
CustomerBalanceSummary					
ExpenseByVendorSummary					
IncomeByCustomerSummary					
IncomeTaxSummary					
InventoryStockStatusByItem					
InventoryStockStatusByVendor					
InventoryValuationSummary					
PhysicalInventoryWorksheet					
ProfitAndLossByClass	X	X	X	X	
ProfitAndLossByJob	X	X	X	X	
ProfitAndLossPrevYearComp	X	X	X	X	
ProfitAndLossStandard	X	X	X	X	
ProfitAndLossYTDComp	X	X	X	X	
PurchaseByItemSummary	X	X	X	X	
PurchaseByVendorSummary	X	X	X	X	
SalesByCustomerSummary	X	X	X	X	
SalesByItemSummary	X	X	X	X	
SalesByRepSummary	X	X	X	X	
SalesTaxLiability					
SalesTaxRevenueSummary	X	X	X	X	
TrialBalance					
VendorBalanceSummary					

Table 9-18 General Summary Reports:  
Valid Options for SummarizeColumnsBy (Part 4 of 4)

Report	Subcolumns	Return Rows	Return Columns	Report Calendar	Report Basis
BalanceSheetPrevYearComp	X	NonZero	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
BalanceSheetStandard	X	NonZero	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
BalanceSheetSummary	X	NonZero	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
CustomerBalanceSummary	X	NonZero	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	no
ExpenseByVendorSummary	X	ActiveOnly	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
IncomeByCustomerSummary	X	ActiveOnly	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
IncomeTaxSummary	no	ActiveOnly	Active3 Only	TaxYear	X
InventoryStockStatusByItem	no	no	no	no	no
InventoryStockStatusByVendor	no	no	no	no	no
InventoryValuationSummary	no	no	no	no	no
PhysicalInventoryWorksheet	no	no	no	no	no
ProfitAndLossByClass	X	ActiveOnly	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
ProfitAndLossByJob	X	ActiveOnly	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
ProfitAndLossPrevYearComp	X	ActiveOnly	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
ProfitAndLossStandard	X	ActiveOnly	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
ProfitAndLossYTDComp	X	ActiveOnly	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
PurchaseByItemSummary	X	NonZero	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
PurchaseByVendorSummary	X	ActiveOnly	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
SalesByCustomerSummary	X	ActiveOnly	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
SalesByItemSummary	X	ActiveOnly	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
SalesByRepSummary	X	ActiveOnly	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
SalesTaxLiability	no	ActiveOnly	ActiveOnly	Calendar-Year	X
SalesTaxRevenueSummary	X	ActiveOnly	ActiveOnly	Calendar-Year	X
TrialBalance	no	ActiveOnly	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	X
VendorBalanceSummary	X	NonZero	ActiveOnly	FiscalYear	no

NOTE Subcolumns is a Boolean; either return subcolumns or do not return subcolumns.

ReportCalendar can be FiscalYear, CalendarYear, or TaxYear.

ReturnRows and ReturnColumns can be ActiveOnly, NonZero, or All.

Table 9-19 Column types and corresponding data types

ColType	IncludeColumn	DataType
Account	X	STRTYPE
Addr1		STRTYPE
Addr2		STRTYPE
Addr3		STRTYPE
Addr4		STRTYPE
Addr5		STRTYPE
Aging	X	INTTYPE
Amount	X	AMTTYPE
AmountDifference	X	AMTTYPE
AverageCost	X	AMTTYPE
BilledDate	X	DATETYPE
BillingStatus	X	ENUMTYPE
Blank		STRTYPE
CalculatedAmount	X	AMTTYPE
Class	X	STRTYPE
ClearedStatus	X	ENUMTYPE
CostPrice	X	AMTTYPE
CreateDate		DATETYPE
Credit	X	AMTTYPE
CustomField		STRTYPE
Date	X	DATETYPE
Debit	X	AMTTYPE
DeliveryDate	X	DATETYPE
DueDate	X	DATETYPE
Duration		TIMEINTERVAL-TYPE
EarliestReceiptDate		DATETYPE
EstimateActive	X	ENUMTYPE
FOB	X	STRTYPE
IncomeSubjectToTax	X	AMTTYPE
Invoiced	X	QUANTYPE
IsAdjustment		BOOLETYPE
Item	X	STRTYPE
ItemDesc	X	STRTYPE
ItemVendor		STRTYPE
Label		STRTYPE
LastModifiedBy	X	STRTYPE
Memo	X	STRTYPE
ModifiedTime	X	STRTYPE

ColType	IncludeColumn	DataType
Name	X	STRTYPE
NameAccountNumber	X	STRTYPE
NameAddress	X	STRTYPE
NameCity	X	STRTYPE
NameContact	X	STRTYPE
NameEmail	X	STRTYPE
NameFax	X	STRTYPE
NamePhone	X	STRTYPE
NameState	X	STRTYPE
NameZip	X	STRTYPE
OpenBalance	X	AMTTYPE
OriginalAmount	X	AMTTYPE
PaidAmount	X	AMTTYPE
PaidStatus	X	STRTYPE
PaidThroughDate	X	DATETYPE
PaymentMethod	X	STRTYPE
PayrollItem	X	STRTYPE
Percent		PERCENTTYPE
PercentChange		PERCENTTYPE
PercentOfTotalRetail		PERCENTTYPE
PercentOfTotalValue		PERCENTTYPE
PhysicalCount		INTTYPE
PONumber	X	STRTYPE
PrintStatus	X	STRTYPE
ProgressAmount	X	AMTTYPE
ProgressPercent	X	PERCENTTYPE
Quantity	X	QUANTYPE
QuantityAvailable	X	QUANTYPE
QuantityOnHand	X	QUANTYPE
QuantityOnOrder		QUANTYPE
QuantityOnSalesOrder	X	QUANTYPE
ReceivedQuantity	X	QUANTYPE
RefNumber	X	STRTYPE
ReorderPoint		QUANTYPE
RetailValueOnHand		AMTTYPE
RunningBalance	X	AMTTYPE
SalesPerWeek		QUANTYPE
SalesRep	X	STRTYPE
SalesTaxCode	X	STRTYPE
ShipDate	X	DATETYPE

ColType	IncludeColumn	DataType
ShipMethod	X	STRTYPE
ShipToAddr1		STRTYPE
ShipToAddr2		STRTYPE
ShipToAddr3		STRTYPE
ShipToAddr4		STRTYPE
ShipToAddr5		STRTYPE
SONumber		STRTYPE
SourceName	X	STRTYPE
SplitAccount	X	STRTYPE
SSNOrTaxID	X	STRTYPE
SuggestedReorder		BOOLETYPE
TaxLine	X	STRTYPE
TaxTableVersion	X	STRTYPE
Terms	X	STRTYPE
Total		AMTTYPE
TxnID (see Note below)	X	IDTYPE
TxnNumber	X	INTTYPE
TxnType	X	STRTYPE
UnitPrice	X	AMTTYPE
UserEdit	X	STRTYPE
ValueOnHand	X	AMTTYPE
WageBase	X	AMTTYPE
WageBaseTips	X	AMTTYPE

NOTE The Transaction ID does not appear in the QuickBooks user interface. This information can only be requested in a report by the SDK.

# CHAPTER 10

## MODIFYING AND DELETING TRANSACTIONS AND LIST OBJECTS

If you intend to modify transactions or list objects, you need to know what is in this chapter or you won't be successful when you send the Mod request (hint: edit sequences). Or, you may be successful in executing the Mod request, but find you are unexpectedly missing scads of your transaction line item data (hint: specifying the TxnLineID of each line you want to retain).

### Modifying Objects in General

---

The QB SDK allows modification of many list objects and transactions. For a complete listing, see the *Technical Overview*. To modify a list object, you must supply the ListID and EditSequence elements for the list to be modified. To modify a transaction, you must supply the TxnID and the EditSequence elements for the transaction to be modified.

#### Edit Sequence

---

Every time an object is changed, QuickBooks changes the value of the EditSequence element. In response to an Add, Modify, or Query request, QuickBooks returns the EditSequence. When your application attempts to modify an object, QuickBooks compares the EditSequence of your application's version of the object with the EditSequence of its own version of the object. If they match, then your application is up to date and QuickBooks continues with the operation. If they don't match, QuickBooks rejects the request and returns an error.

If the Modify request is processed successfully, QuickBooks returns an *ObjectRet* response (where *Object* is the name of the object modified).

#### One Way to Delete an Element's Value

---

To remove the current value of an object that already exists in QuickBooks, specify the element without any data in a Modify request. Listing 10-1, for example, shows clearing the sales price, purchase cost, and a parent reference.

---

Listing 10-1 Modify request

```

<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "continueOnError">
    <ItemServiceModRq requestID = "101">
      <ItemServiceMod>
        <ListID>60000-933272656</ListID>
        <EditSequence>933272656</EditSequence>
        <ParentRef>
          <ListID></ListID>
        </ParentRef>
        <SalesAndPurchaseMod>
          <SalesPrice></SalesPrice>
          <PurchaseCost></PurchaseCost>
        </SalesAndPurchaseMod>
      </ItemServiceMod>
    </ItemServiceModRq>
  </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

## Clearing References

---

Using a Modify request, you can clear a reference in one of four ways:

- Provide an empty reference:

```
<ClassRef />
```

- Provide an empty ListID:

```

<ClassRef>
  <ListID></ListID>
</ClassRef>

```

- Provide an empty FullName tag:

```

<ClassRef>
  <FullName></FullName>
</ClassRef>

```

- Provide an empty ListID and an empty FullName:

```

<ClassRef>
  <ListID></ListID>
  <FullName></FullName>
</ClassRef>

```

## Clearing Aggregates

---

Clearing an aggregate such as an address or shipping address is similar to clearing a reference in a Modify request. You can either provide empty versions of all the elements in the aggregate, or you can simply provide an empty aggregate:

```
<BillAddress>
  <Addr1></Addr1>
  <Addr2></Addr2>
  <Addr3></Addr3>
  <Addr4></Addr4>
  <City></City>
  <State></State>
  <PostalCode></PostalCode>
  <Country></Country>
</BillAddress>
```

or

```
<BillAddress />
```

If only a subset of an aggregate is provided in the Modify request, the subset is modified and the rest of the aggregate is preserved. For example, if you specify only the PostalCode in a Modify request for an address that was added in a previous request, only the PostalCode field will be changed.

## How to Modify Transactions

---

This section provides additional details on modifying transactions. If you’re mainly interested in an overview at this point, you can skip the remaining sections on modifying transactions and continue reading the section on “Deleting an Object,” beginning on page 134.

### **IMPORTANT**

Unless noted otherwise, if you are making changes to **any** line item, you need to specify all of the line items to be retained in the transaction. Otherwise, any lines omitted in the transaction Mod operation will be dropped!

Currently, the following transactions can be modified:

- Bills
- BillPaymentCheck
- BuildAssembly
- Charge
- Check
- CreditCardCharge
- CreditCardCredit
- Credit Memos
- Deposits
- Estimates
- Invoices

- JournalEntry
- ItemReceipt
- PriceLevel
- Purchase Orders
- ReceivePayment
- Sales Orders
- SalesReceipt
- Statement Charges
- TimeTracking
- VendorCredit

Each transaction Modify request must include the following fields:

- Transaction ID (TxnID) of the transaction to modify (obtained from the *TxnRet* object, where “*Txn*” substitutes for the exact name of the transaction)
- Edit sequence (to ensure that changes are being made to the most recent copy of the transaction)

Each request message (for example, *PurchaseOrderModRq*) has a corresponding response message (for example, *PurchaseOrderModRs*). A *TxnRet* object is returned each time a Modify request succeeds, or when the provided edit sequence is invalid. If the Modify request fails for a reason other than an invalid edit sequence, the *TxnModRs* contains a status code and status message. (A *TxnRet* object is not returned in this case.)

## Parts of a Transaction

---

For modification purposes, transactions consist of two parts: a table of *line items*, which is shown in the circled areas of Figure 10-1, and the transaction *body*, which is everything else in the transaction form. Rules for modifying the components of the body of a transaction are slightly different from the rules for modifying pieces of the line item table, as described in the following paragraphs.

## Modifying the Body of a Transaction

---

To modify one of the components in the body of a transaction, specify the element tag with the new value. For example:

```
<PurchaseOrderModRq>
  <PurchaseOrderMod>
    <TxnID>100-100052155</TxnID>
    <EditSequence>100052155</EditSequence>
    <ShipToEntityRef>
      <FullName>Tom Jones</FullName>
    </ShipToEntityRef>
  </PurchaseOrderMod>
</PurchaseOrderModRq>
```

If an element has a default value, specifying an empty element tag results in the default value being used. If an element has no default value, specifying an empty element tag clears the value.

Some fields in a given transaction require a value and cannot be cleared. For example, in a purchase order, the due date, expected date, and transaction date must be filled in. Also, some Boolean values such as printing state cannot be cleared because there is no default value for the logical state. In the *API Reference*, see the Modify request for each modifiable transaction for a table that lists the fields that can be cleared within that transaction (for example, see PurchaseOrderModRq, InvoiceModRq, and so on).

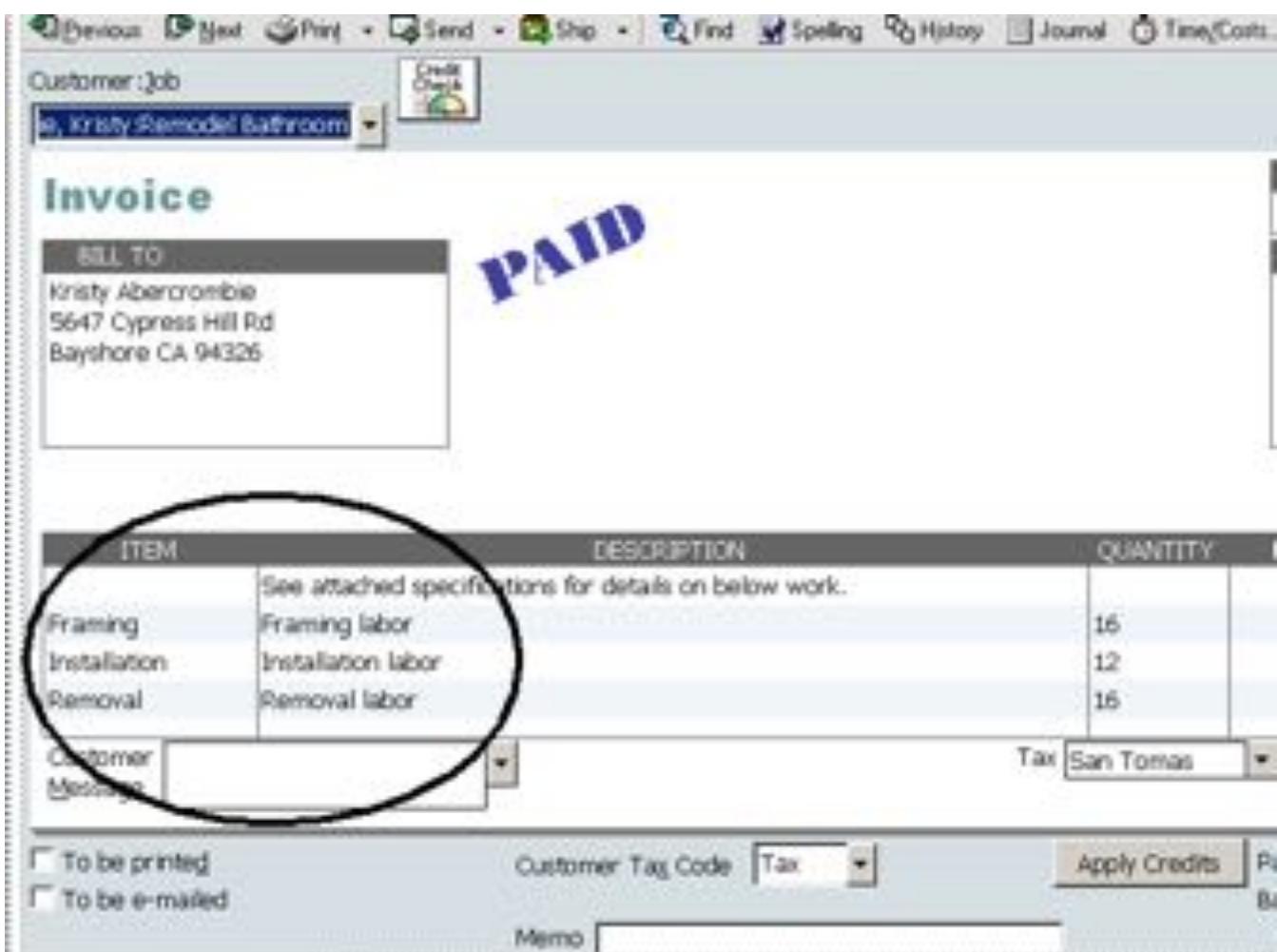


Figure 10-1 Body and line items within a transaction

## Modifying Transaction Body Without Modifying Line Items

If you are not making any changes to the line item table of a transaction, do not include references to any of the lines in the transaction Modify request. The line item table will be retained as is, and ignoring the table completely will speed up processing of the request.

## Shortcut Way to Retaining a Line Item Exactly As Is

Remember: if you modify *any* line item, you need to specify *all* of the other line items or else they will be dropped as a result of the Mod. However, you need not fully specify the line item with all its ItemRef, Quantity, and other elements. You need only specify its TxnLineID as follows:

```
<PurchaseOrderLineMod>
  <TxnLineID>101</TxnLineID>
</PurchaseOrderLineMod>
```

This will retain the line item exactly as it was prior to the Mod.

## Modifying a Line Item

---

To modify a line item, specify the TxnLineID and any new data for the elements in the line item.

## Inserting a New Line Item In a Mod Operation

---

You can add new lines to an existing transaction. However, a common mistake is to use the ItemLineAdd aggregate. That won't work. You have to use the **ItemLineMod** aggregate with the TxnLineID element set to -1 (and then specify the new data for that new line).

This new line can be used for a new line item, or it can be an empty line used as a separator or comment in the transaction table.

## Deleting a Line Item

---

To delete a line item from the table, simply omit it from the Modify request.

## Example: Modifying Transaction Lines

---

The following example shows modifying line items in a transaction table. Line item 1 has changes made to its rate and quantity values. Line item 2 has a change made to its description. Line item 3 does not change but still needs to be specified in the Modify request in order to be retained.

```
<PurchaseOrderModRq>
  <PurchaseOrderMod>
    <TxnID>100-100052155</TxnID>
    <EditSequence>100052155</EditSequence>
    .
    .
    .
    <!-- modifying the quantity and rate of the itemLine1 -->
    <PurchaseOrderLineMod>
      <TxnLineID>101</TxnLineID>
      <Quantity>12</Quantity>
      <Rate>10.00</Rate>
    </PurchaseOrderLineMod>

    <!-- modifying the description of the itemLine2 -->
    <PurchaseOrderLineMod>
```

```

<TxnLineID>102</TxnLineID>
  <Desc>new description</Desc>
</PurchaseOrderLineMod>

<!-- even if the itemline3 doesn't change, it needs to be
     specified in the Modify request.
     Omitting the itemline3 is interpreted as a deletion -->
<PurchaseOrderLineMod>
  <TxnLineID>103</TxnLineID>
</PurchaseOrderLineMod>
</PurchaseOrderMod>
</PurchaseOrderModRq>

```

## Example: Modifying Groups within the Line Item Table

If you want to retain a group within a modified table exactly as is, you can pass in `<TxnLineGroupMod>` (for example, `PurchaseOrderLineGroupMod`) and specify the `TxnLineID` for the group. This shortcut indicates to keep the group and its items as originally specified. However, if you want to change any of the items in the group, you need to pass in the whole group and its items again (the “new look”).

The following example shows inserting a new line item line into an item group. The table below shows the invoice lines before and after the addition. The invoice has one item group that has two components: `service1` and `service2`. A new line is added following `service1`.

Original invoice table	Invoice table after modification
ItemLine1 ( <code>TxnLineID=101</code> ) - Group start	ItemLine1 ( <code>TxnLineID=101</code> ) - Group start
ItemLine2 ( <code>TxnLineID=102</code> ) - service1	ItemLine2 ( <code>TxnLineID=102</code> ) - service1
ItemLine3 ( <code>TxnLineID=103</code> ) - service 2	ItemLine3 ( <code>TxnLineID=-1</code> ) - new line (service3)
	ItemLine4 ( <code>TxnLineID=103</code> ) - service2

```

<InvoiceModRq>
  <InvoiceMod>
    <TxnID>100-100052155</TxnID>
    <EditSequence>100052155</EditSequence>
    ...
    ...
    <!-- no changes to item group start -->
    <InvoiceLineGroupMod>
      <TxnLineID>101</TxnLineID>

      <InvoiceLineMod>
        <TxnLineID>102</TxnLineID>
      </InvoiceLineMod>

    <!-- Pass in a TxnLineID = -1 indicates that it is a new itemline -->
    <InvoiceLineMod>

```

```

<TxnLineID>-1</TxnLineID>
<ItemRef>
    <FullName>service3</FullName>
</ItemRef>
<Quantity>10</Quantity>
<Rate>3.20</Rate>
</InvoiceLineMod>

<InvoiceLineMod>
    <TxnLineID>103</TxnLineID>
</InvoiceLineMod>

<!-- the object representing the end of the group is not returned in the
InvoiceRet object (or on any transaction ret). Therefore, the user cannot
provide its TxnLineID. You cannot change directly the line representing the
End of the group or delete it. --&gt;

&lt;/InvoiceLineGroupMod&gt;

&lt;/InvoiceMod&gt;
&lt;/InvoiceModRq&gt;
</pre>

```

## Example: Modifying Item Lines in an Item Group

---

The following example shows modifying item lines in an item group. The table below shows the invoice lines before and after the modifications. The invoice has one item group that has two components: service1 and service2. Changes are made here to the item group itself (quantity) as well as to the two service item lines.

Original invoice table	Invoice table after modification
ItemLine1 (TxnLineID=101) - Group start	ItemLine1 (TxnLineID=101) - Group start: change the quantity
ItemLine2 (TxnLineID=102) - service 1	ItemLine2 (TxnLineID=102) - service1: change description
Item Line3 (TxnLineID=103) - service 2	ItemLine3 (TxnLineID=103) - service 2: change item name to service 3, quantity and rate

```

<InvoiceModRq>
    <InvoiceMod>
        <TxnID>100-100052155</TxnID>
        <EditSequence>100052155</EditSequence>
        ...
        ...
        <InvoiceLineGroupMod>
            <TxnLineID>101</TxnLineID>
            <Quantity>15</Quantity>

            <InvoiceLineMod>
                <TxnLineID>102</TxnLineID>

```

```

        <Desc>new description</Desc>
    </InvoiceLineMod>

    <InvoiceLineMod>
        <TxnLineID>103</TxnLineID>
        <ItemRef>
            <FullName>service3</FullName>
        </ItemRef>
        <Quantity>10</Quantity>
        <Rate>3.20</Rate>
    </InvoiceLineMod>

    </InvoiceLineGroupMod>
</InvoiceMod>
</InvoiceModRq>

```

## About Modifying Rate, Quantity, and Amount Line Item Fields

---

Many transactions, including purchase orders and invoices, include Rate, Quantity, and Amount elements. The general formula used to calculate rate, quantity, and amount is

`Quantity * Rate = Amount`

However, since QuickBooks always calculates these values, giving rate and amount in the same request is not permitted. If you do supply both values in a request, QuickBooks enters a warning in the log file, and the rate you supply is ignored. QuickBooks calculates the rate as

`Amount / Quantity`

Note that Amount, Rate, and Quantity fields cannot be cleared.

## Deleting an Object

---

Unlike the many forms of Add and Mod requests, which specify the object explicitly (for example, CustomerAdd, InvoiceAdd, CreditMemoAdd, and so on), delete requests take only one form for transactions (TxnDelRq) and one form for list objects (ListDelRq). You cannot delete a whole list at once; instead, you delete individual objects in the list, such as a single employee or customer.

When you delete a transaction or a list object, you need to specify its QuickBooks ID (the TxnID or ListID) and the object type. See Chapter 3 of the *Technical Overview* for a list of objects that can be deleted.

## Must be in Single-User Mode (Except for Enterprise)

---

To delete a list object, you must have the QuickBooks company file open in single-user mode. However, for QuickBooks Enterprise edition, it is possible to delete list items in multi user mode.

## Accountant Copy Restrictions

---

Some transaction and list operations may fail if an Accountant's Copy has been made. Beginning with QB 2009 and qbXML 8.0, you can use the Accountant Copy Exists request to check for this before running requests that will fail if the accountant copy exists.

## Locked Transactions

---

A *locked transaction* is a transaction that is currently being edited in the user interface. The QuickBooks SDK also locks transactions for the time required to write them during an Add or Modify operation. If your application attempts to delete or void a locked transaction, you will receive an error (status code 3175). You will also receive an error if you attempt to delete or void a transaction (for example, a sales receipt) while a linked transaction (such as a deposit) is locked in the user interface (error 3176 “related object is in use.”).

For this reason, if you receive status code 3175, you will not know whether the locked transaction is the one you are trying to delete or void, or one that is linked to it.

## About Closed Transactions

---

Under certain conditions, you can delete (or void) a transaction that was created prior to the company's closing date. There must be no password set by the QuickBooks Admin under “edit transaction on or before date” in the Accounting preferences. Also, the user must have the appropriate permissions, as described in the QuickBooks user interface.

Before a qualified user can delete or void a transaction from within the QuickBooks user interface, the following warning appears: “The transaction's date is prior to the closing date for this company file. This will affect your accounting. Are you sure you want to make this change?” Your application should check the company preferences (using a PreferencesQueryRq) to find out the closing date of the company so you can issue a similar warning when your users try to delete a transaction that is already closed.

If your application tries to delete or void a closed transaction, you will receive status code 3161.

### **NOTE**

Starting with QB 2009 and qbXML 8.0, closing date preferences for the company file can be obtained from a PreferencesQuery.

## About Permissions

---

If your application attempts an operation without having the correct permissions, you will receive status code 3260 (“Insufficient permission level to perform this action”). For information about permissions, see the QuickBooks Desktop API Reference.

## Voiding an Object

---

Use a TxnVoidRq request message to void a transaction. See Chapter 3 of the *Technical Overview* for a list of transactions that can be voided.

- *Voiding* a transaction changes the transaction amount to zero, but leaves a record of the transaction in QuickBooks. It is not possible to void a list object.
- *Deleting* a transaction removes the transaction from QuickBooks altogether.

A TxnVoidRq contains two elements, both required: the TxnVoidType element indicates the transaction type, and the TxnID identifies the exact transaction to be voided. A void request will return a TxnVoidRs response message, which can include the original information that was sent in the request, plus TimeCreated, TimeModified, and the RefNumber of the transaction that was voided.

# CHAPTER 11

## DATA EXT: USING CUSTOM FIELDS AND PRIVATE DATA

If you want to store a **SMALL** amount of your own data in QuickBooks list objects or in transactions using the QB SDK, there are two ways to go about it. You can choose to store the data in *custom fields*, which are public, viewable within the QuickBooks UI, and can be printed along with other transaction data. Or, you can use *private data*, which are visible only to your application and to other applications that are granted access by your application.

Both of these methods (customer field and private data) use the same SDK mechanism, which is the *data extension*, or “data ext” in common QB SDK parlance. This mechanism does have some quirks, which results in a fair number of questions for us here at IDG. So, if you’re new to this feature, you’ll want to read this chapter carefully.

### **IMPORTANT**

Data extensions are really meant for **SMALL** amounts of data: a reference to something in your database, and so forth. Currently, the maximum amount of DataExt data for a given object (for example, customer John Smith) is 4096 bytes. This is the amount available for all private data from all applications!

## Core Differences Between Custom Fields and Private Data

Table 11-1 shows the key differences between public custom fields and the private data.

Table 11-1 Things You Can and Can't Do with Custom Fields and Private Data

Can You Do This With It?	Custom Field	Private Data
Can a QuickBooks user access it (view/print) within the QuickBooks UI?  (This means add, modify, delete via QuickBooks UI as well.)	Yes	No
Use them with virtually any object?	No* *Can be defined only for customers, employees, items, and vendors.  Can be inherited by certain transactions from customer and item (see "A Cool Feature: Transactions Inherit From Customer, Item").	Yes
Use them for a variety of data types?	No* Must be STR255 type, (string, max 255 chars)	Yes
Define as many as I want?	No* *QuickBooks allows a fixed number of custom fields for customer, for item, for vendor, and for employee.  This relatively small fixed number must be shared by the end user and all integrated solutions!	Yes* You can define as many as you want, but you cannot have more than 4096 bytes of private data per any given object (e.g., customer John Smith)
Attach it directly to a transaction?	Yes and No* Yes, beginning with qbXML spec 6.0, you can use the Other, Other1, and Other2 custom fields built into transactions.  No, you cannot attach any other custom fields. You must define custom fields for customer or item, and the transaction inherits these.	Yes* But not to transaction lines! (There is no way to retrieve the private data from transaction lines.)
Access it from any SDK integrated application?	Yes	No* *Only to those application that know the GUID used in the creation of the data ext definition.

<b>Can You Do This With It?</b>	<b>Custom Field</b>	<b>Private Data</b>
Use it in transaction lines?	Yes	No* *Not returned in queries
Pull its data into a column on reports via the SDK?	No* This is not available via the SDK report features.  However, custom field data can be displayed in detail reports. In this case, the QuickBooks user must customize the detail report to include the custom field	No

## How Do I Create Data Extensions?

---

On the theory that a picture is worth a thousand words, let's start off with a couple of diagrams.

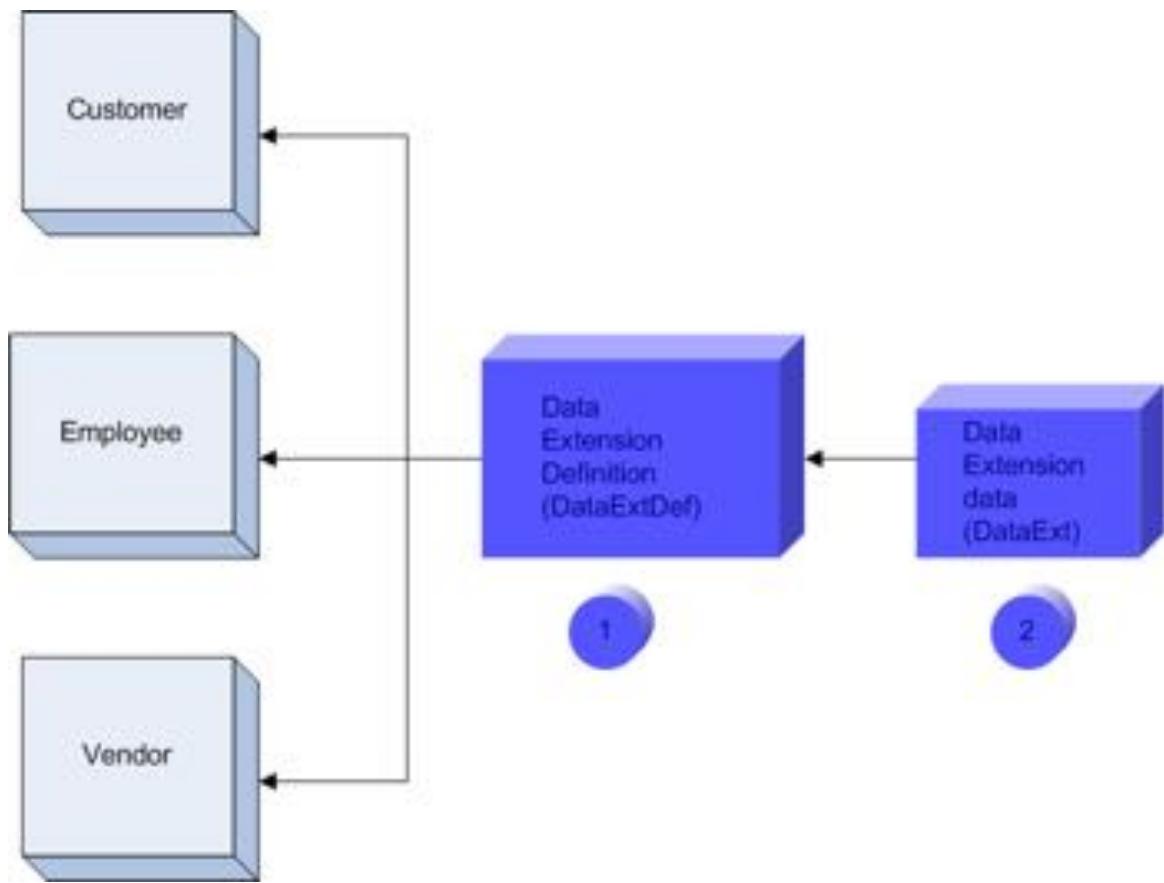


Figure 11-1 Order of creation: Data Ext Definition created first, then Data Ext

As we hope to convey in Figure 11-1, you start off your custom field or private data work by creating the data ext definition *first*, during which process you specify the objects you want to assign this definition to. We happened to pick customer, employee, and vendor, which will work for both custom data and private data.

After you create the definition and assign it to one or more object types, you can write the actual custom data or private data to an instance of the object that has the definition, as we show in Figure 11-2.

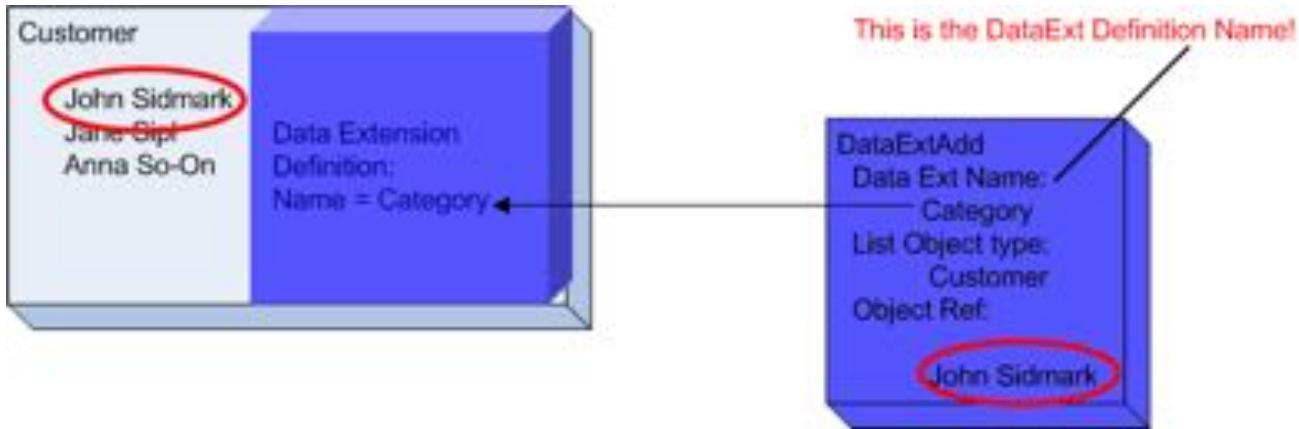


Figure 11-2 Writing DataExt data to a customer instance: John Sidmark

As indicated in Figure 11-2, we have already added a data ext definition named “Category” to the object type Customer. Because Customer now has the Category definition, we can write Category data to an individual customer, say, John Sidmark. You do this via the SDK request DataExtAdd or DataExtMod.

The SDK knows to write the data to the John Sidmark record because the ObjectRef inside the DataExtAdd specifies “John Sidmark”. The SDK knows *how* to write the data because the DataExtAdd tells it to use the definition “Category.”

## Enough Pictures: Show Me Some Code

Listing 11-1 shows how to define a custom field extension and then write data to it. The sample adds the data ext def “Category” to the Customer object type using the QBFC library in VB. It then uses that definition to write the data “Gold Member” to a customer, John Sidmark.

Listing 11-1 Adding a DataExtDef to Customer and using it to write data to a customer (QBFC)

```

' Build a 6.0 request set and create a data ext def add request
Dim DataExt_Set As IMsgSetRequest
Set DataExt_Set = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 6, 0)
DataExt_Set.Attributes.OnError = roeContinue
Dim MyDataExtDef As IDataExtDefAdd
Set MyDataExtDef = DataExt_Set.AppendDataExtDefAddRq

' We're making this a custom field, so use 0 for ownerID, STR255TYPE for the type
MyDataExtDef.DataExtName.setValue "Category"
MyDataExtDef.OwnerID.setValue "0"
MyDataExtDef.DataExtType.setValue detSTR255TYPE
MyDataExtDef.AssignToObjectList.Add atoCustomer

```

```

' Write data to the custom field using DataExtMod, as a shortcut
' For private data, our first write to an object's data ext MUST be a DataExtAdd
Dim MyDataExtMod As IDataExtMod
Set MyDataExtMod = DataExt_Set.AppendDataExtModRq

MyDataExtMod.DataExtName.SetValue "Category"
MyDataExtMod.DataExtValue.SetValue "Gold Member"
MyDataExtMod.OwnerID.SetValue "0"
MyDataExtMod.ORListTxn.ListDataExt.ListDataExtType.SetValue ldetCustomer
MyDataExtMod.ORListTxn.ListDataExt.ListObjRef.FullName.SetValue "John Sidmark"

' Now send the request to QB
Dim MyDataExt_resp As IMsgSetResponse
Set MyDataExt_resp = SessionManager.DoRequests(DataExt_Set)

SessionManager.EndSession
SessionManager.CloseConnection
Set SessionManager = Nothing

```

In the sample, notice that we happened to send the data ext def and then write to it within the same message set. If you do this, you need to build the data ext def first in the request set, preceding the DataExtAdd/Mod that uses it. Of course, you aren't required to do it this way. You could add your data ext definition by itself and then later use it in your DataExtAdd/Mod when you need to write data.

If you want to do the same thing in qbXML, here is how it would look:

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 11-2 qbXML to add a new DataExtDef

```

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="6.0"?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
    <DataExtDefAddRq requestID = "0">
      <DataExtDefAdd>
        <OwnerID>0</OwnerID>
        <DataExtName>Category</DataExtName>
        <DataExtType>STR255TYPE</DataExtType>
        <AssignToObject>Customer</AssignToObject>
      </DataExtDefAdd>
    </DataExtDefAddRq>
    <DataExtModRq requestID = "1">
      <DataExtMod>
        <OwnerID>0</OwnerID>

```

```
<DataExtName>Category</DataExtName>
<ListDataExtType>Customer</ListDataExtType>
<ListObjRef>
< FullName>John Sidmark</FullName>
</ListObjRef>
<DataExtValue>Gold Member</DataExtValue>
</DataExtMod>
</DataExtModRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

## What Makes a Data Ext Definition a Custom Field vs Private?

---

The die is cast, so to speak, when you create the data ext definition (DataExtDefAdd). You specify at that time whether the data ext definition is custom or private and you cannot go back later and modify it to become the other type.

If you look at Listing 11-2, which creates a custom data ext definition, notice the line

```
<OwnerID>0</OwnerID>
```

That is the magic code. The OwnerID of zero is reserved for custom fields. If you wanted to make it private data, you would use a GUID here, like this:

```
<OwnerID>{E09C86CF-9D6E-4EF2-BCBE-4D66B6B0F754}</OwnerID>
```

### But There is More To It

---

If you're creating a custom field, you have to build two other things in your DataExtDefAdd correctly. Check these two lines from Listing 11-2:

```
<DataExtType>STR255TYPE</DataExtType>
<AssignToObject>Customer</AssignToObject>
```

For a custom field definition, the DataExtType is *always* STR255TYPE. Also, the AssignToObject must be Customer, or Employee, or Vendor, or Item.

## A Cool Feature: Transactions Inherit From Customer, Item

---

You cannot create a data ext definition for transactions via the SDK. Does this mean you can't use custom fields in transactions? No, because transactions inherit custom field definitions from Customer and Item. (Nothing is inherited from vendor or employee.)

### Inheriting from Customer to Transactions

---

If you were to run the qbXML in Listing 11-2, which builds a custom field definition and assigns it to the Customer object, this is what you would get in the response:

```

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
- <QBXML>
  - <QBXMLMsgsRs>
    - <DataExtDefAddRs requestID="0" statusCode="0"
      statusSeverity="Info" statusMessage="Status OK">
      - <DataExtDefRet>
        <OwnerID>0</OwnerID>
        <DataExtName>Category</DataExtName>
        <DataExtType>STR255TYPE</DataExtType>
        <AssignToObject>Customer</AssignToObject>
        <AssignToObject>CreditMemo</AssignToObject>
        <AssignToObject>Estimate</AssignToObject>
        <AssignToObject>Invoice</AssignToObject>
        <AssignToObject>SalesOrder</AssignToObject>
        <AssignToObject>SalesReceipt</AssignToObject>
      </DataExtDefRet>
    </DataExtDefAddRs>
  </QBXMLMsgsRs>
</QBXML>

```

Figure 11-3 Response to a custom field DataExtDefAddRq for Customer

We only assigned our data extension definition to Customer. How come all those other transactions are shown as assigned as well? This is a useful feature of custom fields.

When you add a custom field definition, that definition automatically propagates to all transaction types that inherit Customer custom fields. This means that you can write (via DataExtAdd or DataExtMod) data to those transactions using the data ext definitions in effect for Customer.

### Transactions That Inherit Custom Fields from Customer

Here is the propagation for customer:

- Customer
- CreditMemo
- Estimate
- Invoice
- SalesOrder
- SalesReceipt

### IMPORTANT

The custom fields propagated from Customer are available at the transaction-level, NOT to the line items! For line items, you'll need to use the Item propagation, as we show below.

## Inheriting from Item to Transactions

---

Suppose we replaced “Customer” with “Item” in the AssignToObject element in Listing 11-2 and run the request. Here’s what we would get:

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
- <QBXML>
- <QBXMLMsgsRs>
- <DataExtDefAddRs requestID="0" statusCode="0"
    statusSeverity="Info" statusMessage="Status OK">
- <DataExtDefRet>
    <OwnerID>0</OwnerID>
    <DataExtName>Item Category</DataExtName>
    <DataExtType>STR255TYPE</DataExtType>
    <AssignToObject>Item</AssignToObject>
    <AssignToObject>CreditMemo</AssignToObject>
    <AssignToObject>Estimate</AssignToObject>
    <AssignToObject>Invoice</AssignToObject>
    <AssignToObject>PurchaseOrder</AssignToObject>
    <AssignToObject>SalesOrder</AssignToObject>
    <AssignToObject>SalesReceipt</AssignToObject>
</DataExtDefRet>
</DataExtDefAddRs>
</QBXMLMsgsRs>
</QBXML>
```

Figure 11-4 Response to a custom field DataExtDefAddRq for Item

Again, the custom field definition assigned to Item automatically propagates to the transactions shown, *and can be used at the line item level!*

## Transactions That Inherit Custom Fields from Item

Here is the propagation for item:

- Item
- CreditMemo
- Estimate

- Invoice
- PurchaseOrder
- SalesOrder
- SalesReceipt

## Do Individual Transactions Also Inherit Custom Field Values?

---

Suppose a customer, for example, John Smith, has a custom field named Birthday, and that custom field is turned on in the template being used by the transaction (see “[Making Custom Fields Show Up In QuickBooks and in Print](#)”). When I create a invoice for John Smith, does the Birthday field in my Invoice have the Birthday value from John Smith?

Yes. The value from a customer custom field is inherited by the transaction using it. You can modify this value to any value you want in the transaction, however, without affecting the John Smith customer record or any other transaction using that custom field.

## Writing to Custom Fields Only Affects the Current Transaction

---

As you specify the customer, items, and so forth to build a transaction, the values of the custom fields inherited from the customer and items referenced by the invoice are copied from the customer and the items. Each transaction then stores a private copy of those custom field values

For example, suppose you have a custom field on the customer that contains a contract number. You could create many invoices for that customer and set a different contract number in each one. Similarly, you could build an invoice with multiple line items, each using the same item but using a different color and material in each line—without affecting any default setting that might be in the customer or item record itself.

## How Do I Get DataExt Data Back Using Queries?

---

To get the values of *custom fields* assigned to a list item or transaction, include the OwnerID filter with a value of 0 (zero) in the query for that list item or transaction. For *private data*, instead of the value 0 for the OwnerID, use the GUID that is your OwnerID for the private data you want back. (Remember that you cannot get private data from transaction lines!)

Here’s a customer query that includes all custom field data:

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<?qbxml version="6.0"?>
<QBXML>
    <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="continueOnError">
        <CustomerQueryRq requestID="2">
            <OwnerID>0</OwnerID>
        </CustomerQueryRq>
    </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

and here's the response. Notice the DataExt stuff is always the last thing in the Ret.

```

- <CustomerRet>
    <ListID>80000003-1160193733</ListID>
    <TimeCreated>2006-10-06T21:02:13-08:00</TimeCreated>
    <TimeModified>2006-10-06T21:06:12-08:00</TimeModified>
    <EditSequence>1160193972</EditSequence>
    <Name>John Sidmark</Name>
    <FullName>John Sidmark</FullName>
    <IsActive>true</IsActive>
    <Sublevel>0</Sublevel>
    <Balance>0.00</Balance>
    <TotalBalance>0.00</TotalBalance>
    <JobStatus>None</JobStatus>
- <DataExtRet>
    <OwnerID>0</OwnerID>
    <DataExtName>Category</DataExtName>
    <DataExtType>STR255TYPE</DataExtType>
    <DataExtValue>Gold Member</DataExtValue>
</DataExtRet>
</CustomerRet>

```

Figure 11-5 DataExt values in a Query response

Notice that you can query only using the OwnerID, not the actual DataExt values.

## Writing Data to a Data Extension

If you are writing to a custom field, you simply use DataExtModRq, as shown in Listing 11-2.

If you are writing private data, the first time you write to that data extension for a given object (e.g., customer John Smith), you must use DataExtAdd. *All* subsequent writes to that data extension for that object MUST use DataExtMod.

## Clearing a Value from a Data Extension

---

To clear a value from the data extension in a given object, whether the extension is a custom field or private data, you must use DataExtDel.

## Deleting a Data Extension Definition: Limitations

---

Once you create a private data ext definition AND assign it to an object type, you cannot delete that definition using the SDK. It may appear that you can, because the DataExtDefDel request will appear to succeed. But the private data ext def is still there: you won't be able to write to it anymore, nor will you be able to create another private data ext definition with that same name and OwnerID.

You cannot use DateExtDefDel to delete any custom field definition whether the definition was assigned in the UI or via the SDK. Moreover, from the SDK, *you will not be able to access a custom field that was deleted from the UI and then re-added with the same name.*

## Deleting Custom Fields From the QuickBooks UI

---

You'll notice you cannot get rid of custom fields from the transaction template. For custom fields inherited from Customer, you need to go to the Customer Edit form and click on Define Fields to bring up the custom fields form and delete them there.

For custom fields inherited from Item, go to the Edit Item form, click on Custom Fields, and click on Define Fields, where you can delete the custom fields.

## Making Custom Fields Show Up In QuickBooks and in Print

---

We've already shown how to create the custom fields, write to them, and get data back in queries. If you stop here, you will be able to write data to the fields and get data back in queries. But your end user won't be able to see those custom fields in the expected QuickBooks transaction forms or in the transactions printed from QuickBooks.

Why is this? The transaction forms, for example, the Create Invoice form, use a transaction template that QuickBooks itself uses to display the transaction and to print it. By default, any custom fields that are added via the SDK are indeed available in the various templates, but they are turned off: they won't be visible or be printable. You need to tell your user to turn them on.

How do you do this? Lets take a look at Figure 11-6, which shows the template dropdown selection list in the Create Invoices form, with the current selection of the Product Invoice Modern template.

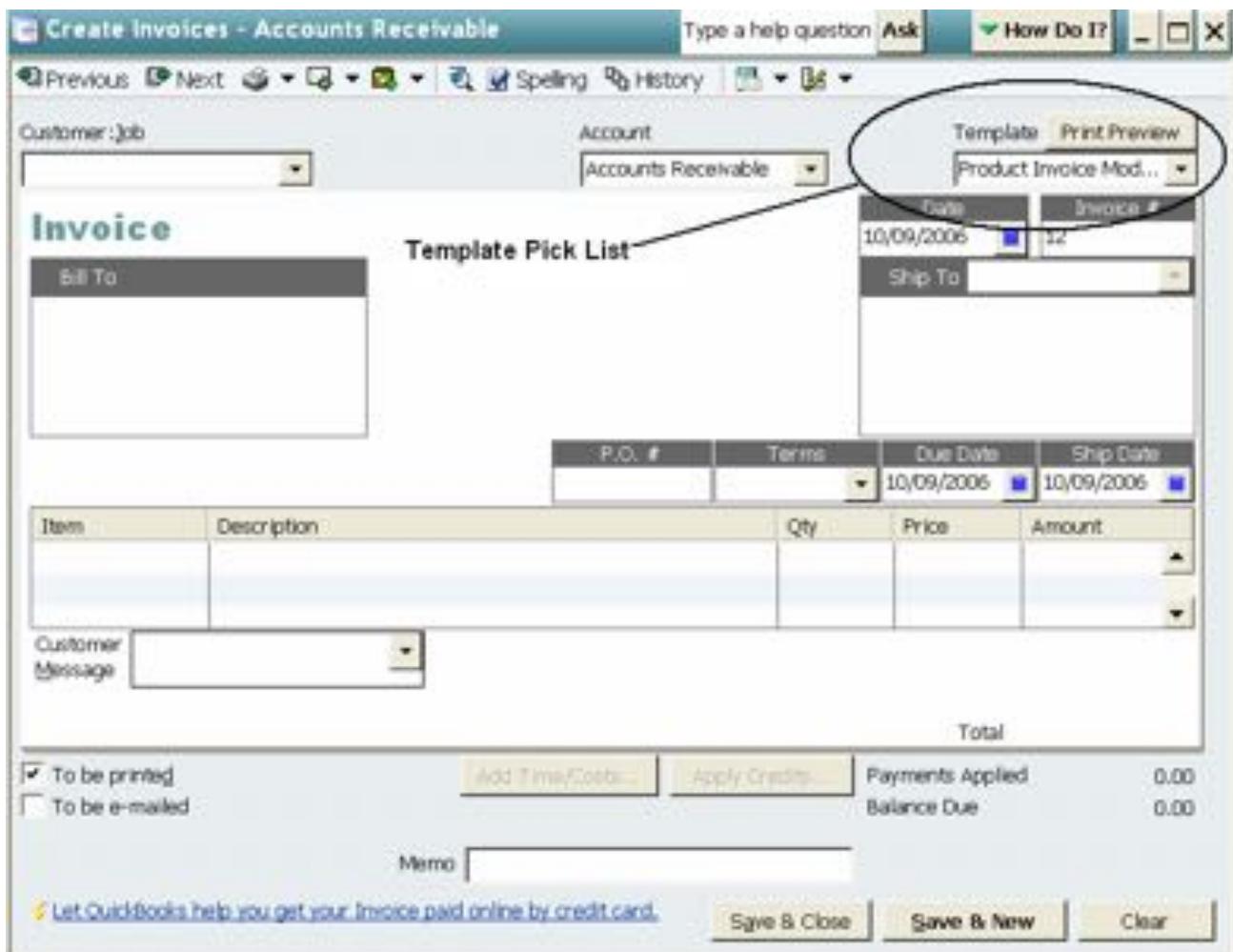


Figure 11-6 Template currently in effect for an invoice

From this form, we see no way to get to the template to edit it and turn on the custom Fields

What we need the QuickBooks user to do is to edit the templates directly. To do this, the user

1. Opens the templates list by selecting Lists->Templates from the main QB menubar.
2. Double-click the template being used for that transaction to bring up the Basic Customization form for it.
3. Click on the Additional Customization button at the bottom of the form. *Note:* doing this on some templates will result in the user being warned that some customizations may cause the transaction to print improperly on some Intuit pre-printed invoice forms! This is one issue you'll need to investigate in advance and tell the user what to do. If the user chooses to continue, the Additional Customization form will be displayed, which looks like this:

Additional Customization

Selected Template  
Copy of: Professional Invoice M  Template is inactive

Header **Columns** Prog. Col. Footer Print

	Screen	Print	Order	Title
Service Date	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Service Date
Item	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Item
Description	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	Description
Quantity	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	3	Qty
Other 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	
Other 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	
Rate	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	Rate
Amount	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	5	Amount
Our custom field	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Our custom field
Ours too!	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Ours too!

Unchecked by default

4. In the form, the Header tab is for custom fields inherited from Customer, or the “built-in” custom field named Other. The Columns tab is for custom fields inherited from Item, or the built-in Other1 and Other2 custom fields. We’ve added two custom fields to Item, named “Our custom field” and “Ours too!” Notice that the Screen and Print checkboxes for this are not checked, by default. This means our two custom fields won’t be visible in QuickBooks and won’t print.
5. The user must check those checkboxes to get the custom fields to display and print.
6. If the user does check these items, the user next needs to return to the Basic Customization form and use the layout editor to add the new headers and/or columns in a way that will display/print as desired. Again, changing the layout can impact the use of Intuit pre-printed forms.
7. After the user makes the custom fields visible/printable as we’ve already described, and uses the layout editor to position the new custom fields, the user is finished and the fields will display and print as expected.

## I Want to Use Private Data: How Do I Use GUIDs?

---

All Microsoft development environments include an application called GUIDGen.exe which will create a GUID for you that you can copy and paste into your application. You generally generate the GUID for your app ONCE and hard-code it into a constant variable in your application when you are developing your app. You would *not* want to generate a GUID at runtime because then you wouldn't be able to get at the data extensions you created in the previous run.

As a design consideration, you should use one GUID OwnerID for your application, not for each individual data extension. In other words, one application, one GUID for many DataExt definitions. However, from the technical perspective, you can have as many GUIDs as you want.

### The Format of the GUID within the Request

---

Notice the GUIDs are placed in the <OwnerID> field with curly braces around the value, like this:

```
<OwnerID>{E09C86CF-9D6E-4EF2-BCBE-4D66B6B0F769}</OwnerID>
```

### How Do I Retrieve OwnerIDs?

---

You cannot retrieve OwnerIDs from QuickBooks. Private data would not be so private if anyone could discover your GUID and thus write values, perhaps unexpected ones, to your application.

### What is an OwnerIDList?

---

An OwnerIDList is used in a CompanyQuery to specify a list of GUIDs for private data when you are doing a company query and want to see private data. You'll get back all the private data that you specify in the OwnerIDList.

## Using Other, Other1, Other2 in Transactions

---

Beginning with qbXML 6.0 and QB 2007, you can write to the Other, Other1, and Other2 fields that are available to transactions. The Other field is used for the transaction Header. Other1 and Other2 are used for the transaction Columns (that is, the values will appear in the transaction line items).

The Other, Other1, and Other2 fields are available in the transaction templates, but these are not turned on by default. The QuickBooks user needs to turn these on, as described in “Making Custom Fields Show Up In QuickBooks and in Print”.

## Writing Custom Field Data to Transaction Lines

---

Prior to QuickBooks 2006 and qbXML spec 5.0, in order to write data to custom fields in transaction lines, you had to create the transaction first, then invoke DataExtMod on each line. As a result, the transaction would get saved once for each invocation of DataExtMod, which could lead to poor performance.

Beginning with QuickBooks 2006 and qbXML spec 5.0, you can add custom data directly in the transaction lines as you create them. The following code sample shows you how to do this:

### Listing 11-3 Writing custom data to a transaction line

```
' Assume that invoiceAdd has already been constructed, except for the line items.  
Dim orInvoiceLineAdd1 As IORInvoiceLineAdd  
' Create the first line item for the invoice  
Set orInvoiceLineAdd1 = invoiceAdd.ORInvoiceLineAddList.Append  
  
' Set the values for the first invoice line  
orInvoiceLineAdd1.InvoiceLineAdd.ItemRef.FullName.setValue "Installation"  
orInvoiceLineAdd1.InvoiceLineAdd.Quantity.setValue 2  
  
' Now add your custom field value:  
Dim MyDataExt As IDataExt  
Set MyDataExt = orInvoiceLineAdd1.InvoiceLineAdd.DataExtList.Append  
MyDataExt.OwnerID.setValue ("0")  
MyDataExt.DataExtName.setValue ("Truck")  
MyDataExt.DataExtValue.setValue ("Dodge")  
  
' Just for grins, lets add a second line item  
' Set the values for the second invoice line  
orInvoiceLineAdd1.InvoiceLineAdd.ItemRef.FullName.setValue "Labor"  
orInvoiceLineAdd1.InvoiceLineAdd.Quantity.setValue 1  
  
' Add your custom field value again  
Set MyDataExt = orInvoiceLineAdd1.InvoiceLineAdd.DataExtList.Append  
MyDataExt.OwnerID.setValue ("0")  
MyDataExt.DataExtName.setValue ("Truck")  
MyDataExt.DataExtValue.setValue ("Ford")
```

The alert reader will note that while DataExtAdd's TxnID field allows the useMacro attribute, the TxnLineID does not. Nor does DataExtMod support useMacro in either field. This is unfortunate, and I'll take my case to the engineers!

## Modifying Custom Field Data in Transaction Item Lines

---

Modifying custom field data within the transaction lines is no different than modifying other line item data. The details are provided in Chapter 10, “Modifying and Deleting Transactions and List Objects.”



# CHAPTER 12

## USING MACROS IN REQUESTS

Many requests contain a reference to some other object that is needed for the request to succeed. This is a problem if you want to create the referenced object in the same batch of messages (that is, within the same message set) as the requests making the object reference. How do you get around this? Macros.

### What is a Macro?

---

A *macro* is a mechanism used to define certain elements that are created in a new request and subsequently use them in a later request *in the same message set or any time within the same session*. This mechanism eliminates the need to wait and parse the response to obtain the transaction ID for an element before you reference it in a subsequent request.

The definition of the macro is marked by the *defMacro* keyword followed by the ID

```
<InvoiceAdd defMacro="TxnID:1234">
```

the subsequent use of that macro is marked by the *useMacro* keyword followed by that same ID:

```
<TxnID useMacro="TxnID:1234"></TxnID>
```

Listing 12-1 shows a complete example.

### Must Macro Names be Unique?

---

Macro names must be unique within the current QuickBooks session: Once the macro has been defined, it is stored until the session is ended. and are limited to 40 characters. They can include any alphanumeric character, as well as the dash (-) and underscore (\_) characters.

Each use of defMacro can be associated with only one tagname/name combination. (For example, you can't have defMacro="TxnID:1234;TxnLineID:5678." ) Be sure to think about what a given request defines and returns before you define and use the macro mechanism.

## A Sample Macro

---

Listing 12-1 shows defining a macro for an invoice that is to be added to QuickBooks. The macro is used to represent the transaction ID that QuickBooks will assign to the invoice when it creates it. In the same message set, a ReceivePaymentAddRq applies a payment to the newly created invoice. The macro mechanism allows QuickBooks to substitute the actual TxnID it creates as a result of the InvoiceAdd request when it encounters the following instruction later in the message set:

```
useMacro="TxnID:1234"
```

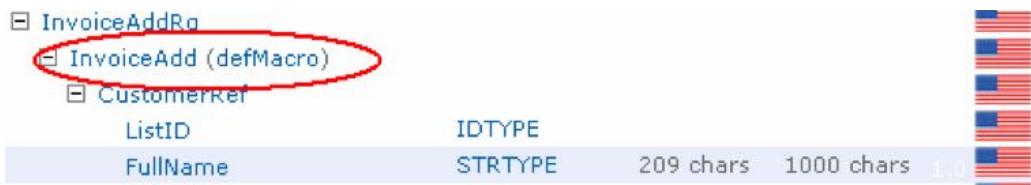
\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 12-1 Defining a macro for an invoice

```
<QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
  <InvoiceAddRq requestID = "695">
    <InvoiceAdd defMacro="TxnID:1234">
      <CustomerRef>
        <FullName>Jones</FullName>
      </CustomerRef>
      <TxnDate>2002-08-29</TxnDate>
      <RefNumber>123-ABC</RefNumber>
      <InvoiceLineAdd>
        <ItemRef>
          <FullName>Services</FullName>
        </ItemRef>
        <Desc>For the house</Desc>
        <Quantity>1</Quantity>
        <Rate>120.00</Rate>
      </InvoiceLineAdd>
    </InvoiceAdd>
  </InvoiceAddRq>
  <ReceivePaymentAddRq requestID = "UUIDTYPE">
    <ReceivePaymentAdd>
      <CustomerRef>
        <FullName>Jones</FullName>
      </CustomerRef>
      <TotalAmount>20.00</TotalAmount>
      <AppliedToTxnAdd>
        <TxnID useMacro="TxnID:1234"></TxnID>
        <PaymentAmount>20.00</PaymentAmount>
      </AppliedToTxnAdd>
    </ReceivePaymentAdd>
  </ReceivePaymentAddRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
```

In Listing 12-1, the *tagname* for the macro is “TxnID” and the *name* is “1234.”

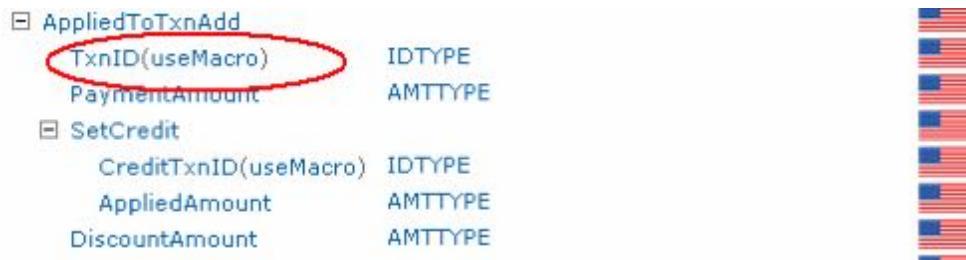
## Where Can You Define a Macro? Use a Macro?

You need to check the API Reference for the requests where you want to use macros. Elements in the request that support defining a macro have the text *defMacro* in parens next to them (Figure 12-1). Elements supporting the use of a macro have the text *useMacro* in parens (Figure 12-2).



InvoiceAddRequest			
InvoiceAdd (defMacro)			
CustomerRef			
ListID	IDTYPE		
FullName	STRTYPE	209 chars	1000 chars 1.0

Figure 12-1 defMacro in API Reference



AppliedToTxnAddRequest			
TxnID(useMacro)	IDTYPE		
PaymentAmount	AMTTYPE		
SetCredit			
CreditTxnID(useMacro)	IDTYPE		
AppliedAmount	AMTTYPE		
DiscountAmount	AMTTYPE		

Figure 12-2 useMacro in API Reference

Macros are normally defined (defMacro) for transactions. Macros are normally used (useMacro) in the following ID elements:

PaymentTxnID  
PaymentTxnLineID  
TxnID  
TxnLineID

The request elements that support macros are listed in the QuickBooks API Reference.

## Using Macros to Set Cleared Status

Another use of macros is to set the *cleared status* for an element. A typical use would be to add a deposit and then set the cleared status for the transaction via the useMacro.

Listing 12-2 shows creating a deposit with cash back to the Savings account. It then clears both the deposit and the cash back.

---

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 12-2 Using macros to set the cleared status for an element

```
<DepositAddRq requestID = "695">
  <DepositAdd defMacro="TxnID:66">
    <TxnDate>2002-09-12</TxnDate>
    <DepositToAccountRef>
      <FullName>Jones</FullName>
    </DepositToAccountRef>
    <CashBackInfoAdd defMacro="TxnLineID:33">
      <AccountRef>
        <FullName>Savings</FullName>
      </AccountRef>
      <Amount>5.00</Amount>
    </CashBackInfoAdd>
    <DepositLineAdd>
      <EntityRef>
        <FullName>Smith</FullName>
      </EntityRef>
      <AccountRef>
        <FullName>other</FullName>
      </AccountRef>
      <CheckNumber>1986</CheckNumber>
      <Amount>20.00</Amount>
    </DepositLineAdd>
  </DepositAdd>
</DepositAddRq>
<ClearedStatusModRq requestID = "5629">
  <ClearedStatusMod>
    <TxnID useMacro="TxnID:66"></TxnID>
    <ClearedStatus>Cleared</ClearedStatus>
  </ClearedStatusMod>
</ClearedStatusModRq>
<ClearedStatusModRq requestID = "8411">
  <ClearedStatusMod>
    <TxnID useMacro="TxnID:66"></TxnID>
    <TxnLineID useMacro="TxnLineID:33">2</TxnLineID>
    <ClearedStatus>Cleared</ClearedStatus>
  </ClearedStatusMod>
</ClearedStatusModRq>
```

# CHAPTER 13

## OBJECTS, OBJECTREFS, FULLNAMES, AND ATTRIBUTES

When you program using the SDK, you will be accessing QuickBooks accounts, payments, credits, vendors, invoices, purchase orders, and so on. In the QuickBooks SDK documentation, we sometimes call these Quickbooks entities *objects*. These objects are categorized either as *list* objects or *transaction* objects, as described in the following subsections. One of the first things you must do in determining how to access some QuickBooks feature is to determine whether you are dealing with a list or with a transaction, since the programming required for each of these is different.

### **NOTE**

There are a few miscellaneous objects that are neither lists nor transactions—namely, *company*, *host*, *preferences*, and *reports*. These can be queried.

## Lists

---

QuickBooks uses lists of information that you may want to access. Table 13-1 shows functional groupings of those lists that are supported by the SDK. The functional groupings are important because they illustrate certain commonalities within the functional group. That is, if you know how to use Customer list objects (within the Entity group in Table 13-1), then using Vendor list objects (which is also an Entity type) will be very similar. So, if you have sample code for Customers but not Vendors, you can look at the Customer sample code to see what you must do for Vendors.

### **NOTE**

When you are programming, you normally will have the SDK's API Reference open in order to see how to build the requests. A quick way to determine whether the object you are working with is a List object or a transaction object is to look at the Response message for the object. It will have a ListID at the beginning of the Ret object. A transaction will have a TxnID in the beginning of the Ret object.

Table 13-1 List Types

<b>Entity Lists</b>	<b>Item Lists</b>
Customer	ItemDiscount
Employee	ItemFixedAsset
OtherName	ItemGroup
Vendor	ItemInventory
	ItemInventoryAssembly*
	ItemNonInventory
	ItemOtherCharge
	ItemPayment
	ItemSalesTax
	ItemSalesTaxGroup
	ItemService
	ItemSubtotal
	PayrollItemWage
	PayrollItemNonWage
	<b>Other Lists</b>
	Class
	BillingRate**
	PriceLevel
	Template
	ToDo
	Vehicle
	*Premier Edition and above
	**Contractor, Professional Services, Accountant flavors of Premier and above

Some list objects can have associated sub-objects—for example, a customer can have a number of jobs associated with the same customer. The relationship between a list object and its sub-object is described as a *parent-child* relationship. List objects can have up to four levels of children.

When you attempt to modify a list object, the attempt can fail if the object is currently being edited in the QuickBooks UI, or if the object was modified since the time you retrieved it from QuickBooks in a query. If this failure occurs, you can handle it by querying QuickBooks to get the object again and then apply the modifications to this updated copy.

### A Note about ListIDs

Notice that you can assign a name to the list object when you create or modify it. However, only QuickBooks can assign the ListID and that ListID cannot be changed. However, in some circumstances QuickBooks may appear to cause a ListID change. How? Suppose you have a customer that has job information, and you attempt to add a job to the customer.

From the QuickBooks UI, you can split the job information stored in the customer record, which effectively creates a NEW customer record, populates it with the non-job data of the original customer, and makes the original customer record with job data a child of that new record. Consequently, because the customer record is new, it will have a new ListID, but the same name. This will make it seem as though the ListID of that customer has changed. (The old customer ListID in this example is now referencing the customer job!)

Notice that you can do the same thing from the SDK when you get an error in trying to add a job to a customer, using the same logic.

## Transactions

---

QuickBooks transactions reflect the flow of money into and out of a business. Table 13-2 lists functional groupings of the QuickBooks transactions that are supported in the SDK. Although you can assign a *reference number* to some transactions, QuickBooks always assigns a transaction *ID* to a transaction when it is created, and this ID cannot be modified.

Table 13-2 Transaction Objects

<b>Accounts Receivable</b>	<b>General Journal</b>
Charge	JournalEntry
CreditCardRefund	Check
CreditMemo	
Invoice	
ReceivePayment	<b>Bank and Sales Receipt</b>
	Check
<b>Accounts Payable</b>	Deposit
Bill	SalesReceipt
BillPaymentCheck	
BillPaymentCreditCard	
ItemReceipt	<b>Time-Tracking</b>
SalesTaxPaymentCheck	TimeTracking
VendorCredit	

Accounts Receivable	General Journal
<b>Credit Card</b>	<b>Other</b>
CreditCardCharge	InventoryAdjustment
CreditCardCredit	BuildAssembly (US Premier Edition and above)
	VehicleMileage
<b>Non-posting</b>	
Estimate	
PurchaseOrder	
SalesOrder (US Premier Edition and above)	

## Identifiers

---

Identifiers are used to refer to list objects and transactions. They are used in elements within requests and responses and in object references (see the following section). List objects have two types of identifiers:

- **ListID:** an ID, assigned by QuickBooks. A ListID does not change and is unique among list objects of a given type (see details in “ListID,” beginning on page 162).
- **FullName:** the fully qualified name of the list object, which includes the list object name preceded by the names of all of its parents (see details in “FullName,” beginning on page 164). List object names are assigned by the user or by the application.

Transactions also have two types of identifiers:

- **TxnID:** an ID that is unique across all transactions (regardless of type). A TxnID is assigned by QuickBooks and does not change.
- **RefNumber:** an optional user-assigned string that appears in various QuickBooks user interface forms. Examples are check numbers, invoice numbers, and purchase order numbers. This string may not be unique, even within the same transaction type.

## ListID

---

A given list ID is unique within each of the groups shown in Table 13-3.

Table 13-3 Unique IDs for List Groups

<b>Entity Lists</b>	<b>Item Lists</b>
Customer	ItemDiscount
Employee	ItemFixedAsset
OtherName	ItemGroup
Vendor	ItemInventory
	ItemInventoryAssembly
<b>Terms Lists</b>	<b>Item Lists</b>
DateDrivenTerms	ItemNonInventory
StandardTerms	ItemOtherCharge
	ItemPayment
	ItemSalesTax
<b>Payroll Item Lists</b>	<b>Item Lists</b>
PayrollItemNonWage	ItemSalesTaxGroup
PayrollItemWage	ItemService
	ItemSubtotal

For example, a customer list object will never have the same ListID as a vendor list object.

The list IDs for objects in these lists need not be unique because each list is separate:

Account
Class
CustomerMessage
CustomerType
JobType
PaymentMethod
SalesRep
SalesTaxCode
ShipMethod
Template
ToDo
VendorType

## FullName

---

When a list object is created, a *name* is assigned to it, either by the user or by the application. This name can be changed. Some list objects are simple standalone list objects. Other list objects can have children. Examples of hierarchical list objects are customer/job, job/subjob, account/subaccount, class/subclass. Table 13-4 contains the complete set of hierarchical lists.

A FullName is a case-insensitive string that contains the name of an object, prefixed by the names of each of its ancestors. Each name is delimited by a colon. A FullName can include up to five object names. An example of a FullName is

Brian Cook:Home:Kitchen:Sink

The maximum length of a FullName depends on the maximum length of the base object name, according to this formula:

`maxlength = maxLengthBaseObjectName x nbrOfNames + nbrOfColons`

Table 13-4 Hierarchical Lists

Account
Class
Customer
CustomerType
ItemDiscount
ItemInventory
ItemNonInventory
ItemOtherCharge
ItemService
JobType
VendorType

### About Names

A *name* is a case-insensitive string that identifies an object. If the object has parents, a name does not include the name of the parents. Also, if the object does not have parents, Name is the same as FullName.

### Sublevel Number

When a hierarchical object is returned by QuickBooks, the response indicates the sublevel of the object, which is a number indicating how many parents the object has. The sublevel is returned in any Add, Modify, and Query response.

### Example

Table 13-5 shows a number of transactions for work on various jobs completed for the customer Kristy Abercrombie.

Table 13-5 Invoices by Customer List

FullName	Invoice #	Description
Kristy Abercrombie	Invoice #6	Permits
Kristy Abercrombie:Bathroom	Invoice #1	Demolition
Kristy Abercrombie:Bathroom:Floor	Invoice #2	Tile
Kristy Abercrombie:Bathroom:Floor	Invoice #4	Install
Kristy Abercrombie:Bathroom:Tub	Invoice #3	Tub install
Kristy Abercrombie:Bathroom:Sink	Invoice #5	Reimbursement
Kristy Abercrombie:Kitchen	Invoice #7	General
Kristy Abercrombie:Kitchen:Floor	Invoice #8	Tile

Each full name must be unique. Individual child names, such as “Floor” in this example, need not be unique, since they are qualified by their parent names.

Suppose you perform a query on the invoices listed in Table 13-5 asking for all invoices pertaining to

```
<FullName>Kristy Abercrombie:Bathroom</FullName>
```

The response will contain Invoice #1. The following list shows other possible invoice queries you could request for Table 13-5 and the corresponding invoices that would be returned:

If you perform an invoice query for ...	This invoice is returned ...
<FullName>Kristy Abercrombie:Bathroom</FullName>	Invoice #1
<FullName>Kristy Abercrombie</FullName>	Invoice #6
<FullName>Kristy Abercrombie:Bathroom:Sink</FullName>	Invoice #5

## ListID versus FullName

Many messages allow you to specify either the ListID or the FullName for an object. Because ListIDs cannot be changed, it is always safest to specify the ListID. If you specify both a ListID and a FullName for an object, QuickBooks looks only at the ListID. The FullName is completely ignored in this case, even if the ListID cannot be found. (Note: This behavior applies to all Add and Mod requests.)

## For Queries: FullNameWithChildren

FullNameWithChildren is an element used in entity, account, and item filters. For example, in Table 13-5, if you query invoices for

```
<FullNameWithChildren>Kristy Abercrombie</FullNameWithChildren>
```

the response would include information for Kristy Abercrombie as well as the child jobs of this customer, which in this case would be all of the invoices listed in Table 13-5, since they are all children of Kristy Abercrombie. Other examples of invoice queries that specify FullNameWithChildren for items in Table 13-5 would return the following invoices:

If you perform an invoice query for ...	This invoice is returned ...
<FullNameWithChildren>Kristy Abercrombie:Bathroom</FullNameWithChildren>	Invoices #1, 2, 3, 4, 5
<FullNameWithChildren>Kristy Abercrombie:Bathroom:Sink</FullNameWithChildren>	Invoice #5

ListID has an analogous element: ListIDWithChildren. ListIDWithChildren includes the parent object as well as all of its descendants, just as FullNameWithChildren does.

## Object References

---

An *object reference* is used within an object to point to a list object. An object reference contains a ListID and a FullName. Object references are used for two primary purposes:

- To connect list objects together in hierarchical relationships. These references are called *parent references*. Only hierarchical list objects (Table 13-4) can contain parent references. (Transaction objects cannot have parent references because they are not hierarchical. Also, note that even if an object is a member of a hierarchical list, it may not actually have a parent.)
- To refer to another object that contains relevant data. Both transaction objects and list objects can contain object references. This reference might be for convenience, for reporting purposes, or because the item is required for basic accounting purposes.

The name of the object reference implies the type of object referred to. For example, a VendorTypeRef reference refers to a VendorType list object. A SalesRepEntityRef refers to a SalesRep. An ExpenseAccountRef refers to an account of type Expense, and so on.

In general, if you want to add or modify an object that contains an object reference, the referenced object must already exist in QuickBooks. However, the referenced object can be defined in an Add request in the same message set as the referring object. In this case, the referring object must come after the referenced object, and it must use a FullName as the reference if the referring object is a list object. (Transaction objects can use either FullName or macros.) For more information on macros, see Chapter 12, “Using Macros In Requests.”

## About DateTimes

---

Currently, the epoch is defined as the year 2038. You must specify DateTimes that fall on or before the epoch, as DateTimes after the epoch are invalid.

## Templates

---

You can query for templates using the TemplateQueryRq to obtain the names of all templates that have been defined in QuickBooks. Templates are mainly used for specifying how to print certain transactions. The following transactions can have templates defined for them: credit memo, estimate, invoice, purchase order, sales order, and sales receipt.

Templates have an important correlation to custom fields: a transaction needs to reference a customized template that has custom fields turned on in order for a custom field to be displayed or printed. By default, custom fields are *not* turned on (and are therefore not displayed or printed by default either).

## Operations

---

The SDK supports the following operations:

- *Add* - adds an object to QuickBooks
- *Modify* - modifies an existing QuickBooks object (lists and some transactions)
- *Delete* - removes the list object or transaction object from QuickBooks
- *Void* - changes the transaction amount to zero but leaves a record of the transaction in QuickBooks (does not apply to lists)
- *Query* - obtains information about one or more objects according to specified criteria

## Adding an Object: Example of a Request and Response

---

The AccountAdd object in Listing 13-1, which adds an account, includes two required elements (Name and AccountType) and one optional element (BankNumber). For optional elements that are left unspecified (such as AccountNumber and OpenBalance, in this case) QuickBooks will assume default values, if defaults exist. Elements that don't have defaults are left blank.

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 13-1 Add request

```
<AccountAddRq requestID = "423">
  <AccountAdd>
    <Name>Checking Account</Name>
    <AccountType>Bank</AccountType>
    <BankNumber>0350039560</BankNumber>
  </AccountAdd>
</AccountAddRq>
```

The response to an AccountAddRq is named AccountAddRs. The AccountAddRs response contains an AccountRet object. An AccountRet object is also returned when an account object is modified (AccountModRq).

After QuickBooks has successfully added the object, it returns a response message containing the AccountRet object. In this object, QuickBooks adds some elements, including the ListID, the time the object was created in QuickBooks (TimeCreated), the time the object was last modified (TimeModified), and a value representing the version of the object (EditSequence), plus some default values. Listing 13-2 shows the AccountAddRs sent in response to the AccountAddRq message in Listing 13-1.

---

### Listing 13-2 Add response

```
<AccountAddRs requestID = "423"
    statusCode = "0"
    statusSeverity = "Info"
    statusMessage = "Status OK">
<AccountRet>
    <ListID>60000-933272656</ListID>
    <TimeCreated>2001-02-19T13:54:39-08:00</TimeCreated>
    <TimeModified>2001-02-19T13:54:39-08:00</TimeModified>
    <EditSequence>933272656</EditSequence>
    <Name>Checking Account</Name>
    <FullName>Checking Account</FullName>
    <IsActive>true</IsActive>
    <Sublevel>0</Sublevel>
    <AccountType>Bank</AccountType>
    <BankNumber>0350039560</BankNumber>
</AccountRet>
</AccountAddRs>
```

## Use of the Request ID

A request can specify an optional request ID, which can be used by your application to match up requests you send to QuickBooks with the responses it returns to you. This attribute is returned unchanged from QuickBooks in the matching response. Listing 13-1 specifies the optional ID, and Listing 13-2 returns it. The request ID can be very helpful in error recovery if you don't use QBFC. (See Chapter 31, "Error Recovery.")

## Balance vs. TotalBalance

The AccountRet and CustomerRet objects contain two elements, Balance and TotalBalance, which have different meanings. *Balance* refers to an amount that applies only to a specific element. In Table 13-6, for example, the subjobs Floor, Sink, and Bathroom each have individual balances. *TotalBalance* is a cumulative total that is the sum of all subjob balances in a job (or, more generally, of descendants of a given parent object). In Table 13-6, TotalBalance for Kitchen is \$800 (\$500 for floor and \$300 for sink). The TotalBalance for KristyAbercrombie is the Kitchen TotalBalance (\$800) plus the Bathroom TotalBalance (\$400), or \$1200.

Table 13-6 Comparison of Balance and TotalBalance

<b>Job</b>	<b>Balance</b>	<b>TotalBalance</b>
Kristy Abercrombie	0.00	1200.00
Kitchen	0.00	800.00
Floor	500.00	500.00
Sink	300.00	300.00
Bathroom	400.00	400.00

## Querying for Objects

---

A query request enables an application to obtain objects of a certain type or group of types and according to certain criteria from QuickBooks. The SDK defines a Query request for each type of list object and transaction object. *Filters* allow you to specify selection criteria for particular characteristics and parameters of the objects returned.

When a query specifies multiple filters, QuickBooks ANDs the filters and returns all objects that satisfy the criteria of all the filters specified.

Some query requests have no filters, such as the HostQueryRq, CompanyQueryRq, and PreferencesQueryRq.

### HostQuery Request

The HostQuery request enables your application to obtain from QuickBooks the product name and version information. (However, if you are primarily interested in supported version information, and you use QBXMLRP2, then using the QBXMLVersionsForSession call invoked against the request processor would be a better choice.)

In response, QuickBooks returns a HostRet object containing the following information (see the *API Reference* for details):

- **ProductName** – This is the name of the product, such as “QuickBooks Pro Edition 2003.”
- **MajorVersion** – This is the version number identifying a major version of the product, such as 13 (2004 US and Canadian Pro and above and Enterprise v4).
- **MinorVersion** – The minor version identifies a specific release of a major version. A major bug fix or a new feature might be included in a minor version, for instance, minor version 0 (release 1). Your application may need to check the version to determine whether a particular feature is supported.
- **Country** - A string identifying the country for which QuickBooks is built. Possible values are US (United States), CA (Canada), UK (United Kingdom), and AU (Australia). Country-specific features include currency, taxes, spelling, and so on.
- **SupportedQBXMLVersion** – This is a list of all versions of the qbXML specification that are supported by the version of QuickBooks that is currently serving requests.
- **IsAutomaticLogin** - Indicates whether the application has logged in to QuickBooks in Interactive mode (QuickBooks runs in the foreground and its user interface is displayed) or in Automatic mode (QuickBooks runs in the background and its user interface is not displayed).
- **QB FileMode** - Indicates whether the QuickBooks company file has been opened in single-user or multi-user mode.

For detailed information on queries and filters, see Chapter 8, “Creating Queries.” For detailed information on reports, see Chapter 9, “Generating Reports.”

# Attributes in the SDK

---

Attributes details are covered in the QuickBooks API Reference. This section provides some background for the QuickBooks API Reference discussion.

There are several general types of Attributes that are available:

- message set-level attributes
- request attributes
- response attributes
- query attributes

We'll describe each of these in the following sections.

## Message Set-Level Attributes

---

There are several attributes related to how QuickBooks responds to errors in processing requests sent by your application.

These are message set-level attributes governing how the message set is to processed. For example, the **onError** attribute specifies how to proceed with subsequent requests in a message set if an error occurs. The **newMessageSetID** and **oldMessageSetID** instruct QuickBooks to save processing information in its state until you are sure your request and its response have been successfully processed. The **responseData** attribute specifies how much of the response to include.

### **onError Attribute**

Every request message set must include the **onError** attribute, which specifies how to proceed when an error occurs:

- **stopOnError** - directs QuickBooks to process requests until an error occurs and then stop. Neither the current request that raised the error nor any subsequent requests will be processed. Any requests in the same message set that were previously processed successfully are retained. A nonzero status code is returned for the operation that caused the error condition. For messages in the message set subsequent to the one that raised the error, status code 3231 ("Status unprocessed") is returned.
- **continueOnError** - directs QuickBooks to continue processing requests even if an error occurs in processing the current request message set.

### **responseData Attribute**

The **responseData** attribute can have a value of **includeAll** (the default) or **includeNone**. Note that if a response is returned without data, it might be because of an error, or it might be the result of the setting for this attribute.

## Attributes for Error Recovery

If your application modifies data in the QuickBooks company file, you need to include the error recovery attributes in your request messages:

- oldMessageSetID
- newMessageSetID
- messageSetStatusCode (see below)

The messageSetStatusCode attribute will be in the response message if error-recovery attributes were included in the message set request. It provides the status of the entire request message that was set in the QBXMLMsgsRq request.

For a complete discussion of the use of the oldMessageSetID and newMessageSetID attributes and how to implement an error recovery routine in your application, see Chapter 31, “Error Recovery.” These attributes allow you to instruct QuickBooks to save state concerning processing of the request, to check the processing status of a given request, and to clear state for a given request when you are sure that you’re finished processing the response. Also see the error recovery example included with the QuickBooks SDK Samples.

## Request Attributes

---

For requests that are not queries, there is one optional attribute, requestID. This attribute is used in requests in message sets where there are more than one request. The request ID allows you to match up requests and responses (the response to a request will have the same requestID) when you receive them in the response message set. This is important, because the order of requests submitted in the request message set might not be the order of responses coming back in the response message set.

Notice that if you use QBFC, you don’t have to deal with requestIDs. QBFC automatically assigns the requestID to the requests inside the message set, and guarantees that the order of responses returned matches the order of the requests submitted.

## Response Attributes

---

Every response contains three types of status information:

- **requestID** - See above under ‘Request Attributes’
- **statusCode - 0 for success; nonzero for information, warnings, and errors.**
- **statusSeverity** - This attribute indicates how severe the error is. It can have one of three values:
  - > **Info** - QuickBooks completed processing your qbXML request and has returned the corresponding data in the remainder of this message.

- > **Warning** - QuickBooks completed processing your request and has returned the corresponding data, but the results might not be consistent with what you expected.
- > **Error** - The request was not completed. No data will appear in the response after the status message.
- **statusMessage** - This attribute explains the error or warning condition that is indicated by the status code.

## Query Attributes

---

In addition to the general request and response attributes listed above, queries have several other attributes. These generally are intended to help you manage the amount of query data returned.

### Query Request Attributes

These are attributes found in the query request

- iterator may have one of the following values: Start, Continue, Stop
- iteratorID is optional
- metaData is optional and may have one of the following values: NoMetaData, MetaDataOnly, MetaDataAndresponseData

### Query Response Attributes

- iteratorID is optional
- iteratorRemainingCount
- retCount

For details on the query attributes, see Chapter 8, “Creating Queries.”



# CHAPTER 14

## EVENT NOTIFICATION

This chapter describes the QuickBooks SDK event notification framework and how to use it in your qbXML-based application to respond to certain QuickBooks events. This chapter provides general information applicable to both QBFC-based and qbXML-based applications.

The chapter is divided into two main parts

- An Overview section containing background information about the event notification framework.
- An Implementation section containing details and sample code.

### **IMPORTANT**

Events are not supported for QuickBooks Simple Start edition.

## Using the C# App Template to Implement Eventing

The QB SDK includes an application template wizard that generates a great deal of the event code you need or may want to implement. It does a lot of the heavy lifting for you and we strongly recommend using this if you can. The information in this chapter is still useful background information, but the template will save you LOTS of time and potential mistakes. The template is for Visual Studio 2005 and later and works for C# applications. If you have VS 2005, this will be automatically installed for you in the templates directory. For more information see “C# Project Wizard” in the QB SDK program group accessed from the Windows Start menu.

## What Requests Do I Use and How Do I Invoke These?

The following requests are the event related requests:

Name	Description
DataEventSubscriptionAdd	Adds one or more subscriptions to the specified QuickBooks data events.
DataEventSubscriptionQuery	Queries for subscriptions by SubscriberID and qbXML version.
SubscriptionDel	Deletes all subscriptions matching subscriber ID and qbXML version.
UIEventSubscriptionAdd	Adds one or more subscriptions to the specified QuickBooks UI events.
UIEventSubscriptionQuery	Queries for subscriptions by SubscriberID and qbXML version.
UIExtensionSubscriptionAdd	Adds one or more subscriptions to the specified QuickBooks UI extension events.
UIExtensionSubscriptionQuery	Queries for subscriptions by SubscriberID and qbXML version.

These requests are documented in the QuickBooks API Reference

Your callback application gets all events in a QBXMLEvents response message.

## How Do I Invoke Subscription Events?

---

You must invoke the requests to add, query, and delete subscriptions using the request processor method `ProcessSubscription()` if you use qbXML.

If you use QBFC, you must append the subscription request to an `ISubscriptionMsgSetRequest` object instantiated by the `QBSessionManager` method `CreateSubscriptionMsgSetRequest()` and invoke the method `DoSubscriptionRequests()`.

**IMPORTANT**

You cannot invoke `QBXMLEvent`, since that is a return-only message.

## Overview: The Event Notification Framework

---

To obtain a general understanding of how QuickBooks event notification works, you need to understand the following:

- “QuickBooks Events and Event Notification” (page 176)
- “Subscribing to Events” (page 178)
- “Authorizing a Callback Application to Receive Events” (page 181)
- “Processing Events in a Callback Application” (page 182)
- “Handling Special QuickBooks Operations” (page 189)
- “Putting it All Together: The Event Notification Flow” (page 191)

These items are discussed in the following subsections.

### QuickBooks Events and Event Notification

---

**IMPORTANT**

The event mechanism described in this chapter applies only to company files opened in interactive mode under QuickBooks. No events are sent to applications if QuickBooks auto-login mode, also called “background” mode, is used. (Auto-login mode is used where applications access company files without QuickBooks running.)

An application that is integrated with QuickBooks via the SDK may need to know about certain changes to data in the company file when they occur. For example, if it uses QuickBooks customer data or account data, the application may need to know if a customer or account is added, modified, or deleted. Such changes are called QuickBooks *data events*, or simply data events.

Similarly, an application may need to be notified when certain QuickBooks UI-related events occur, such as the opening or closing of the company file. These are called *UI events*.

Finally, an application may need to launch itself or display its user interface (UI) in response to an end user clicking a customized menu item that the application has added to the QuickBooks UI. The menu click on a custom menu item is called a *UI extension event*. (Adding a custom menu item to QuickBooks is described in Chapter 15, “Integrating with the QuickBooks UI.”)

*Event notification* refers to the delivery of event information to an integrated application when any of the three types of event occurs. See Figure 14-1 (page 177).

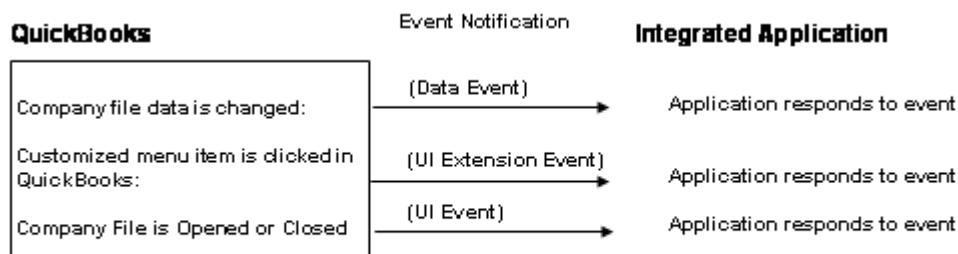


Figure 14-1 QuickBooks Events and Event Notification

## Which Events are Supported?

Your application can receive notification of certain QuickBooks data events, UI extension events, and UI events. See the *API Reference* for a complete listing of possible events.

### Supported Data Events

Any QuickBooks list or transaction object supported by the SDK is also supported by the event notification framework.

Your application can receive notification about additions, deletions, and modifications to these types of QuickBooks objects, whether the changes occur directly in the QuickBooks UI (such as by adding a customer) or programmatically from an integrated application (such as by sending an InvoiceAdd request).

### **NOTE**

Your application receives its own data events unless you specify otherwise when you subscribe the application. To avoid receiving your own events, set the DeliverOwnEvents field to False in the DataEventSubscriptionAdd request.

### **Supported UI Extension Events**

Through UI extension subscriptions, you can add your own custom menu item and/or menu subitems to the QuickBooks UI. Your application can also receive notification when these items are clicked by an end user.

### **Supported UI Events**

Company file events, such as the opening or closing of the company file, are considered to be UI events, and are supported by the event notification framework. Currently, these are the only two UI events supported.

## **How qbXML Versioning is Handled in Subscriptions**

The event data that is returned can potentially differ depending on the qbXML version. For example, in the 4.0 qbXML spec, there is a new tag that could be returned in the QBXMLEvent response called CurrentWindow. If an application is designed for the 3.0 spec but not the 4.0 spec, how is this situation handled?

Beginning with SDK 4.0, the spec version that issued the original subscription request determines which data is returned in the response. For example, if your application subscribed using qbXML 3.0 (that is, the qbXML processing instruction is set like this: `<?qbxml version="3.0"?>` ), then the QBXMLEvent data that is returned is the data from 3.0, that is, you don't receive additional data made available in 4.0. If you needed that data, you would first do a 3.0 unsubscribe to get rid of the old subscription, then resubscribe using a qbXML 4.0 subscription request.

In addition, suppose you have a current subscription issued using qbXML 3.0. To delete that subscription, you have to issue a SubscriptionDel request with the qbXML version tag set to 3.0. The reason for this is that you might want to keep 3.0 spec subscriptions for backwards compatibility.

## **Subscribing to Events**

---

In order for your application to receive notification about one or more supported QuickBooks events, the event notification framework must know about the application and the events that the application wants to receive. That is, your application must be *subscribed* to an event before it can receive notification about it.

Once your application is subscribed, your application will receive all the specified events. For example, if it is subscribed to CustomerAdd events it will receive notifications whenever a new customer is added in QuickBooks to any company file.

The application receiving the events handles them in a callback, as described later in this chapter. This application is called the callback application and must be an *.exe* binary: it cannot be a DLL.

**NOTE**

The application that makes a subscription request does not have to be the same application that will receive the event notification. (For example, your installation application might call a subscription request that specifies callback information for your main application.)

### **When Does a Subscription Go into Effect?**

QuickBooks does not need to be running when you subscribe and unsubscribe an application. Notice that the subscribe or unsubscribe does not go into effect immediately, however. For data and UI events, the subscribe/unsubscribe goes into effect when the company file is next opened by QuickBooks. (Consequently, when you subscribe or unsubscribe, you should notify the user to reopen any company files that are currently open.) For UI extension events, the subscribe/unsubscribe goes into effect when QuickBooks is next started.

### **Which Company Files are Affected by a Subscription?**

When you add a subscription, it applies to all company files on that machine. However, notice that the QuickBooks user must still authorize your application for each company file.

If you want events from only one particular company file, you can filter out the events from any unwanted company file by checking the CompanyFilePath element in the incoming event XML that your application receives.

### **What Information Do I Need to Write Subscription Code?**

The actual subscription code differs depending on whether you use qbXML or QBFC to accomplish it. Implementing qbXML-based subscription is described later in this chapter under “Implementing Event-Awareness in qbXML.”

You need to supply the following information in your subscriber application:

Information	Description
Callback application name	The name of the application that contains the callback that handles the events.
CLSID (or ProgID)	<p>You must assign a CLSID (or a ProgID, depending on the programming language that you use and your own preferences) for the callback class that implements the SDK interface IQBEventCallback. The CLSID or ProgID must be registered in the Windows registry before the subscription request can be made successfully.</p>
	<p>Notice that you can only have one CLSID/ProgID per SubscriberID. For example, if you use the same SubscriberID to subscribe to data event, UI event, and UI extension events, then you will also need to specify the same CLSID.</p>
	<p>If you want multiple CLSIDs for your application (perhaps because you want one EXE to handle data events, another EXE to handle UI events, and still another EXE to handle UI extension events), you use a different SubscriberID to subscribe to each event type.</p>
DeliveryPolicy	<p>You need to specify the QBFC or qbXML value for "deliver only if running" if you want your application to receive events only when it is running.</p> <p>Specify the QBFC or qbXML value for "deliver always" if you want your application to be started up to receive the incoming events if the application isn't running. Notice that the callback will be started up only once during the QuickBooks session.</p> <p>The actual values specified vary depending on whether QBFC or qbXML is used.</p>
subscriberID	<p>This is a GUID that you must create for your application. You also use this value whenever you query or delete subscriptions.</p>
TrackLostEvents	<p>For data events only. Specify the QBFC or qbXML value for "all" if you want a DataEventRecoveryTime to be recorded when there is a lost event. You would do this if you wanted to implement lost event recovery, as described under "Recovering From Lost Data Events" (page 187).</p> <p>Specify the QBFC or qbXML value for "none" if your application does not care about lost events.</p>

## Unsubscribing From Events

Both QBFC and qbXML support unsubscribing from events of a specified type: data events, UI events or UI extension events. The unsubscribe request specifies the type and the application. For example, if you unsubscribe from data events, the application is unsubscribed from all data events, if you unsubscribe from UI events, the application is

unsubscribed from all UI events, and so on. Just like subscribing, the unsubscribe changes take effect only when the company file is next opened (for data events and UI events) or when QuickBooks is restarted (for UI extension events).

**IMPORTANT**

During your application's uninstall, you should always unsubscribe from any events to which your application is subscribed.

## Modifying a Subscription

There is no subscription Modify functionality. However, you can achieve the same result by deleting the subscription and adding a new subscription that contains all of the events of that type you want to receive, including ones that may have been in the previous subscription.

## Querying a Subscription

Both QBFC and qbXML support querying for the events that are currently under subscription. This is useful for determining the current subscription. The response returns different information depending on the query type. See the *API Reference* for more information.

## Authorizing a Callback Application to Receive Events

---

The QuickBooks UI to authorize an application to receive data, UI, and UI extension events is the same as for regular SDK calls. Notice that the QuickBooks UI prompts for permissions based on the callback's certificate if it is signed or the AppName specified in the subscription XML if the callback is not signed.

Once an application is authorized to access QuickBooks via the SDK, the application automatically has permission to receive event notifications. Similarly, once an application is authorized to receive events, it is automatically authorized to access QuickBooks via the SDK.

However, there is one difference worth noting. With standard SDK requests, when the user has chosen to be prompted before allowing access, a prompt will be displayed at each call to BeginSession. With events, when this same access level is chosen, a prompt will also be displayed each time the company file is opened in attended mode. Then, if the user grants the application permission by selecting "Yes, Always," the application will receive events in future sessions without prompting. If the user selects "Yes, This time," the application will receive events for as long as that company file remains open. If the user selects "Yes, Always," the application will not be prompted in future sessions. In your documentation and messaging to your user, you should recommend that they choose "Yes, Always" as this will provide the best user experience.

If the company file is opened in unattended mode, a prompt will not be displayed and no events will be sent to the application while that company file remains open.

## **Security and Certification**

If your application is digitally signed as described in Chapter 34, “Digitally Signing Your Code,” QuickBooks verifies that the correct application is receiving the notification to which your application is subscribed.

QuickBooks reads, encrypts, and stores the certificate information from the callback executable when the subscription request is made. Then, starting the callback application, QuickBooks reads the signature information from the callback executable that is about to be notified and makes sure that it matches the information that was read when the subscription request was made.

If the certificate is invalid or revoked, QuickBooks silently fails to start the application and an error is logged because it is considered disruptive to tell the user in the UI (which is what regular SDK requests do) in this case.

If the certificate is expired, and the user has chosen to be prompted about expired certificates, QuickBooks will also silently fail to start the application. However, if the user hasn’t chosen to be prompted about expired certificates, or has previously allowed access to an application even though it is expired, then the application will continue to receive events.

If the information does not match (meaning that the executable has been replaced), no notification will be sent, and for UI extensions an error dialog will be displayed (the same one that’s shown when the notification fails for any other reason).

If your application is not digitally signed, the SDK will send notification events without any verification.

## **Processing Events in a Callback Application**

---

In order to process events, your callback application must implement the required COM interface and it must account for a range of expected event behavior. (The COM interface is defined in the file *SDKEvent.dll*, located in the QuickBooks install directory.) These two areas are described in more detail in the following subsections.

### **Importing the Required Libraries**

In addition to implementing the callback class, you must import the required event library into the project that implements the callback.

For Visual Basic you import the library by adding the QBSDKEvents type library to the project references. To do this, select Project > References from within your VB project. Find QBSDKEvent 1.0 Type Library in the list and check the box next to it, then click OK. If you don’t find the entry in the list, you can browse to it.

For Visual C++ you import the library named *sdkevent.dll*, which is installed in *C:\Program Files\Intuit\<QuickBooksInstallDirectory>* where *<QuickBooksInstallDirectory>* is the name of the QuickBooks product you are using when you build your application. You need to add the statement

```
#import  "sdkevent.dll"
```

in the header file for the callback. Finally, in Microsoft Visual Studio, remember to specify the QuickBooks executable path for the project. The method for doing this is different for Visual Studio 6.0 and Visual Studio.NET.

For Visual Studio 6.0, select “Options” from the “Tools” menu. Select the “Directories” tab and then select “Executable Files.” Add the QuickBooks executable path to the list of directories here.

For Visual Studio.NET, select “Properties” from the “Project” menu. Under the “C/C++” options, select “General” and add the QuickBooks executable path to the “Additional Include Directories.” Under the “MIDL” options, also select “General” and add the QuickBooks executable path to “Additional Include Directories.”

## **The IQBEventCallback Class**

You need to implement the *Inform* method (*IQBSDKCallback::Inform*) of the *IQBEventCallback* interface.

The *inform* method returns the event string in XML format. The following is the virtual method signature for *IQBSDKCallback::Inform*:

```
virtual HRESULT __stdcall inform (/*[in]*/ BSTR eventXML ) = 0;
```

If you use Visual Basic, you need to implement it by adding the lines

```
Implements QBSDKEVENTLib.IQBEventCallback

Public Sub IQBEventCallback_inform(ByVal eventXML As String)
```

followed by your implementation code.

## **Adding the CallBack Class to Your Application**

The event notification framework uses COM to notify applications about events. Accordingly, in order to receive the events you subscribe to, you must implement the SDK-defined COM interface *IQBEventCallback*. The implementation is described in detail in “Implementing a qbXML-based Callback (*IQBEventCallback*)” (page 196). Notice that you must register the callback application EXE before any attempt to subscribe the callback application.

**IMPORTANT**

In-process COM servers are not allowed, only out-of-process local servers. So, you must implement the callback class in an EXE, not in a DLL.

**Specifying CLSID/ProgID for the Callback Class**

In the subscription code you must supply the class ID (CLSID) or ProgID for the callback class. QuickBooks uses the CLSID/ProgID to invoke your application's callback method in response to subscribed events.

In some programming languages you can use the ProgID instead of CLSID. For VB projects, the ProgID is the '*<Name of Project>.<Name of COM class>*'.

**IMPORTANT**

If you use CLSIDs in VB, you must set the VB project properties for binary compatibility or this value will change every time you compile and the CLSID won't match the one expected by QuickBooks. You must remember to do this because the VB default for projects does not use binary compatibility.

To set binary compatibility, open your project, select the Project pull-down menu, and click on your application's properties at the bottom of the pull-down. In the ensuing properties window, select the Component tab. In the ensuing tab window, select the option Binary Compatibility and click OK.

**Determine Which Delivery Policy Your CallBack Supports**

DeliveryPolicy determines whether QuickBooks will start your callback application when the application is not running. If your application specifies a delivery policy of "deliver always" then it will be started up (if not running already) upon the first subscribed QuickBooks event. If the subscription specifies "deliver only if running" then any events occurring when the application is not running are not delivered but are marked as "lost events."

Regardless of the delivery policy, once your callback application starts, you should be aware that QuickBooks doesn't release that callback application's COM pointer until the company file closes. The callback application therefore cannot be dismissed by the user. So if you use a UI for your callback, you need to design the UI to handle this.

If your application needs to distinguish between being started by QuickBooks and being started by the user, you should add a command line argument to the shortcut for the EXE, because QuickBooks never passes a command line argument when starting the application.

If your application subscribes with a delivery policy of "deliver only if running," then you may want to implement lost event handling, as described in "Recovering From Lost Data Events" on page 187.

## What to Do and What to Avoid in the Callback

Your implementation of the IQBEventCallback routine should do minimal processing and should return quickly. Why is this a design requirement? First, your callback application cannot receive any other events until you return from your callback. Instead, QuickBooks maintains such events (except company file close) in a queue in the order in which they occur.

Once you return from the callback, QuickBooks will send the next event from this queue. It is therefore recommended that if the application needs to display some UI in the callback, it should choose to use nonblocking UI calls instead of blocking UI calls, so that the callback method can return without delay.

The queue contains a limited number of events. If the queue becomes full, events are no longer delivered to your application but are marked as lost events. If this is happening, your application is not processing events fast enough.

### **NOTE**

Even though your application does not receive more events until it has returned from its callback method, during this time other applications are free to receive events and QuickBooks itself is able to function normally. (QuickBooks can handle UI actions from the user, as well as SDK requests.)

Another reason for performing minimal processing in the callback implementation is that the callback application must be able to respond quickly to a company file close event.

If your callback makes SDK queries into QuickBooks, rather than caching the Request Processor pointer, we recommend that you make the BeginSession and EndSession calls within the callback.

### **What the Callback Implementation Cannot Do**

In your implementation of the IQBEventCallback::Inform callback routine, you cannot invoke any QuickBooks SDK request that writes immediately to the QuickBooks company file, if the callback is a data event callback. As a result, you can only issue query requests, as well as make subscription changes, since they aren't immediately written to the company file. The only exception to this is that you can also perform a DataEventRecoveryInfoDel request during a callback. See “Recovering From Lost Data Events” (page 187) for information on data event recovery.

Also, in a data event callback, you cannot invoke the QuickBooks UI, that is, post some QuickBooks form.

Finally, you should not make SDK requests in the callback for company close events.

## Avoiding Infinite Loops

As noted above, an application is prevented from making data modifying requests in its callback routine. This is done to help avoid the infinite recursion problem, for example, where applications A and B each modify data in its callback that the other listens to, thus becoming locked in an infinite recursion.

Consequently, as much as possible, you should avoid writing to QuickBooks in direct response to events.

For ideas on how to work with these concerns, see the three sample set under *QBSDK3.0\samples\qbd\vb\qbxm\NDataEvents*.

## Event Behavior Your CallBack Application Should Be Aware Of

The following subsections describe some event behaviors that you should be aware of when you implement the callback application.

### Can the User Dismiss the Callback Application?

QuickBooks doesn't release a callback application's COM pointer until the company file closes. Consequently, if the callback application has a UI that can be dismissed by the user, you should be aware that the callback app doesn't really go away. It goes away only when the company file closes. If you use a UI for your callback, you need to design the UI to handle this.

### Do Applications Receive Events from Their Own Requests?

Beginning with SDK 4.0, an application can choose not to receive its own data events when it makes its subscription. By default, however, applications do receive subscribed-to events for QuickBooks activity resulting from the application's own add/mod/delete activities within QuickBooks. To avoid receiving your own events, set the DeliverOwnEvents field to False in the DataEventSubscriptionAdd request.

### Indirect Events

You should be aware that some QuickBooks actions may generate multiple events if the action affects different QuickBooks objects. For example, adding a new invoice in QuickBooks also affects accounts. Accordingly, when there is an InvoiceAdd event, there could be multiple AccountMod events.

### Are Events Generated from Custom Fields and Private Data Extensions?

If an end user adds or changes data in a custom field via the QuickBooks UI, or if an integrated application successfully issues a DataExtAdd or DataExtMod request for a custom field or private data extension, a Mod event is generated for the parent object, and the Time Modified value for the parent object is updated. For example, if a Customer has a custom field called "shoe size," modifying the value of that custom field generates a Customer mod event and causes an update to the customer's Time Modified field.

### Can Applications Receive Events From Remote Machines?

An application running on one machine with QuickBooks generally receives events only from events generated by that local QuickBooks. The application won't receive events generated by interactive users sharing the same company file on other machines or by SDK

clients running on other machines. If you need to track those remotely-made changes in the company file, you can use the event recovery mechanism described under “Recovering From Lost Data Events” on page 187.

However, you should be aware that if the local QuickBooks needs to refresh its view of an object, because it is being edited locally, or because a list is being refreshed, or because an SDK client issues a query request, then events may be delivered that came from other machines.

## **What Kind of Information is Contained in an Event?**

When a subscribed event occurs, your application’s callback routine receives the event in the form of a qbXML aggregate, QBXMLEvents, which contains one of three aggregates based on the type of event that occurred: DataEventRet, UIExtensionRet, and UIEventRet.

Regardless of event type, the path to the company file is always supplied. The rest of the data varies by type:

- UI extension events also include the menu tag you specified in the original subscription in order to identify the specific custom menu item that was selected
- UI events also include
  - > an indicator that tells whether the file event is a company file open or close
  - > an indicator that tells whether the company file just opened is a new company file
- Data events also include
  - > a last restore timestamp if a restore has occurred and this is the first event sent to your application after the company file was opened
  - > a last condense timestamp if a condense has occurred and this is the first event sent to your application after the company file was opened
  - > a data recovery timestamp if there have been lost events and TrackLostEvents is set to All in the subscription.
  - > the object type, e.g., Account, Customer, JobType, Estimate, Invoice, and so on
  - > the operation causing the event (Add, Modify, Delete, or Merge)
  - > the object ID (ListID or TxnID)
  - > the reference number (for transactions)

See the *API Reference* for a complete listing of the possible contents of the QBXMLEvents aggregate.

## **Recovering From Lost Data Events**

There are a few situations in which data events aren’t sent to your application by QuickBooks. When this happens, the event notification framework provides a way for you to recover from these lost data events in order to synchronize the data your application maintains with the data in QuickBooks.

## How Are Data Events Lost?

Data events can be lost due to a variety of conditions. There are basically two groups of causes: normal conditions and failure conditions. This distinction is important because the event notification system behaves differently depending on whether an event was lost due to failure conditions or not. If data events are lost due to normal conditions, attempts will still be made to deliver future events. If events are lost due to failure conditions, no attempt will be made to deliver future events during the rest of the current session with the company file.

**Normal conditions leading to lost events.** The list below describes normal conditions in which data events are lost for your application:

- Your application does not have access to events at the present time. This can occur when the user denies such access.
- QuickBooks is being run in unattended mode.
- The application has subscribed as DeliverOnlyIfRunning and it isn't running
- A data event occurs to which your application has subscribed, but your application is on a different machine from the machine triggering the data event. The following two scenarios illustrate how this can happen:
  - > The data event subscription of application A on machine A has taken effect in a company file. (A subscription takes effect in a company file upon company file open.) That company file is then accessed on machine B, which doesn't have application A. When a data event that application A subscribed to gets triggered on machine B (by user action, for example), application A is considered to have lost that event.
  - > Application A resides on machine A and application B resides on machine B. Machine A and machine B are accessing the same company file at the same time in QuickBooks multi-user mode, and both applications have taken effect in that company file. When a data event gets triggered on machine A, application B is considered to have lost that event. Similarly, when a data event is triggered on machine B, application A is considered to have lost that event.
  - > Notice that the same application could be installed on both machines in the two scenarios above, in which case application A and application B would be referring to two different instances of the same application. Lost events are really tracked for each unique machine/SubscriberID pair.
- The application is processing events too slowly so that the event queue maintained by QuickBooks for your application exceeds the queue limit.
- The QuickBooks company file is closed while there are still events in the queue it maintains for your application.

**Failure conditions leading to lost data events.** The list below describes failure conditions in which data events are lost for your application:

- QuickBooks encounters an error when attempting to send the event to your application, for example, if your application crashed, or if a failure HRESULT is returned from your callback.

**IMPORTANT**

If data events are lost due to failure conditions, no more data events are sent to the application until the company file is re-opened.

**How Do I Determine Whether Any Data Events Have Been Lost?**

Provided that you set the TrackLostEvents field in the data event subscription request to All, the DataEventRecoveryTime will be recorded whenever data events are lost, as described above. There are then two ways to check the DataEventRecoveryTime to determine if any events have been lost.

The first way is by examining a data event for the presence of the DataEventRecoveryTime field. If this field exists, then a data event was lost as of this time. The other way is by issuing a DataEventRecoveryInfoQuery request. If the response contains a DataEventRecoveryTime, then, again, a data event was lost as of this time.

Notice that if more than one event was lost, the DataEventRecoveryTime will retain the time of the first lost event.

**How Do I Recover From Lost Data Events?**

After you determine that data events have in fact been lost, you can query for all the objects your application cares about, with the FromModifiedDate filter set to the DataEventRecoveryTime. This will synchronize your records with the QuickBooks company file and account for any data events that were lost after the specified time.

Once you have done this, you must then clear the DataEventRecoveryTime using the DataEventRecoveryInfoDel request, specifying your application's SubscriberID. By resetting this time, you are then guaranteed that any future existence of the DataEventRecoveryTime will indicate that data events have been lost from which your application has yet to recover.

## Handling Special QuickBooks Operations

---

There are special QuickBooks operations that affect an application's subscriptions and data synchronization with QuickBooks. They are listed below:

- Restore
- Condense
- Merge

Each of these is described in more detail in the following subsections.

### Restore

After a company file goes through a restore, its application permission records (the information in the Preferences > Integrated Applications window) may not be current anymore; there may be applications whose permission records weren't in the backup file

that the company file restored to. Upon opening the company file after the restore operation, QuickBooks will prompt the user to grant permission for those applications that still have subscriptions so that they can keep receiving events after the user grants them permission again.

Any application that has data that needs to match what is currently in QuickBooks will need to resynchronize its data with QuickBooks after a restore. The LastRestoreTime in the company file is updated every time a restore happens. An application can use this timestamp to detect that a restore happened by saving this time when it first sees it and then comparing it with the one currently stored by QuickBooks. To get the current LastRestoreTime, an application can issue a CompanyActivityQuery request. Alternatively, the last restore timestamp is also included in an application's first data event after a company file is opened, so that an application doesn't need to make a separate query request. Notice that an application only needs to check this timestamp once while a company file is open, as a restore always involves closing and then reopening the company file.

## **Condense**

No events are sent during the condense operation of a company file. Any application that has data that needs to match what is currently in QuickBooks will need to detect when a condense has happened and then synchronize any data changes after the condense operation.

After the application detects a condense, it can get all the data changes as a result of condense by using LastCondenseTime as a filter in the queries (the FromModifiedDate and FromDeletedDate). A condense operation also always involves closing and then reopening the company file.

## **Merge**

A list object in QuickBooks can be merged with another list object of the same type. After the merge operation, all transactions that reference the merged-from object will be changed to reference the merged-to object, and the merged-from object is deleted. For example, after the user merges object A to object B, all transactions that used to refer to object A will now refer to object B, and object A will be deleted.

An application can expect to get a merge event and a delete event during a merge operation, but it will not get any transaction modify events. For example, in the above scenario, an application will get a merge event on object A (containing the after-merge list ID, which is object B's list ID) and a delete event on object A. However, the application is expected to walk its own transaction list and update any references to object A itself.

## Putting it All Together: The Event Notification Flow

Figure 14-2 (page 191) shows the overall flow within the event notification framework.

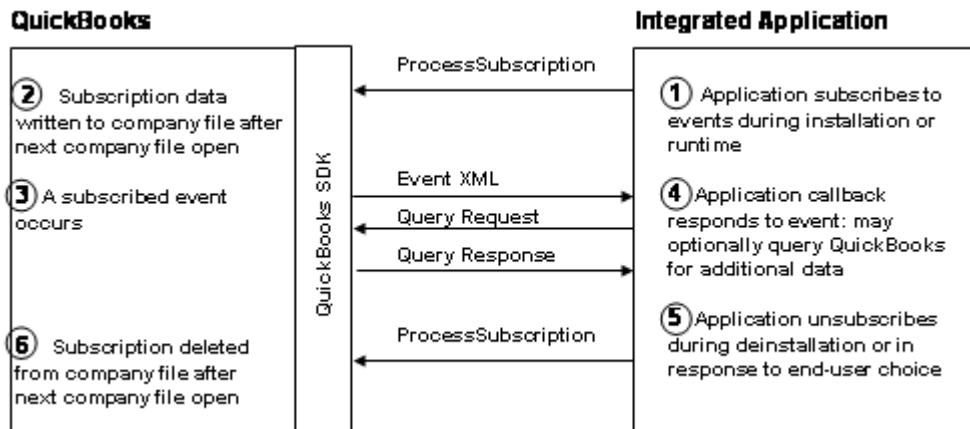


Figure 14-2 Event Notification Flow Between Application and QuickBooks

## Implementing Event-Awareness in qbXML

This section describes implementation details for qbXML-based applications. In addition, the syntax and code samples shown are in Visual Basic. If you are programming in Visual C++, see the fully commented code samples located at the QBSDK install subdirectory `\samples\qbdt\cpp\qbxml\UIandEventTest`.

### IMPORTANT

If you have used previous versions of the SDK, you may have used the Request Processor named QBXMLRPLib. Starting with SDK 3.0, a new Request Processor is available, QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2. Only this new Request Processor supports event subscription and other new features of SDK 3.0. Backwards compatibility with the old Request Processor is maintained in the new one.

To enable your application to receive and respond to QuickBooks events, you need to subscribe the application to the events and you need to handle those incoming events in your callback code. This section describes each of these coding activities.

## Subscribing, Unsubscribing, and Querying Subscriptions in qbXML

Subscribing, unsubscribing, and querying for subscription data are performed via the Request Processor ProcessSubscription method call. (In Visual Basic, QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2::ProcessSubscription.)

This method call takes a qbXML request string containing the desired subscription, subscription delete, or subscription query qbXML.

## Performing a Subscription in qbXML

In order to subscribe an application to events, a qbXML-based application creates an instance of the Request Processor, connects to QuickBooks, builds the desired SubscriptionAddRq request, and makes a call to the method ProcessSubscription (QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2::ProcessSubscription).

When you build the qbXML SubscriptionAdd request you use one of the following requests, depending on the type of subscription you are making:

- DataEventSubscriptionAddRq (for data events)
- UIExtensionSubscriptionAddRq (for UI extension events)
- UIEventSubscriptionAddRq (for UI events)

For the full description of each of these subscription messages, see the *API Reference*.

### Building the Subscription Add Request in Visual Basic

The following sample is from a more fully commented sample in the SDK called *QBDataEventSubscriber*, which is located at the SDK installation subdirectory `\samples\qbd\vb\qbxm\NDataEvents\QBDataEventSubscriber`. (Notice that sample does not check for errors or exceptions.) The main items to take away from the sample are:

- The initial setup where the Request Processor is created and the connection to QuickBooks is made (notice there is no QuickBooks session started: not needed or recommended for subscribing or unsubscribing because subscriptions apply to all company files).
- The building of the data event subscription add request (not so much the DOM parser code but more the actual tags and values that are used).
- The building of the UI event subscription add request to QuickBooks.

#### **IMPORTANT**

If an application attempts to subscribe before deleting its current subscription, it will generate an error. Your application must check for the error and act accordingly.

```

Private Sub SubscribeBtn_Click()
    ' Subscribe to events...
    Dim ConnOpen As Integer

    ConnOpen = 0
    ' Get the RequestProcessor and open a connection.
    Dim RP As New QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
    RP.OpenConnection "", "DataEventSample"
    ConnOpen = 1

    ' Create the outer subscription request XML "envelope"
    Dim doc As New DOMDocument40
    Dim QBXML As IXMLDOMELEMENT
    Set QBXML = doc.createElement("QBXML")
    doc.appendChild QBXML
    Dim SubReq As IXMLDOMELEMENT
    ' For subscription we use a QBXMLSubscriptionMsgsRq, not a QBXMLMsgsRq
    Set SubReq = doc.createElement("QBXMLSubscriptionMsgsRq")
    QBXML.appendChild SubReq

    ' Create the Data Event subscription for customer changes
    Dim DataSubReq As IXMLDOMELEMENT
    Set DataSubReq = doc.createElement("DataEventSubscriptionAddRq")
    SubReq.appendChild DataSubReq
    Dim DataSubAdd As IXMLDOMELEMENT
    Set DataSubAdd = doc.createElement("DataEventSubscriptionAdd")
    DataSubReq.appendChild DataSubAdd

    ' Remember to generate your own GUID for the SubscriberID
    AddSimpleElement doc, DataSubAdd, "SubscriberID",
    "{2B6C9DB4-EBE2-45E7-A14F-4E1C49C965F7}"

    ' Specify the Callback app
    Dim COMCallback As IXMLDOMELEMENT
    Set COMCallback = doc.createElement("COMCallbackInfo")
    DataSubAdd.appendChild COMCallback
    AddSimpleElement doc, COMCallback, "AppName", "DataEventSample"

    ' Supply the ProgID; more convenient than CLSID in VB
    AddSimpleElement doc, COMCallback, "ProgID",
    "QBDataEventManager.QBEventHandler"

    ' We chose to specify delivery policy DeliverAlways
    AddSimpleElement doc, DataSubAdd, "DeliveryPolicy", "DeliverAlways"

    ' Tell QuickBooks what events we want: ListEvents that affect Customer
    ' (add, modify, delete, and merge).
    Dim ListEventSub As IXMLDOMELEMENT
    Set ListEventSub = doc.createElement("ListEventSubscription")
    DataSubAdd.appendChild ListEventSub
    AddSimpleElement doc, ListEventSub, "ListEventType", "Customer"
    AddSimpleElement doc, ListEventSub, "ListEventOperation", "Add"
    AddSimpleElement doc, ListEventSub, "ListEventOperation", "Modify"
    AddSimpleElement doc, ListEventSub, "ListEventOperation", "Delete"
    AddSimpleElement doc, ListEventSub, "ListEventOperation", "Merge"

```

```

'we're all done we are going to subscribe to the UIEvents for company
'otherwise QuickBooks won't be able to close
Dim UISubReq As IXMLDOMELEMENT
Set UISubReq = doc.createElement("UIEventSubscriptionAddRq")
UISubReq.appendChild UISubReq
Dim UISubAdd As IXMLDOMELEMENT
Set UISubAdd = doc.createElement("UIEventSubscriptionAdd")
UISubReq.appendChild UISubAdd
AddSimpleElement doc, UISubAdd, "SubscriberID",
"{{2B6C9DB4-EBE2-45E7-A14F-4E1C49C965F7}}"

' Same Callback info as for DataEvents, and same delivery policy
Set COMCallback = doc.createElement("COMCallbackInfo")
UISubAdd.appendChild COMCallback
AddSimpleElement doc, COMCallback, "AppName", "DataEventSample"
AddSimpleElement doc, COMCallback, "ProgID",
"QBDATAEventManager.QBEventManager"
AddSimpleElement doc, UISubAdd, "DeliveryPolicy", "DeliverAlways"
Dim UIEventSub As IXMLDOMELEMENT
Set UIEventSub = doc.createElement("CompanyFileEventSubscription")
UISubAdd.appendChild UIEventSub
' We care only about the Close event, not the open event.
AddSimpleElement doc, UIEventSub, "CompanyFileEventOperation", "Close"

'Send the subscription request to QuickBooks
Dim subXML As String
subXML = "<?xml version=""1.0""?>" & vbCrLf & "<?qbxml version=""3.0""?>" & vbCrLf & doc.xml
saveXMLStream subXML

Dim resp As String
resp = RP.ProcessSubscription(subXML)
' We'll just show the response.
MsgBox Prompt:=resp, Title:="Subscribe Complete"

' And finally close our connection to QuickBooks
If (ConnOpen) Then
    RP.CloseConnection
End If
End Sub

```

## Unsubscribing in qbXML

When you no longer want to receive events of a certain type, or want to change a subscription, you make a call to the same method used to start receiving the events in the first place, QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2::ProcessSubscription, but instead of supplying a SubscriptionAdd request, you provide a SubscriptionDel request. This deletes all subscription information for your application's SubscriberID for the type of events you specify (data, UI extension, or UI).

Notice that you cannot unsubscribe from a subset of the original subscription of any type using the SubscriptionDel request. This request deletes all subscriptions of the specified type for the application that invokes it.

When you build the qbXML SubscriptionDelRq request you use one of the following requests, depending on the type of subscription you are making:

- DataEventSubscriptionDelRq (for data events)
- UIExtensionSubscriptionDelRq (for UI extension events)
- UIEventSubscriptionDelRq (for UI events)

For the full description of each of these subscription messages, see the *API Reference*.

### **Building the Subscription Delete Request in Visual Basic**

The following sample is from a more fully commented sample in the SDK called *QBDataEventSubscriber*, which is located at the QBSDK subdirectory `\samples\qbdt\vb\qbxml\DataEvents\QBDataEventSubscriber`. The main items to take away from the sample are:

- The initial setup where the Request Processor is created and the connection to the company file is made (notice there is no QuickBooks session started: not needed or recommended for subscribing or unsubscribing).
- The building of the data event subscription delete request (not so much the DOM parser code but more the actual tags and values that are used).
- The building of the UI event subscription delete request to the company file. Notice that the UI close event is unsubscribed along with the data event unsubscribe.

```
Private Sub Unsubscribe_Click()
    'Simply delete the subscriptions we set up in Subscribe_click
    Dim ConnOpen As Integer
    ConnOpen = 0
    Dim RP As New QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
    RP.OpenConnection "", "DataEventSample"
    ConnOpen = 1

    ' Create the outer subscription request XML "envelope"
    Dim doc As New DOMDocument40
    Dim QBXML As IXMLDOMElement
    Set QBXML = doc.createElement("QBXML")
    doc.appendChild QBXML
    Dim SubReq As IXMLDOMElement
    Set SubReq = doc.createElement("QBXMLSubscriptionMsgsRq")
    QBXML.appendChild SubReq

    ' Create a subscription delete request for the Data event subscription
    Dim DataSubDel As IXMLDOMElement
    Set DataSubDel = doc.createElement("SubscriptionDelRq")
    SubReq.appendChild DataSubDel
    AddSimpleElement doc, DataSubDel, "SubscriberID", "
        {2B6C9DB4-EBE2-45E7-A14F-4E1C49C965F7}"
    AddSimpleElement doc, DataSubDel, "SubscriptionType", "Data"
```

```

'Create subscription delete request for the UIEvent for company close
Dim UISubDel As IXMLDOMELEMENT
Set UISubDel = doc.createElement("SubscriptionDelRq")
SubReq.appendChild UISubDel
AddSimpleElement doc, UISubDel, "SubscriberID",
    "{2B6C9DB4-EBE2-45E7-A14F-4E1C49C965F7}"
AddSimpleElement doc, UISubDel, "SubscriptionType", "UI"

'Send the subscription delete requests to QuickBooks
Dim subXML As String
subXML = "<?xml version=""1.0""?>" & vbCrLf & "<?qbxml version=""3.0""?>" & vbCrLf & doc.xml
saveXMLStream subXML
Dim resp As String

resp = RP.ProcessSubscription(subXML)
' Show the response
MsgBox Prompt:=resp, Title:="Subscriptions Removed"

' Close the connection to QuickBooks.
If (ConnOpen) Then
    RP.CloseConnection
End If
End Sub

```

## Implementing a qbXML-based Callback (IQBEventCallback)

The callback that handles the incoming QuickBooks events must be an implementation of the SDK-defined callback interface, IQBEventCallback. This callback accepts the event XML string sent by QuickBooks and does whatever handling is desired. The best way to handle events is to hand them off to another application for queuing and processing.

Other than the Implements statement and the required input parameter, there are no restrictions on your callback other than the ones mentioned in “What to Do and What to Avoid in the Callback” (page 185).

### **Sample Visual Basic CallBack Implementation**

The following sample is from a more fully commented sample in the SDK called *QBDataEventSubscriber*, which is located at the QBSDK subdirectory *\samples\qbd\vb\qbxml\DataEvents\QBEventManager*. The main items to take away from the sample are:

- The Implements statement and the signature of the subroutine that implements the callback.
- The initial check to determine whether the event is a company file close event. This must be handled quickly and quasi-preemptively.
- The immediate hand-off of the eventXML to another application queue where it can be handled at leisure. This way, the queue event limit built into the event notification framework will never be hit.

```

Implements QBSDKEVENTLib.IQBEventCallback
Public Sub IQBEventCallback_inform(ByVal eventXML As String)
    ' You should treat this like interrupt handling in an OS, where
    ' you process the interrupt (event) as quickly as possible
    ' Display the event we got
    Dim tmpXML As String
    tmpXML = eventXML
    EventCounter = EventCounter + 1
    QBDDataEventManagerDisplay.eventXML.Text =
        Replace(tmpXML, vbLf, vbCrLf, 1, -1, vbTextCompare)
    QBDDataEventManagerDisplay.eventLabel.Caption =
        "Received Event #" & EventCounter
    QBDDataEventManagerDisplay.Show
    SetForegroundWindow QBDDataEventManagerDisplay.hwnd

    'Now check if it is a company close event or a data event
    If (InStr(1, eventXML, "CompanyFileEventOperation>Close<", vbTextCompare) > 0) Then
        'Company close, shut ourselves down
        QBDDataEventManagerDisplay.Hide
        Unload QBDDataEventManagerDisplay
    End If

    'queue it up if we are supposed to be tracking events.
    If (QBDDataEventManagerDisplay.Tracking) Then
        QBDDataEventManagerDisplay.Debug.Text = "Queing event #" & EventCounter
        QBDDataEventManagerDisplay.EventQueue.Enqueue (eventXML)
    End If
End Sub

```



# CHAPTER 15

## INTEGRATING WITH THE QUICKBOOKS UI

This chapter describes how to integrate your application with the QuickBooks UI.

### **IMPORTANT**

Events are not supported for QuickBooks Simple Start edition.

## Using the C# App Template to Implement UI Events

The QB SDK includes an application template wizard that generates a great deal of the event code you need or may want to implement. It does a lot of the heavy lifting for you and we strongly recommend using this if you can. The information in this chapter is still useful background information, but the template will save you LOTS of time and potential mistakes. The template is for Visual Studio 2005 and later and works for C# applications. If you have VS 2005, this will be automatically installed for you in the templates directory. For more information see “C# Project Wizard” in the QB SDK program group accessed from the Windows Start menu.

## What Types of Integrations Can I Do?

You can programmatically interact with the QuickBooks user interface (UI) in these ways:

- **Menu extensions and menu event notification**  
Your application can add a single menu item, with subitems, to a top-level QuickBooks menu. Also, your application has some control over whether or not your menu extensions are visible. Starting with SDK 4.0, your application can get context data, namely which QuickBooks form was open when your menu item was clicked. See “Getting QuickBooks Context Information From a Menu Item Click” (page 211). Your application will be notified when an end user selects one of your menu items.
- **UI invocation**  
Your application can open certain QuickBooks transaction windows, list windows, and reports to present them to the end user. Starting with SDK 4.0, your application can prefill certain transaction creation forms with customer, vendor, employee, or OtherName data. See “Error Handling” (page 211).
- **UI-event notification**  
Your application can request notification from QuickBooks about a few UI events, such as the company file opening or closing. For more information about this, see Chapter 14, “Event Notification.”

### **Canadian Edition and UK Editions of QuickBooks**

For important information about adding UI extensions to Canadian editions of QuickBooks, see “Canadian, UK, and U.S. Applications” on page 200.

### **Local vs. Remote Support**

*Menu extensions and menu-extension event notification* cannot be used remotely, only locally. For more information, see “Adding a Menu Item to QuickBooks.”

*UI invocation* works locally or remotely. For more information, see “Error Handling” (page 211).

## **Before Your Application Can Extend the QuickBooks UI**

Before your menu extensions will appear in QuickBooks and return event notifications, your application must send subscription information to QuickBooks, QuickBooks must be restarted, and the QuickBooks administrator must grant access.

### **Subscription**

To subscribe to UI events, either to receive notification of your own menu item being selected or to receive notification about other UI events (such as the company file opening and closing), your application must send a subscription request to QuickBooks. Your application can do this during its installation or as part of its “QuickBooks setup” functionality. (QuickBooks does not have to be running when the subscription is sent.)

A single subscription applies to all QuickBooks data files on a machine and to all installations of QuickBooks on a machine (except QuickBooks Basic). For more details about how to subscribe to events, see Chapter 14, “Event Notification.”

#### **TIP**

If you certify your application, the SDK can verify that a malicious application has not replaced the callback application specified in your subscription requests.

To see the syntax of what you would include in a UI subscription (contained in a UIExtensionSubscriptionAddRq message), look up the UIExtensionSubscriptionAdd message in the API Reference.

### **Canadian, UK, and U.S. Applications**

If you have several versions of your application, for example, one for Canadian, one for UK and one for U.S. editions of QuickBooks, note these important limitations:

- It is possible that a user who selects your UI extension from within a *Canadian* or *UK* edition of QuickBooks will be taken to the *U.S.* version of your application, and vice versa. You cannot create a subscription on one machine such that a UI item added to *U.S.* editions of QuickBooks will invoke the *U.S.* version of your application while that same UI item in *Canadian* editions of QuickBooks will invoke the *Canadian* version of

your application. Instead, each version of the application will overwrite any existing subscription, so that the last one installed “wins.”

- If you have a U.S.-only application, you cannot prevent your UI items from showing up in Canadian or UK editions of QuickBooks. Conversely, if you have a Canada or UK-only application, you cannot have a UI item that only shows up in Canadian or UK editions of QuickBooks. UI extensions show up in all editions of QuickBooks.

## Authorization

---

As with QuickBooks data events, the QuickBooks UI is not accessible until the QuickBooks administrator grants permission. Access applies to all types of SDK access, so the administrator cannot give UI access without giving data access, for example.

### **NOTE**

Access permission will carry over when the QuickBooks user upgrades to a newer version of QuickBooks. Permission will also carry over to installations that are separate from the current installation, for example, if the QuickBooks user puts a QuickBooks upgrade in a different directory or installs a different type of QuickBooks, such as the Contractor Edition.

## Authorization Scenarios Affecting UI Extensions

---

Table 15-1 shows what will happen in various situations when an end user starts QuickBooks and selects a QuickBooks data file to open after you have added a UI-extension subscription.

Table 15-1 What happens when a QuickBooks user opens a data file

Situation	Data File Behavior
The QuickBooks administrator previously granted your application access.	The data file will open with your UI extensions.
The administrator previously granted your application access, but has since revoked access.	The data file will open <i>without</i> your UI extensions.
The administrator did not previously grant access, or the administrator granted access but has since removed your application from the data file.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the user is the QuickBooks administrator, the authorization dialog box will appear. If the administrator grants access, the data file will open with your UI extensions showing.</li> <li>• If the user is not the QuickBooks administrator, or if the user is the QuickBooks administrator but he or she denies access to your application, the data file will open without your UI extensions showing.</li> </ul>
end user opens QuickBooks on a machine where <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• your application is not installed, or</li> <li>• your application did not add the UI subscription, or</li> <li>• the administrator has not granted access.</li> </ul>	Your UI extensions will not be available. For example, an accountant with an accountant's copy of the data file would not see your application's menu items.

Figure 15-1 shows this information as a flow chart.

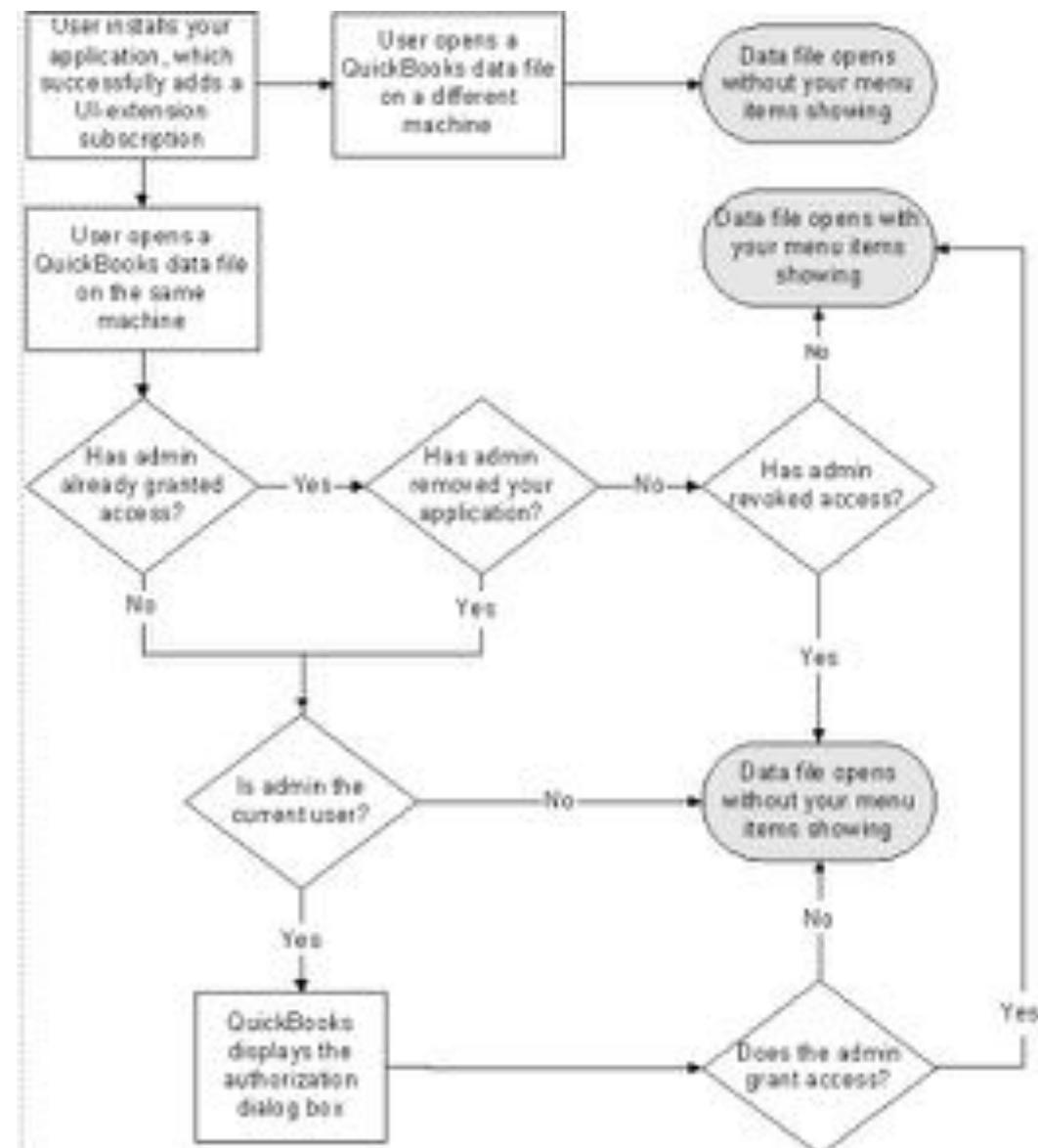


Figure 15-1 What happens when an end user opens a data file

QuickBooks will only prompt the QuickBooks administrator once, as long as he or she clicks “No” or “Yes, Always” when the authorization dialog box appears. If the administrator clicks “Yes, This Time,” the prompt will come up again the next time the data file is opened.

The effects of UI subscription changes that your application makes while QuickBooks is running will not appear until QuickBooks is restarted.

# UI Guidelines

---

The QuickBooks UI adheres to certain guidelines, and we recommend that your UI extensions follow these guidelines as well. The more closely aligned your UI extensions are with the QuickBooks look and feel, the better your end users' experience will be.

## Menu-Extension Guidelines

---

### **General Guidelines for Menu Items**

- Try to place your menu item in the appropriate QuickBooks top-level menu. (See “Choosing the Right QuickBooks Menu,” below.)
- If the machine will attempt to connect to the Internet when a user selects a menu item, it’s a good idea to name the item in a way that makes that clear. (For example, if selecting help will connect the user to your web site, you might name that subitem “View Online Help” rather than just “View Help.”)

### **Naming Menu Items**

- Menu-item names should be as short as possible.
- If a menu item opens a dialog box or form within your application, it’s a good idea to have the QuickBooks menu-item name match the resulting window title or the title of the front pane or tab.
- Try to begin the name of each subitem with a verb. For example:
  - > Launch Invoice Manager
  - > Show Invoice List
- Using an ellipsis (...) after a menu-item name lets users know that they will have to complete some extra step before the command is carried out.

### **Choosing the Right QuickBooks Menu**

Think about how a menu extension will fit with the existing menu structure, and how a user will perceive it when it appears among the other QuickBooks menu items. In general, the QuickBooks top-level menus (those that accept menu extensions) serve the following purposes:

- File menu commands move data into or out of QuickBooks, interact with external files, and operate on the file in its entirety. For example, if your application imported and exported data to and from QuickBooks, your menu extension would fit well under the File menu.
- The Company, Customers, Vendors, Employees, and Banking menus correspond to the activities and information shown in the QuickBooks Navigators. For example, if your application managed sales tax or inventory, your menu extension would fit well under the Vendors menu.

## **Avoid Using “Separators”**

In QuickBooks, separators divide some menus into functional sections. If you have subitems under your main menu item, we recommend that you not include separators, for the following reasons:

- In QuickBooks, a separator shows as a single line that spans the width of the menu. The SDK does not support the creation of separators that would look like this, because a `MenuText` element cannot include HTML or graphics.
- QuickBooks separators are impossible to select, whereas a user could select whatever characters you used to create your separator.

If you can't organize your submenu without creating a separator, we recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Nothing should happen if an end user selects your separator.
- Avoid using words in a separator.
- If separators don't make it easier for users to find what they're looking for, consider leaving them out.

# Adding a Menu Item to QuickBooks

---

Your application can add one (and only one) menu item to one (and only one) of these top-level QuickBooks menus:

- File menu
- Company menu
- Customers menu
- Vendors menu
- Employees menu
- Banking menu

The added menu item can include subitems, but not nested submenus. You can specify optional display conditions that determine when your menu items will appear (visible/invisible) and when they will be grayed out (enabled/disabled). (See “Display Conditions” on page 209.) If you don’t specify display conditions, all of your menu items will show up as specified.

Your application’s name will appear in a predesignated place on the menu, usually at the bottom. (See “Where Your Menu Item Will Appear,” below.) If your menu item has subitems, you can name these in whatever way is appropriate, but the top-level QuickBooks menu will always show your application’s name. (See “Menu Item Names” on page 207.)

When an end user selects your menu item (or one of your subitems), QuickBooks will notify your application. At that point, your application might launch itself and display a UI, update certain QuickBooks data, or invoke a QuickBooks window.

UI extensions and UI event notification are “per machine”—that is, UI extensions show up and UI events are sent only on the machine where your application is installed. To make your UI event notification and UI extensions available on multiple machines:

- Your application must be installed on each machine, and
- The QuickBooks administrator must grant access on each machine, for each data file.

## Where Your Menu Item Will Appear

---

Menu extensions have assigned locations in QuickBooks menus. Table 15-2 shows where QuickBooks will place menu extensions in those menu that allows extensions.

Table 15-2 Position of menu extensions in QuickBooks menus

Menu	Position
File	Between "Shipping" and "Update QuickBooks" (as shown in Figure 15-3, Figure 15-4, and Figure 15-5)
Company	Between "Synchronize Contacts" and "Company Services"
Customers	Between "Billing Solutions" and "Check Credit"
Vendors	Between "Item List" and "Vendor Services" (as shown in Figure 15-2)
Employees	Between "Payroll Item List" and "Employer Services"
Banking	Between "Memorized Transaction List" and "Banking Services"

For example, Figure 15-2 shows where menu extensions are positioned in the QuickBooks Vendors menu.

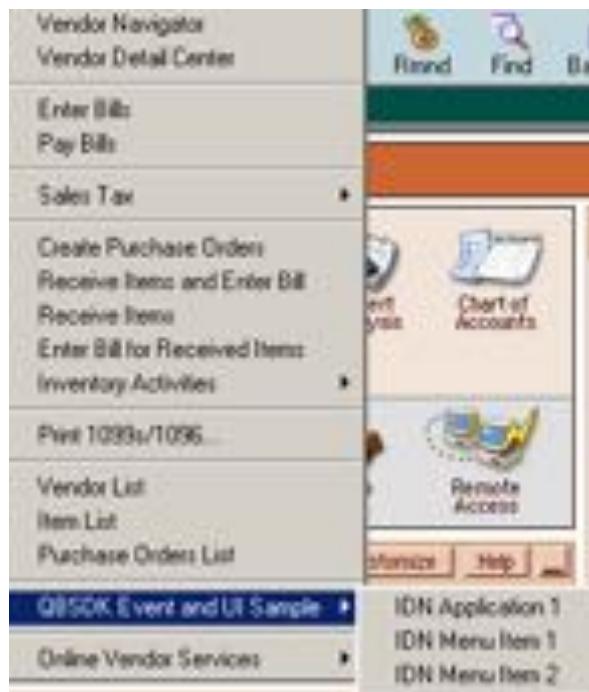


Figure 15-2 Where menu extensions appear in the QuickBooks Vendors menu

## Menu Item Names

Subscription add requests require an `AppName`, which has a maximum of 128 characters. The `AppName` string will appear as the name of your application in the authorization dialog box and in the QuickBooks menu.

How `AppName` is used with the `MenuText` depends on whether you add a single menu item (see “A Single Menu Item,” below) or a submenu (see “A Menu Item with Subitems,” below). The `MenuText` field is used for menu-item names. Menu-item names:

- Cannot have keyboard shortcuts or access keys (mnemonics) set for them
- Cannot have functional check boxes, radio buttons, or other graphics next to them
- Can have up to 50 characters
- Can use special characters

### A Single Menu Item

If you add a single menu item, its name (MenuText) follows your AppName, separated by a colon. Figure 15-3 shows how it would look if an application named “ACME Invoice Management System” added a menu item called “Export Invoice” to the QuickBooks File menu.

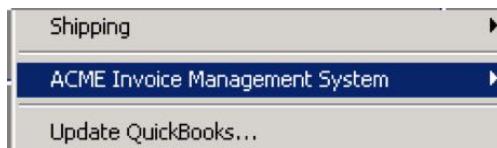


Figure 15-3 Single menu item with combined AppName and MenuText of fewer than 50 characters

If the AppName and MenuText strings add up to more than 50 characters, the menu-item name will appear as a subitem, as Figure 15-4 shows. (The colon and the following space are not counted toward the 50 characters.)

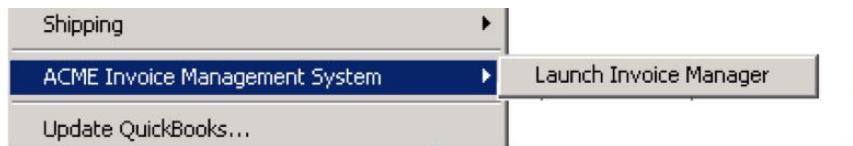


Figure 15-4 Single menu item with combined AppName and MenuText of more than 50 characters

### A Menu Item with Subitems

An SDK-added menu item can have as many subitems as your application needs. In this case, your AppName and a right arrow will appear in the top-level QuickBooks menu. Figure 15-5 shows an example of how this could look.

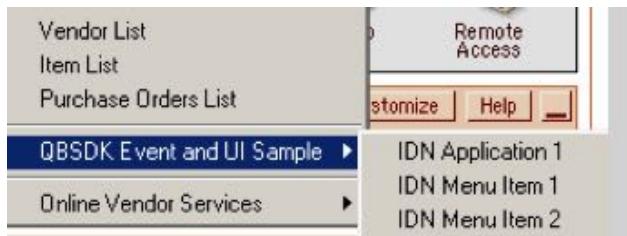


Figure 15-5 A menu item with subitems

**NOTE**

The subitems (specified as a list of MenuItem objects) show up in the order in which you specify them in the Submenu object. For more information, see the [UIExtensionSubscriptionAdd](#) message in the API Reference.

### Placing the AppName at Desired Locations in Menu Text

You can specify the application name to be displayed at various places in the menu text by using the the value {AppName} in the menu text. This will cause the app name to be placed as defined by the text. For example:

- Some text {AppName}
- {AppName} some text
- Some text {AppName} more text
- {AppName} (if all you want to show is the application name

Notice that the value {AppName} is a literal string. You don't replace it with some other value: you have to use {AppName} within curly braces.

### When Several Applications Add to the Same Menu

If some other application adds a menu item to the same top-level menu as your application, the applications will be listed in alphabetical order according to the first ten letters of the application name. If two application names share the first ten characters, they will be ordered randomly.

## Display Conditions

Your application has some control over whether your menu extension is visible and enabled, depending on certain conditions being true or false within QuickBooks. Display conditions are contained in lists (VisibleIf, VisibleIfNot, EnabledIf, and EnabledIfNot) within the DisplayCondition object.

The following display conditions are available:

- HasCustomers (Do any customers, active or inactive, exist in the data file?)
- HasVendors (Do any vendors, active or inactive, exist in the data file?)
- MultiUserMode (Is this data file open in multi-user mode?)
- AccountantCopyExists (Has an Accountant's Copy been created for this data file?)
- IsAccountantCopy (Is *this* data file the Accountant's Copy?)
- InventoryEnabled, ClassesEnabled, PriceLevelsEnabled, EstimatesEnabled, SalesTaxEnabled, TimeTrackingEnabled, PayrollEnabled (Does this data file use inventory, classes, price levels, and so on? The end user enables or disables these in the Preferences dialog box.)
- SalesOrdersEnabled, AssemblyItemsEnabled (Does this data file use sales orders? Assembly items? If this is a Premier or Enterprise edition of QuickBooks, the end user enables or disables these in the Preferences dialog box. If it is a Pro edition of QuickBooks, sales orders and assembly items are not available.)

## Visible and Enabled States

In the DisplayCondition aggregate:

- The VisibleIf and VisibleIfNot tags control whether or not a menu item is displayed.
- The EnabledIf and EnabledIfNot tags control whether or not a menu item is grayed out.

You can combine visible and enabled states. When multiple criteria for a state are given, all criteria must be true for the state to be “on.” For example, if VisibleIf were set to HasCustomers and HasVendors, the data file would have to have both customers and vendors for the menu item to be visible.

All combinations are valid, but not all combinations make sense within QuickBooks. For example, you could have a menu item that in some cases is not visible, in other cases is visible but grayed out, and in yet other cases is both visible and enabled. (An item must be visible to be enabled, of course.) So if you use visible and enabled conditions on the same item, you must make sure that both conditions can be true at the same time.

### **IMPORTANT**

A menu item does not change its state based on the states of its subitems. The worst case of this would be if all the subitems ended up *not* visible. In this case, the menu item would still be visible, but there would be no subitems under it (and therefore it would not have any functionality).

You can avoid this problem by including an always-visible “Learn About” or “Help” link that provides information about the conditions that will make the other menu items visible.

## When to Use Visible and Enabled Conditions

To avoid cluttering an end user's menu with items that will never be used, try to match display conditions with whatever user Preferences are set. For example, in a QuickBooks data file that had the time-tracking preference turned off, you would not want a time-tracking submenu item to show up.

## Getting QuickBooks Context Information From a Menu Item Click

If you are subscribed to UIExtensionEvents, and the user clicks on your subscribed menu item, the CurrentWindow element in the QBXMLEvent delivered to your callback contains the name of the QuickBooks form (if any) that was open when the user clicked the menu item.

## Error Handling

This section describes error-handling situations specific to UI extensions. (For information about QuickBooks SDK error handling in general, see the section on error recovery section in Chapter 31, "Error Recovery.")

Sometimes QuickBooks end users will not receive a response (or will not *realize* that they have received a response) after they select your menu item. With careful planning, you can prevent the following three scenarios (each of which is a bad experience for the end user):

1. Your application window comes up behind the QuickBooks window when the end user selects your menu item.
2. Your application does something behind the scenes, without informing the end user what's going on.
3. The end user uninstalls your application from the machine, but your uninstall process does not unregister its UI extensions, so your menu extensions still show up in QuickBooks. (To unregister itself, your application must send a SubscriptionDelRq request message to QuickBooks. For details about the syntax of this message, see the SubscriptionDel message in the API Reference.)

The following three scenarios are outside your control, but knowing about them will help you to plan your application's response:

1. Someone deletes your application from the machine without uninstalling it.
2. Someone uninstalls your application while QuickBooks is running, and your application correctly unregisters itself (as described in 3, above). But because QuickBooks has not yet been restarted, your menu items still appear (and can still be selected).
3. The notification process fails for some other reason (for example, the machine or an application is frozen).

When a QuickBooks user selects a menu extension and there is no response for one of the three reasons listed above, QuickBooks will put up a message box similar to the one shown in Figure 15-6.



Figure 15-6 A message box like this one will appear if the user clicks a menu item and application notification fails for any of the three reasons listed above.

A menu click might also fail because your application is still responding to the last menu-click. In this case, the error message shown above would not show up. For more information about what would happen, see “Lost UI Events” (page 212).

## When the Authorization Level Changes

If the QuickBooks administrator uses the Integrated Applications Preferences page to remove your application or disallow access, the menus will update right away. (The Integrated Applications Preferences page is described in Chapter 4, “Specifying Authorization Preferences.”)

## Lost UI Events

If your application is unable to receive a UI or UI-extension event, the event is lost and cannot be recovered. Your application will not even know that it missed an event.

For example, when a user clicks one of your menu items, subsequent clicks will not send any more notifications until your callback method returns. The user can keep clicking your application’s menu items (the QuickBooks UI does not prevent it by freezing), but nothing will happen. These user menu-clicks are lost. Menu item clicks will also be lost if the callback application is in the process of handling a data event callback.

Lost *data* events can be detected and recovered. For more information about this, see Chapter 14, “Event Notification.”

### **TIP**

Your application should return as quickly as possible, without waiting for UI interaction within your application.

For example, if your application shows a message that the user must dismiss by clicking OK, your application should not wait until OK is clicked before returning from the callback.

## Invoking the QuickBooks UI

---

Besides adding menu extensions, your application can interact with the QuickBooks UI by opening certain QuickBooks windows for the end user. If QuickBooks is already running, your application can invoke its UI in several ways:

- You can launch a blank transaction form or list window so the QuickBooks user can create a new transaction or a new list object.
- Starting with SDK 4.0, you can launch various types of transaction window with a new transaction prefilled with customer, vendor, employee, or OtherName data.
- You can launch an existing transaction form or list window so the user can edit it.
- You can display any of the reports that can be queried through the SDK.

Your application can invoke the QuickBooks UI either locally or remotely. On the end user's machine, QuickBooks will return to full size if it was minimized, come to the foreground, and open the windows you have invoked. Invoked windows appear within the QuickBooks UI, not within your application.

In general, permissions and preferences affect UI invocation the same way they affect the QuickBooks UI itself. For example, if Jeff doesn't have permission to open an Invoice form in QuickBooks, your application cannot open an Invoice form while Jeff is using QuickBooks.

## Opening Transaction Forms

---

Your application can use the TxnDisplayAdd request or the TxnDisplayMod request to open any of the following transaction forms in the QuickBooks UI:

Bill	Invoice
Bill payment	Item receipt
BuildAssembly	
Charge	Journal entry
Check	Purchase order
Credit card charge	Receive payment
Credit card credit	Sales order
Credit memo	Sales receipt
Deposit	Sales tax payment check
Estimate	Vendor credit
Inventory adjustment	

Use `TxnDisplayAdd` to open a blank form, which you specify with the `TxnDisplayAddType`. Use `TxnDisplayMod` to open an existing transaction form so the user can modify it. You must specify the `TxnID` of the transaction to be modified.

**NOTE**

The `SalesTaxPaymentCheck` form is modal. Therefore, if a sales-tax payment form is already open and your application tries to open another sales-tax payment form, your application will receive an error indicating that QuickBooks is locked in a modal state and cannot be accessed (HRESULT 0x80040414).

In some cases, the end user will have to take an extra step to view the right form after your application invokes a transaction form. This is because in the QuickBooks UI, some transaction types share forms:

- `CreditCardCharge` and `CreditCardCredit` use the same form. If a `CreditCardCharge` form is open and you send an add request to open a new `CreditCardCredit` form, QuickBooks will open a new `CreditCardCharge` form instead.  
Similarly, if a `CreditCardCredit` form is open, invoking a new `CreditCardCharge` brings up a new `CreditCardCredit` form.
- `ItemReceipt`, `Bill`, and `VendorCredit` use the same form. So, for example, if a `Bill` form is open and you send an add request to open a new `ItemReceipt` form, QuickBooks will open a new `Bill` form instead.

The user can get to the needed form by selecting a radio button or check box. For example, the difference between `CreditCardCharge` and `CreditCardCredit` is a single radio button that's either Charge or Credit, the difference between `Bill` and `VendorCredit` is a single radio button that's either Bill or Credit, and the difference between `Bill` and `ItemReceipt` is a check box that says "Bill Received."

## Opening and Prefilling a New Transaction

---

Your application can use the `EntityRef` aggregate (new in SDK 4.0) in the `TxnDisplayAdd` request to open and prefill any of the following transaction forms in the QuickBooks UI:

- `Bill`
- `BuildAssembly`
- `Check`
- `Credit card charge`
- `Credit card credit`
- `Credit memo`
- `Deposit`
- `Estimate`
- `Invoice`
- `Item receipt`

- Purchase order
- Receive payment
- Sales order
- Sales receipt
- Vendor credit

The EntityRef aggregate refers to a customer, vendor, employee or OtherName; the aggregate contains either the ListID or the FullName. Notice that the prefilling that is performed is exactly the same as if the end user had typed in a name in that form. That is, the name will appear, but not the rest of the data for that name, for example the address. That will be done automatically in QuickBooks once the end user tabs out of the form, which mirrors the behavior within the QuickBooks UI.

**NOTE**

If you supply an entity that is not supported by the transaction, for example, if you specify a vendor name for an invoice form, the SDK does not return any error. Instead, when the user tabs out of the transaction form, QuickBooks will display an error, just as if the user had typed in the invalid name.

If you supply an EntityRef for an unsupported transaction type, an error is returned in the response to the TxnDisplayAdd.

## Opening List Windows

Your application can use the ListDisplayAdd request or the ListDisplayMod request to open any of the following list windows in the QuickBooks UI:

- Account
- Customer
- Employee
- Item
- Other Name
- Vendor

Use ListDisplayAdd to open a blank window, which you specify with the ListDisplayAddType. Use ListDisplayMod to open an existing list window so the user can modify it. You must specify the ListID of the list object to be modified.

Sometimes the list window you are trying to invoke will not open:

- Job and Customer use the same form, so if the user is viewing the Edit Job form when your application invokes a new Customer form, the New Job form will open instead. It is not possible to show a New Customer form if a Job form is already up. However, if the user is viewing the Edit Customer form when you invoke a new Customer, a new (blank) Customer form will open.

## Displaying Reports

---

To display a report, set the DisplayReport BOOLEAN value to true in the related report query request. (DisplayReport is false by default.)

If you want the request to display the report without returning any data to your application, set the responseData attribute to includeNone, for example:

```
<QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "continueOnError" responseData = "includeNone">
```

Displaying the report to the QuickBooks user without having data returned to your application can cut down significantly on the time needed to process the query.

# CHAPTER 16

## HANDLING RECEIVE PAYMENT, BILL PAYMENT, AND DEPOSIT TRANSACTIONS

This chapter describes the basic concepts related to *receive payment* and *bill payment* transactions in QuickBooks. Because these transactions are somewhat more complex than most other transactions, this chapter provides detailed examples of how payments, credits, and discounts are handled in different scenarios. The chapter also includes with information and examples related to *deposits*.

The following objects are discussed here:

- `ReceivePaymentAdd/Mod` and the return (Ret) object
- `BillPaymentCheckAdd/Mod` and the return (Ret) object
- `BillPaymentCreditCardAdd` and the return(Ret) object.
- `DepositAdd//Mod` and the Ret object
- Helper queries: `ReceivePaymentToDeposit`, `BillToPayQuery`

Each of the Add/Ret objects has a corresponding query object as well. See the *API Reference* for detailed information on the structure of each object. Also see the `qbxmlops70.xml` file for samples of each object.

## Core Concepts for Receive Payment and Bill Payment

---

This section describes concepts that apply to both receive payment and bill payment transactions. Later sections describe aspects that are unique to each type of transaction. Shared concepts include the following topics:

- Applying payments, credits, and discounts
- Returned object for `AppliedToTxnAdd`
- Creating links instead of transactions

### Applying Payments, Credits, and Discounts

---

In QuickBooks, you can use receive payment and bill payment functionality to do three things separately or in combination:

- Apply a payment
- Set discounts
- Set credits

This information is included in the `AppliedToTxnAdd` aggregate, which is similar, though not identical, for receive payment and bill payment.

## About Payments

In both receive payment and bill payment, you have the option of distributing the payment among multiple transactions. Receive payment also offers an “auto-apply” feature that allows QuickBooks to distribute the payment according to a specified algorithm. See “Applying the Payment “Automatically”” (page 220).

## Creating a Credit vs Setting a Credit

It’s important to note the difference between *creating* a credit and *setting* a credit. For example, a credit can be created when a customer returns some merchandise or overpays an invoice. For bill payment, a credit can be created when the business returns some merchandise to one of its vendors or overpays a bill. *Creating a credit* means making a credit available to be applied in the future to a transaction such as an invoice or bill.

*Setting a credit*, on the other hand, means using an already existing credit to pay off some or all of the balance of a receivable or billed transaction. The `AppliedToTxnAdd` aggregate includes the `SetCredit` aggregate, which allows you to apply (or *set*) an available credit.

## Why Applied Credits Can’t be Modified

You can use the SDK to modify certain payment transactions, such as `ReceivePaymentMod` and `BillPaymentCheckMod`. But in those transactions, you cannot modify credits that have already been applied in the corresponding `ReceivePaymentAdd` and `BillPaymentCheckAdd`. (You can only apply additional credits.) The reason is that QuickBooks currently has no way of remembering which transactions consumed which credits. Once the credits are applied, there is no way of unapplying them short of deleting the transaction (if that is possible) and redoing the transaction with the desired credits.

## Linked Transactions

---

Adding a receive payment or bill payment object generates links between transactions. Query requests for invoice, credit memo, bill, and bill credit objects contain an `IncludeLinkedTxns` flag, which specifies whether to include information about these links in the response. If this flag is true, a `LinkedTxn` aggregate is returned for each linked transaction. If no linked transactions exist, no `LinkedTxn` aggregates are returned.

If you specify true for this flag in an `InvoiceQueryRq`, for example, then `InvoiceRet` will include a list of all transactions linked to that invoice. This list is similar to the History view of a transaction in the user interface, but not identical, as the SDK list contains only linked transactions, not items. By default, the `IncludeLinkedTxns` flag is false.

## Returned Object for AppliedToTxnAdd

---

The response returned for a receive payment or bill payment object can include either a “full” version or a “lean” version of the AppliedToTxnRet object. For certain transactions, a full AppliedToTxnRet object is not required (see “Example: Creating Links Only” and “Setting a Credit”). The lean version returned in these cases includes only:

- Transaction ID (for the affected transaction)
- Transaction type

To find out exactly what happened, you need to perform the appropriate query on the returned TxnID.

## Creating Links Instead of Transactions

---

Although receive payment and bill payment are referred to as “transactions,” adding these objects to QuickBooks does not always result in a transaction. For example, when a credit is applied in a receive payment or bill payment object and no payment is involved, links are created, but no transactions are created (see “Example: Creating Links Only” and “Setting a Credit”).

## Receive Payment Transactions

---

QuickBooks receive payment transactions can be added, queried, and deleted through the SDK. This section describes the effects of sending a ReceivePaymentAdd request object to QuickBooks.

### Applying a Payment

---

In a ReceivePaymentAdd object, TotalAmount is optional. TotalAmount represents the total amount of money that is being received from the customer named in the CustomerRef. The reason TotalAmount is not required is that a ReceivePaymentAdd object can be used to set credits or discounts without receiving any payment.

You can use either AppliedToTxnAdd or IsAutoApply to distribute the received payment, as described in the following sections.

#### **Distributing the Payment Explicitly**

You can include one or more instances of AppliedToTxnAdd, which allows you to specify exactly how to distribute TotalAmount for this customer job. Each instance of AppliedToTxnAdd refers to a different transaction, assigning a PaymentAmount to each one. (If you include AppliedToTxnAdd aggregates with duplicate TxnIDs, you will receive a status code error.)

You need to know the transaction ID of each transaction to which payment is applied. In QuickBooks, the main type of transactions that can receive payment are as follows:

- Invoices
- General journal debits
- Checks (for example, a customer job might receive a payment reimbursing a check that was written for an expense for that customer job)
- Statement charges

Table 16-1 shows how the sum of the payment amounts relates to the TotalAmount specified. The sum of the PaymentAmount elements in all the AppliedToTxnAdd aggregates should be less than or equal to the TotalAmount (in the ReceivePaymentAdd object).

Table 16-1 How the sum of all payment amounts relates to the TotalAmount specified

Relationship of Payment Amounts to TotalAmount	Result
payment amounts = TotalAmount	Entire received amount is distributed
payment amounts < TotalAmount	UnusedPayment amount is returned in the ReceiveAmountRet object and is available for a future payment transaction
payment amounts > TotalAmount	Error!

### Applying the Payment “Automatically”

The IsAutoApply flag is used *instead of* AppliedToTxnAdd. This flag allows QuickBooks to apply the payment according to its set of rules, or simply to receive the payment without applying it to a specific transaction, as follows:

- If IsAutoApply is true, QuickBooks applies TotalAmount according to the following rules:
  - > If it finds an outstanding transaction for this customer job that exactly matches TotalAmount, it applies the payment to that transaction.
  - > If no exact match is found, the payment is applied to the outstanding transactions beginning with the oldest one. Within the QuickBooks user interface, you can set credits or discounts even when you auto-apply a payment, but you cannot do this through the SDK.
- If IsAutoApply is false, QuickBooks receives the payment *but does not apply it to any outstanding transaction*. QuickBooks creates a credit that will appear on the customer job’s next transaction (not on the current transaction). For example, the ReceivePaymentAdd request shown in Listing 16-1 will result in a credit of \$620.40 being available to the Smith:kitchen customer job account. On the next transaction involving the Smith:kitchen customer job, at least \$620.40 of credit will be available. (More than \$620.40 will be available if this customer job already had a credit.)

---

### Listing 16-1 ReceivePaymentAdd request with IsAutoApply set to false; creating a credit

```
<ReceivePaymentAddRq requestID="356088">
  <ReceivePaymentAdd>
    <CustomerRef>
      <FullName>Smith:kitchen</FullName>
    </CustomerRef>
    <ARAccountRef>
      <FullName>Accounts Receivable</FullName>
    </ARAccountRef>
    <TotalAmount>620.40</TotalAmount>
    <IsAutoApply>false</IsAutoApply>
  </ReceivePaymentAdd>
</ReceivePaymentAddRq>
```

---

## Setting Discounts

Applying a discount reduces the amount that is to be received from the customer job. The discount is debited from the account referenced by DiscountAccountRef. In the QuickBooks user interface you can also apply discounts to statement charges, but you cannot do this through the SDK.

You can apply a discount to an invoice transaction by including a DiscountAmount in an AppliedToTxnAdd aggregate. You cannot set a discount if you auto-apply the payment.

---

## Setting Credits

You can set a credit (add credit to a customer job account) by including the SetCredit aggregate in an AppliedToTxnAdd aggregate. You cannot set a credit if you auto-apply the payment.

If you set one or more credits in a ReceivePaymentAdd request but do not distribute a payment or set a discount, then *no transaction will be created*. Setting a credit merely creates links between existing transactions (for example, between a credit memo transaction and an invoice transaction), and no information about these links will be returned to you in the ReceivePaymentRet response.

The AppliedToTxnRet aggregate included in the returned ReceivePaymentRet object will not refer directly to any credit that was set. If you want information about credits, you must do a query on the TxnID returned by AppliedToTxnRet. For example, if AppliedToTxnRet refers to an invoice with a particular TxnID, if you query that TxnID you can get information about credit memos that are linked to that transaction.

For more information and an example of setting a credit, see “Example: Creating Links Only.”

## Example: Creating Links Only

Listing 16-2 shows a `ReceivePaymentAdd` object that sets a credit but does not include a `PaymentAmount` or `DiscountAmount` element. This `ReceivePaymentAdd` object will create a link between a credit memo and an invoice transaction, but will not create a new transaction.

The customer named Smith previously returned merchandise, and a credit memo was created for their account. A `CreditMemoQueryRq` query returned information about the amount and transaction ID of this credit memo (110.29 and 120-1012533559).

In Listing 16-2, the full amount from the credit memo is applied to the customer job `Smith:kitchen`, and a link is created to the invoice with the `TxnID` of 24-974954. The balance of that invoice will be reduced by \$110.29, and closed altogether if the previous balance was \$110.29.

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 16-2 `ReceivePaymentAdd` object that creates links but does not create a transaction

```
<ReceivePaymentAddRq requestID="356089">
  <ReceivePaymentAdd>
    <CustomerRef>
      <FullName>Smith:kitchen</FullName>
    </CustomerRef>
    <AppliedToTxnAdd>
      <TxnID>24-974954</TxnID>
      <SetCredit>
        <CreditTxnID>120-1012533559</CreditTxnID>
        <AppliedAmount>110.29</AppliedAmount>
      </SetCredit>
    </AppliedToTxnAdd>
  </ReceivePaymentAdd>
</ReceivePaymentAddRq>
```

A `ReceivePaymentAdd` object that does not create a transaction will return a lean `AppliedToTxnRet` aggregate (page 219). For example, Listing 16-3 shows a `ReceivePaymentRet` object that could be returned from the `ReceivePaymentAdd` request shown in Listing 16-2.

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 16-3 `ReceivePaymentRet` object returned by the `ReceivePaymentAddRq` shown in Listing 16-2

```
<ReceivePaymentAddRs requestID="356089" statusCode="0"
  statusSeverity="Info" statusMessage="Status OK">
  <ReceivePaymentRet>
    <AppliedToTxnRet>
      <TxnID>24-974954</TxnID>
      <TxnType>Invoice</TxnType>
      <TxnDate>2002-02-10</TxnDate>
    </AppliedToTxnRet>
  </ReceivePaymentRet>
</ReceivePaymentAddRs>
```

Getting a small response such as this might prompt you to query the specified invoice further to learn about any linked transactions. For example, after receiving the response shown in Listing 16-2, you might send an `InvoiceQueryRq` with `TxnID` of 24-974954 and `IncludeLinkedTxns` set to true. The query would return a `LinkedTxn` aggregate representing a credit memo with `TxnID` of 120-1012533559. For more information, see “Linked Transactions,” beginning on page 218.

**NOTE**

You can perform additional queries for links only if the affected transaction (the transaction returned in the `AppliedToTxnRet`) is an invoice. For example, if the `TxnID` 24-974954 had a `TxnType` of `JournalEntry`, it would not be possible to query the journal entry to find out about linked transactions because a `JournalEntryQueryRq` does not include an `IncludeLinkedTxns` flag.

### **Example: Applying Payment, Credit, and Discount in One Request**

Listing 16-4 shows a request that applies a payment, credit, and discount. The invoice with `TxnID` 43-222560 has a balance of \$100.00, and a payment is received for \$100.00. The invoice will be closed, but there will also be an *unused* payment, because both a credit (for \$5.00) and a discount (for \$7.00) are set. QuickBooks will reduce the internal payment amount to \$88.00 [ $\$100.00 - (\$5.00 + \$7.00)$ ]. This example will produce an overpayment of \$12.00, so `UnusedPayment` will be 12.00 in the returned `ReceivePaymentRet` object.

Listing 16-4 Applying Payment, Credit, and Discount in a `ReceivePaymentAdd` Request

```
<ReceivePaymentAddRq>
  <ReceivePaymentAdd>
    .
    .
    .
    <TotalAmount>100.00</TotalAmount>
    <AppliedToTxnAdd>
      <TxnID>43-222560</TxnID>
      <PaymentAmount>100.00</PaymentAmount>
      <SetCredit>
        <CreditTxnID>4552-22629</CreditTxnID>
        <AppliedAmount>5.00</AppliedAmount>
      </SetCredit>
      <DiscountAmount>7.00</DiscountAmount>
      <DiscountAccountRef>
        <FullName>discount</FullName>
      </DiscountAccountRef>
    </AppliedToTxnAdd>
  </ReceivePaymentAdd>
</ReceivePaymentAddRq>
```

## Using ReceivePayment for Credit Card Authorization and Capture

---

If the company is subscribed to Intuit Payments, you can record a `ReceivePaymentAdd` that is basically a pending transaction. That is, in this usage, you want to save a Intuit Payments authorization transaction into QuickBooks. Thus, the `ReceivePaymentAdd` contains a `CreditCardTxnInfo` aggregate with a `CreditCardTxnType` of `Authorization`. QuickBooks saves this as a pending transaction.

Later, when the authorized charge is captured to become a real charge in Intuit Payments, you can record that charge into QuickBooks by modifying that `ReceivePayment` (`ReceivePaymentMod`). The `ReceivePaymentMod` will have a `CreditCardTxnInfoMod` containing data from the Intuit Payments capture transaction, with a `CreditCardTxnType` of `Capture`. QuickBooks automatically removes the pending status and records the transaction.

## Modifying a ReceivePayment Transaction

---

Beginning with qbXML specification 6.0 and QuickBooks 2007, you can modify a `ReceivePayment` transaction via the SDK. However, notice that you cannot modify applied credits.

Beginning with qbXML spec 7.0 and QuickBooks 2008, you can modify a `ReceivePayment` transaction to add a `CreditCardTxnInfo` aggregate or modify an existing one if you want. The most common use of this feature is described under the topic “Using `ReceivePayment` for Credit Card Authorization and Capture.” However, you can make other modifications if you wish because the feature is not limited to an authorization/capture usage.

## Bill Payment Transactions

---

A *bill payment* transaction is used to pay one or more bills for the same vendor. Payment can be either by check or by credit card. (Online banking is not currently supported in the SDK.) In addition, a bill payment transaction, like a receive payment transaction, can be used to set credits and discounts.

The Pay Bills window in QuickBooks shows all open bills for all vendors. The user can select multiple bills from multiple vendors and pay them, all at one time. In the SDK, you can pay multiple bills in one bill payment object, but they must all be from the *same* vendor.

## Payment Method

---

There are two types of bill payment objects:

- BillPaymentCheckAdd
- BillPaymentCreditCardAdd

The type of bill payment object created depends on which payment method the user selects.

## Paying the Bill

---

A bill payment is always applied to a particular transaction. The payment amount can be less than, equal to, or greater than the amount due. In the case of an overpayment, a credit in the amount of the overpayment is created. This credit appears in the Credits window list.

### **Special Helper Query**

When you pay a bill (using AppliedToTxnAdd), you must specify the transaction ID and the payment amount. Use the BillToPayQuery to obtain the transaction ID. This query returns a list of all open bills and credits available.

### **Example: BillToPayQuery**

Listing 16-5 shows an example of a BillToPayQuery request for all bills and credits for Allison BMW as of August 16, 2002. The corresponding response is shown in Listing 16-6. It returns information on two bills and one credit.

---

Listing 16-5 BillToPayQuery request

```
<BillToPayQueryRq requestID = "123456">
  <PayeeEntityRef>
    <FullName>Allison BMW</FullName>
  </PayeeEntityRef>
  <APAccountRef>
    <FullName>Accounts Payable</FullName>
  </APAccountRef>
  <DueDate>2002-08-16</DueDate>
</BillToPayQueryRq>
```

---

#### Listing 16-6 BillToPayQuery response

```
<BillToPayQueryRs requestID="123456" statusCode="0"
    statusSeverity="Info" statusMessage="Status OK">
    <BillToPayRet>
        <BillToPay>
            <TxnID>101-1029260941</TxnID>
            <TxnType>Bill</TxnType>
            <APAccountRef>
                <ListID>280000-1026788471</ListID>
                <FullName>Accounts Payable</FullName>
            </APAccountRef>
            <TxnDate>2002-07-26</TxnDate>
            <RefNumber>0126</RefNumber>
            <DueDate>2002-08-16</DueDate>
            <AmountDue>152.00</AmountDue>
        </BillToPay>
    </BillToPayRet>
    <BillToPayRet>
        <BillToPay>
            <TxnID>FE-1029260914</TxnID>
            <TxnType>Bill</TxnType>
            <APAccountRef>
                <ListID>280000-1026788471</ListID>
                <FullName>Accounts Payable</FullName>
            </APAccountRef>
            <TxnDate>2002-08-13</TxnDate>
            <RefNumber>0125</RefNumber>
            <DueDate>2002-07-17</DueDate>
            <AmountDue>1250.00</AmountDue>
        </BillToPay>
    </BillToPayRet>
    <BillToPayRet>
        <CreditToApply>
            <TxnID>104-1029260962</TxnID>
            <TxnType>VendorCredit</TxnType>
            <APAccountRef>
                <ListID>280000-1026788471</ListID>
                <FullName>Accounts Payable</FullName>
            </APAccountRef>
            <TxnDate>2002-08-13</TxnDate>
            <RefNumber>0300</RefNumber>
            <CreditRemaining>125.00</CreditRemaining>
        </CreditToApply>
    </BillToPayRet>
</BillToPayQueryRs>
</QBXMLMsgsRs>
</QBXML>
```

---

## Setting a Credit

If you apply only a credit (and no payment), links are created between the bill and the credit transaction, but no transaction is actually created. The return object in this case is a “lean” AppliedToTxnRet object. See “Returned Object for AppliedToTxnAdd” (page 219).

## Setting a Discount

---

You can discount only bills in the BillTxnList. (An attempt to set a discount on other types of objects results in an error.) If you discount a bill without paying it, only a general journal entry is created (but no BillPaymentCreditCardRet or BillPaymentCheckRet transaction). The return object in this case is a lean AppliedToTxnRet object. See “Returned Object for AppliedToTxnAdd” (page 219).

If you apply both a credit and a discount amount (but no payment), the combined total cannot exceed the total amount due of the bill.

## Bill Payment Examples

---

Here are a few examples of different bill payment scenarios.

### **Example: Applying Payment, Credit, and Discount**

In this example, the amount due on Bill 1 (B1) is \$100. Suppose you pay \$80 on Bill 1 and also apply a credit of \$10 and a discount of \$10 to the same bill. Listing 16-7 shows the AppliedToTxnAdd aggregate for this transaction.

---

Listing 16-7 Paying and closing a bill

```
<AppliedToTxnAdd>
  <TxnID>B1</TxnID>
  <PaymentAmount>80.00</PaymentAmount>
  <SetCredit>
    <CreditTxnID>C1</CreditTxnID>
    <AppliedAmount>10.00</AppliedAmount>
  </SetCredit>
  <DiscountAmount>10.00</DiscountAmount>
  <DiscountAccountRef>
    <FullName>D1</FullName>
  </DiscountAccountRef>
</AppliedToTxnAdd>
```

The result is that QuickBooks pays the bill and closes it, because the sum of payments, credits, and discounts is exactly equal to the amount of the bill.

### **Example: Overpayment**

In this example, the amount due on Bill 1 (B1) is \$100. Now suppose you specify a payment of \$80 on Bill 1, apply a \$20 credit from Credit 1 on Bill 1 and a discount of \$10 also on Bill 1, as shown in Listing 16-8. In this example, the total payment for Bill 1 is \$110. A \$10 credit is created as a result of this overpayment.

---

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 16-8 Creating a credit as a result of overpaying a bill

```
<AppliedToTxnAdd>
  <TxnID>B1</TxnID>
  <PaymentAmount>80.00</PaymentAmount>
  <SetCredit>
    <CreditTxnID>C1</CreditTxnID>
    <AppliedAmount>20.00</AppliedAmount>
  </SetCredit>
  <DiscountAmount>10.00</DiscountAmount>
  <DiscountAccountRef>
    <FullName>D1</FullName>
  </DiscountAccountRef>
</AppliedToTxnAdd>
```

**Example: Error!**

In this example, the following are applied to Bill1, which is for \$100 (see Listing 16-9):

- Payment = \$50
- Credit = \$60
- Discount = \$45

This example results in an error, since the combined credits and discounts applied to a bill cannot exceed the amount due of the bill.

---

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 16-9 Status code error: attempting to apply credits and discounts that exceed the bill amount

```
<AppliedToTxnAdd>
  <TxnID>B1</TxnID>
  <PaymentAmount>50.00</PaymentAmount>
  <SetCredit>
    <CreditTxnID>C1</CreditTxnID>
    <AppliedAmount>60.00</AppliedAmount>
  </SetCredit>
  <DiscountAmount>45.00</DiscountAmount>
  <DiscountAccountRef>
    <FullName>"GoodCustomerDiscount"</FullName>
  </DiscountAccountRef>
</AppliedToTxnAdd>
```

## Example: Paying Two Bills

This example, shown in Listing 16-10, applies the following to Bill 1, which has an amount due of \$100:

- Payment = \$80
- Credit = \$10
- Discount = \$10

It also applies a credit of \$10 to Bill 2, which has an amount due of \$50. (Note that one credit, C1, is applied to multiple bills in this example.) No payment is applied to Bill 2.

Listing 16-10 Paying two bills (generates two AppliedToTxnRet objects)

```
<BillPaymentCheckAddRq>
  <AppliedToTxnAdd>
    <TxnID>B1</TxnID>
    <PaymentAmount>80.00</PaymentAmount>
    <SetCredit>
      <CreditTxnID>C1</CreditTxnID>
      <AppliedAmount>10.00</AppliedAmount>
    </SetCredit>
    <DiscountAmount>10.00</DiscountAmount>
    <DiscountAccountRef>
      <FullName>D1</FullName>
      </DiscountAccountRef>
  </AppliedToTxnAdd>
  <AppliedToTxnAdd>
    <TxnID>B2</TxnID>
    <SetCredit>
      <CreditTxnID>JulyRebate</CreditTxnID>
    </SetCredit>
  </AppliedToTxnAdd>
</BillPaymentCheckAddRq>
```

Two AppliedToTxnRet objects will be returned in the response message—one for Bill 1 and one for Bill 2. The returned object for Bill 1 will be the full AppliedToTxnRet. The returned object for Bill 2 will be the lean version since no payment was made for Bill 2. To find out more about Bill 2, you can perform additional queries for links using the `IncludeLinkedTxns` flag.

## Modifying a BillPaymentCheck Transaction

Beginning with qbXML specification 6.0 and QuickBooks 2007, you can modify BillPaymentCheck transactions via the SDK. However, you cannot modify any credit that was applied to a bill either using the bill payment UI or BillPaymentCheckAdd.

# Deposits

---

A deposit is used to move funds to an asset account from the Undeposited Funds account, or to move funds to the same asset account from another asset account. A deposit contains the following important information:

- Account the funds are coming from
- Account the funds are going to (an asset account)
- Reference to a customer name

You can specify the transfer of deposited funds explicitly to a given account, or you can specify it using the PaymentTxnID and PaymentTxnLineID elements contained in the DepositAdd request, as shown by the following examples.

Listing 16-11 is an example of a straightforward DepositAdd request. A total deposit, in the amount of \$50, is taken from *customer1*'s *savings* account. A *cash back* payment (\$12) is taken, and the remainder of the funds (\$38) is deposited into the *checking* account.

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 16-11 Adding a deposit to the specified account

```
<DepositAddRq requestID = "SDK deposit 3">
  <DepositAdd>
    <DepositToAccountRef>
      <FullName>checking</FullName>
    </DepositToAccountRef>
    <Memo>SDK deposit 3</Memo>
    <CashBackInfo>
      <AccountRef>
        <FullName>cash</FullName>
      </AccountRef>
      <Memo>SDK cash back</Memo>
      <Amount>12.00</Amount>
    </CashBackInfo>
    <DepositLineAdd>
      <EntityRef>
        <FullName>customer1</FullName>
      </EntityRef>
      <AccountRef>
        <FullName>savings</FullName>
      </AccountRef>
      <PaymentMethodRef>
        <FullName>cash</FullName>
      </PaymentMethodRef>
      <Amount>50.00</Amount>
    </DepositLineAdd>
  </DepositAdd>
</DepositAddRq>
```

Listing 16-12 shows a simple request that issues the helper query *ReceivePaymentToDeposit*. The response to this request, shown in Listing 16-13, returns the IDs of the transactions and lines that are ready to be deposited.

---

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 16-12 ReceivePaymentToDeposit helper query request

```
<QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "continueOnError">
  <ReceivePaymentToDepositQueryRq />
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
```

Listing 16-13 shows the response to the ReceivePaymentToDeposit query. This response shows that Kristy Abercrombie has paid \$200.00 against an invoice, and lists the TxnID and TxnLineID that the funds are being applied to. The payment received from Kristy Abercrombie was already included on the original invoice in the form of a payment line item.

---

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 16-13 Response to ReceivePaymentToDeposit query

```
<ReceivePaymentToDepositQueryRs statusCode="0"
  statusSeverity="Info" statusMessage="Status OK">
  <ReceivePaymentToDepositRet>
    <TxnID>48ED-1071532336</TxnID>
    <TxnLineID>48F1-1071532336</TxnLineID>
    <TxnType>Invoice</TxnType>
    <CustomerRef>
      <ListID>170000-933272658</ListID>
      <FullName>Abercrombie, Kristy:Kitchen</FullName>
    </CustomerRef>
    <TxnDate>2003-12-15</TxnDate>
    <Amount>200.00</Amount>
  </ReceivePaymentToDepositRet>
</ReceivePaymentToDepositQueryRs>
```

Listing 16-14 shows a DepositAdd request, which feeds the TxnID and TxnLineID obtained in Listing 16-13 into a deposit. The funds are deposited to the account referred to by the DepositToAccountRef element in the DepositAdd request—namely, the checking account.

---

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 16-14 DepositAdd request using the obtained data

```
<DepositAddRq requestID = "101">
  <DepositAdd>
    <DepositToAccountRef>
      <FullName>checking</FullName>
    </DepositToAccountRef>
    <Memo>SDK deposit 3</Memo>
    <DepositLineAdd>
      <PaymentTxnID>48ED-1071532336</PaymentTxnID>
      <PaymentTxnLineID>48F1-1071532336</PaymentTxnLineID>
    </DepositLineAdd>
  </DepositAdd>
</DepositAddRq>
```

An alternative to accomplish the same end would be to issue an InvoiceQuery request. Then you could look at the InvoiceRet message and extract the TxnID and TxnLineID information and supply them in the DepositAdd request.

**TIP**

If you use the ReceivePaymentToDeposit query to obtain a TxnID and TxnLineID, be sure to supply *both* of these values to the DepositAdd request (in the PaymentTxnID and PaymentTxnLineID elements).

# CHAPTER 17

## LINKING ITEMRECEIPT/BILL TO PURCHASEORDER, INVOICE TO SALES ORDER

Within the QuickBooks UI, as user can receive items against one or more existing purchase orders and enter a bill for those received items, with the purchase order being updated automatically. Similarly, the user can invoice against existing sales orders, with the sales orders being updated automatically.

These features are also available via the SDK by linking the transactions together, where ItemReceipt and Bill transactions are linked to existing PurchaseOrder transactions (in the ItemReceiptAdd and BillAdd requests only). An invoice transaction can be linked to existing SaleOrder transactions as well, in the InvoiceAdd request. The line item information is pulled automatically from the PurchaseOrders or SalesOrders, and the PurchaseOrders or SalesOrders are automatically updated.

This chapter describes the transaction linking between ItemReceipt or Bill and PurchaseOrder, and between Invoice and SalesOrder. (These are the only transaction links that are currently supported.) The chapter describes the typical scenario where this feature is used, the effect on the linked objects, the types of linking you can do, and the rules of linking that you must follow.

### **IMPORTANT**

In the SDK, linking to the PurchaseOrder is supported only for the Bill and ItemReceipt Add operations, not for Mod operations. Likewise, linking to SalesOrder is supported only for InvoiceAdd, not InvoiceMod.

## Important Note about Querying for Linked Transactions

You can find transactions linked to PurchaseOrders and SalesOrders by setting the IncludeLinkedTxns element to true in the PurchaseOrder or SalesOrder query. (By default, linked transactions are NOT returned.)

However, notice that the linked transaction as a whole is returned--you get the txnID, but not any txnLineIDs. This is fine if you linked the whole transaction to your SalesOrder or PurchaseOrder. But what happens if you linked individual transaction line items to line items in your SalesOrder or PurchaseOrder? The answer to this is that you cannot retrieve that line item information so you can see which line items in the PurchaseOrder/SalesOrder came from which lines in the bill, item receipt, or invoice.

## Linking Bill or ItemReceipt to PurchaseOrder

Generally, the SDK is intended to allow an application to perform the same tasks programmatically that a user would do manually within QuickBooks. Accordingly, to understand how to use the SDK transaction linking, you need to know how this feature operates for an end user looking at the QuickBooks UI.

### The Basic User Scenario in the QuickBooks UI

In the QuickBooks UI, when a user creates a Bill or ItemReceipt (BillAdd or ItemReceiptAdd in the SDK), the user selects a vendor. If the vendor has any open purchase orders, the user is presented with a selection list of purchase orders (see Figure 17-1 on page 234).

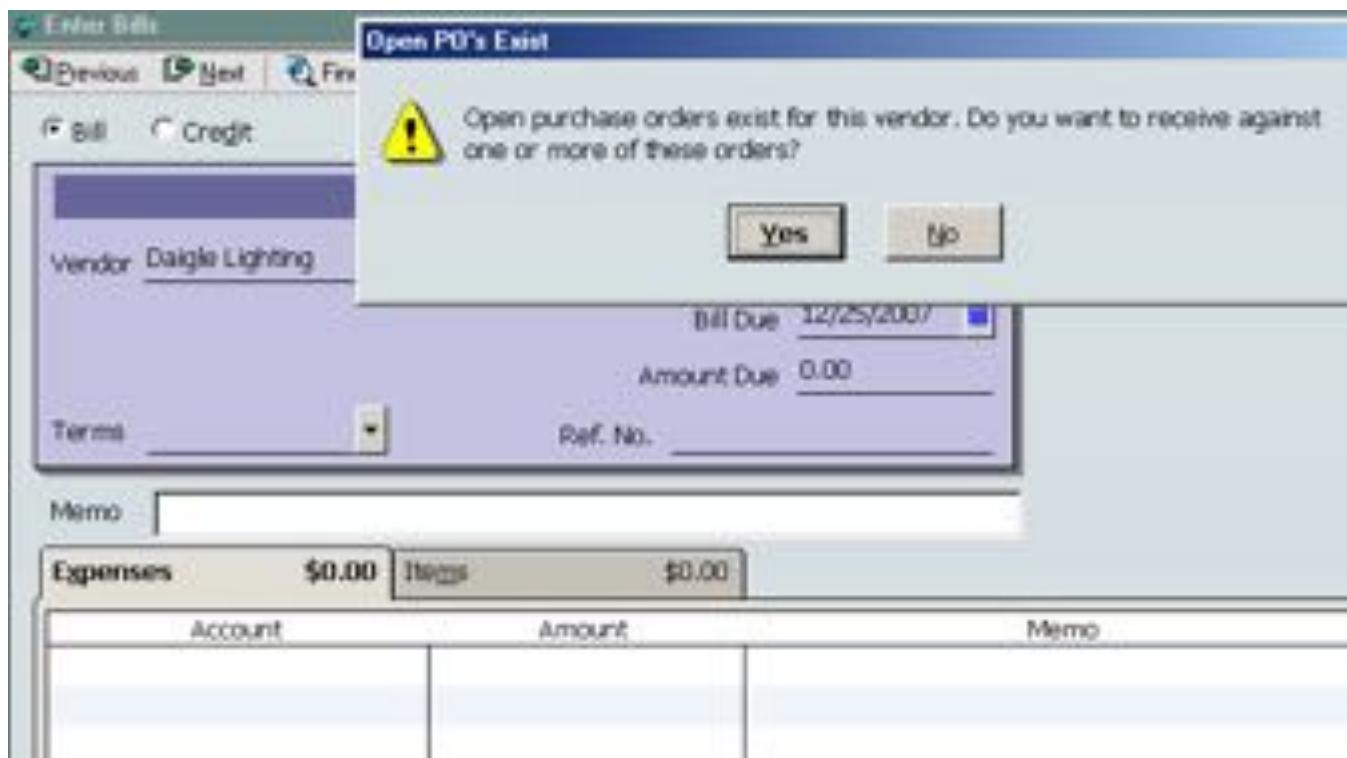


Figure 17-1 Creating a Bill: Open PO advisory

After the user links a PurchaseOrder to the ItemReceipt or Bill, data from that PurchaseOrder automatically fills the ItemReceipt or Bill, so that every receivable line item in the PurchaseOrder becomes a line item in the ItemReceipt or Bill (Figure 17-2).

The screenshot shows a software application window with a 'Bill' header. The bill details are as follows:

- Bill Received:
- Bill Type: Doors
- Date: 12/15/2007
- Bill Due: 01/14/2008
- Amount Due: 1,095.00
- Ref. No.: \_\_\_\_\_

Below the bill details, a table lists the Purchase Order line items:

Line	Description	Qty	Cost	Amount	Customer/Job	PO No.
1	door - P-187055T	6	220.00	1,320.00		27
		5	115.00	575.00		27

A circled '27' is present in the PO No. column for both line items.

Figure 17-2 Linking PO to new Bill

Notice the PurchaseOrder number circled in the lower right of the figure. This shows which line items belong to which PurchaseOrder, which is useful if the user links multiple PurchaseOrders to the Bill.

The user could simply accept all the PurchaseOrder line items as received by clicking the "Save and Close" button. If the user does this, and subsequently displays the PurchaseOrder, it will indicate that all its items were received, as shown in Figure 17-3 on page 236.

Vendor: Perry Windows & Doors

Ship To: [ ]

DATE: 11/18/2007

SHIP TO: Rock Castle C  
75 Sunset Rd  
Middlefield, C

EXPIRES: 11/17/2007

**Purchase Order**

Vendor: Perry Windows & Doors  
P.O. Box 5000  
Bayshore, CA 94026

**RECEIVED IN FULL**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	QTY	RATE	CUSTOMER	AMOUNT
Window	(See attached specifications)	24	220.00		5,280.0
Wood Door (Int.)	Interior door - P-2070557	15	115.00		1,725.0
Wood Door (Ext.)	Exterior door - #P-10901	2	300.00		600.0
Wood Door (Ext.)	Exterior door - #P-7904	1	215.00		215.0

Figure 17-3 PurchaseOrder after linking to a Bill

But what happens if the user received only some of the items in the PurchaseOrder, and not others? The user in this case would simply modify the quantity field in any line item that was not fully received. (See the circled area in Figure 17-4 on page 236.)

Vendor: Daigle Lighting

Date: 12/15/2007

Bill Due: 12/30/2007

Discount Date:

Amount Due: 500.00

Terms: Net 15

Ref. No.

Memo:

Expenses	\$0.00	Items	\$500.00
Item	Description	Qty	Cost
Bolts	Bag O' Bolts	500	1.00
Nuts	Bag O' Nuts	0	1.00
Cabinets	Cabinets	0	100.00

Figure 17-4 Partially accepting PO by zeroing Quantity

The PurchaseOrder in this case would not display the “Received in Full” stamp, but would show received and unreceived items with the number received indicated. The fully received items are marked as closed “Cld.” See the circled area in Figure 17-5 on page 237.



Figure 17-5 PurchaseOrder partially received in a Bill

## Linking an ItemReceipt or Bill to PurchaseOrder Using the SDK

You can duplicate the previously described UI user scenarios in the SDK by linking an ItemReceipt or Bill to one or more PurchaseOrders in the SDK when you create an ItemReceipt or Bill.

The SDK supplies one element and one aggregate to enable you to make the PurchaseOrder links you want:

- To link a Bill or ItemReceipt to one or more *entire* PurchaseOrders, use the `LinkToTxnID` element in the `BillAdd` or `ItemReceiptAdd` request. (This adds all of the line items in the specified PurchaseOrder.) See the circled area of Figure 17-6 on page 238, which shows the API Reference listing. The purchase orders linked in this way to an item receipt will be marked as received in full and will be closed as a result of the `ItemReceiptAdd`.
- To link a Bill or ItemReceipt to specific line items in one or more PurchaseOrders, use the `LinkToTxn` aggregate inside the `ItemLineAdd` aggregate. See the circled area of Figure 17-7 on page 239, which shows the API Reference listing. Typically, if all the items don't arrive at the same time, a separate item receipt is issued when the items are received. Purchase orders linked in this way to item receipts will be closed only after all of the items are received.

**NOTE**

Purchase Orders are automatically closed and marked as fully received when the item receipts linked to them fully receive the purchase order line items. However, if you want to close a Purchase Order or close out line items in a Purchase Order without receiving the items, you can perform a PurchaseOrderMod and manually close individual line items or the Purchase Order itself.

Tag	Type	Max	Implementation	Occu
<b>BillAdd (defMacro)</b>				
<b>VendorRef</b>				
ListID	INTTYPE			
FullName	STRTYPE	41 Chars		
<b>APAccountRef</b>			2.0.	
ListID	INTTYPE			
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars		
<b>TxnDate</b>	DATETYPE			
<b>DueDate</b>	DATETYPE			
<b>RefNumber</b>	STRTYPE	20 Chars		
<b>TermsRef</b>				
ListID	INTTYPE			
FullName	STRTYPE	31 Chars		
<b>Memo</b>	STRTYPE	4095 Chars		
<b>LinkToTxnID</b>	INTTYPE		4.0.	

Figure 17-6 Use LinkToTxnID element to link entire PO

ListID	IDTYPE	0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	0 - 1
Desc	STRTYPE	4095 Chars
Quantity	QUANTITYTYPE	0 - 1
Cost	PRICETYPE	0 - 1
Amount	AMTTYPE	0 - 1
CustomerRef		0 - 1
ListID	IDTYPE	0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	209 Chars
ClassRef		0 - 1
ListID	IDTYPE	0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars
BillableStatus	ENUMTYPE	2.0.
OverrideItemAccountRef		2.0.
ListID	IDTYPE	0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars
LinkToTxn		4.0.
TxnID	IDTYPE	1
TxnLineID	IDTYPE	1

Figure 17-7 Using LinkToTxn aggregate to link one PO line item

### Receiving/Billing Against All of the Purchase Order Lines

The following sample qbXML shows a BillAdd request that is linked to two different PurchaseOrders using LinkToTxnID. Using this element means that the resulting Bill will contain all of the line items from the specified PurchaseOrders.

```

<?qbxml version="4.0"?>
<QBXML>
    <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
        <BillAddRq requestID = "2">
            <BillAdd>
                <VendorRef>
                    <FullName>Daigle Lighting</FullName>
                </VendorRef>
                <APAccountRef>
                    <FullName>Accounts Payable</FullName>
                </APAccountRef>
                <TxnDate>2004-10-28</TxnDate>
            </BillAdd>
        </BillAddRq>
    </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

```

<DueDate>2004-11-28</DueDate>
<TermsRef>
    <FullName>Net 30</FullName>
</TermsRef>
<LinkToTxnID>25D6-1071508328</LinkToTxnID>
<LinkToTxnID>53C4-1197730858</LinkToTxnID>
</BillAdd>
</BillAddRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

In the above qbXML sample, notice the required element VendorRef. The vendor you specify here must match the vendor in all of the PurchaseOrders you are linking in the BillAdd or ItemReceiptAdd. (You can only specify one vendor per BillAdd or ItemReceiptAdd.)

Also, notice the APAccountRef. It is included here simply to encourage the practice of using this. If you don't include this, the QuickBooks default AP account will be used, which may not be desirable if you have AP accounts other than the default AP account. There is a common pitfall of SDK programming where programmers omit the APAccountRef when creating Bills--thereby using the default APAccount, and then specify a different APAccountRef when paying the Bill (using BillPayment\*).

Finally, notice that the two LinkToTxnID elements contain the TxnID of the PurchaseOrders that are to be linked. The BillAdd or ItemReceiptAdd request will fail if the PurchaseOrders used here have already been closed.

The result of this sample qbXML is that all receivable line items in the linked PurchaseOrders using LinkToTxnID are received and closed: the PurchaseOrder is closed in its entirety.

## Receiving/Billing Against Specific Purchase Order Lines

The following sample qbXML shows a BillAdd request that is linked to two individual line items from one purchase order.

```

<?qbxml version="4.0"?>
<QBXML>
    <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
        <BillAddRq requestID = "2">
            <BillAdd>
                <VendorRef>
                    <FullName>Daigle Lighting</FullName>
                </VendorRef>
                <APAccountRef>
                    <FullName>Accounts Payable</FullName>
                </APAccountRef>
                <TxnDate>2004-10-28</TxnDate>
                <DueDate>2004-11-28</DueDate>
                <TermsRef>
                    <FullName>Net 30</FullName>
                </TermsRef>
                <ItemLineAdd>
                    <LinkToTxn>

```

```

        <TxnID>53DD-1197743928</TxnID>
        <TxnLineID>53DF-1197743928</TxnLineID>
    </LinkToTxn>
</ItemLineAdd>
<ItemLineAdd>
    <LinkToTxn>
        <TxnID>53DD-1197743928</TxnID>
        <TxnLineID>53E0-1197743928</TxnLineID>
    </LinkToTxn>
</ItemLineAdd>
</BillAdd>
</BillAddRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

## Receiving/Billing Specific Purchase Order Lines From Multiple Purchase Orders

You can receive items or bill against specific purchase order line items from different purchase orders, as per the sample below. You can, in the same request, do all this along with receiving/billing against an entire purchase order, again, as shown below.

```

<?qbxml version="4.0"?>
<QBXML>
    <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
        <BillAddRq requestID = "2">
            <BillAdd>
                <VendorRef>
                    <FullName>Daigle Lighting</FullName>
                </VendorRef>
                <APAccountRef>
                    <FullName>Accounts Payable</FullName>
                </APAccountRef>
                <TxnDate>2004-10-28</TxnDate>
                <DueDate>2004-11-28</DueDate>
                <LinkToTxnID>25D6-1071508328</LinkToTxnID>
                <LinkToTxnID>53C4-1197730858</LinkToTxnID>
                <TermsRef>
                    <FullName>Net 30</FullName>
                </TermsRef>
                <ItemLineAdd>
                    <LinkToTxn>
                        <TxnID>53DD-1197743928</TxnID>
                        <TxnLineID>53DF-1197743928</TxnLineID>
                    </LinkToTxn>
                </ItemLineAdd>
                <ItemLineAdd>
                    <LinkToTxn>
                        <TxnID>58DD-1197743928</TxnID>
                        <TxnLineID>53E0-1197743928</TxnLineID>
                    </LinkToTxn>
                </ItemLineAdd>
            </BillAdd>
        </BillAddRq>
    </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

In the above qbXML sample, notice that you can use both types of links: you can link entire PurchaseOrders and link individual lines from one or more PurchaseOrders in the same BillAdd or ItemReceiptAdd request. There are some important rules that you must follow, however. These are listed under “Rules For Linking a Bill or ItemReceipt to a PurchaseOrder” on page 242.

As indicated in the sample qbXML, the SDK allows you to link a Bill or ItemReceipt to multiple PurchaseOrders, *as long as they are from the same vendor* (which is specified in the VendorRef).

## Rules For Linking a Bill or ItemReceipt to a PurchaseOrder

---

The following rules are enforced during runtime, and are listed here to help you avoid runtime errors, some of which may not be obvious to track down and fix.

- Rule 1: Don’t use the same TxnID in a LinkToTxnID element and a LinkToTxn aggregate in the same Bill or Item receipt.
- Rule 2: If you link to specific line items (the LinkToTxn aggregate), you *must* maintain the order of lines between the PurchaseOrder and the ItemReceipt or Bill. For example, you may not list a LinkToTxn aggregate for Purchase Order line 2 and then list a LinkToTxn aggregate for PurchaseOrder line 1. The LinkToTxn aggregate specifying PO Line 1 must precede the LinkToTxn aggregate specifying PO Line 2, and so on.
- Rule 3: If you use LinkToTxn aggregates, you cannot *mix* lines from different PurchaseOrders in the ItemReceipt or Bill. That is, you cannot specify line 1 of PurchaseOrder A, then line 1 of PurchaseOrder B followed by line 2 of PurchaseOrder A, and so on. All of the desired PurchaseOrder A lines must be specified in LinkToTxn aggregates sequentially before any of the PurchaseOrder B lines.
- Rule 4: If a PurchaseOrder contains a group line item, you must link only to the individual lines *within the group*, not to the group itself. A group item is essentially a UI convenience and is not linkable.
- Rule 5: When linking a Bill or ItemReceipt to a PurchaseOrder, the vendors (in the VendorRef aggregates) for each of these must match.
- Rule 6: You may only link to receivable Purchase Order lines. That is, for that Purchase Order line, the ReceivedQuantity element must exist, it cannot be marked manually closed, and the Quantity must be greater than the ReceivedQuantity.
- Rule 7: You cannot specify both an ItemRef and a LinkToTxn aggregate within the same line item. You’ll get a conflict error.

## Why Does the API Reference List LinkToTxn for Unsupported Transactions?

---

Because of the way the qbXML spec makes use of macros to ensure that common elements are consistent across multiple request types, the LinkToTxn aggregate within the ItemLineAdd aggregate also appear in the VendorCreditAdd, CheckAdd,

CreditCardChargeAdd, and CreditCardCreditAdd requests, even though these are *not* implemented. If you attempt to use the LinkToTxn aggregate in those requests you will get a not supported warning (statusCode 530) in your response.

## Converting ItemReceipts to Bills

---

The QuickBooks UI makes it look like Bills can be linked to ItemReceipts by clicking the Receive Bill icon in the vendor navigator. However, the UI has not actually *linked* the Bill to the ItemReceipt, it has *converted* the ItemReceipt to a Bill. If you query for the ItemReceipt, it will no longer be there, and the PurchaseOrder will record only the link to the Bill.

Notice that although the UI actually *converts* this transaction, that same functionality does not exist in the SDK. However, you can achieve the same end result by deleting the ItemReceipt using the TxnDel request and using BillAdd to link a bill to the PurchaseOrder instead of an ItemReceipt.

## Limitations and Pitfalls of Modifying a Bill or ItemReceipt

---

You cannot link a PurchaseOrder to a Bill or ItemReceipt in the BillMod and ItemReceiptMod requests. That is, you cannot add new lines that link to a PurchaseOrder to an existing Bill or ItemReceipt. Also, when you modify transaction lines in a Bill or an ItemReceipt, you may lose links between the Bill and the PurchaseOrder or between the ItemReceipt and the PurchaseOrder. So you should be very careful before modifying transaction lines.

## ItemReceipt and Bill Split Option for QuickBooks Enterprise

---

ItemReceipt and Bill transactions split is a feature which allows an ItemReceipt and a Bill to be two transactions on their own instead of one transaction that share the ItemReceipt/Bill states. The ItemReceipt/Bill split feature is created to solve inventory requirements from our users that the current existing design of one transaction did not solve. For example, a user writes up an ItemReceipt on 1/1/2011 for receiving some inventories and then on 2/1/2011, a Bill is received. In our current one transaction design the Bill on 2/1/2011 will replace the ItemReceipt on 1/1/2011. This will create a problem of not enough quantity on hand for building assemblies that depend on receiving inventories on 1/1/2011. This feature will only be available to Enterprise users and is controlled by a preference to allow our users to continue with the one transaction design or completely switch to the new two transaction split design.

- ItemReceipt and Bill can be brought up separately on the UI and edited simultaneously by our users. They no longer share the same UI with a check box to identify as an ItemReceipt or Bill.
- Two new link types will be introduced. One new link type is to allow linking from a Purchase Order to a Bill since the Bill is split from the ItemReceipt. Another new link

type is to allow linking from ItemReceipt to Bill or reverse since ItemReceipt and Bill are separate transactions.

- Purchase Order targets will contain two new fields to hold information about the Bills they link to.
- ItemReceipt cost will no longer be allowed to be edited by users and they will contain the average costing of the Bills in the order.
- A new Inventory Offset account is introduced to wash the monies posted between ItemReceipts and Bills.
- ItemReceipts will post against Inventory Offset (src target) and Inventory Asset/income/expense (dist targets).
- Bills will post against Account Payable (src targets) and Inventory Offset (dist targets).
- Item history will only pick up ItemReceipt targets with Inventory Offset account for calculating quantity and on hand and average costing.

## Re: “Is Manually Closed” in Purchase Orders and Sales Orders

---

On a purchase order, a check in the Closed column can indicate either that the items have been received in full or that the line item has been manually closed. To determine why a line item was closed, check its IsManuallyClosed field in PurchaseOrderLineRet. If this field is False, then compare the ReceivedQuantity value with the Quantity originally ordered. If the Quantity is equal to the ReceivedQuantity value, the order is fully received. **Note** that if you try to manually close a line that has already been fully received, you will receive an error.

The IsManuallyClosed flag on the main transaction takes precedence over the IsManuallyClosed flag on individual lines within the transaction. To avoid ambiguity, if the IsManuallyClosed flag is specified for the main transaction, do not set it for individual lines.

## Linking Invoices to SalesOrders

---

The Invoice to SalesOrder linking works very similar to ItemReceipt/Bill and PurchaseOrder linking. As is the case with those other types of transaction linking, it helps to first take a look at how this feature works for an end user within the QuickBooks UI.

### **IMPORTANT**

Since a sales order is a non-posting transaction, QuickBooks business logic doesn't require the sales tax information at the point where the SalesOrder is added. (In the API Reference this is an optional field.) However, the sales tax item IS required by the business logic for the invoice. So if the SalesOrder doesn't have a SalesTaxItem set for it, you need to modify it so that it does have one before you create an invoice using that sales order.

## The Basic User Scenario in the QuickBooks UI

In the QuickBooks UI, during invoice creation the user selects a customer to invoice against. If the customer has outstanding sales orders, the user is presented with a selection list of available sales order to link against (Figure 17-8).

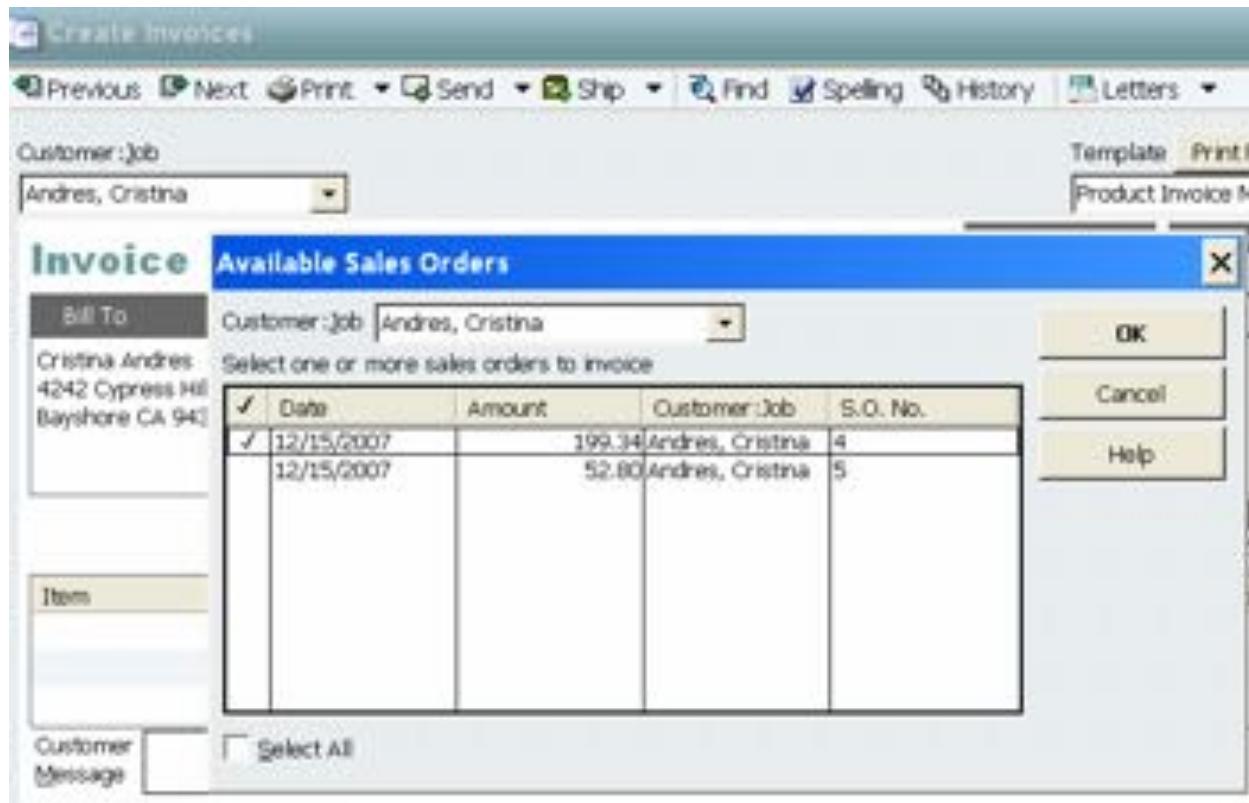


Figure 17-8 From the UI: Selecting SaleOrders to Link to Invoice

If the user selects one or more of the sales orders, the user is prompted for the type of linking: import all of the sales order lines, or just some (Figure 17-9)



Figure 17-9 Invoice entire SalesOrder or or just a partial

If the user chooses “Create invoice for all of the sales order(s)” then for each sales order selected in the list, all of the line items will be added to the invoice: (Figure 17-10)

Figure 17-10 Invoicing against two complete sales orders

In this scenario, all of the sales order lines and quantities are imported: notice in the circled area that the source sales order for each line is listed, and the ordered quantities and the invoiced quantities are the same. (The user can change the invoiced quantities.)

If instead of choosing to invoice against entire sales orders, the user chooses “Create invoice for selected items”, an invoice quantities form is posted to allow the user to change quantities before the sales order lines are dumped into the invoice form (Figure 17-11):

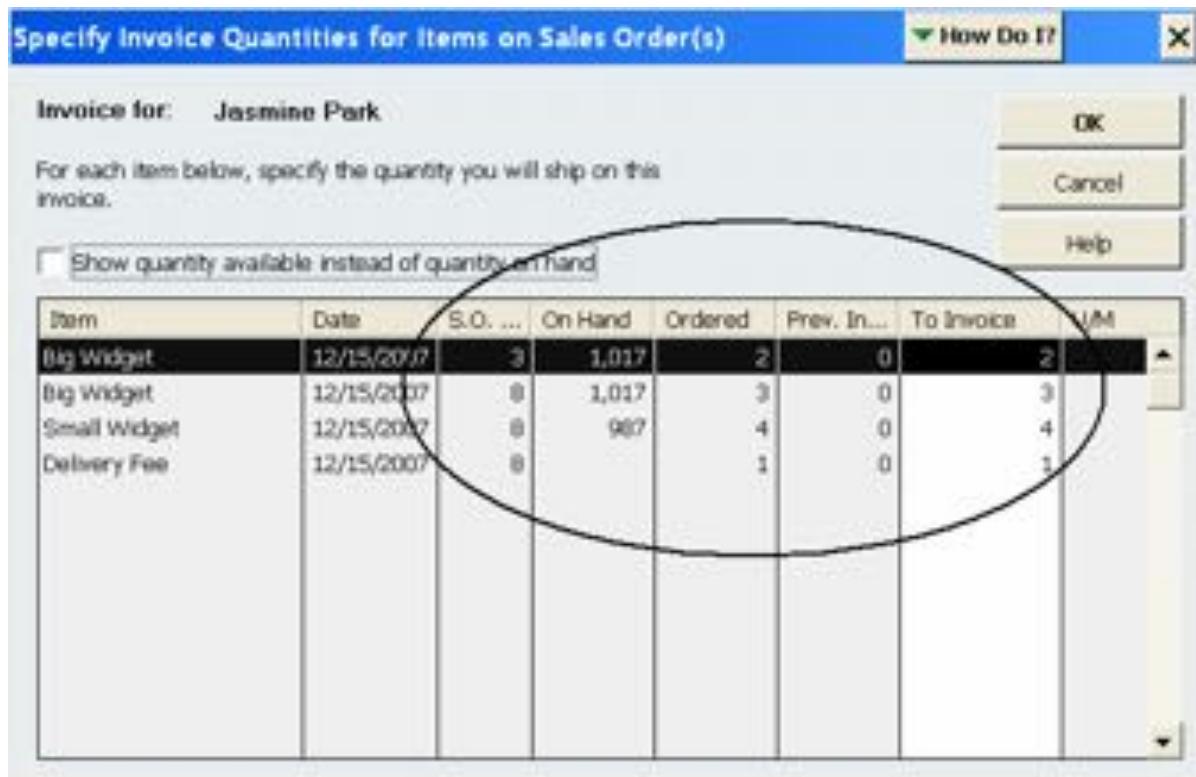


Figure 17-11 Partial Invoicing against Sales Orders

The user simply changes the quantities as desired, or enters a value of 0 if the customer isn't to be invoiced for a particular item. (By default, QuickBooks doesn't print invoice items with 0 quantities, but be forewarned: the user can change this.) When the user is done, the populated invoice form is shown.

### Automatic Selection of Invoice Template

In the UI, if the user invoices against more than one sales order, the default invoice template changes to the multiple sales order template. This same behavior is reflected in the SDK. That is, if you don't specify a template in the `TemplateRef` and you link to more than one sales order, the default invoice template that will be used is the multiple sales order template.

### Linking Invoices to SalesOrders in the SDK

You can automate the UI user scenarios as we just described using the SDK. You just need to link an invoice to one or more `SalesOrders` in the SDK when you create that invoice. The way the linking works is identical to the linking used between `Bill/ItemReceipt` and `PurchaseOrder` described earlier in this chapter.

You use one (or more) LinkToTxnID element at the invoice level to link to the entire Sales Order and pull in all its lines, or you use a LinkToTxn aggregate at the line level to pull in a specific sales order line. Or, you can use a combination: pull in some entire sales orders and also some specific lines from other sales orders.

### **What Happened to My Invoice BillAddress/ShipAddress Data?**

If you link your invoice to a sales order that contains a customer address, the result is that the sales order's address will be pulled in and used, even if you specify a different BillAddress and/or ShipAddress in the InvoiceAdd. In this event, none of the data you specify in the InvoiceAdd BillAddress/ShipAddress will be written to the invoice, including any notes. This approximates the behavior in the UI.

If you need to update the BillAddress/ShipAddress data, you can do an InvoiceMod after the InvoiceAdd.

### **Invoicing Against the Whole Sales Order**

To link an invoice to one or more *entire* Sales Orders, use the LinkToTxnID element in the InvoiceAdd request. (This adds all of the line items in the specified Sales Order.) See the circled area of Figure 17-12, which shows the API Reference listing. The sales orders linked in this way to an invoice will be marked as fully invoiced and closed.

InvoiceAdd	Show: Request Response	Select Subscription
Country	STRTYPE	31 Chars
Note	STRTYPE	41 Chars 6.0
IsPending	BOOLTYPE	
PONumber	STRTYPE	25 Chars
TermsRef		
ListID	IDTYPE	
FullName	STRTYPE	31 Chars
DueDate	DATETYPE	
SalesRepRef		
ListID	IDTYPE	
FullName	STRTYPE	5 Chars
FOB	STRTYPE	13 Chars
ShipDate	DATETYPE	
ShipMethodRef		
ListID	IDTYPE	
FullName	STRTYPE	15 Chars
ItemSalesTaxRef		
ListID	IDTYPE	
FullName	STRTYPE	31 Chars
Memo	STRTYPE	4095 Chars
CustomerMsgRef		
ListID	IDTYPE	
FullName	STRTYPE	101 Chars
IsToBePrinted	BOOLTYPE	
IsToBeEmailed	BOOLTYPE	6.0
CustomerSalesTaxCodeRef		
ListID	IDTYPE	
FullName	STRTYPE	3 Chars
Other	STRTYPE	29 Chars 6.0
LinkToTxnID	IDTYPE	6.0
SalesOrder		

Figure 17-12 LinkToTxnID in InvoiceAdd

You can make as many of these entire SalesOrder links to your invoice as you want. Just specify a separate LinkToTxnID for each one whose lines are to be pulled into the invoice. Notice that you *cannot* use the same TxnId in a LinkToTxnID element, and also inside the LinkToTxn aggregate. That is, you cannot link the whole SalesOrder and then specify one line item from it. You'll get a runtime error if you do.

## Invoicing Against Specific Sales Order Lines

To link an invoice to a specific line item in a SalesOrder, use the LinkToTxn aggregate inside the ItemLineAdd aggregate. See the circled area of Figure 17-13, which shows the API Reference listing. Notice where it is located. The order is important if you want to change the Quantity, for example. Sales orders linked in this way to invoices will be closed only after all of the items are invoiced.



InvoiceLineAdd (defMacro)		
<b>ItemRef</b>		
ListID	IDTYPE	
FullName	STRTYPE	
Desc	STRTYPE	4095 Chars
Quantity	QUANTYPE	
BEGIN OR		
Rate	PRICETYPE	
OR		
RatePercent	PERCENTTYPE	
OR		
PriceLevelRef		4.0
ListID	IDTYPE	
FullName	STRTYPE	31 Chars
END OR		
<b>ClassRef</b>		
ListID	IDTYPE	
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars
Amount	AMTTYPE	
ServiceDate	DATETYPE	
SalesTaxCodeRef		
ListID	IDTYPE	
FullName	STRTYPE	3 Chars
<b>OverrideItemAccountRef</b>		
ListID	IDTYPE	2.0
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars
Other1	STRTYPE	29 Chars
Other2	STRTYPE	29 Chars
<b>LinkToTxn</b>		
TxnID	IDTYPE	6.0
TxnLineID	IDTYPE	

Figure 17-13 LinkToTxn in InvoiceAdd

## Linking Rules

The rules you must follow are the same as listed above under “Rules For Linking a Bill or ItemReceipt to a PurchaseOrder.”

## Example: Using qbXML to Invoice Against Sales Orders

The following qbXML script links two SalesOrders to the invoice, bringing all lines in from those two SalesOrders. It also links to specific line items from two other SalesOrders.

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="6.0"?>
QBXML>
<QBXMLMsgsRq onError="stopOnError">
  <InvoiceAddRq requestID="0">
    <InvoiceAdd>
      <CustomerRef>
        <FullName>Kaushik, Laxmi</FullName>
      </CustomerRef>
      <ARAccountRef>
        <FullName>Accounts Receivable</FullName>
      </ARAccountRef>
      <IsToBeEmailed>1</IsToBeEmailed>
      <LinkToTxnID>611-1197728725</LinkToTxnID>
      <LinkToTxnID>616-1197728784</LinkToTxnID>
      <InvoiceLineAdd>
        <Quantity>1</Quantity>
        <LinkToTxn>
          <TxnID>65F-1197730157</TxnID>
          <TxnLineID>661-1197730157</TxnLineID>
        </LinkToTxn>
      </InvoiceLineAdd>
      <InvoiceLineAdd>
        <Quantity>1</Quantity>
        <LinkToTxn>
          <TxnID>665-1197730212</TxnID>
          <TxnLineID>667-1197730212</TxnLineID>
        </LinkToTxn>
      </InvoiceLineAdd>
    </InvoiceAdd>
  </InvoiceAddRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

## Example: Using QBFC to Invoice Against Sales Orders

The following one-shot QBFC sample is a VB sample that links two SalesOrders to the invoice, bringing all lines in from those two SalesOrders. It also links to specific line items from two other SalesOrders.

In the sample, notice how the invoice object IIInvoiceAdd is returned from the AppendInvoiceAddRq method and then is set from that point. Also notice how each invoice line is added and constructed, with the IIInvoiceLineAdd object returned and filled. Notice the reuse of the IIInvoiceLineAdd object for multiple item lines.

```

Dim SessionManager As QBSessionManager
Set SessionManager = New QBSessionManager
SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "InvoiceAdd_wSalesOrder_Sample"
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

Dim InvoiceAddSet As IMsgSetRequest
Set InvoiceAddSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 6, 0)

Dim InvoiceSalesAdd As IInvoiceAdd
Set InvoiceSalesAdd = InvoiceAddSet.AppendInvoiceAddRq
InvoiceSalesAdd.CustomerRef.FullName.SetValue "Kaushik, Laxmi"
InvoiceSalesAdd.ARAccountRef.FullName.SetValue "Accounts Receivable"
InvoiceSalesAdd.IsToBeEmailed.SetValue True
InvoiceSalesAdd.LinkToTxnIDList.Add "611-1197728725"
InvoiceSalesAdd.LinkToTxnIDList.Add "616-1197728784"

Dim InvoiceLineAdder As IInvoiceLineAdd
Set InvoiceLineAdder = InvoiceSalesAdd.ORInvoiceLineAddList.Append.InvoiceLineAdd
InvoiceLineAdder.Quantity.SetValue 1
InvoiceLineAdder.LinkToTxn.TxnID.SetValue "65F-1197730157"
InvoiceLineAdder.LinkToTxn.TxnLineID.SetValue "661-1197730157"

Set InvoiceLineAdder = InvoiceSalesAdd.ORInvoiceLineAddList.Append.InvoiceLineAdd
InvoiceLineAdder.Quantity.SetValue 1
InvoiceLineAdder.LinkToTxn.TxnID.SetValue "665-1197730212"
InvoiceLineAdder.LinkToTxn.TxnLineID.SetValue "667-1197730212"

Dim InvoiceSalesAddResp As IMsgSetResponse
Set InvoiceSalesAddResp = SessionManager.DoRequests(InvoiceAddSet)
SessionManager.EndSession
SessionManager.CloseConnection

```



# CHAPTER 18

## USING SALES RECEIPT FUNCTIONALITY

The ability to add SalesReceipts in the SDK has been around forever, “forever” in this case meaning since the release of qbXML 1.0. However, some key new SalesReceipt features were added a little more recently, such as the ability to support credit card transactions (4.1) and the ability to modify sales receipts (5.0). This chapter provides some information on using the SalesReceipt features in the SDK: namely how to add, modify, query, void, and delete SalesReceipts.

### Adding a SalesReceipt

In the UI, you add a sales receipt by clicking on the Create Sales Receipts icon in the main QuickBooks navigator. This displays the Enter Sales Receipts form shown in Figure 18-1.

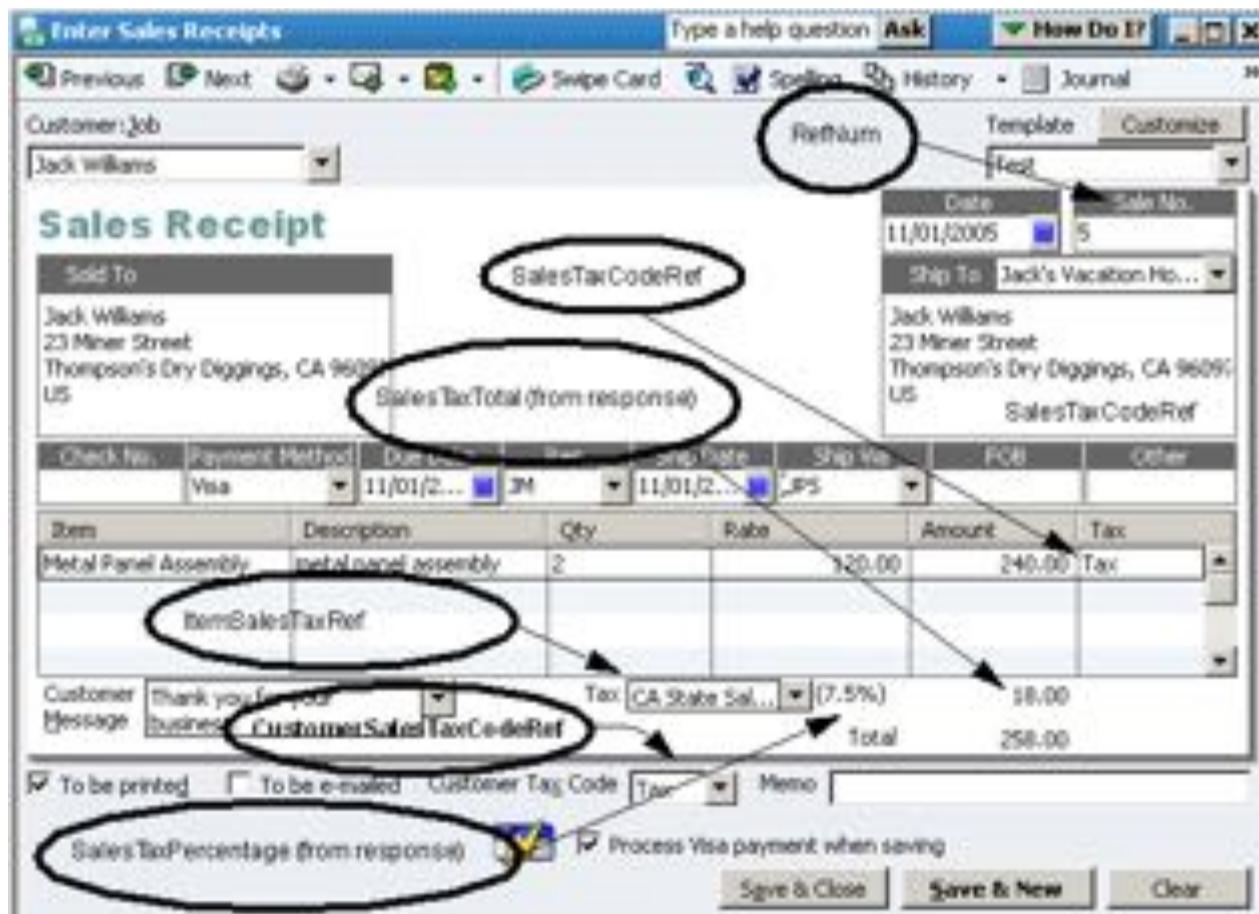


Figure 18-1 Entering new sales receipts from the UI

If you compare the API Reference listing for SalesReceiptAdd with the UI, most of what you see in the UI has easily identifiable counterparts in the API Reference listing. There are exceptions, of course. We've circled some of the less obvious API Reference-to-UI mappings in Figure 18-1, and labeled them with the corresponding API Reference tag. These are mainly tax-related.

The API Reference listing is quite lengthy, so we've broken it up in the following figures and provided some general commentary on each of these smaller pieces.

Tag	Type	Max	Implementation	Occurs
SalesReceiptAddRq				
SalesReceiptAdd (defMacro)				
CustomerRef				
ListID	IDTYPE			0..1
FullName	STRTYPE	209 Chars		0..1
ClassRef				0..1
ListID	IDTYPE			0..1
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars		0..1
TemplateRef			3.0..	0..1
ListID	IDTYPE			0..1
FullName	STRTYPE	31 Chars		0..1
TaxDate	DATETYPE			0..1
RefNumber	STRTYPE	11 Chars		0..1
BillAddress				0..1
Addr1	STRTYPE	41 Chars		0..1
Addr2	STRTYPE	41 Chars		0..1
Addr3	STRTYPE	41 Chars		0..1
Addr4	STRTYPE	41 Chars	2.0..	0..1
City	STRTYPE	31 Chars		0..1
State	STRTYPE	21 Chars		0..1
PostalCode	STRTYPE	13 Chars		0..1
Country	STRTYPE	31 Chars		0..1
ShipAddress				0..1
Addr1	STRTYPE	41 Chars		0..1
Addr2	STRTYPE	41 Chars		0..1
Addr3	STRTYPE	41 Chars		0..1
Addr4	STRTYPE	41 Chars	2.0..	0..1
City	STRTYPE	31 Chars		0..1
State	STRTYPE	21 Chars		0..1
PostalCode	STRTYPE	13 Chars		0..1
Country	STRTYPE	31 Chars		0..1

Figure 18-2 API Reference listing for SalesReceiptAdd: main part and addresses

In Figure 18-2, notice the *customer Ref*, the *BillAddress* aggregate, and the *ShipAddress* aggregate. If the customer has already been set up in QuickBooks with a billing address and a default shipping address, you can simply supply the customer Ref and omit the Bill and Ship Address. That information will be automatically added to the SalesReceipt from the referenced customer, and the Bill/Ship addresses will be returned in the SalesReceiptAdd response, unless you use *IncludeRetElement* to limit data returns.

Notice the *ClassRef* in Figure 18-2. If you use classes to track categories of sales (for example, tracking transactions by departments), you need to set up your classes first, then reference the class that you want this *SalesReceipt* to be tracked under. This *ClassRef* is the transaction-level *ClassRef*. If you also want to track the individual line items in the transaction, you also need to specify the *ClassRef* at the line item level, as shown in Figure 18-5. Notice that even if Class tracking is turned off in a company's Accounting preferences, the *ClassRef* data for the *SalesReceipt* transaction will be saved: the class data simply won't be visible in QuickBooks unless class tracking is turned on in preferences.

You can add a *TemplateRef* if you want to use an existing template containing your customizations to the Sales Receipt form. Notice that the SDK does not enable you to change the template "on the fly" to show a different set of fields, columns, etc.

Finally, notice the *TxnDate* and *RefNumber* tags. If you omit the *TxnDate* tag, the current date is used for the transaction date. If you omit the *RefNumber* tag, QuickBooks will supply the reference number for you.

Let's scroll down a bit more in Figure 18-3 to see more details of the API Reference listing.

IsPending	BOOLTYPE		0 - 1
CheckNumber	STRTYPE	25 Chars	0 - 1
PaymentMethodRef			0 - 1
ListID	IDTYPE		0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	31 Chars	0 - 1
DueDate	DATETYPE		0 - 1
SalesRepRef			0 - 1
ListID	IDTYPE		0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	5 Chars	0 - 1
ShipDate	DATETYPE		0 - 1
ShipMethodRef			0 - 1
ListID	IDTYPE		0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	15 Chars	0 - 1
FOB	STRTYPE	13 Chars	0 - 1
ItemSalesTaxRef			0 - 1
ListID	IDTYPE		0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	31 Chars	0 - 1
Memo	STRTYPE	4095 Chars	0 - 1
CustomerMsgRef			0 - 1
ListID	IDTYPE		0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	101 Chars	0 - 1
IsTollPrinted	BOOLTYPE		0 - 1
CustomerSalesTaxCodeRef			0 - 1
ListID	IDTYPE		0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	3 Chars	0 - 1
DepositToAccountRef			0 - 1
ListID	IDTYPE		0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars	0 - 1

Figure 18-3 PaymentMethod/SalesRep/ShipMethod Refs and more

In Figure 18-3, notice the *IsPending* tag. You can set this to true if you want to keep the transaction from posting if you don't want to finalize the sale for some reason, such as incomplete sale or for estimates. However, there are usually other preferable ways to support these kinds of activities, such as Estimates, SalesOrders and so forth. The default is false so you normally just omit this tag.

You should supply the *PaymentMethodRef* to indicate the method of payment. If you use the CreditCardTxnInfo aggregate and its sub-aggregates, you *must* specify the *PaymentMethodRef* to indicate the credit card type used.

The *CheckNumber* tag is used if you select Check as your payment method. The SDK (or the UI) won't prevent you from specifying this even if you select other payment methods but this can confuse your customer. This value will show up in the UI in the Check Number text box.

*DueDate* is another tag like *IsPending* that supports the use of sales receipts in the unusual case where the transaction is non posting. Normally you wouldn't use this tag.

The *SalesRepRef* tag can be supplied if you use Sales Reps. The data is visible in the SalesReceipt only if the template used for Sales Receipts has the Rep field turned on. This tag is tricky if you use FullNames in the ref. You can only supply a 5 character value: so if you try to supply a larger number, say "John Martin", the request will fail validation at the parser level. If you supply simply "John" it will also fail. What you need to do in nearly all cases is to make sure the Sales Rep is created with initials and use those initials within the FullName tag for the *SalesRepRef*. (If you do a *SalesRepQuery*, those initials are returned in the response in the *Initial* tag.)

The *ShipDate* tag is automatically added with the current date when the SalesReceipt is created, whether you actually do any shipping or even if the customer has no shipping address. So you normally don't need to supply this tag. However, if you need to indicate some other date for some reason, you can supply that date in this tag.

The *ItemSalesTaxRef* tag specifies the already set-up sales tax item that is to be applied to each taxable item in the sales receipt. This sales tax item already added in QuickBooks contains a single sales tax rate that applied to the items and it contains pay-to information (the agency to which the tax is paid.) Remember that the tax status specified in the *CustomerSalesTaxCodeRef* overrides the other tax settings in the SalesReceipt.

Notice the *IsToBePrinted* tag, corresponding to the "To be printed" checkbox in the UI. Notice also that the SDK currently does not support the "To be emailed" feature that the UI supports.

The *CustomerSalesTaxCodeRef* tag specifies the customer-related tax code that governs the sales tax on this transaction. The QuickBooks default codes are Tax and Non (tax), with Tax allowing any taxes specified in the other tax refs to be calculated and charged, and Non suspending any such taxes. This is a customer-related tax setting because it hinges on the customer's tax status. For example, customers who are government agencies are usually Non taxable.

The *DepositToAccountRef* tag species the QuickBooks account that receives the funds from this transaction. Undeposited Funds is the default account and is normally used. Notice that if you don't specify an account using the *DepositToAccountRef* tag the default is automatically used. It is probably a good practice to specify accounts, however, wherever you have the opportunity to do so.

Figure 18-4 shows the API Reference tag listings for including credit card data in the *SalesReceipt*.

CreditCardTxnInfo		4..1	0..1
CreditCardTxnInputInfo			1
CreditCardNumber	STRTYPE	25 Chars	1
ExpirationMonth	INTTYPE	12	1
ExpirationYear	INTTYPE		1
NameOnCard	STRTYPE	41 Chars	1
CreditCardAddress	STRTYPE	41 Chars	0..1
CreditCardPostalCode	STRTYPE	41 Chars	0..1
CommercialCardCode	STRTYPE	50 Chars	0..1
CreditCardTxnResultInfo			1
ResultCode	INTTYPE		1
ResultMessage	STRTYPE	500 Chars	1
CreditCardTransID	STRTYPE	24 Chars	1
MerchantAccountNumber	STRTYPE	32 Chars	1
AuthorizationCode	STRTYPE	12 Chars	0..1
AVSStreet	ENUMTYPE		0..1
AVSZip	ENUMTYPE		0..1
ReconBatchID	STRTYPE	84 Chars	1
PaymentGroupingCode	INTTYPE		1
PaymentStatus	ENUMTYPE		1
TxnAuthorizationTime	DATETIMETYPE		1
TxnAuthorizationStamp	INTTYPE		1

Figure 18-4 Credit card-related tags in the *SalesReceipt*

You cannot use the optional *CreditCardTxnInfo* aggregate unless the company is currently subscribed to the Intuit Payments and has a valid Merchant account. If the company hasn't been set up with Intuit Payments already, you'll get a runtime error when you send a *SalesReceiptAdd* request containing this aggregate. How can you determine this in the SDK? Simply do a company query and check the *SubscribedServices* aggregate for the Intuit Payments service.

If you do supply the *CreditCardTxnInputInfo* aggregate, you must supply the *CreditCardTxnResultInfo* and the *CreditCardTxnInfo* sub aggregates along with all their required elements, as shown in the API Reference. Notice that the *CreditCardTxnType* usually has the value Charge for a *SalesReceipt*, but VoiceAuthorization and Refund are also supported.

The InputInfo subaggregate is the data from the originating Intuit Payments API request that effected the credit card transaction. The ResultInfo subaggregate is the Intuit Payments API response to that request. You include all of this data in the SalesReceipt request if you want to save that Intuit Payments transaction data within QuickBooks.

The CreditCardTxnInfo cannot be modified in the SalesReceipt, which is why that aggregate isn't listed in the API Reference for SalesReceiptMod.

If the qbXML spec level of your SalesReceiptAdd request is 6.0 or greater, the credit card number must be masked, that is, all X, except for the last 4 digits.

Notice that including the Intuit Payments transaction data in the request does not result in any interactions with Intuit Payments or in any attempts to connect to Intuit Payments.

Figure 18-5 shows the API Reference tag listings for the line items in the SalesReceipt.

SalesReceiptLineAdd (defnMacro)			1
ItemRef			0..1
ListID	IDTYPE		0..1
FullName	STRTYPE		0..1
Desc	STRTYPE	4095 Chars	0..1
Quantity	QUANTITYTYPE		0..1
BEGIN OR			0..1
Rate	PRICETYPE		1
OR			
RatePercent	PERCENTTYPE		1
OR			
PriceLevelRef		4.0.	1
ListID	IDTYPE		0..1
FullName	STRTYPE	31 Chars	0..1
END OR			
ClassRef			0..1
ListID	IDTYPE		0..1
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars	0..1
Amount	AMTTYPE		0..1
ServiceDate	DATETYPE		0..1
SalesTaxCodeRef			0..1
ListID	IDTYPE		0..1
FullName	STRTYPE	3 Chars	0..1
IsTaxable	BOOLTYPE		Not in QBO.
OverrideItemAccountRef		2.0.	0..1
ListID	IDTYPE		0..1
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars	0..1
DataExt		5.0.	0..n
OwnerID	GUIDTYPE		1
DataExtName	STRTYPE	31 Chars	1
DataExtValue	STRTYPE		1

Figure 18-5 Line item-related tags for SalesReceiptAdd

Each line item to be added in the SalesReceipt is added under a separate SalesReceiptLineAdd aggregate. Within each SalesReceiptLineAdd aggregate, you must include an *ItemRef*, which specifies the QuickBooks item, and you must supply the *Quantity*.

Notice that you don't have to supply a *Rate* (any of the available Rate-related tags) or an *Amount*. The rate is the price of the item and is taken directly from the item in the *ItemRef*, if the item is set up properly with price data. The *Amount* is then calculated from the *Quantity* and the *Rate*. If you do choose to supply a *Rate* or an *Amount*, remember that you can supply one or the other, but not both.

The *SalesTaxCodeRef* tag allows you to specify whether the line item is taxable or not. You override this value if you set a conflicting value (taxable or not taxable) in the *CustomerSalesTaxRef* for the entire sales receipt.

The *OverrideItemAccountRef* tag allows you to specify an account other than the *DepositToAccountRef* account for a specific line item.

Notice the *DataExt* tag, which is available for QuickBooks 2006 and later. This tag allows you to specify custom data at the line item level. It provides a tremendous performance enhancement over the former methods of using custom data in *SalesReceipts*.

For sake of completeness, we show the final set of tags in the API Reference listing for *SalesReceiptAdd* in Figure 18-6.

<b>SalesReceiptLineGroupAdd</b>			1
<i>ItemGroupRef</i>			1
<i>ListID</i>	<i>IDTYPE</i>		0 - 1
<i>FullName</i>	<i>STRTYPE</i>	31 Chars	0 - 1
<i>Desc</i>	<i>STRTYPE</i>		Not in QBD. 0 - 1
<i>Quantity</i>	<i>QUANTYPE</i>		0 - 1
<i>ServiceDate</i>	<i>DATETYPE</i>		Not in QBD. 0 - 1
<i>DataExt</i>		5.0.	0 - n
<i>OwnerID</i>	<i>GUIDTYPE</i>		1
<i>DataExtName</i>	<i>STRTYPE</i>	31 Chars	1
<i>DataExtValue</i>	<i>STRTYPE</i>		1

Figure 18-6 Line item group tags

## Some Expected Data May be Missing from the Response

If the integrated application lacks sufficient permissions for sensitive data, that data is not returned in the response to Add, Modify, and Query requests. For example, although an integrated application does not need access to sensitive data permissions for submitting a *SalesReceiptAdd* request that contains credit card data, that credit card data won't be returned in the response if the application doesn't have the required permissions. You can set these permissions in the Integrated Applications preferences in QuickBooks.

## Adding a SalesReceipt in QBFC

Listing 18-1 shows how to construct the *SalesReceipt* in QBFC. The sample takes the shipping address from the customer Ref, and the line item prices from the item Refs. The payment is a credit card payment effected previously with a Intuit Payments API request.

---

### Listing 18-1 Constructing a SalesReceiptAdd in QBFC

```
Public Sub QBFC_AddSalesReceipt()

    Dim SessionManager As QBSessionManager
    Set SessionManager = New QBSessionManager
    SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN Add SalesReceipt Sample"
    SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

    Dim requestMsgSet As IMsgSetRequest
    Set requestMsgSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 5, 0)
    ' Initialize the message set request's attributes
    requestMsgSet.Attributes.OnError = roeStop

    ' Add the request to the message set request object
    Dim SalesRecptAdd As ISalesReceiptAdd
    Set SalesRecptAdd = requestMsgSet.AppendSalesReceiptAddRq

    'Set the properties in the assembly object
    SalesRecptAdd.CustomerRef.FullName.SetValue ("Jack Williams")
    SalesRecptAdd.TemplateRef.FullName.SetValue ("Test")
    SalesRecptAdd.PaymentMethodRef.FullName.SetValue ("Visa")
    SalesRecptAdd.SalesRepRef.FullName.SetValue ("JM")
    SalesRecptAdd.ShipMethodRef.FullName.SetValue ("UPS")
    SalesRecptAdd.ItemSalesTaxRef.FullName.SetValue ("CA State Sales Tax")
    SalesRecptAdd.CustomerMsgRef.FullName.SetValue ("Thank you for your business.")
    SalesRecptAdd.DepositToAccountRef.FullName.SetValue ("Undeposited Funds")

    'Add credit card data from prior Intuit Payments API request
    SalesRecptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnInputInfo.CreditCardNumber.SetValue
        ("4111111111111111")
    SalesRecptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnInputInfo.ExpirationYear.SetValue (2008)
    SalesRecptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnInputInfo.ExpirationMonth.SetValue (11)
    SalesRecptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnInputInfo.NameOnCard.SetValue ("H. Rezoner")
    SalesRecptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnInputInfo.CreditCardAddress.SetValue ("12
        West St., Westlands")
    SalesRecptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnInputInfo.CreditCardPostalCode.SetValue
        ("96965")

    SalesRecptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnInputInfo.CreditCardTxnType.SetValue
        ccttCharge

    SalesRecptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.ResultCode.SetValue (0)
    SalesRecptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.ResultMessage.SetValue
        ("STATUS OK")
    SalesRecptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.CreditCardTransID.SetValue
        ("V54A60275101")
```

```

SalesReceiptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.MerchantAccountNumber.SetValue
("4269281420247209")
SalesReceiptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.AuthorizationCode.SetValue
("185PNI")
SalesReceiptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.ReconBatchID.SetValue
("420050223 MC 2005-02-23 QBMS 15.0 pre-beta")
SalesReceiptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.PaymentGroupingCode.SetValue (4)
SalesReceiptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.PaymentStatus.SetValue
(pssCompleted)
SalesReceiptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.TxnAuthorizationTime.SetValue
"2005-11-01", False
SalesReceiptAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.TxnAuthorizationStamp.SetValue
(1109192233)

'Now add the first line item
Dim SalesRecLineItem As IORSalesReceiptLineAdd
Dim SalesRecLineItem2 As IORSalesReceiptLineAdd
Set SalesRecLineItem = SalesReceiptAdd.ORSalesReceiptLineAddList.Append
SalesRecLineItem.SalesReceiptLineAdd.ItemRef.FullName.SetValue ("Metal Panel Assembly")
SalesRecLineItem.SalesReceiptLineAdd.Desc.SetValue ("Metal Panel Assembly")
SalesRecLineItem.SalesReceiptLineAdd.Quantity.SetValue (2)
SalesRecLineItem.SalesReceiptLineAdd.SalesTaxCodeRef.FullName.SetValue ("Tax")

'Add the second line item
Set SalesRecLineItem2 = SalesReceiptAdd.ORSalesReceiptLineAddList.Append
SalesRecLineItem2.SalesReceiptLineAdd.ItemRef.FullName.SetValue ("Screws")
SalesRecLineItem2.SalesReceiptLineAdd.Desc.SetValue ("Large package of screws")
SalesRecLineItem2.SalesReceiptLineAdd.Quantity.SetValue (6)
SalesRecLineItem2.SalesReceiptLineAdd.SalesTaxCodeRef.FullName.SetValue ("Tax")

' Perform the request and obtain a response from QuickBooks
Dim responseMsgSet As IMsgSetResponse
Set responseMsgSet = SessionManager.DoRequests(requestMsgSet)

'write the response to a file for grins
'Need to use the Microsoft Scripting Runtime for this bit
Dim fname As String
Dim xml As String
xml = requestMsgSet.ToXMLString
fname = "XML_output.doc"
Dim fso As New FileSystemObject
Dim ts As TextStream
Set ts = fso.CreateTextFile(fname, True)
ts.Write (xml)

```

```

' Close the session and connection with QuickBooks.
SessionManager.EndSession
SessionManager.CloseConnection
End Sub

```

## Adding a SalesReceipt in qbXML

---

Listing 18-2 shows a SalesReceiptAdd request that uses a credit card payment previously obtained from Intuit Payments API request. The request contains two line items, one that specifies an Amount and one that doesn't specify an amount or rate, getting that info automatically from the item.

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 18-2 Constructing SalesReceiptAdd in qbXML

```

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="5.0"?>
<QBXML>
<QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
    <SalesReceiptAddRq requestID = "0">
        <SalesReceiptAdd>
            <CustomerRef>
                <FullName>Kristie Abercrombie</FullName>
            </CustomerRef>
            <TemplateRef>
                <FullName>Test</FullName>
            </TemplateRef>
            <SalesRepRef>
                <FullName>JM</FullName>
            </SalesRepRef>
            <ItemSalesTaxRef>
                <FullName>CA State Sales Tax</FullName>
            </ItemSalesTaxRef>

            <CustomerMsgRef>
                <FullName>Thank you for your business.</FullName>
            </CustomerMsgRef>
            <CreditCardTxnInfo>
                <CreditCardTxnInputInfo>
                    <CreditCardNumber>4111111111111111</CreditCardNumber>
                    <ExpirationMonth>11</ExpirationMonth>
                    <ExpirationYear>2008</ExpirationYear>
                    <NameOnCard>Harry Rezoner</NameOnCard>
                    <CreditCardAddress>12 West St., Westlands</CreditCardAddress>
                    <CreditCardPostalCode>96965</CreditCardPostalCode>
                <TransactionMode>CardNotPresent</TransactionMode>
                <CreditCardTxnType>Charge</CreditCardTxnType>
            </CreditCardTxnInputInfo>
            <CreditCardTxnResultInfo>
                <resultCode>0</resultCode>
                <ResultMessage>STATUS OK</ResultMessage>
                <CreditCardTransID>V54A60275101</CreditCardTransID>
                <MerchantAccountNumber>4269281420247209</MerchantAccountNumber>
            </CreditCardTxnResultInfo>
        </SalesReceiptAdd>
    </SalesReceiptAddRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

```

<AuthorizationCode>185PNI</AuthorizationCode>
<ReconBatchID>
    420050223 MC 2005-02-23 QBMS 15.0 pre-beta
</ReconBatchID>
<PaymentGroupingCode>4</PaymentGroupingCode>
<PaymentStatus>Completed</PaymentStatus>
<TxnAuthorizationTime>
    2005-11-01T00:00:00
</TxnAuthorizationTime>
<TxnAuthorizationStamp>1109192233</TxnAuthorizationStamp>
</CreditCardTxnResultInfo>
</CreditCardTxnInfo>
<SalesReceiptLineAdd>
    <ItemRef>
        <FullName>Metal Panel Assembly</FullName>
    </ItemRef>
    <Desc>Metal Panel Assembly</Desc>
    <Quantity>2</Quantity>
    <Amount>120.00</Amount>
    <SalesTaxCodeRef>
        <FullName>Tax</FullName>
    </SalesTaxCodeRef>
    </SalesReceiptLineAdd>
    <SalesReceiptLineAdd>
        <ItemRef>
            <FullName>Screws</FullName>
        </ItemRef>
        <Desc>Large Package of Screws</Desc>
        <Quantity>10</Quantity>
        <SalesTaxCodeRef>
            <FullName>Tax</FullName>
        </SalesTaxCodeRef>
        </SalesReceiptLineAdd>
    </SalesReceiptLineAdd>
    </SalesReceiptAddRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

## Modifying a SalesReceipt

---

The considerations and rules for modifying sales receipts is similar to modifying other transactions. Because you can easily produce undesired results if you aren't careful, you need to become very familiar with the material on modifying transactions that is provided in Chapter 10, "Modifying and Deleting Transactions and List Objects." In particular, if you modify any line items or group line items, be sure to follow the instructions on modifying these as described in that chapter.

## Special Limitations Imposed By Credit Card Payment Method

---

If the payment method used in the original SalesReceipt is a credit card, with the credit card transaction data provided by Intuit Payments API requests and responses, you cannot change the customer, payment method, or the total transaction amount, including any line item changes that would change the total amount of the transaction.

## Which SalesReceipt Fields Can Be Modified?

---

See the API Reference listing for SalesReceiptMod. This listing contains all the fields that are modifiable.

## Which SalesReceipt Fields Can Be Cleared?

---

Table 18-1 and Table 18-2 provide a list of the fields in the SalesReceipt main body and SalesReceipt line item fields, respectively, that can be cleared. If a field has a default value, clearing the field results in the use of the default. If there is no default value, clearing simply clears the field. Refer to the API Reference for information on defaults for field values.

Table 18-1 Clearable SalesReceipt Fields

SalesReceipt Field	Modify	Clear	Clear behavior
BillingAddress (and its sub-aggregates)	Yes	Yes	Cleared
CheckNumber	Yes	Yes	Cleared
Class	Yes	Yes	Cleared
Customer	Yes	No	
CustomerMessage	Yes	Yes	Cleared
CustomerSalesTaxCode	Yes	Yes	Cleared
DepositToAccount	Yes	No	
DueDate	Yes	No	
FOB	Yes	Yes	Cleared
IsPending	Yes	No	
IsToBePrinted	Yes	No	
ItemSalesTax	Yes	No	
Memo	Yes	Yes	Cleared
PaymentMethod	Yes	Yes	Cleared
RefNumber	Yes	Yes	Cleared
SalesRep	Yes	Yes	Cleared
ShipAddress (and its sub-aggregates)	Yes	Yes	Cleared
ShipDate	Yes	No	
ShipMethod	Yes	Yes	Cleared
Template	Yes	No	
TxnDate	Yes	No	

Table 18-2 Clearable Line Item/Group Line Item Fields

Line/Group Line Items Fields in SalesReceipt	Modify	Clear	Clear behavior
Amount	Yes	No	
Class	Yes	Yes	Cleared
Description	Yes	Yes	Cleared
Item reference	Yes	No	
OverrideItemAccountRef	Yes	No	
Quantity	Yes	No	
Rate/Rate %	Yes	No	
Sales tax code	Yes	No	
Service date	Yes	Yes	

## Modifying a SalesReceipt in qbXML

Listing 18-3 shows a SalesReceiptMod request that clears the sales rep and memo data in the sales receipt specified, and inserts one line item between the existing two line items in

the receipt. (If there were any other line items, they are not specified in this request, so they would be deleted from QuickBooks.)

Notice the use of the -1 in the TxnLineID tag for the new line item. The SDK uses recognizes this value and causes the insertion to be made. You specify the location of the new item within the sales receipt by placing it before or after one of the existing lines in the Mod request.

---

### Listing 18-3 Constructing a SalesReceiptMod Request in QBXML

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="5.0"?>
<QBXML>
<QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
    <SalesReceiptModRq requestID = "0">
        <SalesReceiptMod>
            <TxnID>90-1131042763</TxnID>
            <EditSequence>1131042763</EditSequence>
            <TxnDate>2005-11-03</TxnDate>
            <SalesRepRef>
                <FullName/>
            </SalesRepRef>
            <Memo/>
            <SalesReceiptLineMod>
                <TxnLineID>92-1131042763</TxnLineID>
            </SalesReceiptLineMod>

            <SalesReceiptLineMod>
                <TxnLineID>-1</TxnLineID>
                <ItemRef>
                    <FullName>Metal Panel Assembly</FullName>
                </ItemRef>
                <Quantity>2</Quantity>
            </SalesReceiptLineMod>
            <SalesReceiptLineMod>
                <TxnLineID>93-1131042763</TxnLineID>
            </SalesReceiptLineMod>
        </SalesReceiptMod>
    </SalesReceiptModRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

---

## Modifying a SalesReceipt in QBFC

Listing 18-4 shows a SalesReceiptMod construction where we query for a SalesReceipt by RefNumber range, grab the first one we find, then modify some of the fields in the main body, and then insert a new line item in the sales receipt after the first line. Because the insertion changes the total amount, this request couldn't be used with sales receipts having a credit card payment method.

Some key things to notice in the sample code:

- In the original query we specify `IncludeLineItems`. By default, no line items are returned in queries, and we need the line items so we can get their `TxnLineID` values.
- We check for response detail data before retrieving it. This data is not guaranteed to be there, so the check is necessary.
- Because we are touching the line item table, we need to specify fully all of the line items we want to retain or change. We aren't changing anything, just inserting a new line, but we still have to specify all of the `TxnLineID` values from the original sales receipt or else they will be dropped from the sales receipt. Each `TxnLineID` is added in a separate `SalesReceiptLineMod` aggregate.

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 18-4 Constructing a `SalesReceiptMod` request in QBFC

```

Public Sub QBFC_ModSalesReceipt()

    Dim SessionManager As QBSessionManager
    Set SessionManager = New QBSessionManager
    SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN Mod SalesReceipt Sample"
    SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

    Dim requestMsgSet As IMsgSetRequest
    Set requestMsgSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 5, 0)
    ' Initialize the message set request's attributes
    requestMsgSet.Attributes.OnError = roeStop

    'First we query QB for sales receipt transactions within a date range
    Dim SalesRecptQuery As ISalesReceiptQuery
    Set SalesRecptQuery = requestMsgSet.AppendSalesReceiptQueryRq

    'We just want to get the Txn ID and edit sequence so we can do the mod
    SalesRecptQuery.IncludeRetElementList.Add ("TxnID")
    SalesRecptQuery.IncludeRetElementList.Add ("EditSequence")

    SalesRecptQuery.ORTxnQuery.TxnFilter.ORRefNumberFilter.RefNumberRangeFilter.FromRefNumber.
                                                setValue ("23")

    Dim responseMsgSet As IMsgSetResponse
    Set responseMsgSet = SessionManager.DoRequests(requestMsgSet)
    Dim response As IResponse

    ' Response list contains one response, corresponding to our single request
    Set response = responseMsgSet.ResponseList.GetAt(0)

    'This is a query, so the response detail is a ret list for sales receipt
    Dim SalesRecptRetList As ISalesReceiptRetList
    If response.Detail Is Nothing Then
        MsgBox "No Detail available"

```

```

        Exit Sub
    End If
Set SalesRecptRetList = response.Detail

Dim SalesRecptRet As ISalesReceiptRet
'There are potentially many SalesReceipt txns in the retlist: we get the first one
'This is for our convenience: you'll do something smarter or let the user pick
Set SalesRecptRet = SalesRecptRetList.GetAt(0)

'Save the TxnID: we need it for the followup query
Dim TransID As String
TransID = SalesRecptRet.TxnID.getValue

requestMsgSet.ClearRequests
'Get the specific receipt we want complete with all line items
Set SalesRecptQuery = requestMsgSet.AppendSalesReceiptQueryRq
SalesRecptQuery.ORTxnQuery.TxnIDList.Add (TransID)
SalesRecptQuery.IncludeLineItems.setValue (True)

Set responseMsgSet = SessionManager.DoRequests(requestMsgSet)

' Response list contains one response, corresponding to our single request
Set response = responseMsgSet.ResponseList.GetAt(0)

'Need to get the ret list first
If response.Detail Is Nothing Then
    MsgBox "No Detail available"
    Exit Sub
End If
Set SalesRecptRetList = response.Detail

'From this query, we expect only one SalesReceipt txns in the retlist
'Save the receipt: we'll need it later for its line item TxnIDs
Set SalesRecptRet = SalesRecptRetList.GetAt(0)
requestMsgSet.ClearRequests

' Now build the mod request
Dim SalesRecptMod As ISalesReceiptMod
Set SalesRecptMod = requestMsgSet.AppendSalesReceiptModRq

'Set the properties in the SalesReceipt mod object using data
'from the sales receipt we just grabbed in the last query
SalesRecptMod.TxnID.setValue SalesRecptRet.TxnID.getValue
SalesRecptMod.EditSequence.setValue SalesRecptRet.EditSequence.getValue
SalesRecptMod.TxnDate.setValue ("2005-11-03")
SalesRecptMod.Memo.SetEmpty
SalesRecptMod.SalesRepRef.FullName.SetEmpty

```

```

Dim SalesRecptModLine As ISalesReceiptLineMod
Dim SalesRecptLineRet As IORSalesReceiptLineRet
Dim i As Integer

For i = 0 To SalesRecptRet.ORSalesReceiptLineRetList.Count - 1
    Set SalesRecptLineRet = SalesRecptRet.ORSalesReceiptLineRetList.GetAt(i)
    Set SalesRecptModLine = SalesRecptMod.ORSalesReceiptLineModList.Append.
        SalesReceiptLineMod
    SalesRecptModLine.TxnLineID.setValue SalesRecptLineRet.SalesReceiptLineRet.TxnLineID.
        getValue
    If i = 0 Then
        Set SalesRecptModLine = SalesRecptMod.ORSalesReceiptLineModList.Append.
            SalesReceiptLineMod
        SalesRecptModLine.TxnLineID.setValue "-1"
        SalesRecptModLine.ItemRef.FullName.setValue "Metal Panel Assembly"
        SalesRecptModLine.Quantity.setValue 2
    End If
    Next i

    ' Perform the request and obtain a response from QuickBooks
    Set responseMsgSet = SessionManager.DoRequests(requestMsgSet)

    'save full xml response for grins
    Dim fname As String
    Dim xml As String
    xml = responseMsgSet.ToXMLString
    fname = "XML_output.doc"
    Dim fso As New FileSystemObject
    Dim ts As TextStream
    Set ts = fso.CreateTextFile(fname, True)
    ts.Write (xml)

    ' Close the session and connection with QuickBooks.
    SessionManager.EndSession
    SessionManager.CloseConnection

End Sub

```

# Querying for SalesReceipts

---

## Querying for SalesReceipts in qbXML

---

In Listing 18-5, two sample queries are provided. The first gets a range of sales receipts, all whose ref number is greater than 23, and specifies that only the TxnID and EditSequence are to be returned. This query works hand-in-hand with the second query, which takes a TxnID and and EditSequence to get a full sales receipt record with all the line items.

Listing 18-5 Sample queries for SaleReceipts

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="5.0"?>
<QBXML>
<QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
    <SalesReceiptQueryRq requestID = "0">
        <RefNumberRangeFilter>
            <FromRefNumber>23</FromRefNumber>
        </RefNumberRangeFilter>
        <IncludeRetElement>TxnID</IncludeRetElement>
        <IncludeRetElement>EditSequence</IncludeRetElement>
    </SalesReceiptQueryRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="5.0"?>
<QBXML>
<QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
    <SalesReceiptQueryRq requestID = "0">
        <TxnID>90-1131042763</TxnID>
        <IncludeLineItems>1</IncludeLineItems>
    </SalesReceiptQueryRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

## Querying for SalesReceipts in QBFC

---

The code sample in Listing 18-4 shows a couple of SalesReceiptQuery requests.

## Deleting and Voiding SalesReceipts

---

To delete and void sales receipt transactions, you use TxnDelRq and TxnVoidRq, respectively, as described in Chapter 10, “Modifying and Deleting Transactions and List Objects.”

Notice that this deletes any credit card information (CreditCardTxnInfo) in QuickBooks only. This does NOT delete any data at Intuit Payments.

# CHAPTER 19

## USING CREDIT CARD REFUND FUNCTIONALITY

Prior to QuickBooks 2006, QuickBooks provided no transaction specifically for refunds to customers, for example in the case of returned goods or overpayments. Beginning with QuickBooks 2006 credit card refund transactions are supported.

You must link the refund to an existing credit memo transaction in QuickBooks.

Notice that via the SDK you can specify one or more of these transactions. In comparison, the UI limits you to linking one credit transaction per refund.

The refund can be a full refund of the entire amount of the specified credit memo or it can be a partial refund. (The response to the ARRefundCreditCard Add or Query returns the amount remaining on each credit for which you are issuing the refund.)

The ARRefundCreditCard\* functionality provided by the SDK also supports the credit card transaction data provided by Intuit Payments API, so that the actual credit card transaction data can be stored in QuickBooks.

### Adding a Credit Card Refund Transaction

---

Figure 19-1 shows the API Reference listing for ARRefundCreditCardAdd.

The *CustomerRef* is required and must match the customer in the target transactions you want to link.

The *RefundFromAccountRef* is the source account from which the refund is made. Typically this is the default Undeposited Funds account, but you could specify any bank account or asset account here. This is optional: if you omit this, the Undeposited Funds default account is used.

The *ARAccountRef* is also optional. If you omit it, the default Accounts Receivable account is used. Make sure this account matches the ARAccountRef in the credit memo transactions you are linking to.

Tag	Type	Max	Implementation	Occurrence
ARRefundCreditCardAddRq				
ARRefundCreditCardAdd {defMacro}				1
CustomerRef				1
ListID	IDTYPE			0..1
FullName	STRTYPE	209 Chars		0..1
RefundFromAccountRef				0..1
ListID	IDTYPE			0..1
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars		0..1
ARAccountRef				0..1
ListID	IDTYPE			0..1
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars		0..1
TxnDate	DATETYPE			0..1
RefNumber	STRTYPE	11 Chars		0..1
Address				0..1
Addr1	STRTYPE	41 Chars		0..1
Addr2	STRTYPE	41 Chars		0..1
Addr3	STRTYPE	41 Chars		0..1
Addr4	STRTYPE	41 Chars	2.0.	0..1
City	STRTYPE	31 Chars		0..1
State	STRTYPE	21 Chars		0..1
PostalCode	STRTYPE	13 Chars		0..1
Country	STRTYPE	31 Chars		0..1
PaymentMethodRef				0..1
ListID	IDTYPE			0..1
FullName	STRTYPE	31 Chars		0..1
Memo	STRTYPE	4095 Chars		0..1

FigureA19-1 API Reference RAlistingAforAARRefundCreditCardAdd

*TxnDate* and *RefNumber* are supplied for you automatically, but you can supply your own values if you want.

The address information is supplied for you via the *CustomerRef* so normally you need not add it in the request.

The *PaymentMethodRef* specifies the type of credit card used in the refund transaction. If there is credit card data included in the QuickBooks customer information, you can omit this tag and let QuickBooks supply the card type automatically. If you specify a non-credit card type here, you'll get a runtime error.

*Memo* is available for any notes you want to save with the transaction.

Figure 19-2 shows the remainder of the API Reference listing for ARRefundCreditCardAdd:

<i>CreditCardTxnInfo</i>			0 - 1
<i>CreditCardTxnInputInfo</i>			1
<i>CreditCardNumber</i>	STRTYPE	25 Chars	1
<i>ExpirationMonth</i>	INTTYPE	12	1
<i>ExpirationYear</i>	INTTYPE		1
<i>NameOnCard</i>	STRTYPE	41 Chars	1
<i>CreditCardAddress</i>	STRTYPE	41 Chars	0 - 1
<i>CreditCardPostalCode</i>	STRTYPE	41 Chars	0 - 1
<i>CommercialCardCode</i>	STRTYPE	50 Chars	0 - 1
<i>CreditCardTxnResultInfo</i>			1
<i>ResultCode</i>	INTTYPE		1
<i>ResultMessage</i>	STRTYPE	500 Chars	1
<i>CreditCardTransID</i>	STRTYPE	24 Chars	1
<i>MerchantAccountNumber</i>	STRTYPE	32 Chars	1
<i>AuthorizationCode</i>	STRTYPE	12 Chars	0 - 1
<i>AVSStreet</i>	ENUMTYPE		0 - 1
<i>AVSZip</i>	ENUMTYPE		0 - 1
<i>ReconBatchID</i>	STRTYPE	84 Chars	1
<i>PaymentGroupingCode</i>	INTTYPE		1
<i>PaymentStatus</i>	ENUMTYPE		1
<i>TxnAuthorizationTime</i>	DATETIMETYPE		1
<i>TxnAuthorizationStamp</i>	INTTYPE		1
<i>RefundAppliedToTxnAdd</i>			1 - n
<i>TxnID {useMacro}</i>	IDTYPE		1
<i>RefundAmount</i>	AMTTYPE		1
<i>IncludeRefElement</i>	STRTYPE	50 Chars	0 - n

FigureA19-2 ARRefundCreditCardAddAlisting: AcreditAcardAandAlinkedAtransactions

The credit card information contained in the *CreditCardTxnInfo* aggregate is optional, but if you supply that aggregate, you have to supply both the *CreditCardTxnInputInfo* and the *CreditCardTxnResultInfo* sub aggregates along with their required elements, as shown in the API Reference. Can you supply just any credit card data here? No, the data supplied here must be data from a Intuit Payments API refund transaction against the QuickBooks Merchant Service. Notice that the *CreditCardTransType* will always be Refund.

This means that you can supply this only if the company has a valid Intuit Payments account and you use Intuit Payments API to interact with Intuit Payments for credit card transactions. How can you determine this in the SDK? Simply do a company query and check the SubscribedServices aggregate for the Intuit Payments service.

The InputInfo subaggregate is the data from the originating Intuit Payments API request that effected the credit card transaction. The ResultInfo sub aggregate is the Intuit Payments API response to that request. You include all of this data in this request if you want to save that Intuit Payments transaction data within QuickBooks.

If the qbXML spec level of your SalesReceiptAdd request is 6.0 or greater, the credit card number must be masked, that is, all X, except for the last 4 digits.

Notice that including the Intuit Payments transaction data in the request does not result in any interactions with Intuit Payments or in any attempts to connect to Intuit Payments.

You link this refund to the target credit memo using the *RefundAppliedToTxnAdd* aggregate. You must link to at least one of these transactions; you can link to as many as you want. The TxnID is unique among these transactions, so you don't (in fact you can't) specify a transaction type.

The *RefundAmount* specifies how much of the linked credit transaction is to be refunded. If you specify an amount here that is greater than the credit, you'll get a runtime error.

## Adding a Credit Card Refund in QBFC

---

Listing 19-1 shows how to build the credit card refund request in QBFC. This listing happens to include credit card transaction data from Intuit Payments but this is not required. The code for building the refund is pretty straightforward. We don't do any checks to make sure we don't exceed any credit amounts, but you'll need to do this.

Listing 19-1 Constructing a credit card refund request in QBFC

```
Public Sub QBFC_AddARRefundCreditCard()
    Dim SessionManager As QBSessionManager
    SetSessionManager = New QBSessionManager
    SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN Add ARRefundCreditCard Sample"
    SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

    Dim requestMsgSet As IMsgSetRequest
    Set requestMsgSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 5, 0)
    ' Initialize the message set request's attributes
    requestMsgSet.Attributes.OnError = roeStop

    ' Add the request to the message set request object
    Dim ARRefundCCAdd As IARRefundCreditCardAdd
    Set ARRefundCCAdd = requestMsgSet.AppendARRefundCreditCardAddRq

    ' Set the properties in the Refund add object
    ARRefundCCAdd.CustomerRef.FullName.SetValue ("Jack Williams")
    ARRefundCCAdd.RefundFromAccountRef.FullName.SetValue ("Undeposited Funds")
    ARRefundCCAdd.ARAccountRef.FullName.SetValue ("Accounts Receivable")
    ARRefundCCAdd.PaymentMethodRef.FullName.SetValue ("Visa")
    ARRefundCCAdd.Memo.SetValue ("Partial refund sample")
```

```

'Add optional credit card info from a Intuit Payments API request
ARRefundCCAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnInputInfo.CreditCardNumber.
    setValue ("4111111111111111")
ARRefundCCAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnInputInfo.ExpirationYear.setValue (2008)
ARRefundCCAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnInputInfo.ExpirationMonth.setValue (11)
ARRefundCCAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnInputInfo.NameOnCard.setValue
    ("Jack Williams")

ARRefundCCAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnInputInfo.CreditCardTxnType.setValue
    ccttRefund

ARRefundCCAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.ResultCode.setValue (0)
ARRefundCCAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.ResultMessage.setValue
    ("STATUS OK")
ARRefundCCAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.CreditCardTransID.setValue
    ("V54A60275101")
ARRefundCCAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.MerchantAccountNumber.setValue
    ("4269281420247209")
ARRefundCCAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.AuthorizationCode.setValue
    ("185PNI")
ARRefundCCAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.ReconBatchID.setValue
    ("420050223 MC 2005-02-23 QBMS 15.0 pre-beta")
ARRefundCCAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.PaymentGroupingCode.setValue (4)
ARRefundCCAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.PaymentStatus.setValue
    (pssCompleted)
ARRefundCCAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.TxnAuthorizationTime.setValue
    "2005-11-01", False
ARRefundCCAdd.CreditCardTxnInfo.CreditCardTxnResultInfo.TxnAuthorizationStamp.setValue
    (1109192233)

'Now link two transactions whose TxnID we hardcoded here
Dim RefundAppliedToTxn As IRefundAppliedToTxnAdd
Set RefundAppliedToTxn = ARRefundCCAdd.RefundAppliedToTxnAddList.Append
RefundAppliedToTxn.RefundAmount.setValue (1)
RefundAppliedToTxn.TxnID.setValue ("B0-1131081904")

Set RefundAppliedToTxn = ARRefundCCAdd.RefundAppliedToTxnAddList.Append
RefundAppliedToTxn.RefundAmount.setValue (1)
RefundAppliedToTxn.TxnID.setValue ("9F-1131074959")

' Perform the request and obtain a response from QuickBooks
Dim responseMsgSet As IMsgSetResponse
Set responseMsgSet = SessionManager.DoRequests(requestMsgSet)

'Save the results to a file for grins. requires Microsoft Scripting Runtime
Dim fname As String
Dim xml As String
xml = responseMsgSet.ToXMLString

```

```

fname = "XML_request.doc"
Dim fso As New FileSystemObject
Dim ts As TextStream
Set ts = fso.CreateTextFile(fname, True)
ts.Write (xml)

' Close the session and connection with QuickBooks.
SessionManager.EndSession
SessionManager.CloseConnection
End Sub

```

## Adding a Credit Card Refund in qbXML

---

Listing 19-2 shows a simple Refund add request with linked credit memos.

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 19-2 An ARRefundCreditCardAdd request with two linked credit transactions

```

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="5.0"?>
<QBXML>
<QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
    <ARRefundCreditCardAddRq requestID = "0">
        <ARRefundCreditCardAdd>
            <CustomerRef>
                <FullName>Jack Williams</FullName>
            </CustomerRef>
            <RefundFromAccountRef>
                <FullName>Undeposited Funds</FullName>
            </RefundFromAccountRef>
            <ARAccountRef>
                <FullName>Accounts Receivable</FullName>
            </ARAccountRef>
            <PaymentMethodRef>
                <FullName>Visa</FullName>
            </PaymentMethodRef>
            <Memo>Partial refund sample</Memo>
            <RefundAppliedToTxnAdd>
                <TxnID>B0-1131081904</TxnID>
                <RefundAmount>1.00</RefundAmount>
            </RefundAppliedToTxnAdd>
            <RefundAppliedToTxnAdd>
                <TxnID>9F-1131074959</TxnID>
                <RefundAmount>1.00</RefundAmount>
            </RefundAppliedToTxnAdd>
        </ARRefundCreditCardAdd>
    </ARRefundCreditCardAddRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

Listing 19-3 shows a Refund add request with credit card transaction data from a preceding Intuit Payments API request and response.

---

**Listing 19-3 An ARRefundCreditCardAdd request with Intuit Payments transaction data**

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="5.0"?>
<QBXML>
<QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
  <ARRefundCreditCardAddRq requestID = "0">
    <ARRefundCreditCardAdd>
      <CustomerRef>
        <FullName>Jack Williams</FullName>
      </CustomerRef>
      <RefundFromAccountRef>
        <FullName>Undeposited Funds</FullName>
      </RefundFromAccountRef>
      <ARAccountRef>
        <FullName>Accounts Receivable</FullName>
      </ARAccountRef>
      <PaymentMethodRef>
        <FullName>Visa</FullName>
      </PaymentMethodRef>
      <Memo>Partial refund sample</Memo>
      <CreditCardTxnInfo>
        <CreditCardTxnInputInfo>
          <CreditCardNumber>4111111111111111</CreditCardNumber>
          <ExpirationMonth>11</ExpirationMonth>
          <ExpirationYear>2008</ExpirationYear>
          <NameOnCard>Jack Williams</NameOnCard>
          <TransactionMode>CardNotPresent</TransactionMode>
          <CreditCardTxnType>Refund</CreditCardTxnType>
        </CreditCardTxnInputInfo>
        <CreditCardTxnResultInfo>
          <ResultCode>0</ResultCode>
          <ResultMessage>STATUS OK</ResultMessage>
          <CreditCardTransID>V54A60275101</CreditCardTransID>
          <MerchantAccountNumber>4269281420247209</MerchantAccountNumber>
          <AuthorizationCode>185PNI</AuthorizationCode>
          <ReconBatchID>420050223 MC 2005-02-23 QBMS 15.0 pre-beta</ReconBatchID>
          <PaymentGroupingCode>4</PaymentGroupingCode>
          <PaymentStatus>Completed</PaymentStatus>
          <TxnAuthorizationTime>2005-11-01T00:00:00</TxnAuthorizationTime>
          <TxnAuthorizationStamp>1109192233</TxnAuthorizationStamp>
        </CreditCardTxnResultInfo>
      </CreditCardTxnInfo>
      <RefundAppliedToTxnAdd>
        <TxnID>B0-1131081904</TxnID>
        <RefundAmount>1.00</RefundAmount>
      </RefundAppliedToTxnAdd>
      <RefundAppliedToTxnAdd>
        <TxnID>9F-1131074959</TxnID>
```

```
    <RefundAmount>1.00</RefundAmount>
  </RefundAppliedToTxnAdd>
</ARRefundCreditCardAdd>
</ARRefundCreditCardAddRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

## Querying for ARRefundCreditCard Transactions

---

When you query for credit card refund transactions and use the entity filter, you must specify only customer or customer jobs. Other than this, this is a standard query, which is described in Chapter 8, “Creating Queries.”

## Deleting and Voiding ARRefundCreditCard Transactions

---

To delete and void credit card refund transactions, you use TxnDelRq and TxnVoidRq, respectively, as described in Chapter 10, “Modifying and Deleting Transactions and List Objects.”

Notice that this deletes any credit card information (CreditCardTxnInfo) in QuickBooks only. This does NOT delete any data at Intuit Payments.

# CHAPTER 20

## USING PRICE LEVELS IN TRANSACTIONS

This chapter describes price levels: what they are, why they are useful, how they function in QuickBooks, and what you need to do in your program to support the use of them.

### What is a Price Level?

---

A price level is a List object that is used on a customer/customer job, or on an individual line item in an invoice, sales receipt, sales order, or credit memo. (This is accomplished by using the PriceLevelRef aggregate in the Add and Mod requests for each of these supported objects.)

When applied to customers or customer jobs, the price level allows you to set custom pricing on a per customer or a per job basis. That is, after you use a price level with a customer or customer job, QuickBooks automatically uses that custom price as the default price each time you create an invoice, sales receipt, sales order, or credit memo for that customer or customer job.

Of course, price levels can also be dynamically applied to the individual line items in an invoice, sales receipt, sales order, or credit memo: you don't have to simply accept the default customer price level.

#### **IMPORTANT**

When you apply a price level to a line item, QuickBooks does not store any information about which price level was used. That is, after the price level is applied, there is no way to determine later which price level was applied to the line item.

Notice that if you use price levels on a per line item basis, and have created price levels, the QuickBooks UI automatically provides support where needed, for example, for each line item in the Sales Order form, the Rate column is a drop-down list that lets the user select any of the available price levels.

## The Two Types of Price Levels Supported by QuickBooks

---

There are two types of price levels: Fixed Percent and Per Item. The type is specified at price level creation time: *the type cannot be changed later* by a PriceLevelMod operation. Of these two types, the Fixed Percent type is supported by the QuickBooks Pro tier and above, while the Per Item type is supported only by the QuickBooks Premier and Enterprise tiers.

- The Fixed Percent price level modifies any item's base price by a fixed percentage.
- The Per Item price level supports custom prices on individual items.

### **NOTE**

If an application attempts to use Per Item price levels in QB Pro, it will receive the error "FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED" (3250).

## Why Are Price Levels Useful?

---

You need to use price levels any time special prices are needed; for midnight madness sales, preferred customers, sales-rep discretionary pricing, and so on.

## Are Price Levels Automatically Available?

---

In order for price levels to have any effect, or become available for use in transactions, they must be enabled in the Sales & Customers preferences for the company file. So, you need to check for this by using a PreferencesQuery and examine the SalesAndCustomersPreferences aggregate within the response. In particular, the sub-aggregate PriceLevels field IsUsingPriceLevels must contain the value True; otherwise price levels are not available.

Based on this check, your own application can respond appropriately, either by displaying information to the user and/or disabling your own application's price-level oriented features. Notice that your application cannot enable price levels via the SDK.

## Using Price Level Functionality in Your Application

---

The PriceLevel is a List object, so it is manipulated in the same general way as other List objects. You create one using PriceLevelAdd, modify it using PriceLevelMod (notice that you cannot modify the type, fixed versus per item), query for price levels using PriceLevelQuery, and delete a PriceLevel using ListDel. Also, PriceLevel is supported in the related queries, for example, ListDeletedQuery can provide a list of recently deleted PriceLevels, CustomerQuery can return the price level (if any) linked to the customer, and so on.

**IMPORTANT**

When you perform a PriceLevelMod, for the table in a per item price level, the Mod request should only specify the rows of the table that are actually changing. There is no need to specify the details of an existing row that will not change.

Notice that the PriceLevelQuery contains an ItemRef, which allows you to find all price levels that apply to that item. This is very useful when selecting the price level for an individual line item because you'll get a runtime error 3140 if you specify an inapplicable price level for a given item.

Notice that you use positive values to increase the price from the base price and negative ones to decrease from the base price.

Similar to adding a group item or invoice line, when you create a per item price level, you supply a list of PriceLevelPerItem aggregates that reference an Item and supply a custom price/percent or a percentage adjustment relative to either the standard price, the item cost, or the currently existing custom price. (This is useful on PriceLevelMod requests.)

Notice that the response for a sales transaction does not contain information on which price level was used. It only indicates the Rate used for the item.

**IMPORTANT**

Once a user links a customer to a price level, all sales transactions for that customer will by default use the item prices set by the price level. This differs from versions of QuickBooks prior to 2005, where an invoice entered from the SDK defaulted to the standard price for each line item (unless a price was specified).

# How to Create a Price Level

---

In the following subsections, creating a fixed percent price level is described first, then creating a per item price level is described.

## Creating a Fixed Percent Price Level

---

You can create a Fixed Percent type price level using the following qbXML:

```
<?qbxml version="4.0"?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
    <PriceLevelAddRq requestID = "0">
      <PriceLevelAdd>
        <Name>Special Customer Discount</Name>
        <IsActive>true</IsActive>
        <PriceLevelFixedPercentage>-5</PriceLevelFixedPercentage>
      </PriceLevelAdd>
    </PriceLevelAddRq>
  </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

In the above sample qbXML, a price level with the name “Special Customer Discount” is created with a fixed percentage amount of -5%. This means there will be a 5% reduction of the Rate (price each) of the sales price of the item line item where this price level is applied in an invoice, sales order, and so on. The IsActive tag by default is true, so you don’t need to supply it. It is shown for completeness. In a PriceLevelAdd you might set it to false if you were preparing for a sale and didn’t want this price level to show up yet. (In a PriceLeveMod, you would set it to false if you wanted to discontinue a particular discount.)

Figures 20-1, 20-2, and 20-3 show how a user would apply price level to a line in a sales order or invoice in QuickBooks. The first figure shows the standard item price (Rate) for the line item, and the total amount. The second figure shows the dropdown list that appears in the Rate column if Price Levels are enabled in QuickBooks AND if there are any existing price levels, AND if a price level has NOT been applied to the customer.

In this dropdown list (Figure 20-2), notice the Special Customer Discount price level that we just created.

In the third figure (20-3), notice that the Rate and Amount have changed after the user selected Special Customer Discount from the dropdown list of price levels. The Rate reflects the 5% discount for each item, and the total amount also reflects it.

Item	Description	Ordered	Rate	Amount
Nuts	Bag O' Nuts	10	2.00	20.00

Figure 20-1 A line item before applying a price level: note the rate and amount

Item	Description	Ordered	Rate	Amount
Nuts	Bag O' Nuts	10	2.00	20.00

Figure 20-2 Applying the level in the QuickBooks UI

Item	Description	Ordered	Rate	Amount
Nuts	Bag O' Nuts	10	1.90	19.00

Figure 20-3 Line item rate and amount after applying the price level in QuickBooks

What would happen if the price level were applied to the customer? Then the default price shown in the Rate column (and the total in the Amount column) would automatically adjust to the price level. The user could still select from the dropdown list of price levels, however.

## Creating a Per Item Price Level

Creating a per item price for an item results in the creation of a custom price for the item that is visible in the QuickBooks Edit Price Level form. Consequently, you can apply discounts to this custom price as well as to the item's cost and standard sales price.

In the per item price level, you can choose between two approaches. You can create a price level that specifies ONE of the following prices:

- A fixed price for an item or a fixed percentage discount to be applied to an item's cost
- A discount percentage applied to an item's cost, standard sales price, or current custom price

The following sample qbXML shows how to build a per item price level using a discount percentage applied to an item's cost.

```

<?qbxml version="4.0"?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
    <PriceLevelAddRq requestID = "0">
      <PriceLevelAdd>
        <Name>Cost-Plus Sale</Name>
        <IsActive>true</IsActive>
        <PriceLevelPerItem>
          <ItemRef>
            <FullName>Bolts</FullName>
            <AdjustPercentage>10</AdjustPercentage>
            <AdjustRelativeTo>Cost</AdjustRelativeTo>
          </PriceLevelPerItem>
        </PriceLevelAdd>
      </PriceLevelAddRq>
    </QBXMLMsgsRq>
  </QBXML>

```

In this sample, the Cost-Plus Sale price level specifies a price for the Bolts item that is 10 percent more than the cost.

## How to Apply a Price Level to a Customer

---

You can apply a price level to a customer when you create the customer (CustomerAddRq) or when you modify the customer (CustomerModRq). You'll notice that the customer can have only one price level applied at a time, however. The following sample qbXML shows the price level "Cost-Plus Sale" applied to the customer Geraldine Wilson when that customer is being added to QuickBooks.

```

<?qbxml version="4.0"?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
    <CustomerAddRq requestID = "2">
      <CustomerAdd>
        <Name>Geraldine Wilson</Name>
        <FirstName>Geraldine</FirstName>
        <LastName>Wilson</LastName>
        <BillAddress>
          <Addr1>123 Main St.</Addr1>
          <City>Mountain View</City>
          <State>CA</State>
          <PostalCode>94566</PostalCode>
        </BillAddress>
        <Phone>650-944-1111</Phone>
        <PriceLevelRef>
          <FullName>Cost-Plus Sale</FullName>
        </PriceLevelRef>
      </CustomerAdd>
    </CustomerAddRq>
  </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

## How to Apply a Price Level to a Line Item

---

If you want to use the SDK to apply price levels to individual line items in the various types of transactions, for example, invoice, sales orders, sales receipts, and so on, you can do so by including a PriceLevelRef in the line item Add or Mod aggregate. For example, in an InvoiceAdd request, you can specify a price level for an invoice line item inside the InvoiceLineAdd aggregate as follows:

```
<InvoiceLineAdd>
  <ItemRef>
    <FullName>Bolts</FullName>
  </ItemRef>
  <Desc>Bag O' Bolts</Desc>
  <Quantity>10</Quantity>
  <PriceLevelRef>
    <FullName>Special Customer Discount</FullName>
  </PriceLevelRef>
</InvoiceLineAdd>
```

It is important to note that for *per item* price levels, the item inside the ItemRef above must support the price level inside the PriceLevelRef. (For Fixed Percent price levels, this is not an issue.)

Notice that the Amount tag has been omitted. This is calculated by QuickBooks automatically from the Rate, or, in this case the Rate as automatically adjusted by the price level.



# CHAPTER 21

## USING BILLING RATES TO BILL FOR TIME

Billing rates (called billing rate *levels* in the UI, but simply billing rates in this document) are used in certain QuickBooks editions to allow you to charge different rates for a service item based on who does the work (employee, or vendor, or other name). This feature supports scenarios such as allowing you to bill at different rates for employees doing the same service but with different experience levels. Another scenario supported is the ability to charge different rates for employees based on the difficulty of a task.

This chapter describes the use of billing rates first from the perspective of the QuickBooks UI, to show the workflow that is supported by this feature, and any limitations of the feature when exercised by the SDK requests. The chapter also shows you how to build the `BillingRateAdd` request in qbXML and in QBFC.

### Which QuickBooks Editions Support Billing Rates?

The billing rates feature is currently available only in certain flavors of QuickBooks Premier and Enterprise:

- Contractor
- Professional Services
- Accountant

### Key SDK Limitations You Need to Know Before You Start

One key limitation of the SDK's support of the billing rates feature is that you cannot automate the insertion of billable time charges directly into invoices via QB SDK requests. Only the QuickBooks interactive user can do that because it entails choosing charges from a list of outstanding customer charges at the time of invoice creation, and the company owner (the QuickBooks interactive user) must remain in control of this.

Another limitation in the SDK is that you can assign Billing Rates only to employees and vendors, whereas in the UI, you can assign Billing Rates to employees, vendors, and other names.

## What Happens If I Use Both Price Levels and Billing Rates?

It is possible for a customer to have a price level that changes the standard rate assigned to a service item. What happens when you have billable time against that customer using the same service item and you also have a billing rate that applies to that service item? In the case where there is both a customer price level and a billing rate operating on a service item price, the price level always “wins”. Only the price level is used in this case.

## What is a Billing Rate?

A billing rate is a custom price that overrides the standard price set for a service item, based on the entity that does the work (employee, vendor, or other name). The billing rate is attached to the entity and is in effect when that entity is assigned to a time transaction.

There are two ways that this rate override works. You can set up a billing rate to do a simple override of ALL service item rates by imposing a fixed rate that will override all the standard rates. Or, you can set up the billing rate to override specific service items (one or more) by a fixed amount or percentage.

### **IMPORTANT**

The kind of rate you have on the service item determines the kind of billing rate you may have on that item. That is, if you attempt to set the Billing Rate to a percentage for a service item that has an amount for the Rate, you will get an error.

## What is the Workflow? How Do I use a Billing Rate?

The core transaction in the billing rate workflow is the time tracking transaction because that is where the billable time charges are recorded against the customer. From the UI perspective, this transaction is recorded via the Weekly Timesheet form or the Time/Enter Single Activity form in the UI. The easiest way to arrive at these forms is to click on the Enter Time icon in the QuickBooks Home page navigator. (In the SDK, you use the TimeTrackAdd request.) Figure 21-1 shows the Time/Enter SingleActivity form.

The screenshot shows a software window titled 'Time/Enter Single Activity'. At the top, there are buttons for 'Previous', 'Next', 'Spelling', and 'Timesheet'. On the right, there are 'Ask', 'How Do It?', and window control buttons. The main area has a red 'Not Billed' label and a checked 'Billable' checkbox. A circled area highlights the 'Date' (12/15/2007), 'Name' (Dan T. Miller), and 'Customer/Job' (Abercrombie, Kristy) fields. Below these are 'Service Item' (Blueprint changes), 'Duration' (5:00 with a stopwatch icon), and 'Notes' (an empty text area). At the bottom are 'Save & Close', 'Save & New', and 'Clear' buttons.

Figure 21-1 Entering a time tracking transaction

The time transaction, not surprisingly, tracks time duration of billable and unbillable activities within the specified timeframe. In the time transaction, you specify the customer, the time duration, the service item that identifies the type of activity performed, the entity that did the work (employee, vendor, or other name), and so forth as shown in the circled items in Figure 21-1. Notice that you can choose to make the time billable or not.

**NOTE**

One scenario where you would not make the time billable would be if you were tracking vendor time but were passing the vendor's time bills directly to the customer: in this case you wouldn't want to make the time billable as that would result in double billing.

## A Detailed Look at the Billing Rates Workflow

The billing rate workflow is as follows:

1. Create one or more service items with a standard price/rate for the task(s) for which you want to bill time.
2. Create billing rates that express the pricing structure you want to apply to those service items. (A billing rate is always linked to a service item.)
3. Assign the billing rates as desired to your employees, vendors, and/or other names.
4. Track the time in a time transaction (single activity form or weekly timesheet form). This transaction specifies the customer to be billed, the service item, the entity doing the work.
5. Invoice the customer for the billable time charges, selecting from the list of the customer's billable time charges when prompted.

We'll cover each of these aspects of the workflow in more detail in the following sections.

## Creating Service Items

---

A service item is an item on the item list. You can get to the new item form from the main QuickBooks pulldown menu, Lists->Item List->Item->New. Select Service as the item type as shown in Figure 21-2.



Figure 21-2 New Service Item form

The Rate field shows the value that will be impacted by the billing rate, when that is applied in the time transaction. Notice that you must assign an income account to the service item.

Also, notice the checkbox labelled “This service is used in...or is performed by a subcontractor.” You check this if you are creating a service item for work to be performed by a vendor. Figure 21-3 shows the additional fields you need to supply for vendor service items.

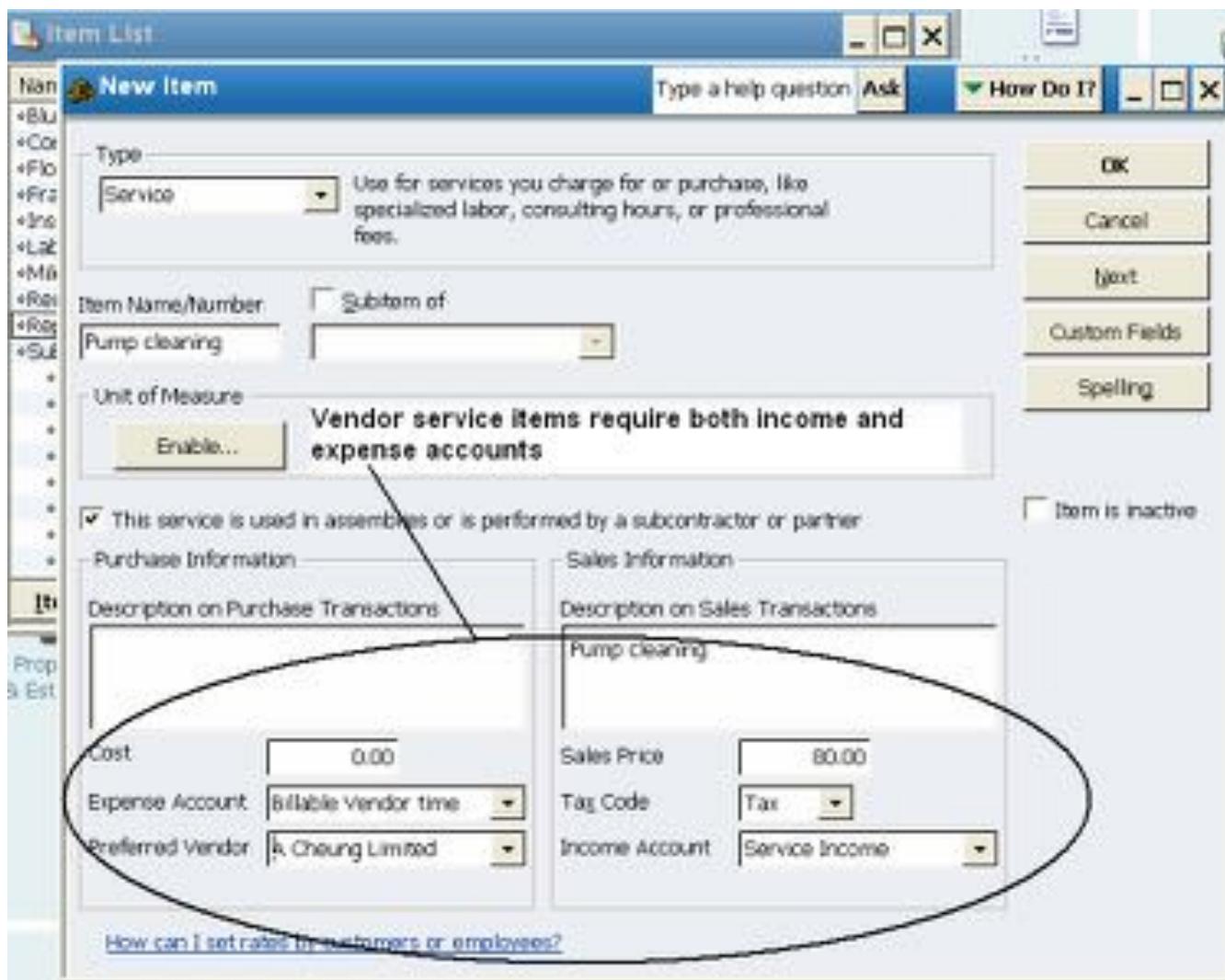


Figure 21-3 New Service Item form for vendor service items

In this usage, in addition to the income account used for the money coming in as a result of the service item, you need to specify an expense account, which is used for the money going out to the vendor to pay for that work.

### Creating a Service Item in the SDK

In the SDK, you would simply use the `ItemServiceAdd` request, whose fields are listed in the API Reference as shown in Figure 21-4:

Tag	Type	Max	Implementer
ItemServiceAddRq			
ItemServiceAdd			
Name	STRTYPE	31 Chars	
IsActive	BOOLTYPE		
ParentRef			
ListID	IDTYPE		
FullName	STRTYPE		
SalesTaxCodeRef			
ListID	IDTYPE		
FullName	STRTYPE	3 Chars	
BEGIN OR			
SalesOrPurchase			
Desc	STRTYPE	4095 Chars	
BEGIN OR			
Price	PRICETYPE		
OR			
PricePercent	PERCENTTYPE		
END OR	Corresponds to the Vendor service item checkbox in the QB UI		
AccountRef			
ListID	IDTYPE		
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars	
OR			
SalesAndPurchase			
SalesDesc	STRTYPE	4095 Chars	
SalesPrice	PRICETYPE		
IncomeAccountRef			
ListID	IDTYPE		
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars	
PurchaseDesc	STRTYPE	4095 Chars	
PurchaseCost	PRICETYPE		
ExpenseAccountRef			

Figure 21-4 Creating a new service item in the SDK

Notice that to fill out a service item for employees, you would use the SalesOrPurchase aggregate, whereas you'd use the SalesAndPurchase aggregate to specify a service item to be performed by a vendor.

### qbXML Code Sample: Adding a Service Item

The following qbXML request adds a service item with the name “Pump repair” and a rate of 50.

```

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="6.0"?>
<QBXML>
    <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
        <ItemServiceAddRq requestID = "0">
            <ItemServiceAdd>
                <Name>Pump Repair</Name>
                <SalesOrPurchase>
                    <Desc>repair small pumps</Desc>
                    <Price>50.00</Price>
                    <AccountRef>
                        <FullName>Service Income</FullName>
                    </AccountRef>
                </SalesOrPurchase>
            </ItemServiceAdd>
        </ItemServiceAddRq>
    </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

### QBFC Code Sample: Adding a Service Item

The following VB code is a one-shot program that adds the same service item as the above qbXML snippet. Notice the use of ORSalesPurchase.SalesOrPurchase. If we wanted this service item to be used by vendors we would have used ORSalesPurchase.SalesAndPurchase.

```

Dim SessionManager As QBSessionManager
Set SessionManager = New QBSessionManager
SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN ItemService Add Sample"
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

Dim ItemServiceAddSet As IMsgSetRequest
Set ItemServiceAddSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 6, 0)
Dim ServiceItemAdder As IItemServiceAdd

Set ServiceItemAdder = ItemServiceAddSet.AppendItemServiceAddRq
ServiceItemAdder.Name.setValue "Pump Repair"
ServiceItemAdder.ORSalesPurchase.SalesOrPurchase.Desc.setValue "repair small pumps"
ServiceItemAdder.ORSalesPurchase.SalesOrPurchase.ORPrice.Price.setValue 50
ServiceItemAdder.ORSalesPurchase.SalesOrPurchase.AccountRef.FullName.setValue
                                "Service Income"

Dim ItemServiceAddResp As IMsgSetResponse
Set ItemServiceAddResp = SessionManager.DoRequests(ItemServiceAddSet)
SessionManager.EndSession
SessionManager.CloseConnection

```

## Creating Billing Rates in the UI

In the UI, you can open the billing rate form from the main QuickBooks menubar: Lists->Billing Rate Level List->Billing Rate Level. Figure 21-5 shows that form:



Figure 21-5 New billing rate form

In the form above we selected a fixed hourly rate. This means that whoever has this billing rate assigned, employee, vendor, or other name, that fixed rate will override any service item rate used in the billable time transaction.

If you wanted to override a smaller subset of the service items, you would choose the second option: Custom Hourly Rate per Service Item (Figure 21-6):

**• Edit Billing Rate Level**

Billing Rate Level Name

Billing Rate Type

**Custom Hourly Rate Per Service Item:**

Use a different hourly rate for each service item performed by people with this billing rate level.

✓	Item	Standard Rate	Billing Rate
	Framing	55.00	
	Installation	35.00	
	Labor	0.00	
	Mileage	0.365	
✓	Pump cleaning	60.00	50.00
✓	Removal	35.00	30.00
	Repairs	35.00	
	Subs	0.00	

Select All

[Learn more about Billing Rate Levels...](#)

Figure 21-6 Billing rate form with Custom Hourly rate selected

Notice that you can select one or more service items in the list. Also, notice that you can specify a fixed rate for each service item (overriding the standard rate) by entering values in the Billing Rate column, as shown in the figure.

What if you wanted to charge a percentage higher or lower than the standard rate? To do that, you would click Adjust Selected Rates and specify the desired adjust higher or lower (Figure 21-7):

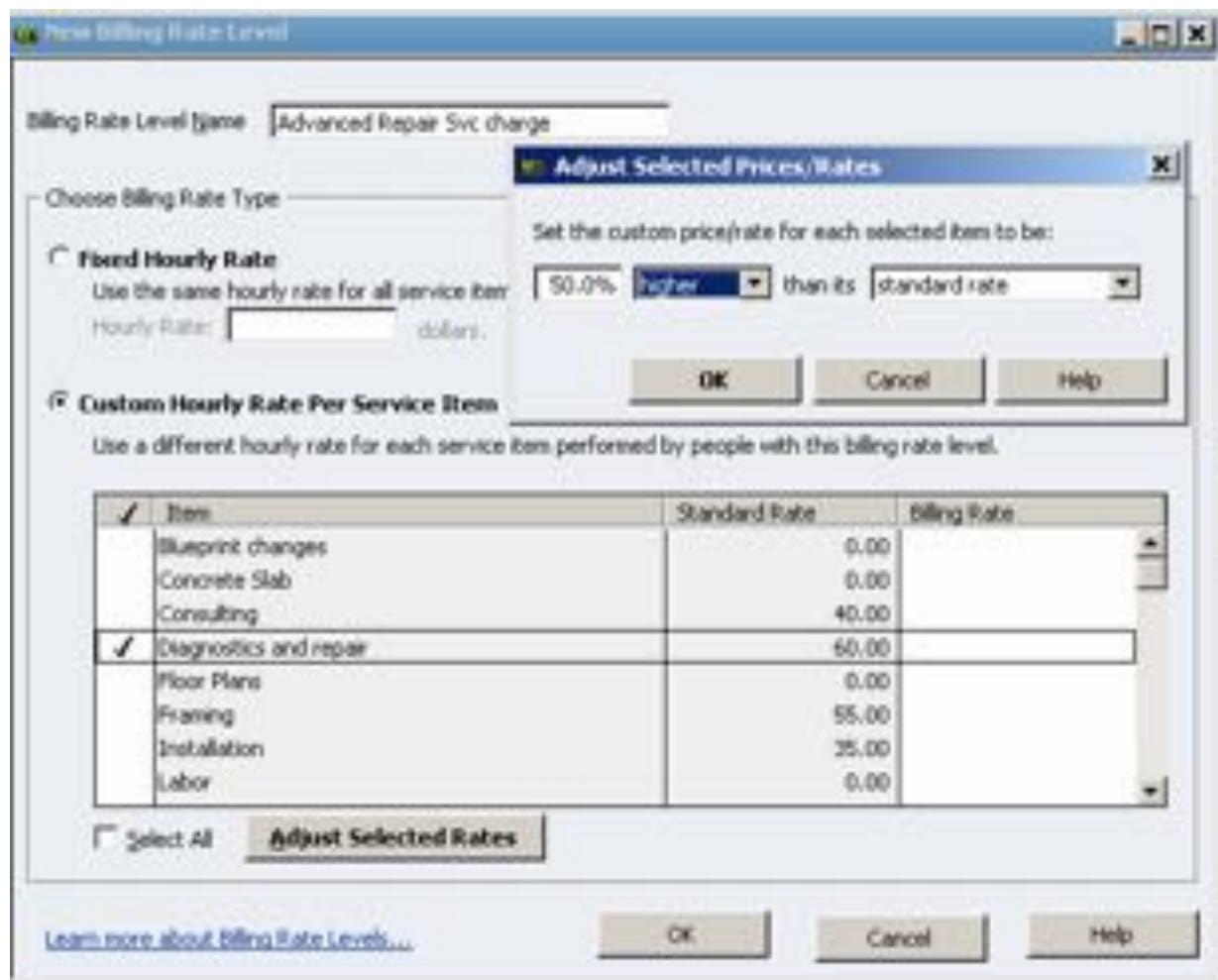


Figure 21-7 Adjusting service item rates higher or lower by percentage

## Creating Billing Rates in the QB SDK

The following two examples show how to add Billing Rates using the `BillingRateAdd` request.

### Creating Billing Rates Using qbXML

The following qbXML builds a billing rate called “Junior Level” which applies to the “Pump Repair” service item. The billing rate is applied to the standard rate, giving a 50% discount to the standard rate. Notice that to obtain a lower rate than the standard, you specify a negative number in the `AdjustPercentage` field: -50 means 50% lower than the standard rate. A value of 50 would mean 50% higher.

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="6.0"?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
```

```

<BillngRateAddRq requestID = "0">
  <BillngRateAdd>
    <Name>Junior Consultant Level</Name>
    <BillngRatePerItem>
      <ItemRef>
        <FullName>Pump Repair</FullName>
      </ItemRef>
      <AdjustPercentage>-50.0</AdjustPercentage>
      <AdjustBillngRateRelativeTo>StandardRate</AdjustBillngRateRelativeTo>
    </BillngRatePerItem>
  </BillngRateAdd>
</BillngRateAddRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

## Creating Billing Rates Using QBFC

The following VB sample is a one-shot program that does the same thing as the qbXML sample above, building a billing rate called “Junior Level” that applies to the “Pump Repair” service item.

Again, notice the billing rate is applied to the standard rate, giving a 50% discount to the standard rate because it is a negative number in the AdjustPercentage field. To specify a higher rate than the standard, you would specify a positive number in the AdjustPercentage field.

```

Dim SessionManager As QBSessionManager
Set SessionManager = New QBSessionManager
SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN BillingRate Add Sample"
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare
Dim BillingRateAddSet As IMsgSetRequest
Set BillingRateAddSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 6, 0)

Dim BillingRateAdder As IBillingRateAdd
Set BillingRateAdder = BillingRateAddSet.AppendBillingRateAddRq
BillingRateAdder.Name.SetValue "Junior Consultant Level"

Dim MyItem As IBillingRatePerItem
Set MyItem = BillingRateAdder.ORBillingRate.BillingRatePerItemList.Append()
MyItem.ItemRef.FullName.SetValue "Pump Repair"
MyItem.ORBillingRateItem.BillingRateAdjustment.AdjustBillngRateRelativeTo.SetValue
  abrrtStandardRate
MyItem.ORBillingRateItem.BillingRateAdjustment.AdjustPercentage.SetValue -50

Dim BillingRateAddResp As IMsgSetResponse
Set BillingRateAddResp = SessionManager.DoRequests(BillingRateAddSet)
SessionManager.EndSession
SessionManager.CloseConnection

```

## Assigning Billing Rates to Employees, Vendors, Other Names

A billing rate takes effect only if it is assigned to an entity involved in a billable time transaction. Assigning the billing rate works similarly for employees, vendors, and other names, so we'll only describe the employee, to keep our story short. (Again, remember that in the SDK, you won't be able to assign billing rates to an Other Name entity.)

To assign a billing rate, open the Employee form. You get there by clicking on the Employee center icon, then clicking on an existing employee name or clicking on the New Employee button, if you are adding a new employee. The form looks like this (once you click on the Additional Info tab, which is where you assign a billing rate):

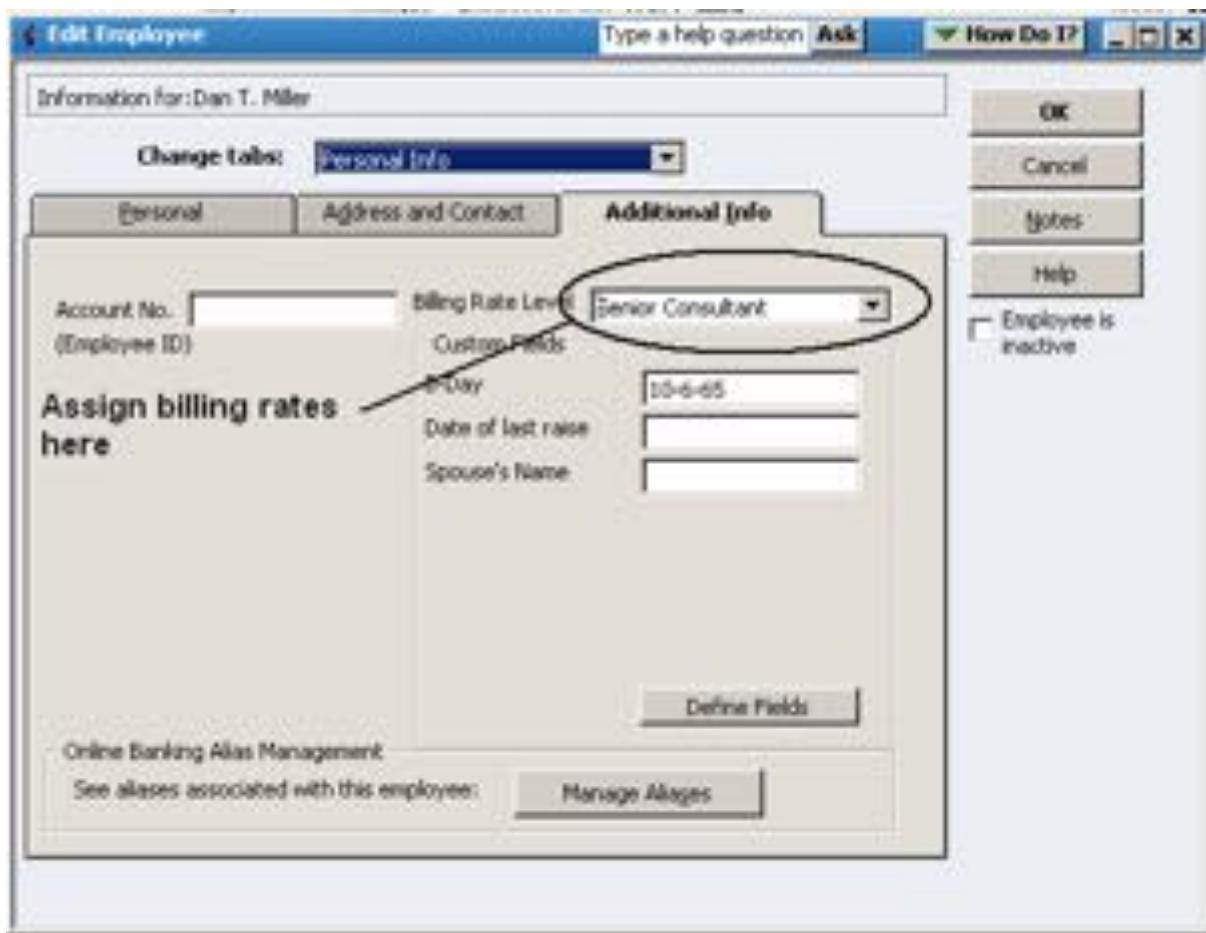


Figure 21-8 Assigning a billing rate to an employee

Notice that you can assign only one billing rate to an entity.

## Assigning a Billing Rate in the SDK

In the SDK, you can assign a billing rate to an employee or vendor in the EmployeeAdd, EmployeeMod, VendorAdd, and VendorMod requests. You simply use a BillingRateRef aggregate in those requests to add the billing rate. You can add only one billing rate per entity. We won't bother with sample code here because of its simplicity. Take a look at the QuickBooks API Reference for details on building Employee or Vendor requests.

## Using Billing Rates in Time Transactions

The only way billing rates take effect is in a billable time transaction. However, the heading to this section is a bit of a misnomer because you don't directly use billing rates in a time transaction. Instead, they are applied indirectly, by specifying the entity doing the billable time (e.g., employee, vendor) and by specifying the service item.

In the UI, you can enter time either in a weekly timesheet, or in the single activity form shown below (Figure 21-9):

The screenshot shows the 'Time/Enter Single Activity' window in QuickBooks. The 'Date' field is set to 12/15/2007. The 'Name' field contains Dan T. Miller. The 'Customer/Job' field shows Abercrombie, Kristy. The 'Service Item' field is Blueprint changes. A duration of 5:00 is displayed. A circled area highlights the Date, Name, Customer/Job, and Service Item fields. To the right, a red 'Not Billed' label is displayed above a checked 'Billable' checkbox. Below the duration, there are Start, Stop, and Pause buttons. At the bottom are Save & Close, Save & New, and Clear buttons.

Figure 21-9 The single activity time form

The Name field in the figure above is the entity doing the work. You can select a name from the list. (By the way, only employees, vendors, and other names are on that list.) If the entity name you select has a billing rate assigned, it will be applied to the service item specified in the transaction in the Service Item field. Checking the Billable checkbox means the transaction will result in time charges for the customer specified in the customer:job field.

### **Time Transactions in the SDK**

In the SDK, you use the TimeTxnAdd/TimeTxnMod requests, which are more like the single activity form. Time Transactions are described in another chapter in this document, so we won't cover any SDK details here.

## Invoicing Customers for Billable Time (UI Only)

For the sake of completeness, we'll cover the invoicing process here, where billable time charges are added to a customer invoice. There is currently no way to use the SDK to insert billable time charges into an invoice.

During invoice creation, when you specify a customer you are prompted to include any outstanding time charges (Figure 21-10):

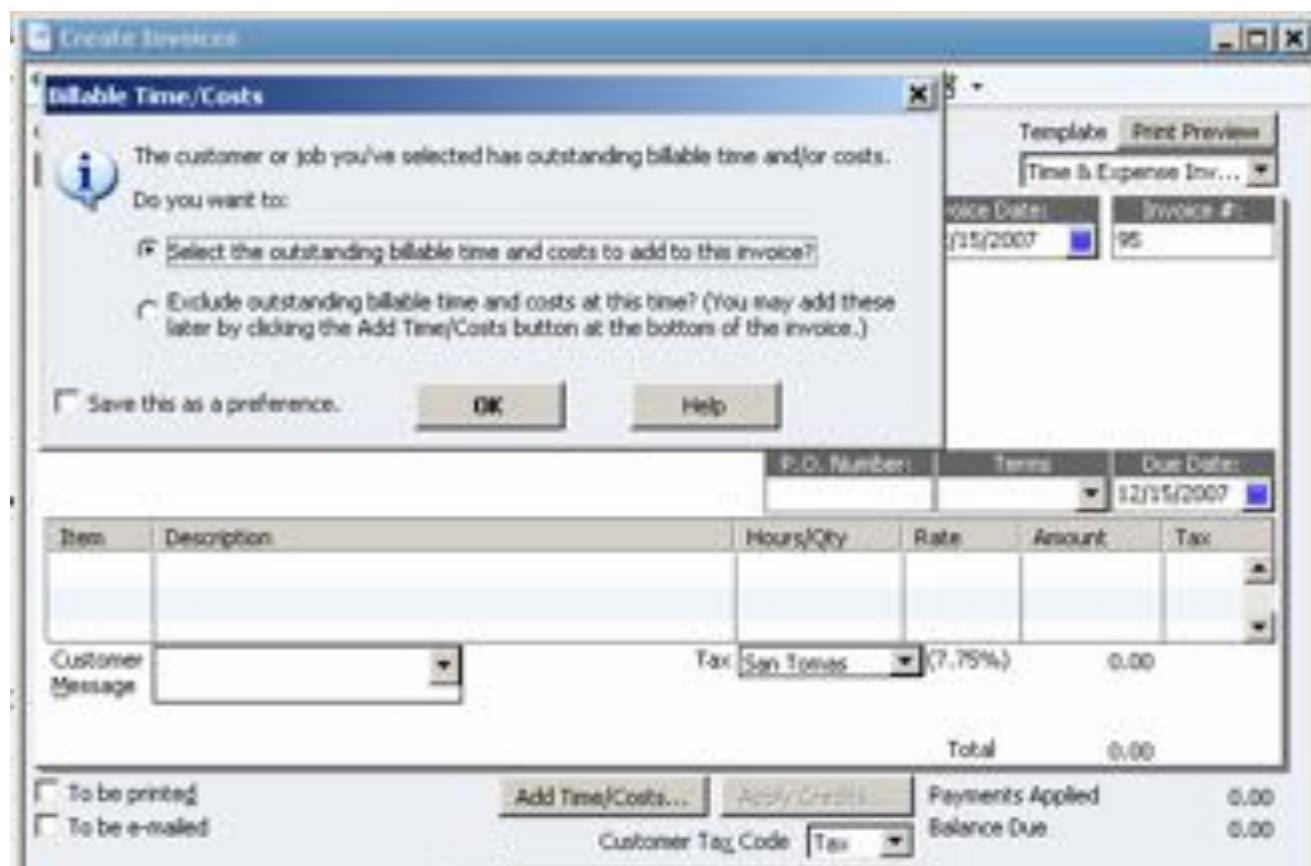


Figure 21-10 Billable time charges prompt during invoicing

If you accept the prompt to add the charges, you see a list of outstanding billable charges (Figure 21-11):

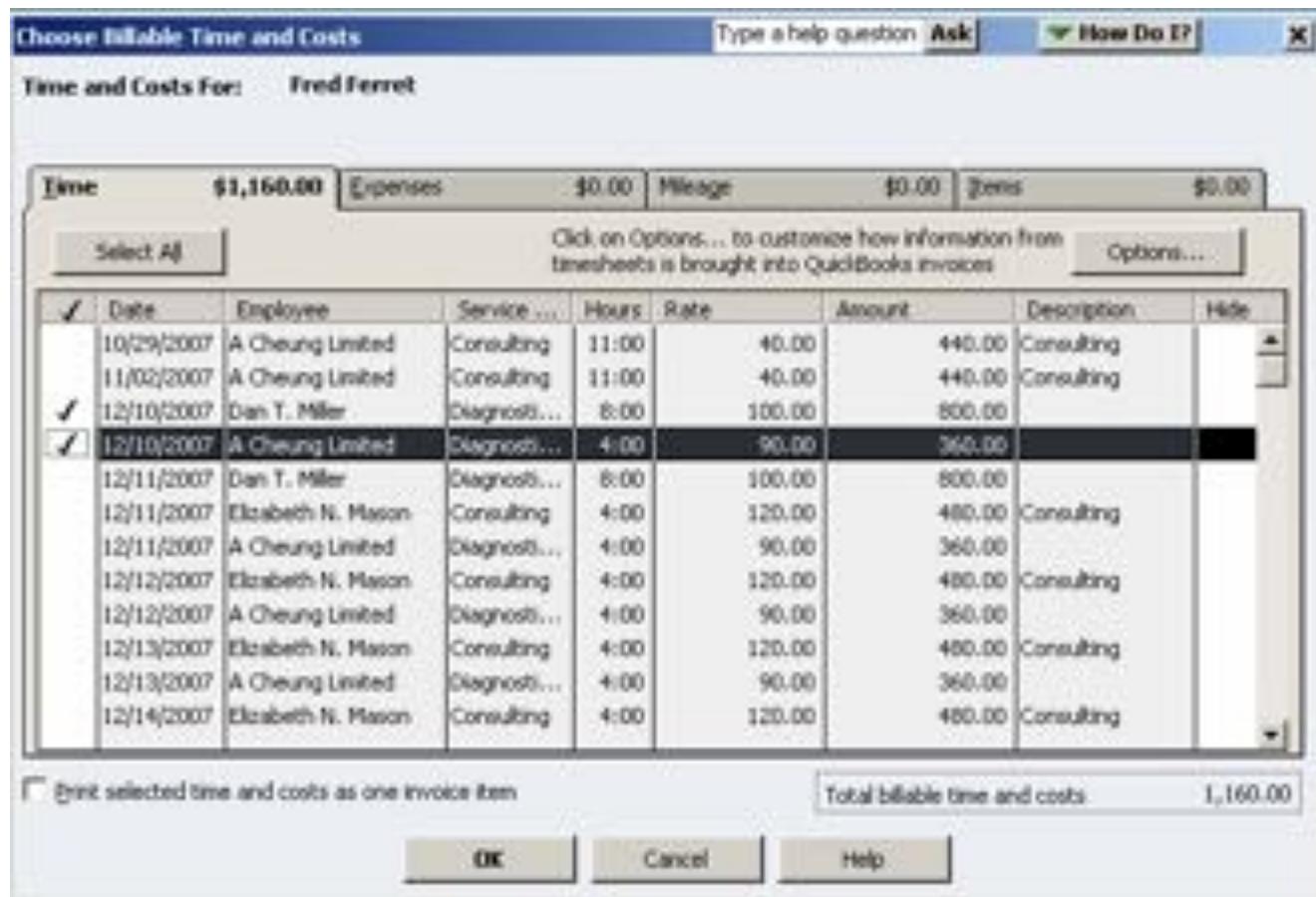


Figure 21-11 Billable time and costs

You simply select as many of the charges as you want: each will become a separate line item in the invoice. Notice that the rate that appears in the invoice Rate column is the standard service item charge if no billing rates are in effect for a billable charge, and the billing rate charge if billing rates apply. (That is, if the entity performing the billable time had a billing rate assigned.)



# CHAPTER 22

## USING THE MULTICURRENCY FEATURE IN THE SDK

Starting with QuickBooks 2009 (US version) and qbXML spec 8.0, the QB SDK supports the QuickBooks multicurrency feature. For full information on how this feature works, please consult the in-product help for QuickBooks.

In this chapter we'll briefly overview the QuickBooks multicurrency feature from the perspective of the SDK. We'll cover the multicurrency impact on company preferences, transactions, list objects and reports.

### Impact of Multicurrency on Existing Applications

---

If your users are using QB 2009 and have multicurrency turned on, your application can be affected by multicurrency even if your application does not take advantage of the 8.0 features and issues only requests using qbXML spec 7.0 and older.

Here are the new behaviors that impact your app:

- Balances for customers and vendors, if they are set up with foreign currency, have the balance amount in that currency and that balance amount will fluctuate when exchange rates change.
- For transactions involving a foreign entity with foreign currency, transaction amounts are in that foreign currency. QuickBooks also tracks this in your home currency (say USD). However, that home currency is **CALCULATED** from the foreign amount using the current exchange rate, which can fluctuate.
- When a transaction occurs using a foreign currency for the first time, where there is an **ARAccountRef** and/or **APAccountRef**, QuickBooks will automatically *create and use* a foreign AR and/or AP account with the following FullName nomenclature:
  - > Accounts Payable - <CurrencyCode>
  - Accounts Receivable - <CurrencyCode>

for example, if our transaction was in Japanese Yen, this is the account that would have to be referenced:

Accounts Receivable - JPY

Thus, if your application explicitly specifies a different AR or AP account it can fail when doing the transaction.

These are issues you need to be aware of.

## Company Preferences and Multicurrency

---

You cannot set multicurrency-related preferences from the SDK. That has to be done in the UI.

By default company files are created with multicurrency turned off. To turn multicurrency on you have to use the QuickBooks UI with the company file open. From the main menubar, Edit->Preferences->Multiple Currencies->Yes, I use more than once currency.

Once you turn multicurrency on for that company file, you won't be able to turn it off ever again. There's a prompt notifying you about this when you go to turn this on.

Next, you'll need to specify the Home Currency, again you must do this in the UI, in the preferences as noted above. Once you set the Home Currency, you will not be able to change it later.

### Getting Multicurrency and Home Currency from PreferencesQuery

---

You can use the SDK to get the current company file settings for multicurrency by doing a PreferencesQuery using qbXML 8.0 or greater, you'll get back a MultiCurrencyPreferences aggregate that contains the IsMultiCurrencyOn boolean and HomeCurrencyRef that indicates the home currency used with this company file.

## QuickBooks Currencies/Exchange Rates and the SDK

---

To understand the multicurrency feature, you need to know about

- ““Built-in” Vs. User Defined Currencies”
- “Active Vs. Inactive Currencies”
- “How Do You Set Currency Exchange Rates?”
- “What Happens in Transactions When You Change Exchange Rate?”

### “Built-in” Vs. User Defined Currencies

---

There are two “categories” of currencies supported by QuickBooks: QuickBooks' own extensive list of built-in currencies and currencies added by the QuickBooks user, which are called user-defined currencies. ((Currencies can be added either in the UI or using the SDK CurrencyAdd request.)

Both types of currencies show up in the UI Currency List or from the list obtained through the SDK's CurrencyQuery request. In the Ret from the Currency Query, each currency is identified as built-in (the IsUserDefinedCurrency field is set to false) or as user-defined (the IsUserDefinedCurrency field is set to true).

## Active Vs. Inactive Currencies

---

Although the built-in currency list is extensive, you'll notice that only a few show up in the various picklists in QuickBooks. That's because only those few are active by default. You can change any of these to active (or from active to inactive) either in the UI or using the SDK's `CurrencyMod` request.

When you create a currency using `CurrencyAdd`, the currency by default is active.

## How Do You Set Currency Exchange Rates?

---

You can manually set the exchange rate for a currency itself by editing the currency in the UI, not through the SDK. However, there is a quasi-automatic rate update feature in QuickBooks that the user can invoke by clicking (from the main menubar) `List->Currency List->Activities->Download Latest Exchange Rates`, which automatically fetches the currency rates for all built-in ACTIVE currencies over the Internet. This feature does not update user-defined currencies (these must be updated manually) and this feature is not available through the SDK.

The exchange rate setting for a currency is used by default when you add a transaction, either in UI or via SDK. However, these default exchange rates can be overridden by supplying a different exchange rate in the transaction, both in the UI and in the SDK through the `ExchangeRate` field.

## What Happens in Transactions When You Change Exchange Rate?

---

When you change the exchange rate on transactions, the foreign value stays the same and the value in your home currency changes. Using the SDK, you can update the foreign price by doing a `Mod` on the transaction where you specify the latest exchange rate and then re-specify all of the transaction lines.

## Multicurrency Effect on Transaction Amounts and Balances

---

QuickBooks keeps track of the line item amounts in both foreign and home currency, with the home currency amount calculated from the foreign amount using the exchange rate in effect for that transaction (foreign amount X exchange rate).

## Multicurrency Effect on List Objects Amounts and Balances

---

Amount balances for list objects (for example account, customer, and vendor) are in the currency associated with that account, customer, or vendor, and fluctuate based on the exchange rate.

## Multicurrency Effects on Reports

---

All amounts in Reports have values expressed in home currency amounts, due to required accounting and reporting to government agencies.

## ARAccountRef/APAccountRef Guidelines

---

Prior to QuickBooks 2009, developers were advised to explicitly supply the optional AP and AR account references instead of using the default Accounts Payable and Accounts Receivable. This advice was given to help developers avoid the scenario of mismatched AP and/or AR accounts when one transaction was linked to another.

With QuickBooks 2009 the ground has changed significantly due to the way QuickBooks does accounting for foreign currencies. QuickBooks automatically creates a new AP and/or AP account the first time a foreign transaction occurs in a given foreign currency. For example, for a new Invoice to a Japanese customer this AR account is created and used:

Accounts Receivable - JPY

So if you were to do an InvoiceAdd to that customer, you MUST either not specify the ARAccountRef (the SDK will automatically use the correct one) or you must refer to that new AR account explicitly--you cannot just use some other account.

For transactions that do not reference any other transaction, it is easier to not supply the AR or AP accountRef and let the defaults be used.

# CHAPTER 23

## USING THE MULTI-LOCATION INVENTORY FEATURE IN THE SDK

Starting with QuickBooks Enterprise v11 (2011 - US version) and qbXML spec 10.0, the QB SDK supports the QuickBooks multi-location inventory feature. For full information on how this feature works, please consult the in-product help for QuickBooks.

In this chapter we'll briefly overview the QuickBooks multi-location inventory feature from the perspective of the SDK. We'll cover the multi-location inventory impact on company preferences, transactions, list objects and reports.

### Impact of Multi-Location Inventory on Existing Applications

---

If your users are using Enterprise v11 and have multi-location inventory turned on, your application can be affected by multi-location inventory even if your application does not take advantage of the 10.0 features and issues only requests using qbXML spec 8.0 and older.

Here are the new behaviors that impact your app:

- Sites will be set to UnspecifiedSite, if SDK version used is less than 10.0.

These are issues you need to be aware of.

### Company Preferences and Multi-Location Inventory

---

You cannot set multi-location inventory related preferences from the SDK. That has to be done in the UI.

By default company files are created with multi-location inventory turned off. To turn multi-location inventory on you have to use the QuickBooks UI with the company file open. From the main menubar, Edit->Preferences->Item & Inventory->Company tab-> Select Advanced Inventory is enabled.

### Getting Multi-Location Inventory from PreferencesQuery

---

You can use the SDK to get the current company file settings for multi-location inventory by doing a PreferencesQuery using qbXML 10.0 or greater, you'll get back a MultiLocationInventoryPreferences aggregate that contains the IsMultiLocationInventoryAvailable and IsMultiLocationInventoryEnabled boolean that indicates if multi-location inventory is used with this company file.

## InventorySite features for Multi-Location Inventory

---

### InventorySiteAdd:

A new inventory site can be added to the Inventory Site List via SDK

1. For this feature to work via SDK, the preference that allows inventory items to be in multiple sites has to be turned on.
2. The only required field to add a site is the Name field. This name has to be unique: all the elements in this list must have unique names.
3. The address block of the Inventory Site List emulates that of the Customer List.

### InventorySiteMod:

An already existing inventory site can be modified through this request.

1. Like all other list modify requests, this too requires the list ID and edit sequence of the element being modified.
2. The name of an element can be changed as long as the modified name isn't already in use by another element.
3. If the 'IsDefaultSite' is set to true for an element, then it can be made false only by setting the <IsDefaultSite> tag true for another element in the list. By sending <IsDefaultSite>false</IsDefaultSite> for the site will not have any effect for a site whose <IsDefaultSite> tag is already true.

### InventorySiteQuery:

FullName, ActiveStatus, From & To ModifiedDate, NameFilter, NameRangeFilter are available as filters.

## Transfer Inventory Transactions Feature

---

This SDK request to expose the "Transfer Inventory" feature. This feature is a transaction that has been introduced as a part of Multi Location Inventory.

The SDK functionality includes ADD, MOD, DEL & QUERY requests.

This new set of requirements allows the user to transfer inventory from one site to another in different locations.

### Transfer Inventory Add:

1. This request requires "To" & "From" sites and one entry in the transaction line.
2. It also has the provision to set External GUID

### Transfer Inventory Mod:

1. It allows the modification of the transaction body and transaction lines.
2. If the transaction line isn't explicitly mentioned in the modline aggregate, the transaction is deleted

Transfer Inventory Query

Standard filters and Site Filter are available.

## Site Attributes for Transaction with Multi-Location Inventory

---

Applying Site to transactions through SDK, when MLI is turned on.

Site can be set to the transactions during with Add Request and Modify Request.

The <InventorySiteRef> tag is currently supported for Line Items only.

For Group Items, we cannot explicitly specify the site, in this case, UnSpecifiedSite will be set.

For Invoice, CreditMemo, Check, Bill, ItemReceipt, BuildAssembly, SalesReceipt, CreditCardCharge, CreditCardCredit, VendorCredit, Charge, InventoryAdjustment:

- 1) For Add /Mod Request, the Site passed with <InventorySiteRef> tag will be applied to the transactions once it is saved.
- 2) If there are more than one <InventorySiteRef> aggregates, SDK will set Site for all the transactions.
- 3) Transaction Add / Mod would succeed, even if Site is not specified, but it will set the Site to UnspecifiedSite. The SDK response is created with the Transaction Ret, which includes the details of Site.
- 4) In a transaction, if quantity is negative, then that transaction becomes non-posting, hence Site will be treated as an optional field.
- 5) For Charge, BuildAssembly, InventoryAdjustment transactions, the Site will be provided in header and will be copied to all the Line Items.
- 6) For all other transactions, Site will be provided in the Line Items.

For Estimate, PurchaseOrder and SalesOrder:

- 1) Transactions are non-posting, so Site is not a mandatory field.
- 2) For PurchaseOrder transaction, the Site will be provided in header and will be copied to all the Line Items.

## Multi-Location Inventory Support for Group Items

---

This functionality has not been implemented. Calls to this request will return as unsupported.

# CHAPTER 24

## USING THE QUICKBOOKS VEHICLE MILEAGE FEATURE

In QuickBooks, vehicle mileage tracking is trip-based, with each trip and its mileage entered as a separate transaction in QuickBooks, with QuickBooks automatically calculating the resulting mileage costs based on user supplied rates. When you need to see the information accumulated from these transactions, you can run the Mileage by Vehicle or Mileage by Job reports (Figure 24-1 on page 317).

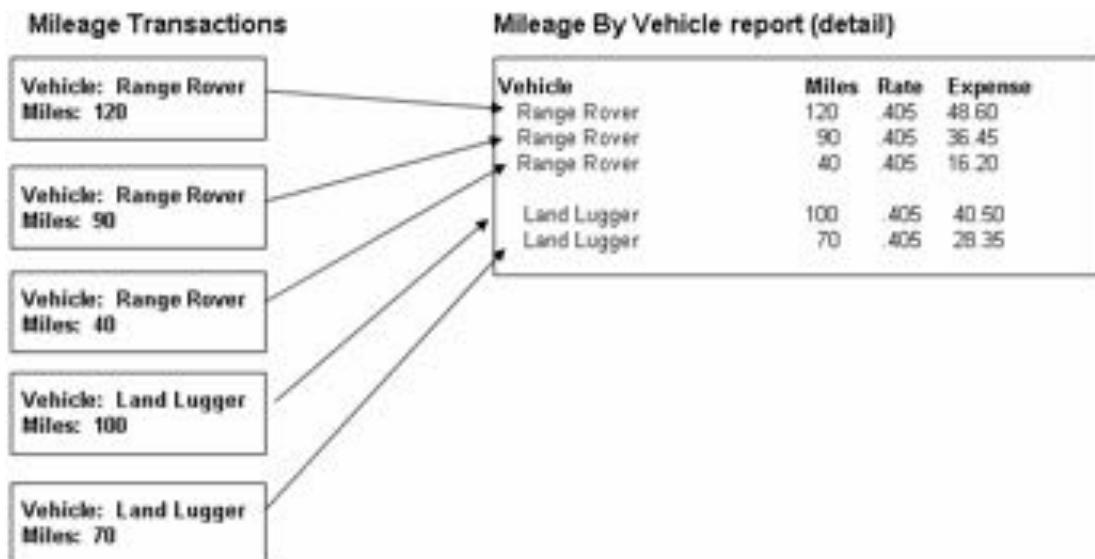


Figure 24-1 Mileage transactions and mileage expense reports

In addition to accumulating and generating data for reports, another way to use the vehicle mileage feature is to use it in conjunction with invoices to bill customers for mileage-related charges. To use the feature in this way you simply make the transaction billable and add a little more information to the vehicle mileage transaction, such as the customer to be charged and the item used to set the *billable* mileage rate (Figure 24-2 on page 318).

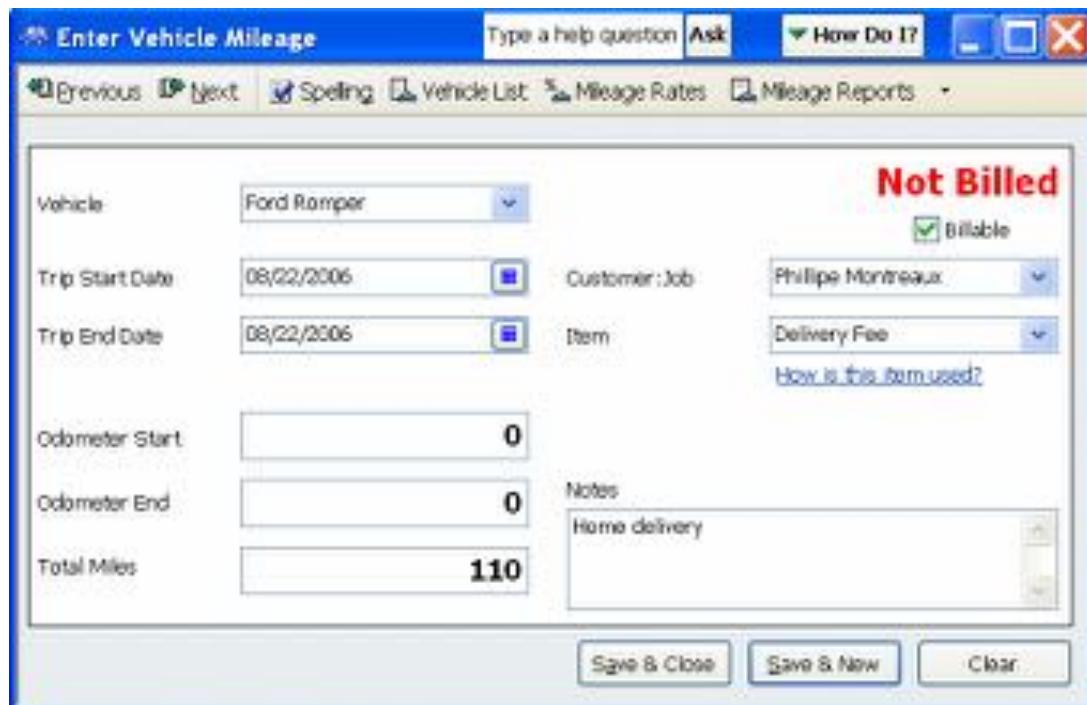


Figure 24-2 Billable mileage transaction

Keep in mind that the *tax* mileage rate is completely unrelated to and unaffected by the billable mileage rate, and cannot be set via the SDK. For that reason, QuickBooks provides two separate mileage reports: Mileage by Vehicle, which reports only the tax-related vehicle mileage and mileage expense, and Mileage by Job, which tracks both non billable and billable mileage (along with the billable charges).

## Key Limitations of QB SDK Support for Vehicle Mileage

One key limitation of the SDK's support of this feature is that you cannot automate the insertion of billable mileage charges directly into invoices via QB SDK requests. Only the QuickBooks interactive user can do that because it entails choosing charges from a list of outstanding customer charges at the time of invoice creation, and the company owner (the QuickBooks interactive user) must remain in control of this.

Another limitation, which we have already mentioned, is that the mileage rate used to calculate mileage expense for the tax agency (such as the IRS) can only be set in the QuickBooks UI, via the Mileage Rates button in the Mileage entry form. Only the billable mileage rate can be specified via the QB SDK, by setting the amount in the item (service item or other charge item) you use for mileage charges.

Finally, the Vehicle Mileage Mod operation is currently not supported, whereas you can modify a vehicle mileage transaction in the UI.

## How the Vehicle Mileage Feature Works

The best way to see how the mileage feature works is to look at the QuickBooks UI. Figure 24-3 on page 319 shows the Vehicle Mileage entry form, which is where you create the mileage transactions in the UI.

From the vehicle list

Sets the tax expense mileage rate

From the customer list

From the item list

Figure 24-3 The vehicle mileage edit form

We'll describe most of the fields in the following paragraphs, at least, those fields that need some description beyond what's obvious in the UI form.

**Vehicle.** You must always specify a vehicle. In the UI, a dropdown list contains all of the vehicles in the vehicle list. You can choose one or create a new vehicle by selecting **New** within the list. The SDK differs slightly, as you use the `VehicleRef` element to specify the vehicle, and the vehicle must already exist in the QuickBooks company.

**Trip Start Date/End Date.** This is an optional field. In the UI, the default is the current date, and this is always supplied if you don't supply a different date. In the SDK, this corresponds to the elements `TripStartDate` and `TripEndDate`. If you omit either or both of these, the current date will be supplied for the omitted element(s).

**Odometer Start/Odometer End/Total Miles.** In the UI, you can specify values for all three of these fields, as long as the total miles matches the QuickBooks-calculated value for Odometer End minus Odometer Start. In the SDK, in the `VehicleMileageAdd` request, you can specify either the Odometer Start and End or you can specify Total Miles, but you

cannot specify both, since doing so results in a parser error. The VehicleMileageAdd elements corresponding to these UI fields are as you would expect: OdometerStart, OdometerEnd, and TotalMiles.

**Billable.** One of the key choices you make when filling out this form, or doing the equivalent in the SDK, is whether a customer is to be charged for the mileage.

If a customer is to be charged, check the Billable checkbox in the upper right of the form. In the SDK, set the BillableStatus element in the VehicleMileageAdd request to Billable. Then specify the customer to be billed and the item used to set the charged mileage rate. QuickBooks will save the tax related expense data, and will also save the mileage charge as an outstanding time or cost for that customer.

If you don't intend to charge the customer, in the UI leave the checkbox unchecked. In the SDK, set the BillableStatus to NotBillable. You can omit customer and item, or you can optionally supply the customer and item, if for some reason you want to track this in the Mileage By Job detail report under that supplied customer. If you supply customer and item in a non billable transaction, the entry will be listed in the Mileage by Job detail report as Non Billable and no customer charge will be made.

**Customer:Job.** You must specify a customer if you check the Billable checkbox or do the equivalent in the VehicleMileageAdd request by setting BillableStatus to Billable. The UI control here is a dropdown list containing all of the customers in the customers list. You can create a new customer by selecting **New** within the list. In the VehicleMileageAdd request you use the CustomerRef element to specify the customer, and the customer must already exist in the QuickBooks company.

The billable charge resulting from this mileage transaction will be saved in QuickBooks as an outstanding Billable Time and Cost for that customer. The next time an invoice is created for that customer *in the UI*, the QuickBooks user will be prompted to add that outstanding charge to the invoice. Notice that no such prompt will occur for invoices created via the SDK, nor will you be able to insert any of these outstanding charges into the invoice via the SDK.

**Item.** You must specify an item if you check the Billable checkbox or do the equivalent in the SDK. The UI control here is the familiar dropdown list but it is a filtered list of only service items and other charge items. These are the only item types that can be used in vehicle mileage transactions. If you supply an item of a different type than service or other charge via the SDK, you'll get a runtime error.

**Mileage Rate.** A UI-only feature. The Mileage Rate button is located in the top middle of the Vehicle Mileage entry form. You click on it to display the Mileage Rates form, which is where you specify the mileage rate for your current tax year. This rate is established by your income tax authority, for example, the IRS. This rate multiplied by the mileage from the mileage transactions yields the mileage expense reported by the Mileage By Vehicle reports.

Notice that you can change this rate from the UI whenever you want for that tax year, and the Mileage by Vehicle reports automatically reflect those changes. However, you cannot set or modify this rate via the SDK.

**Mileage Reports.** A UI-only feature. The mileage reports can be accessed via this button in the Vehicle Mileage entry form, or through the usual UI features that support reports: the Report Center or the Report pulldown menu.

The reports consist of two main reports:

- Summary and detail reports for Mileage by Vehicle, which lists the mileage and expenses calculated using the mileage rates set via the Mileage Rate button.
- Summary and detail reports for Mileage by Job, which lists the mileage and charges for each customer. The charges are derived from the mileage multiplied by the rate specified in the item used in the mileage transaction.

## Setting Up an Item to be Used In Billable Mileage Transactions

If you want to bill your customers for mileage, you need to create a service item or an other charge item that will show up on the invoice as the line item and also establish the mileage rate. shows a sample service item set up to bill the mileage at a rate of 0.70 per mile.

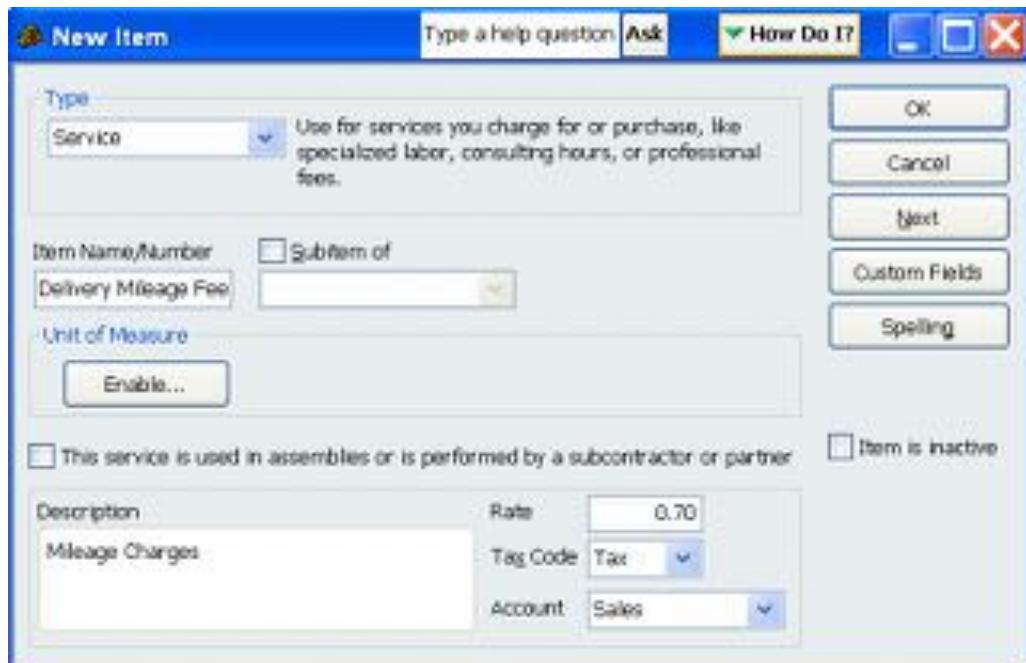


Figure 24-4 Setting up a service item for mileage charges

Keep in mind that the Rate field in service items, and the Amount field in other charge items are both used in Mileage transactions in exactly the same way. That is, they are rates, and they are multiplied against the mileage in a mileage transaction to yield the charges for the customer. They cannot be used to establish a flat fee amount.

Other than the Rate/Amount issue, there is nothing special to note here, except that when you create either a service item or an other charge item to bill customers against, the account you specify for that item is typically an income account. The tax code field refers to sales tax. If your company doesn't use sales tax, then this doesn't appear as a choice.

## What Happens to Mileage Charges When I Create Invoices?

The behavior of invoices and mileage charges varies slightly depending on whether you add the invoice from the UI or via the SDK

### Mileage Charges and Invoices in the UI

In the UI, when you create an invoice for a customer who has any outstanding charges, such as mileage charges from Vehicle Mileage transactions, you are prompted to add them to the invoice (Figure 24-5 on page 322).

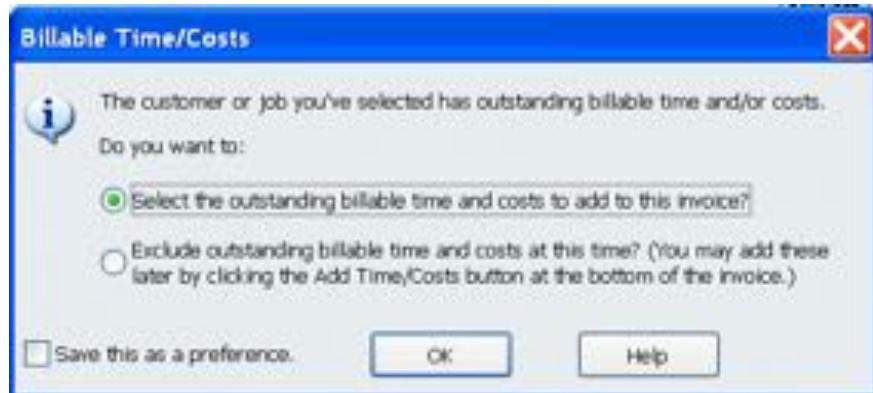


Figure 24-5 Billable Time/Costs prompt

If you want to add these charges and click OK, a selection form is displayed (Figure 24-6 on page 323). The list of outstanding mileage charges for the customer is displayed when you select the Mileage tab.

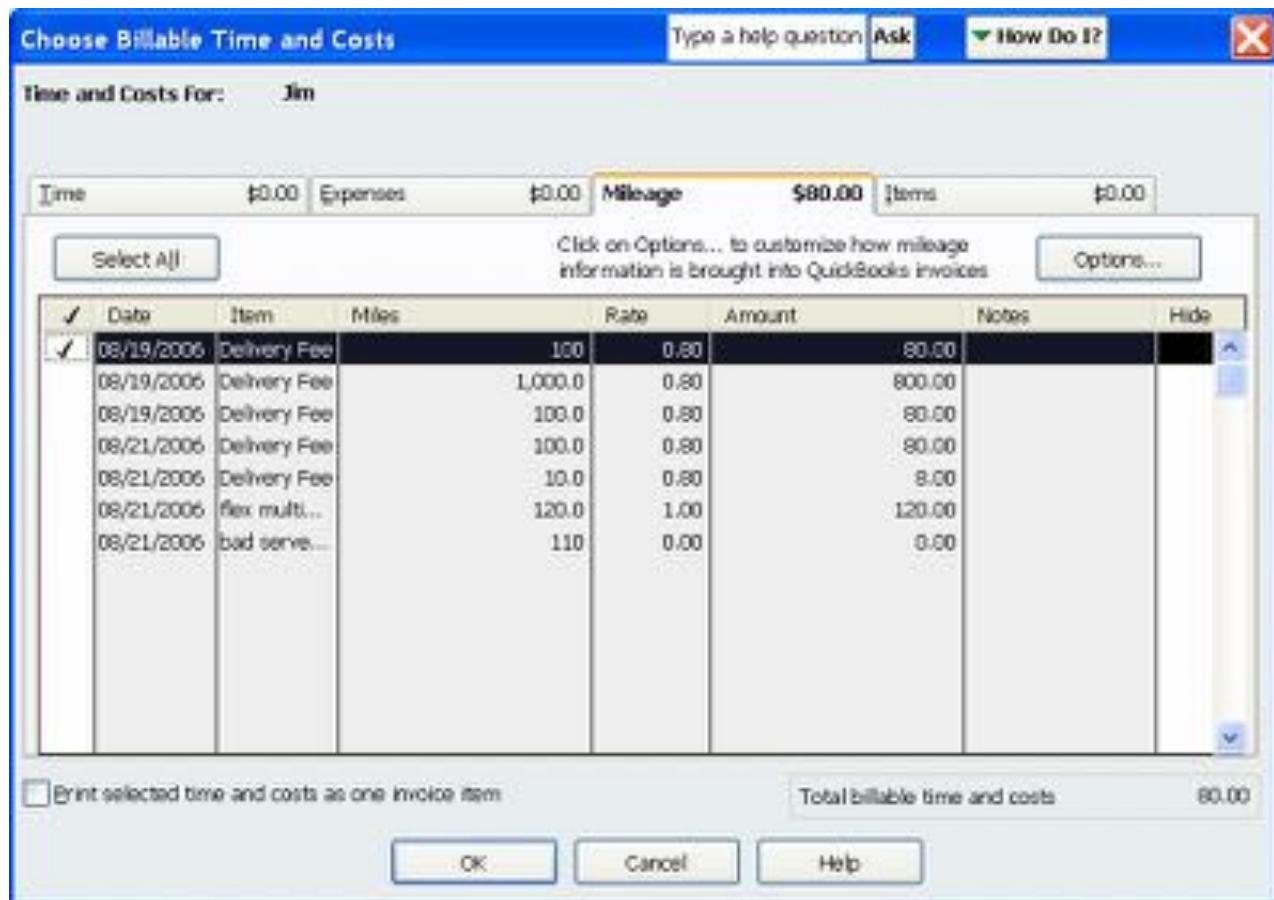


Figure 24-6 .Billable Time/Costs Mileage tab

You apply charges to the invoice by selecting them then clicking OK. The charges appear as line items in the invoice.

## Mileage Charges and Invoices in the SDK

What happens when you create an invoice for a customer via the SDK by issuing the `InvoiceAdd` request? If that customer has outstanding mileage charges, how do you get those charges into the invoice? Is the outstanding charges prompt dialog displayed, as it is when you create an invoice via the UI?

The answer is that you cannot add these mileage charges at all if you are creating invoices via the SDK. No prompt is displayed to allow the user to add the charges to the invoice as the SDK creates them. The only way to add a customer's outstanding mileage charges is for a user to create the invoice entirely from the UI.

# Adding a Vehicle Mileage Transaction

---

You can use qbXML to add the transaction or you can use QBFC.

## Adding Vehicle Mileage in qbXML

---

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<?qbxml version="6.0"?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="continueOnError">
    <VehicleMileageAddRq requestID = "UUIDTYPE">
      <VehicleMileageAdd >
        <VehicleRef>
          <FullName>Land Lugger</FullName>
        </VehicleRef>
        <CustomerRef>
          <FullName>Jim Fuller</FullName>
        </CustomerRef>
        <ItemRef>
          <FullName>Delivery Fee</FullName>
        </ItemRef>
        <OdometerStart>1500</OdometerStart>
        <OdometerEnd>1600</OdometerEnd>
        <BillableStatus>Billable</BillableStatus>
      </VehicleMileageAdd>
    </VehicleMileageAddRq>
  </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

## Adding Vehicle Mileage in QBFC

---

The following VB sample shows how to build a VehicleMileageAdd request using QBFC. It is a one-shot sample that opens the connection with the currently open QuickBooks company, starts the session, builds a billable mileage request, sends it to QuickBooks.

The transaction properties are all set with hardcoded values, since the purpose of this snippet is only to show how to build the VehicleMileageAdd request.

```
SessionManager As QBSessionManager
Set SessionManager = New QBSessionManager
SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "VehicleMileageAdd_Sample"
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

Dim VehicleMileageAddSet As IMsgSetRequest
Set VehicleMileageAddSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 6, 0)
Dim VehicleMileageAdd As IVehicleMileageAdd
Set VehicleMileageAdd = VehicleMileageAddSet.AppendVehicleMileageAddRq
```

```

VehicleMileageAdd.VehicleRef.FullName.setValue "Land Lugger"
VehicleMileageAdd.CustomerRef.FullName.setValue "Phillipe Montreaux"
VehicleMileageAdd.ItemRef.FullName.setValue "Delivery Fee"
VehicleMileageAdd.ORVehicleMileageAdd.OdometerReadingAdd.OdometerStart.setValue 1200
VehicleMileageAdd.ORVehicleMileageAdd.OdometerReadingAdd.OdometerEnd.setValue 1400
VehicleMileageAdd.BillableStatus.setValue bsBillable

Dim VehicleMileageAddResp As IMsgSetResponse
Set VehicleMileageAddResp = SessionManager.DoRequests(VehicleMileageAddSet)
SessionManager.EndSession
SessionManager.CloseConnection

```

## Querying and Deleting Vehicle Mileage Transactions

When you query for vehiclemileage transactions and use a TxnDateRangeFilter, the From and To dates that you specify are assumed to be the Trip End dates, so the filter will filter for the Trip End date values that satisfy your filter range.

Vehicle mileage transactions can be queried and deleted like other transactions, and are subject to the same rules and limitations. For more information, see these chapters: Chapter 8, “Creating Queries,” and Chapter 10, “Modifying and Deleting Transactions and List Objects.”

## Modifying Vehicle Mileage Transactions

Mileage transactions can be modified in the UI, but currently cannot be modified via the SDK.

## Adding, Modifying, Querying Vehicles in the Vehicle List

Vehicles are simple items, and the SDK allows you to add them, modify them, and query for them.

### Adding a Vehicle in qbXML

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<?qbxml version="6.0"?>
<QBXML>
    <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="continueOnError">
        <VehicleAddRq requestID = "UUIDTYPE">
            <VehicleAdd>
                <Name>Ford Romper</Name>
                <IsActive>true</IsActive>
                <Desc>flatbed</Desc>
            </VehicleAdd>
        </VehicleAddRq>
    </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```



# CHAPTER 25

## ADDING, MODIFYING, QUERYING WORKER COMP CODES

Workers compensation insurance companies categorize the various types of work your employees perform and assign codes to them, with different insurance rates applied to the different codes. In QuickBooks, you need to create these workers compensation codes and the premiums (rates) that apply to them and then assign them to employees. You need to do this so QuickBooks can track the premiums you owe as you pay your employees.

Beginning with qbXML spec 7.0 and QuickBooks 2008, the SDK provides access to the workers comp code feature via the `WorkersCompCodeAdd`, `WorkersCompCodeMod`, and `WorkersCompCodeQuery` requests.

The following functionalities are NOT supported in the SDK:

- You cannot assign codes to employees in the SDK--you must use the workers' comp setup within the QuickBooks UI for that.
- The Experience Modification feature available in the QuickBooks UI for workers' comp codes is not available in the SDK.
- You cannot currently delete codes from the SDK using the `ListDel` request. You have to delete unwanted codes using the QuickBooks UI.

## What Can I Do With the Comp Codes I Create?

---

Once the workers comp codes are created, you use the workers' comp code wizard within the QuickBooks UI to assign a code to an employee. You cannot assign codes to an employee from the SDK. Once a code is assigned, information about workers comp premiums paid for the employee are accessible through the various workers comp reports available through the QuickBooks UI.

## Workers' Comp Code Feature Requires Payroll Subscription

---

For both the QuickBooks UI and the SDK, you are able to access the QuickBooks workers' comp codes feature only if the company file is subscribed to the Intuit payroll service, or, if the company file is a sample QuickBooks company.

If neither of these are the case, then you won't be able to access the feature in the QuickBooks UI. In the SDK, you'll get an error when you send workers' comp code add, modify, or query requests.

## How Can I Tell Whether the Company is Subscribed to Payroll?

PreferencesQuery and HostQuery do not indicate whether the company is subscribed to payroll.

However, you can determine this by simply issuing a WorkersCompCodeQuery and checking the response for the error status code of 3250, feature not available.

Here is a query you could use for this:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<?qbxml version="7.0"?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="continueOnError">
    <WorkersCompCodeQueryRq requestID="2" />
  </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

## Workers Comp Codes in the UI and in the SDK

In the QuickBooks UI (if the company is a sample company or subscribed to the Intuit payroll service), you can add new workers compensation codes by selecting List -> Workers Comp List to display the workers comp list (see Figure 25-1).

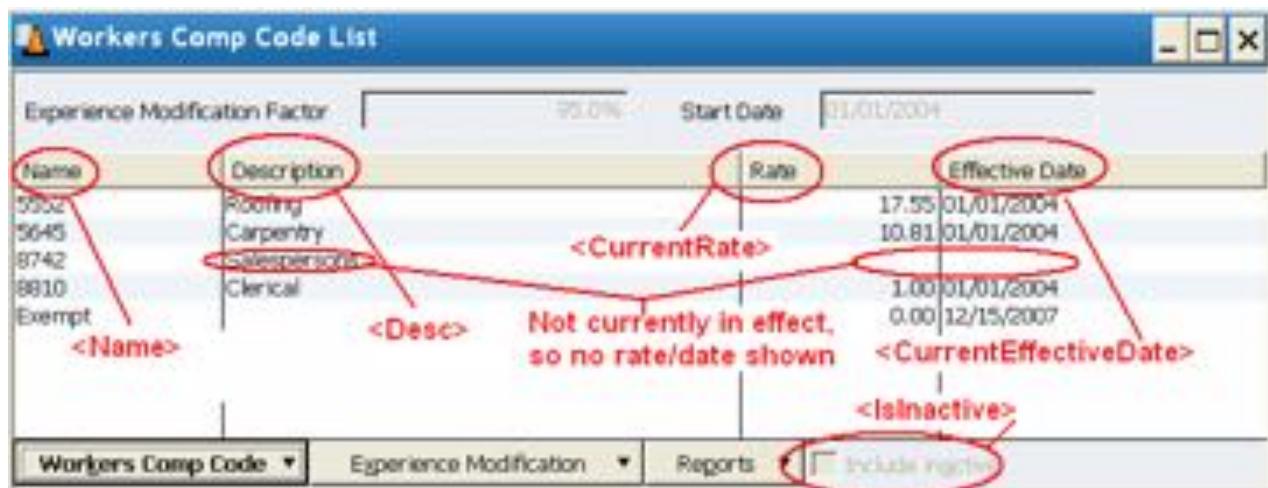


Figure 25-1 The Workers' Comp List

In the list display form shown above, notice the code name, description, rate, and effective dates, which correspond to the SDK fields used in the WorkersCompCode Add/Mod/Query that we've called out in Figure 25-1. That form displays all of the *names* of the currently created codes, but only the dates and rates of codes that are currently in effect (see the entry for Salespersons). That is, if the code has a future effective date (or a past one) and no currently effective date, the rate and date fields are empty in the form. That is why we show the *<CurrentRate>* and *<CurrentEffectiveDate>* tags in Figure 25-1.

## Adding a Comp Code with Several Rates Possible via SDK

---

In the QuickBooks UI, you can specify a comp code that has a single rate. However, in the SDK, you can create a comp code that has several rates, each of which has its own effective date.

### Current Effective Date and Current Rate

---

When you add or modify a workers' comp code through the SDK, you'll notice that you can supply only the tags `<Rate>` and `<EffectiveDate>`. Where do the tags `<CurrentRate>` and `<CurrentEffectiveDate>` come from? Those tags are from the responses to the `WorkersCompAdd/Mod/Query` request. QuickBooks compares the supplied dates to the current date and figures out whether the supplied effective date is in the past, present, or future, and identifies the date as such in the `Ret` object.

### Rate History: Visible Only Through the SDK

---

QuickBooks maintains rate history. This rate history includes the current date and rate, *one* future date and rate and all past dates and rates. (If you already have a future effective date and rate, and then add a new future effective date and rate, the new entry replaces the currently existing one in the rate history.)

Although QuickBooks maintains the rate history, that history is not available in the QuickBooks UI. To see the rate history, you'll need to check the response to a `WorkersCompCode Add/Mod/Query` request. The rate history is shown in the `RateHistory` aggregates (in bold font) in the following response to a query request:

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<QBXML>
<QBXMLMsgsRs>
<WorkersCompCodeModRs requestID="2" statusCode="0" statusSeverity="Info"
statusMessage="Status OK">
  <WorkersCompCodeRet>
    <ListID>80000006-1197741184</ListID>
    <TimeCreated>2007-12-15T09:53:04-08:00</TimeCreated>
    <TimeModified>2007-12-15T15:39:35-08:00</TimeModified>
    <EditSequence>1197761975</EditSequence>
    <Name>66891</Name>
    <IsActive>true</IsActive>
    <Desc>ordinance defuser</Desc>
    <CurrentRate>78.00</CurrentRate>
    <CurrentEffectiveDate>2007-07-07</CurrentEffectiveDate>
    <NextRate>88.00</NextRate>
    <NextEffectiveDate>2008-07-07</NextEffectiveDate>
    <RateHistory>
      <Rate>78.00</Rate>
```

```

<EffectiveDate>2007-07-07</EffectiveDate>
</RateHistory>
<RateHistory>
  <Rate>88.00</Rate>
  <EffectiveDate>2008-07-07</EffectiveDate>
</RateHistory>
</WorkersCompCodeRet>
</WorkersCompCodeModRs>
</QBXMLMsgsRs>
</QBXML>

```

## Adding a Workers Comp Code

To add a comp code via the UI, select List -> Workers Comp List->Workers Comp Code->New to display the New Workers Compensation Code form.

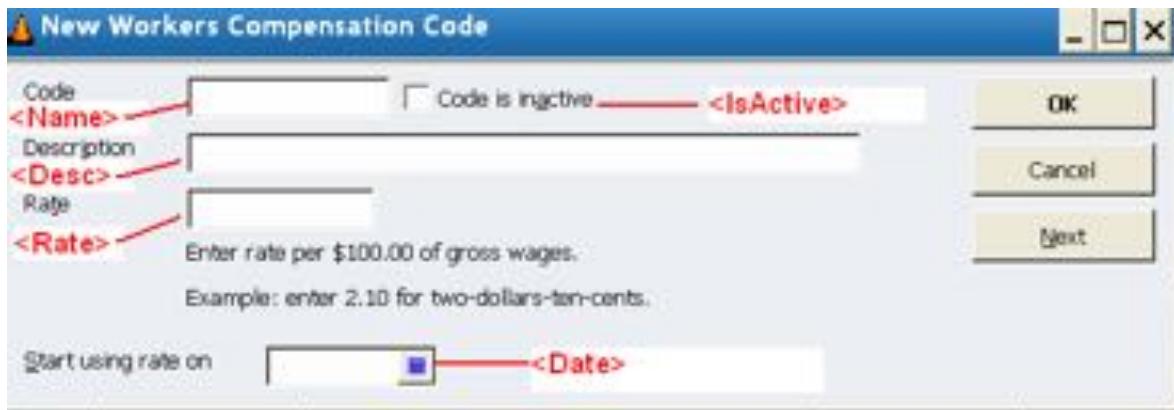


Figure 25-2 New Workers Comp Code Form

## Adding a Comp Code Using QBFC

The following QBFC code (in VB) adds the workers' comp code 8013. It has one rate that goes into effect on July 7, 2007.

```

SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN WorkersCompCode Add Sample"
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

Dim WorkersCompCode_Set As IMsgSetRequest
Set WorkersCompCode_Set = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 7, 0)

Dim WorkersCompCodeAdder As IWorkersCompCodeAdd
Set WorkersCompCodeAdder = WorkersCompCode_Set.AppendWorkersCompCodeAddRq
WorkersCompCodeAdder.Name.setValue "8013"
WorkersCompCodeAdder.Desc.setValue "driver"
WorkersCompCodeAdder.IsActive.setValue True

```

```

Dim RateEntree As IRateEntry
Set RateEntree = WorkersCompCodeAdder.RateEntryList.Append
RateEntree.EffectiveDate.setValue #7/7/2007 9:35:00 AM#
RateEntree.Rate.setValue 1#

```

## Adding a Comp Code Using qbXML

---

The following qbXML adds the workers' comp code 8813. It has one rate that goes into effect on July 7, 2007, and another rate that supercedes that rate on January 7, 2008.

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<?qbxml version="7.0"?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="continueOnError">
    <WorkersCompCodeAddRq requestID="2">
      <WorkersCompCodeAdd>
        <Name>8813</Name>
        <IsActive>true</IsActive>
        <Desc>tack driver</Desc>
        <RateEntry>
          <Rate>1.00</Rate>
          <EffectiveDate>2007-07-07</EffectiveDate>
        </RateEntry>
        <RateEntry>
          <Rate>1.10</Rate>
          <EffectiveDate>2008-01-07</EffectiveDate>
        </RateEntry>
      </WorkersCompCodeAdd>
    </WorkersCompCodeAddRq>
  </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

## Querying for Workers Comp Codes

---

To query for comp codes using the SDK, use the request `WorkersCompCodeQuery`. You can filter on the name of the code, the active status, effective date/date range, and modified date.

Notice that this query does not support iterators, as the number of codes is expected to be relatively small.

## Querying for Comp Codes in qbXML

---

The following qbXML shows a query that checks for all comp codes (inactive as well as active) that have the number 5 in the comp code name, and that has an effective date between January 1, 2003 and December 28, 2008. Also, just to show another filter in the mix, we want only those that have been modified between the start of 2003 and the end of 2007.

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<?qbxml version="7.0"?>
<QBXML>
    <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="continueOnError">
        <WorkersCompCodeQueryRq requestID="2">
            <ActiveStatus>All</ActiveStatus>
            <FromModifiedDate>2003-01-01</FromModifiedDate>
            <ToModifiedDate>2007-12-28</ToModifiedDate>
            <NameFilter>
                <MatchCriterion>Contains</MatchCriterion>
                <Name>5</Name>
            </NameFilter>
            <FromEffectiveDate>2003-01-01</FromEffectiveDate>
            <ToEffectiveDate>2008-12-28</ToEffectiveDate>
        </WorkersCompCodeQueryRq>
    </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

## Modifying Workers Comp Codes

To edit a comp code via the UI, select List -> Workers Comp List->, then doubleclick on the desired comp code to edit that code in the Edit Workers' Compensation Code window (Figure 25-3):

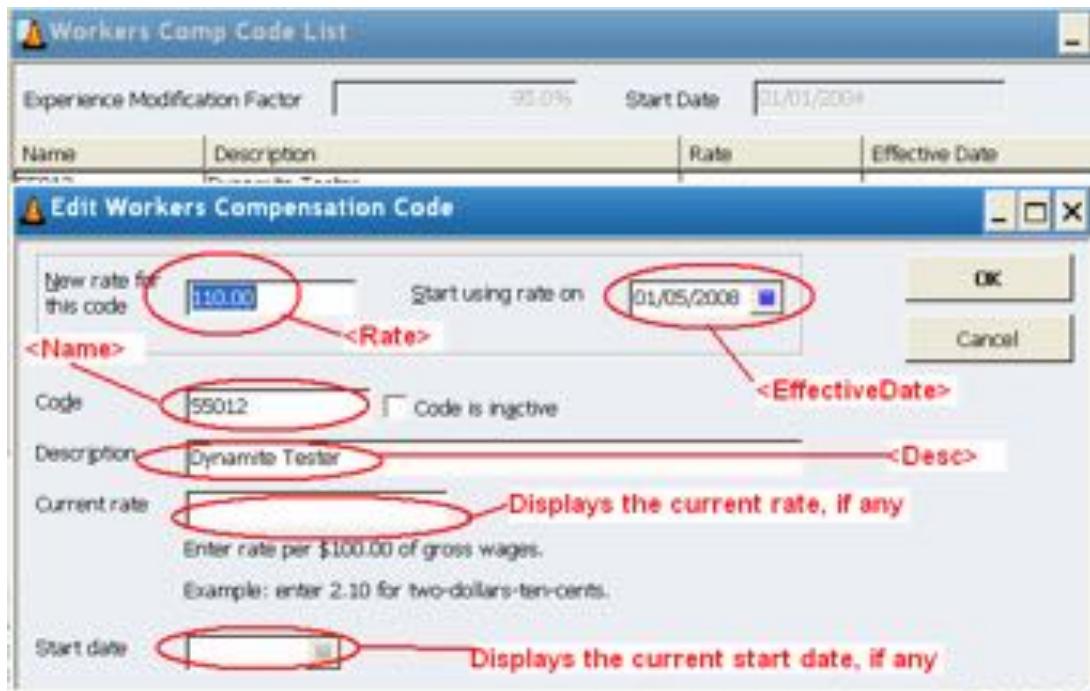


Figure 25-3 Editing the Comp Code

The element names you use in WorkersCompCodeMod are shown in the figure next to the UI fields that they affect. Notice the two display-only text fields at the bottom of the form: there are no fields in the Modify request that correspond to these.

Compared to the UI, using the SDK to modify comp codes provides you with a little more flexibility. That is, you can modify several rate entry aggregates, each with its own rate and corresponding effective date, whereas in the UI you can modify only one.

## Modifying a Comp Code in qbXML

---

The following XML sample modifies a comp code with the name “8813” that has a single entry (rate and effective date).

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<?qbxml version="7.0"?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="continueOnError">
    <WorkersCompCodeModRq requestID="2">
      <WorkersCompCodeMod>
        <ListID>80000007-1197757964</ListID>
        <EditSequence>1197757964</EditSequence>
        <Name>8813</Name>
        <IsActive>true</IsActive>
        <Desc>operator</Desc>
        <RateEntry>
          <Rate>1.00</Rate>
          <EffectiveDate>2007-08-08</EffectiveDate>
        </RateEntry>
      </WorkersCompCodeMod>
    </WorkersCompCodeModRq>
  </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```



# CHAPTER 26

## USING THE UNIT OF MEASURE FEATURE VIA THE SDK

With the unit of measure feature (called UOM in this chapter) turned on in the QuickBooks company file, you can specify what measure is being used to express an item's quantity, prices, rates, and costs. For example, if you enter a quantity of 25 on an invoice for a ball point pen item, the unit of measure can show whether that quantity means 25 individual pens, 25 boxes of 12, or 25 cases containing 120 pens each.

The QuickBooks company file can be set to support a single UOM for an item, or to support multiple UOMs per item where you can order in one unit and sell in another.

SDK support of the feature begins in qbXML spec 7.0 and QB 2008. The design intention of the SDK is to allow applications to use UOM in a similar manner as the interactive user.

This chapter describes how to use the UOM feature in QuickBooks in the SDK.

### How Can I Tell If the UOM Feature is Available?

---

An application can access UOM functionality for QuickBooks 2008 or greater versions IF the company file being used has UOM enabled.

How do you tell if the company file has UOM enabled? The PreferencesQuery does not currently indicate whether UOM is enabled or not, so you cannot use that. However, a good way to determine this is to do a UnitOfMeasureSetQuery as follows:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<?qbxml version="7.0"?>
<QBXML>
    <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="continueOnError">
        <UnitOfMeasureSetQueryRq requestID="0" />
    </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

If UOM is disabled for the company file, the query will return an error code of 3250 “This feature is not enabled or not available in this version of QuickBooks”.

### Which SDK Requests Support UOM?

---

SDK support of UOM features are provided in the following requests:

- UnitOfMeasureSetAdd, which creates a unit of measure set.
- UnitOfMeasureSetQuery, which queries for existing UOM sets.
- The various Item add and mod requests contain an optional UnitOfMeasureSetRef aggregate that specifies which UOM set applies to the item. The various Item mod

requests also contain a ForceUOMChange boolean that is needed to dismiss the UI user prompt that QuickBooks puts up when you try to modify a UOM setting.

- > ItemServiceAdd and Mod
- > ItemGroupAdd and Mod
- > ItemInventoryAdd and Mod
- > ItemNonInventoryAdd and Mod
- > ItemInventoryAssemblyAdd and Mod
- In the following transactions, UOM support is provided in transaction line items through the UnitOfMeasure element that specifies which one of the item's UOMs is to be used.
  - > Bill Add + Mod
  - > Charge Add and Mod
  - > Check Add and Mod
  - > CreditCardCharge Add and Mod
  - > CreditCardCredit Add and Mod
  - > CreditMemo Add and Mod
  - > Estimate Add and Mod
  - > Invoice Add and Mod
  - > PurchaseOrder Add and Mod
  - > SalesOrder Add+Mod
  - > SalesReceipt Add and Mod
  - > Vendor Credit Add and Mod
  - > ItemReceipt Add

## How Does the UOM Feature Work?

---

In QuickBooks, you first create a UOM set with a base measure and, optionally, related measures that are some multiple of the base measure (Figure 26-1). We'll cover how to create UOM sets later; right now, we just want to introduce some concepts. Notice the naming convention of the UOM set. It starts with "By the." This is significant and we'll talk about that later as well.

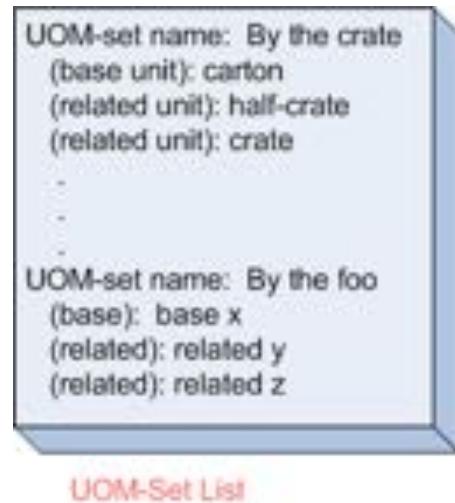


Figure 26-1 UOM Sets

That UOM set appears in the UOM list from which it can be assigned to an item when the item is created or modified. Figure 26-2 shows what is happening when you assign a UOM set to an item. You get all the UOMs within that UOM set reference.

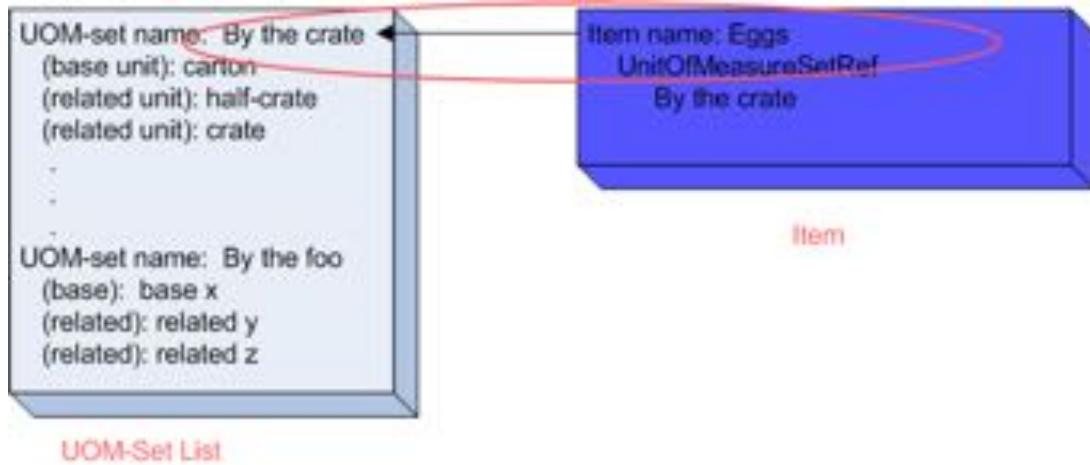


Figure 26-2 Assigning a UOM set to an item (SDK)

Figure 26-3 shows the assigning of a UOM set from within the UI.

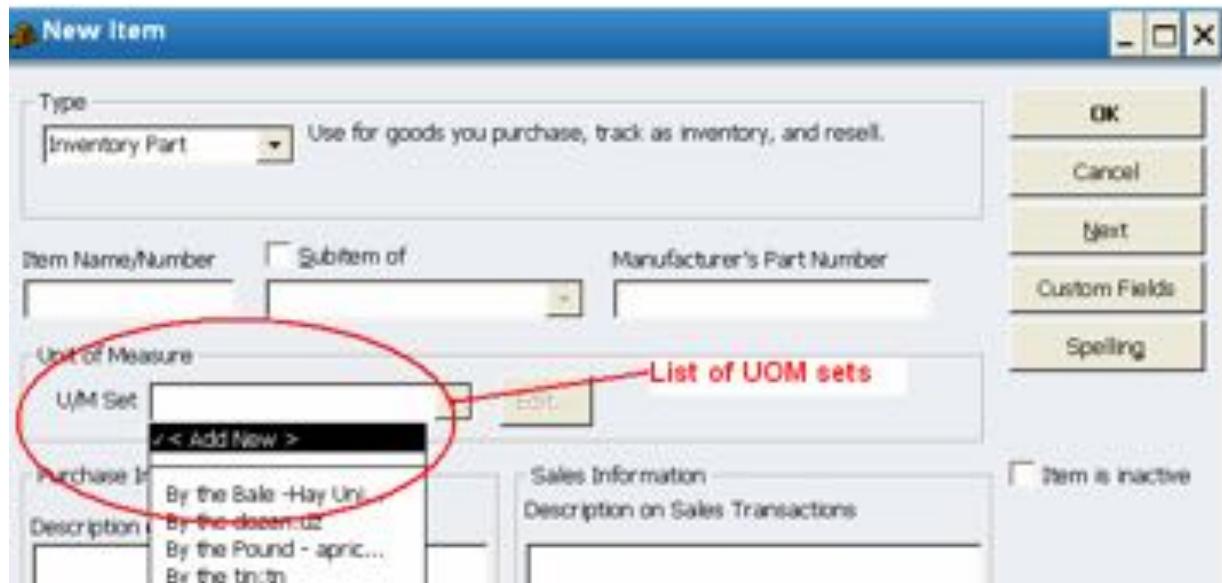


Figure 26-3 Assigning a UOM set to an item (UI)

Subsequently, in transactions, any of the units of measure within that item's UOM set can be used in a transaction line item for that item, to specify the unit used in the transaction (see Figure 26-4).

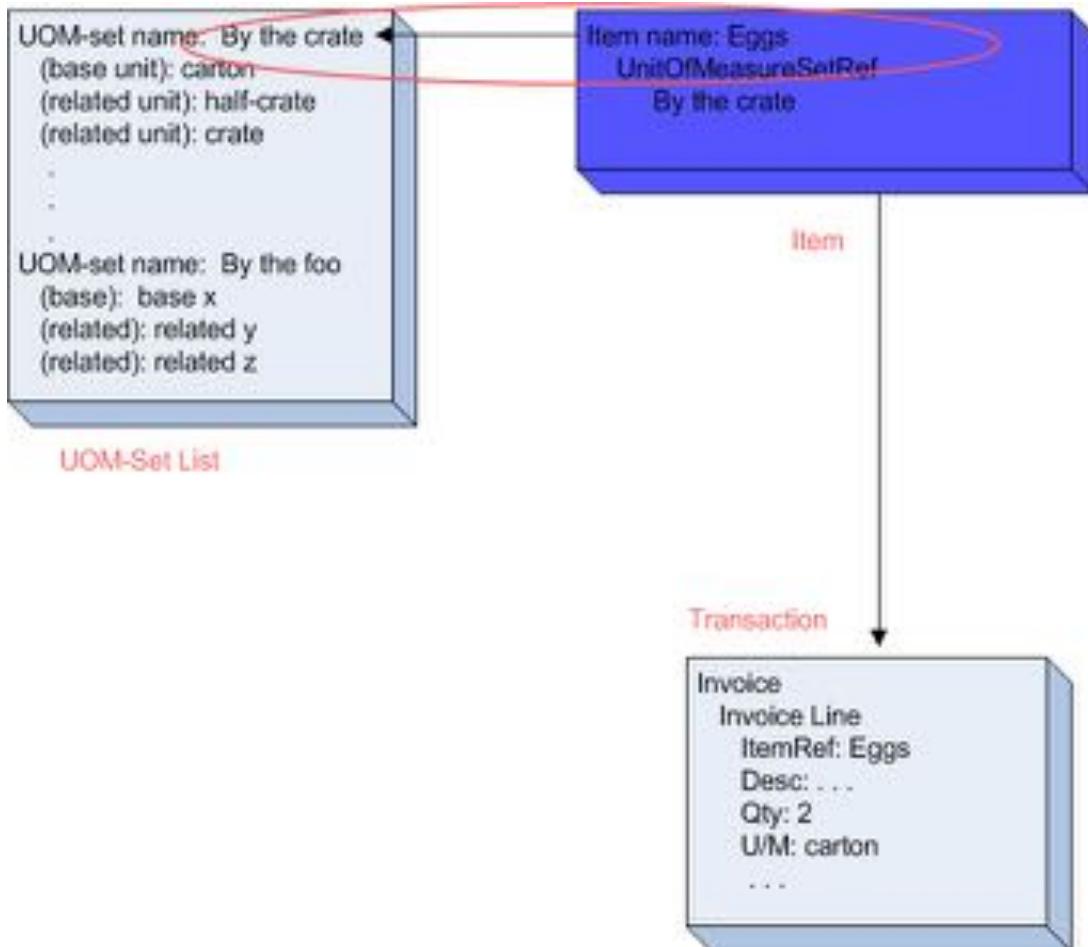


Figure 26-4 Invoice line gets UOMs from the UOM set assigned to ItemRef (eggs)

The above is true only if the company file is set to multiple UOM per item mode. If the company file is set to single UOM per item, only the base unit can be used.

Figure 26-5 shows how a UOM is assigned in a transaction line in the QuickBooks UI.

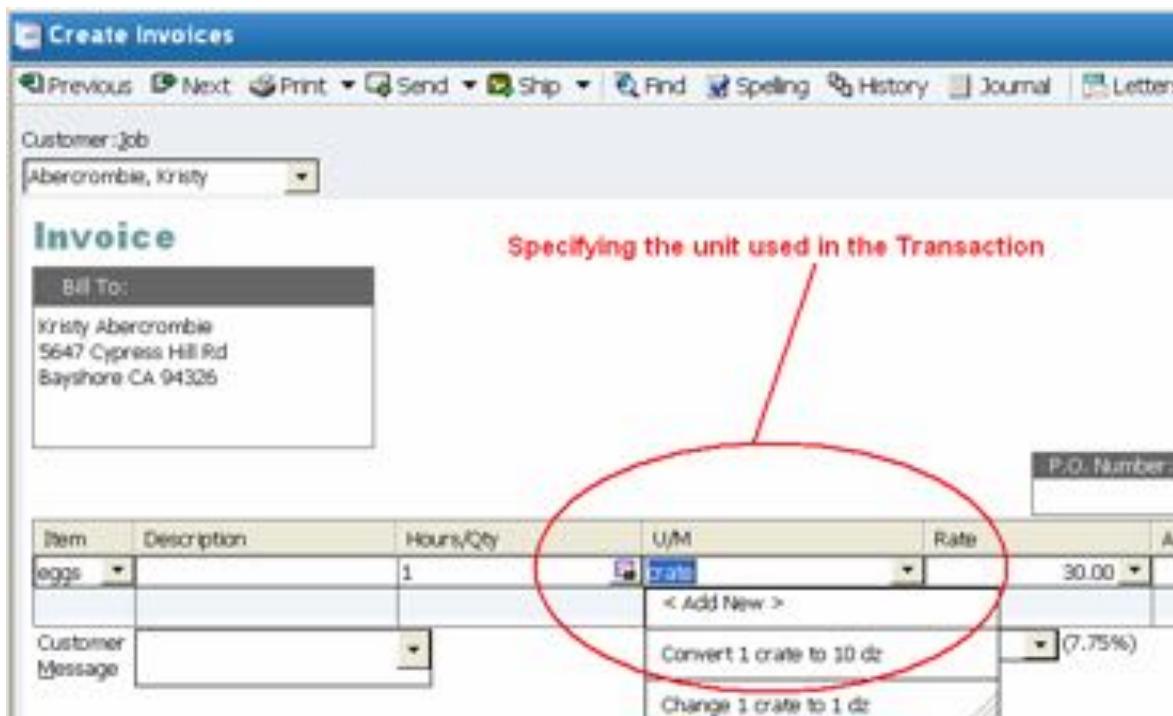


Figure 26-5 Specifying a UOM in a transaction line (UI)

Again the above figure holds true only in multiple UOM mode. In single UOM per item, there is no dropdown list and the U/M is listed but greyed out, disinverting any user selection, because only the base unit is allowed. Even in the SDK, if the company file is set to single UOM per item, you can only specify the base unit. Specifying some other unit will result in an error status code of 3210.

Unfortunately there currently no way to determine whether the company file is in single UOM or multiple UOM mode, other than perhaps checking for error 3210 when assigning a non-base unit to a transaction line.

## Creating a UOM Set in the UI

In the QuickBooks UI, if the company is enabled for *multiple* UOMs per item, a UOM can be created either from the UOM set list (Lists->U/M Set List->U/M Set->New) as shown in Figure 26-6, or from the New or Edit Item forms by clicking <Add New> within the U/M Set dropdown listbox.

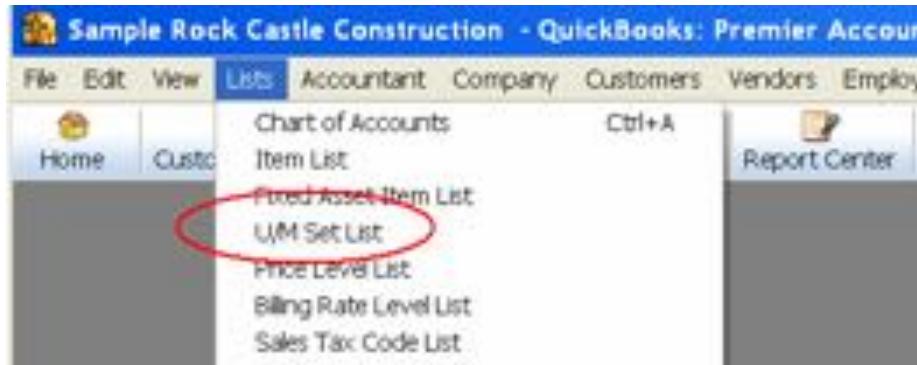


Figure 26-6 UOM Set List (UI)

If the company file is enabled for *single* UOM per item, then you simply create a new UOM in the U/M dropdown list by clicking <Add New>. QuickBooks will then create a default UOM set for that new UOM, and assign that unit as the base unit and name the UOM set “By the <whatever name you pick for the new unit>”, for example “By the carat”.

Of course, because in single UOM/item mode the UI will not have the UOM list, you won’t be able to see the UOM set in the UI in single UOM mode, but you will be able to get the UOM sets by doing a `UnitOfMeasureSetQuery`.

## How Do I Create a UOM Set in the SDK?

You use `UnitOfMeasureSetAdd` to create a UOM set in the SDK. You’ll need to

1. Specify a unique name for the UOM set, starting with the prefix “By the”. You’ll get an error code 3100 in the response if the name is not unique.
2. Create a base unit. See the online help in QuickBooks for an explanation of units of measure and base units and how to pick the base unit.
3. Optionally, but normally, you’ll create one or more related units using the `RelatedUnit` aggregate, where you specify the conversion ratio (how many base units are contained in that related unit). For example, if base unit is carton and the related unit “case” contains 10 cartons, then the conversion ratio is 10.
4. You can also optionally specify which one of the units in the UOM set is to be used as the default unit (via the `DefaultUnit` aggregate) in transaction lines for purchases, or for sales, or for shipping. The unit specified in a default here will be the unit automatically used in the transaction lines.
5. Check the response to your UOM set add request to determine whether the company file is enabled for UOM. If this isn’t the case, you’ll get an error code of 3250 in your response, indicating the feature is not supported.

## Why Do I Need to Follow the UOM Set Naming Convention?

---

Every UOM set name should begin with “By the”. For example, “By the pound” or “By the weigh”. Why is this? Unless you begin the UOM set with “By the” then the UOM set won’t show up in the UI when the company file is enabled for single UOM per item mode. That is, in the New Item or Edit Item form, the units in those UOM sets won’t appear and you won’t be able to use them in the UI. (However, UOM sets that don’t follow this convention will still show up in a UnitOfMeasureSet query.)

## Can I Modify a UOM Set in the SDK?

---

No. This is currently not supported.

## Can I Set UOM Set Defaults for Purchase, Sales, and Shipping?

---

Yes. You use the DefaultUnit aggregate in the UnitOfMeasureSetAdd request to specify defaults:

```
<DefaultUnit>
    <UnitUsedFor>Shipping</UnitUsedFor>
    <Unit>box</Unit>
</DefaultUnit>
```

The <Unit> field can contain any unit specified in the UOM set (base unit or related units). The <UnitUsedFor> field can contain one of the following values:

- Sales
- Purchase
- Shipping

If you don’t specify any defaults, the base unit will be used as the default for purchase and sales, and there will be no default for shipping.

See the samples below to see how to set the defaults in QBFC and qbXML.

## How Do I Specify Which Units the UOM Set Contains?

---

You do this by specifying one <BaseUnit>, which is required, and 0 to N <RelatedUnit>, which are all optional, as shown in the following qbXML snippet:

```

<UnitOfMeasureSetAddRq requestID="0">
  <UnitOfMeasureSetAdd>
    <Name>Munitons</Name>
    <UnitOfMeasureType>Count</UnitOfMeasureType>
    <BaseUnit>
      <Name>cartridge</Name>
      <Abbreviation>ctrdge</Abbreviation>
    </BaseUnit>
    <RelatedUnit>
      <Name>box</Name>
      <Abbreviation>bx</Abbreviation>
      <ConversionRatio>25.00</ConversionRatio>
    </RelatedUnit>
  </UnitOfMeasureSetAdd>
</UnitOfMeasureSetAddRq>

```

## What Does the Abbreviation Field Do? Why's it Required?

The <Abbreviation> field specified the characters that are to be displayed and printed in the transaction line item if that unit is selected for the item. Without the abbreviation, QuickBooks won't be able to indicate the unit.

## Creating a UOM Set in QBFC

The following code sample shows how to build a UOM set. The UOM set name, type, and base unit are required. The sample assigns default units to purchase and sales transaction line items and also for shipping. The sample creates only one related unit.

```

SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN UOM Set Add Sample"
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

Dim UOM_AddSet As IMsgSetRequest
Set UOM_AddSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 7, 0)

'Append the add request and get the object so we can set its properties
Dim UOMSetAdder As IUnitOfMeasureSetAdd
Set UOMSetAdder = UOM_AddSet.AppendUnitOfMeasureSetAddRq

'Set all required properties
UOMSetAdder.UnitOfMeasureType.setValue uomtCount
UOMSetAdder.Name.setValue "By the bale"
UOMSetAdder.BaseUnit.Abbreviation.setValue "ble"
UOMSetAdder.BaseUnit.Name.setValue "bale"

'Not required, but handy. We set default UOM for purchases, sales, and
'shipping.
Dim DefUnitList As IDefaultUnit
Set DefUnitList = UOMSetAdder.DefaultUnitList.Append
DefUnitList.Unit.setValue "flake"

```

```

'Specify uufSales to set the unit as default in a Sales txn line item,
'uufPurchase to set the unit as default in a Purchase txn line item,
'uufShipping to set a default for a shipping line.
DefUnitList.UnitUsedFor.setValue uufSales

'Notice we can re-use the IDefaultUnit object.
Set DefUnitList = UOMSetAdder.DefaultUnitList.Append
DefUnitList.Unit.setValue "bale"
DefUnitList.UnitUsedFor.setValue uufPurchase

Set DefUnitList = UOMSetAdder.DefaultUnitList.Append
DefUnitList.Unit.setValue "bale"
DefUnitList.UnitUsedFor.setValue uufShipping

'Now we specify the other units of measure within the set. You use the
'conversion ratio field to specify how many base units are contained in the
'related unit. Here, the conversion ratio is 20 because there
'are 20 flakes of hay in a bale, which is the base unit.
Dim RelUnit As IRelatedUnit
Set RelUnit = UOMSetAdder.RelatedUnitList.Append
RelUnit.Abbreviation.setValue "flk"
RelUnit.ConversionRatio.setValue 20
RelUnit.Name.setValue "flake"

```

## Creating a UOM Set in qbXML

---

The following code sample shows how to build a UOM set. The UOM set name, type, and base unit are required. The sample assigns default units to purchase and sales transaction line items and also for shipping. The sample creates two related units.

```

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="7.0"?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="stopOnError">
    <UnitOfMeasureSetAddRq requestID="0">
      <UnitOfMeasureSetAdd>
        <Name>By the cartridge</Name>
        <UnitOfMeasureType>Count</UnitOfMeasureType>
        <BaseUnit>
          <Name>cartridge</Name>
          <Abbreviation>ctrd</Abbreviation>
        </BaseUnit>
        <RelatedUnit>
          <Name>box</Name>
          <Abbreviation>bx</Abbreviation>
          <ConversionRatio>25.00</ConversionRatio>
        </RelatedUnit>
        <RelatedUnit>
          <Name>case</Name>
          <Abbreviation>cse</Abbreviation>
          <ConversionRatio>500.00</ConversionRatio>
        </RelatedUnit>
        <DefaultUnit>
          <UnitUsedFor>Sales</UnitUsedFor>

```

```

<Unit>box</Unit>
</DefaultUnit>
<DefaultUnit>
  <UnitUsedFor>Purchase</UnitUsedFor>
  <Unit>case</Unit>
</DefaultUnit>
<DefaultUnit>
  <UnitUsedFor>Shipping</UnitUsedFor>
  <Unit>box</Unit>
</DefaultUnit>
</UnitOfMeasureSetAdd>
</UnitOfMeasureSetAddRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

## Specifying a UOM Set for an Item

You can specify a UOM set for a service item, inventory item, non-inventory item, item assembly, and item group. You do this by using the `UnitOfMeasureSetRef` aggregate to refer to an existing UOM set. In an `Item*` Add request, the `UnitOfMeasureSetRef` is all you use.

### What You Must Do in an Item Mod

In an `Item*` Mod request, you also need to use the `ForceUOMChange` if you are changing the UOM set and the base unit of the new set doesn't match the base unit of the UOM set currently assigned to the item. This does the same thing as the user accepting the warning prompt in the UI. If you don't specify `ForceUOMChange`, the default is false, and you'll get an error if you try to change the UOM set if the new set has a different base unit.

You should be aware that if you change the base unit for an item, you should also change the item's quantities on hand and cost to reflect the new unit; otherwise the values will be inaccurate. An alternative to handle such UOM changes to an item is to create a new item with the desired UOM set and inactivate the old item.

### Specifying a UOM Set in an `Item*` Add Request

The following code creates a service item with a UOM set specified.

#### In QBFC

```

SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN ItemService Add Sample"
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

Dim ItemServiceAddSet As IMsgSetRequest
Set ItemServiceAddSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 7, 0)

```

```

Dim ServiceItemAdder As IItemServiceAdd
Set ServiceItemAdder = ItemServiceAddSet.AppendItemServiceAddRq
ServiceItemAdder.Name.setValue "Pump Repair"
ServiceItemAdder.ORSalesPurchase.SalesOrPurchase.Desc.setValue "repair
small pumps"

ServiceItemAdder.ORSalesPurchase.SalesOrPurchase.ORPrice.Price.setValue 50
ServiceItemAdder.ORSalesPurchase.SalesOrPurchase.AccountRef.FullName.
setValue "Service Income"
ServiceItemAdder.UnitOfMeasureSetRef.FullName.setValue "By the hour"

```

## In qbXML

```

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="7.0"?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="stopOnError">
    <ItemServiceAddRq requestID="0">
      <ItemServiceAdd>
        <Name>Pump Repair</Name>
        <UnitOfMeasureSetRef>
          <FullName>By the hour</FullName>
        </UnitOfMeasureSetRef>
        <SalesOrPurchase>
          <Desc>repair small pumps</Desc>
          <Price>50.00</Price>
          <AccountRef>
            <FullName>Service Income</FullName>
          </AccountRef>
        </SalesOrPurchase>
      </ItemServiceAdd>
    </ItemServiceAddRq>
  </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

## Specifying a UOM Set in an Item\* Mod Request

---

The following code modifies a service item to change the UOM set.

## In QBFC

```

SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN ItemService Mod Sample"
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

Dim ItemServiceAddSet As IMsgSetRequest
Set ItemServiceAddSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 7, 0)

Dim ServiceItemAdder As IItemServiceMod
Set ServiceItemAdder = ItemServiceAddSet.AppendItemServiceModRq
ServiceItemAdder.EditSequence.setValue "1197702697"
ServiceItemAdder.ListID.setValue "80000057-1197702697"
ServiceItemAdder.UnitOfMeasureSetRef.FullName.setValue "by the day"
ServiceItemAdder.ForceUOMChange.setValue True

```

## In qbXML

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="7.0"?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="stopOnError">
    <ItemServiceModRq requestID="0">
      <ItemServiceMod>
        <ListID>80000057-1197702697</ListID>
        <EditSequence>1197702697</EditSequence>
        <UnitOfMeasureSetRef>
          <FullName>by the day</FullName>
        </UnitOfMeasureSetRef>
        <ForceUOMChange>1</ForceUOMChange>
      </ItemServiceMod>
    </ItemServiceModRq>
  </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

## Using UOM in Transactions

---

When you create or modify a transaction, you specify the UOM in the transaction line item using the `UnitOfMeasure` element, which occurs after the `Quantity` element. *You must specify a unit from the UOM set for the item that is referenced in that line.* Otherwise, you'll get a runtime error.

Also, the quantity field always reflects the quantity in terms of the base unit. Suppose your base unit is one dozen (eggs). If you order a quantity of 3 and set the units to the related unit of crate (a crate having 10 dozen eggs), then QuickBooks automatically recalculates the quantity to a value of 0.3 because the order now uses the unit crate! It does this calculation using the conversion ratio of that related unit.

### Using UOM in a Transaction Add Request

---

The following code creates a `SalesOrder` containing one line item of “eggs” with a UOM set to “crate”, which contains 10 dozen eggs. Because the base unit is one dozen eggs, the quantity here means 3 dozen eggs, not 3 crates. QuickBooks sees the unit of crate and automatically changes that quantity to reflect the crates unit: 3 dozen eggs becomes 0.3 crates and so the actual `SalesOrder` is for 0.3 crates of eggs.

## In QBFC

```
Dim SessionManager As QBSessionManager
Set SessionManager = New QBSessionManager

SessionManager.OpenConnection2 appID, appName, ctLocalQBD
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare
```

```

Dim SalesOrderSet As IMsgSetRequest
Set SalesOrderSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 7, 0)

Dim salesOrder As ISalesOrderAdd
Set salesOrder = SalesOrderSet.AppendSalesOrderAddRq
salesOrder.CustomerRef.FullName.setValue "Abercrombie, Kristy"
salesOrder.RefNumber.setValue "121345"

Dim SOLineItemAdder As ISalesOrderLineAdd
Set SOLineItemAdder =
salesOrder.ORSalesOrderLineAddList.Append.SalesOrderLineAdd
SOLineItemAdder.ItemRef.FullName.setValue "eggs"
SOLineItemAdder.Quantity.setValue 3
SOLineItemAdder.UnitOfMeasure.setValue "crate"

```

## In qbXML

```

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="7.0"?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
    <SalesOrderAddRq requestID = "0">
      <SalesOrderAdd>
        <CustomerRef>
          <FullName>Abercrombie, Kristy</FullName>
        </CustomerRef>
        <RefNumber>121345</RefNumber>
        <SalesOrderLineAdd>
          <ItemRef>
            <FullName>eggs</FullName>
          </ItemRef>
          <Quantity>3</Quantity>
          <UnitOfMeasure>crate</UnitOfMeasure>
        </SalesOrderLineAdd>
      </SalesOrderAdd>
    </SalesOrderAddRq>
  </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

## Using UOM in a Transaction Mod Request

---

When you modify a transaction line to change the unit of measure used in that line, (a unit of measure, NOT the UOM set itself!!), you use the `OverrideUOMSetRef` aggregate to specify the UOM set that is already specified for the item referenced in that transaction line, and then specify the desired unit within that set.

The name of this aggregate is slightly unfortunate since it might lead you to believe that you can change the UOM set itself here to whatever you want. That is not possible! When you change the UOM in a transaction Mod request, you cannot change the UOM set itself! You can only change to a different unit within the UOM set already specified for the item. You'll get an error code of 3210 if you try to change the UOM set.

The following code modifies a SalesOrder containing one line item of “eggs” that has a UOM set to “crate”. It changes the quantity from 3 to 4 and changes the unit to “dozen”.

## In QBFC

```
Dim SessionManager As QBSessionManager
Set SessionManager = New QBSessionManager

SessionManager.OpenConnection2 appID, appName, ctLocalQBD
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

Dim SalesOrderSet As IMsgSetRequest
Set SalesOrderSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 7, 0)

Dim salesOrder As ISalesOrderMod
Set salesOrder = SalesOrderSet.AppendSalesOrderModRq
salesOrder.EditSequence.setValue "1197739296"
salesOrder.TxnID.setValue "5C56-1197739296"

Dim SOLineItemMod As ISalesOrderLineMod
Set SOLineItemMod =
salesOrder.ORSalesOrderLineModList.Append.SalesOrderLineMod

SOLineItemMod.TxnLineID.setValue "5C58-1197739296"
SOLineItemMod.ItemRef.FullName.setValue "eggs"
SOLineItemMod.Quantity.setValue 4

' We aren't changing the UOM set here! Just specifying the UOM set
' already specified for "eggs"!
SOLineItemMod.OverrideUOMSetRef.FullName.setValue "by the dozen"
SOLineItemMod.UnitOfMeasure.setValue "dozen"
```

## In qbXML

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="7.0"?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
    <SalesOrderModRq requestID = "0">
      <SalesOrderMod>
        <TxnID>5C56-1197739296</TxnID>
        <EditSequence>1197739296</EditSequence>
        <SalesOrderLineMod>
          <TxnLineID>5C58-1197739296</TxnLineID>
          <ItemRef>
            <FullName>eggs</FullName>
          </ItemRef>
```

```
<Quantity>4</Quantity>
<UnitOfMeasure>dozen</UnitOfMeasure>
<OverrideUOMSetRef>
    <FullName>by the dozen</FullName>
</OverrideUOMSetRef>
</SalesOrderLineMod>
</SalesOrderMod>
</SalesOrderModRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

# CHAPTER 27

## MERGING ACCOUNTS, CUSTOMERS, VENDORS, CLASSES

Merging certain types of list objects is a useful feature of QuickBooks. For example, merging accounts is useful for eliminating redundant accounts within a given account type. For example, you might have an expense account that tracks paper reams and a different expense account that tracks office supplies. Yet, you may want to change this to have only a single account--the office supplies account--that tracks paper reams along with other office supplies.

The QuickBooks UI solves these types of problems by allowing users to merge accounts, customers, and vendors. Beginning with qbXML spec 7.0 and QuickBooks 2008, these types of list merge operations can also be performed through the SDK by using the request ListMerge. Ability to merge Classes was added in qbXML 8.0 and QB 2009.

This chapter describes the use of ListMerge and the work you need to do before you actually invoke ListMerge.

### What Does ListMerge Do?

---

ListMerge is a request that allows you to merge the following:

- Merge one account into another account
- Merge one customer/customer job into another customer/customer job
- Merge one vendor into another vendor
- Merge two classes into one class

#### **IMPORTANT**

ListMerge requires the company file to be opened in single user mode.

### What Happens in the ListMerge Operation?

---

What happens in the merge is that one of the objects, the “merge-from” object, is merged into the other object, the “merge-to” object. For example, suppose the expense account “Paper Reams” is merged into the expense account “Office Supplies.” After the merge, there is only the “Office Supplies” account, and all transactions in the past that referenced “Paper Reams” now automatically reference “Office Supplies.” This means that balances will change in the merged-to object as it receives the merged-from balances.

## When Can I NOT Do a ListMerge?

---

You cannot do a ListMerge if an accountant copy of the company exists--if you do, you'll get an error. The idea is that any merges ought to be done in the accountant copy. Beginning with QB 2009 and qbXML 8.0, you can use the Account Copy Exists request to check for this before issuing the list merge request.

## Can I Undo or Reverse a ListMerge?

---

No.

## What Must I Do Before Merging?

---

The merging "rules" are not many in number, but they are different for accounts, customers, and vendors. The following table shows the rules applying to each:

Objects to Merge	Required Pre-Merge Conditions	How to Satisfy the Conditions
Accounts	1. Accounts must be of the same AccountType  2. Accounts must be at the same hierarchical level within the chart of accounts.	1. If the AccountTypes are different, you cannot proceed. You cannot change the AccountType.  2. You can change the Sublevel of one account so that it matches the Sublevel of the other account. For more information, see "Merging Accounts."
Class	No requirements	NA.
Customers	1. Only one of the customer/customer jobs can have child elements.  2. You cannot merge a customer and a vendor.	1. If you merge customers, only one of the customers can have customer jobs. If you merge customer jobs, only one of them can have children (sub-jobs).  If merging customers and both customers have jobs, you must move jobs from the merge-from customer to the "merge-to" customer before invoking ListMerge. Or, you must make them inactive or delete them.  If merging customer jobs, only one of them may have child jobs (sub jobs). If both have children, you must move child jobs from merge-from object to the merge-to object BEFORE doing the merge. Or make them inactive or delete them.  For more information, see "Merging Customers."  2. Cannot change this.
Vendors	1. You cannot merge a customer and a vendor	1. Cannot change this.

Table 27-1 Merging Rules and how to follow them

## Merging Accounts

---

To merge two accounts,

1. Compare AccountType of the merge-from account with the AccountType of the merge-to account. If they aren't the same stop: you cannot continue. If AccountTypes *are* the same:
  - a. Compare the Sublevel of the merge-from account with the Sublevel of the merge-to account.
  - b. If the Sublevels are not the same, change the Sublevel of either the merge-from account or the merge-to account so that the Sublevels match.

2. Using the current EditSequence for each account, and their ListIDs, invoke ListMerge and check the response for success.

## Comparing AccountType and Changing Sublevel

---

The Account object contains an AccountType field. You need to compare this type before proceeding to merge accounts.

If the AccountType is the same, you next need to determine whether the accounts to be merged have the same Sublevel (yes, there is a Sublevel field in the Ret!). If Sublevels are not equal, you need to do an AccountMod on one of them to change its Sublevel--by changing the ParentRef (or removing it if a Sublevel of 0 is desired).

### Code Sample

The following code snippet does a query for two hardcoded accounts, and arbitrarily picks the first as the “merge-from” account, and the second as the “merge-to” account, and adjusts the Sublevel accordingly. After the Sublevel is fixed by changing the ParentRef, we invoke AccountMod to make the changes, store the changed EditSequence, and then do the list merge.

```
SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN List Merge Sample"
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

Dim ListMerge_Set As IMsgSetRequest
Set ListMerge_Set = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 7, 0)
ListMerge_Set.Attributes.OnError = roeContinue

'Do query to get latest Sublevel and EditSequence data for the Accounts:
'We hardcode the accounts just for convenience
Dim AccountQuery As IAccountQuery
Set AccountQuery = ListMerge_Set.AppendAccountQueryRq
AccountQuery.ORAccountListQuery.FullNameList.Add "Office Supplies:Paper
Reams"
AccountQuery.ORAccountListQuery.FullNameList.Add "Office Supplies"

Dim ListMergeAddResp As IMsgSetResponse
Set ListMergeAddResp = SessionManager.DoRequests(ListMerge_Set)

'Process the query response: we need ListID, EditSequence, Sublevel, and
'of course, AccountType. We'll store all these in our one-shot method, so
'be patient with all our variables here
Dim MyResponse As IResponse
Dim AccountRet As IAccountRet
Dim ResponseType As Integer
Dim AccountRetList As IAccountRetList
```

```

Dim AccountType_MergeFrom As Integer
Dim AccountType_MergeTo As Integer
Dim Sublevel_MergeTo As String
Dim Sublevel_MergeFrom As String
Dim ListID_MergeFrom As String
Dim ListID_MergeTo As String
Dim EditSequence_MergeTo As String
Dim EditSequence_MergeFrom As String

Dim ParentRef_MergeTo As String
ParentRef_MergeTo = "empty"
Dim ParentRef_MergeFrom As String
ParentRef_MergeFrom = "empty"

Set MyResponse = ListMergeAddResp.ResponseList.GetAt(0)
If (Not MyResponse.Detail Is Nothing) Then
    ResponseType = MyResponse.Type.getValue
    If (Not ResponseType = rtAccountQueryRs) Then
        Exit Sub
    End If
End If

'Store the values from the first account, which we arbitrarily use as the
'merge from account.
Set AccountRetList = MyResponse.Detail
Set AccountRet = AccountRetList.GetAt(0)
ListID_MergeFrom = AccountRet.ListID.getValue
EditSequence_MergeFrom = AccountRet.EditSequence.getValue
AccountType_MergeFrom = AccountRet.AccountType.getValue
Sublevel_MergeFrom = AccountRet.Sublevel.getValue
'If Sublevel is 0, there won't be any ParentRef
If (Not AccountRet.ParentRef Is Nothing) Then
    ParentRef_MergeFrom = AccountRet.ParentRef.FullName.getValue
End If

'Store the values from the second account, which we arbitrarily use as
'the merge-to account.
Set AccountRet = AccountRetList.GetAt(1)
ListID_MergeTo = AccountRet.ListID.getValue
EditSequence_MergeTo = AccountRet.EditSequence.getValue
AccountType_MergeTo = AccountRet.AccountType.getValue
Sublevel_MergeTo = AccountRet.Sublevel.getValue
If (Not AccountRet.ParentRef Is Nothing) Then
    ParentRef_MergeTo = AccountRet.ParentRef.FullName.getValue
End If

'Now for the checking: AccountTypes and Sublevels must match.
If (Not AccountType_MergeFrom = AccountType_MergeTo) Then
    MsgBox "Only accounts of the same AccountType can be merged!""
    Exit Sub
End If

```

```

'For convenience only, we just check the condition where merge-from
'has higher sublevel than merge-to. If merge-to sublevel is 1 or greater,
'we set the merge-from ParentRef equal to the ParentRef of the merge-to,
as this results in same Sublevel. If merge-to has no ParentRef, we make
merge-from have no ParentRef either.
If (Sublevel_MergeFrom > Sublevel_MergeTo) Then
    If (Not ParentRef_MergeTo = "empty") Then
        ParentRef_MergeFrom = ParentRef_MergeTo
    Else
        ParentRef_MergeFrom = "empty"
    End If

'Now Mod the merge-from account, changing it's ParentRef as needed
ListMerge_Set.ClearRequests
Dim AccountMod As IAccountMod
Set AccountMod = ListMerge_Set.AppendAccountModRq
AccountMod.ListID.setValue ListID_MergeFrom
AccountMod.EditSequence.setValue EditSequence_MergeFrom
If (ParentRef_MergeFrom = "empty") Then
    AccountMod.ParentRef.FullName.SetEmpty
Else
    AccountMod.ParentRef.FullName.setValue ParentRef_MergeFrom
End If
End If

Set ListMergeAddResp = SessionManager.DoRequests(ListMerge_Set)

'Process the response to the AccountMod to get the updated EditSequence.
Set MyResponse = ListMergeAddResp.ResponseList.GetAt(0)
If (Not MyResponse.Detail Is Nothing) Then
    ResponseType = MyResponse.Type.getValue
    If (Not ResponseType = rtAccountModRs) Then
        MsgBox "unexpected response type"
        Exit Sub
    End If
End If

Set AccountRet = MyResponse.Detail
EditSequence_MergeFrom = AccountRet.EditSequence.getValue

'We have everything we need to do the merge, so let's do it.
Dim ListMergeAdder As IListMerge
ListMerge_Set.ClearRequests

Set ListMergeAdder = ListMerge_Set.AppendListMergeRq
ListMergeAdder.ListMergeType.setValue lmtAccount
ListMergeAdder.MergeFrom.ListID.setValue ListID_MergeFrom
ListMergeAdder.MergeFrom.EditSequence.setValue EditSequence_MergeFrom
ListMergeAdder.MergeTo.ListID.setValue ListID_MergeTo
ListMergeAdder.MergeTo.EditSequence.setValue EditSequence_MergeTo
Set ListMergeAddResp = SessionManager.DoRequests(ListMerge_Set)

'Take a peek at what happened
MsgBox ListMergeAddResp.ToXMLString
SessionManager.EndSession
SessionManager.CloseConnection

```

## Merging Classes

---

The following sample code merges two classes:

```
Dim qbSessionManager As QBSessionManager
Dim msgSetRequest As IMsgSetRequest
qbSessionManager = New QBSessionManager()

qbSessionManager.OpenConnection2("", "BocaLupa",
                                 ENConnectionType.ctLocalQBD)
qbSessionManager.BeginSession("", ENOpenMode.omDontCare)

msgSetRequest = qbSessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 8, 0)
msgSetRequest.Attributes.OnError = ENRqOnError.roeStop

Dim classMerj As IListMerge
classMerj = msgSetRequest.AppendListMergeRq
classMerj.ListMergeType.SetValue(ENListMergeType.lmtClass)

classMerj.MergeFrom.ListID.SetValue("80000001-1232787304")
classMerj.MergeFrom.EditSequence.SetValue("1232787304")

classMerj.MergeTo.ListID.SetValue("80000002-1232787304")
classMerj.MergeFrom.EditSequence.SetValue("1231787354")
```

And the same thing in XML:

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="8.0"?>
<QBXML>
<QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
    <ListMergeRq requestID = "0">
        <ListMergeType>Class</ListMergeType>
        <MergeFrom>
            <ListID>80000001-1232787304</ListID>
            <EditSequence>1232787304</EditSequence>
        </MergeFrom>
        <MergeTo>
            <ListID>80000002-1232787304</ListID>
            <EditSequence>1232787304</EditSequence>
        </MergeTo>
    </ListMergeRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

## Merging Customers

---

To merge two customers/customer jobs,

1. See if both customers/jobs have children. To do this, use a customer query with a NameFilter that has its MatchCriterion set to “Contains” and the Name element set to

- the full name of the customer or customer job. This will return you the customer/customer job and all child jobs of that customer/customer job.
2. If both customer/jobs have children, move all the children of the move-from customer/job to the merge-to customer/job. To do this, do a CustomerMod on each child job, changing the ParentRef from the merge-from customer/job to the merge-to customer/job. Alternatively, you could do a CustomerMod on each child job and make it inactive by setting the IsActive field to False. Or, to be more extreme, you could do a ListDel on each child job, but that is not recommended.
  3. Using the ListIDs and recent EditSequence from merge-from and merge-to customer/jobs, invoke the ListMerge request

## Code Sample

---

The following code snippets show to do the various tasks you'll need to do, building a customer query to look for child jobs, changing the ParentRef in a child job so it points to the merge-to customer, and building the ListMerge request.

### Building the CustomerQuery

Here is a snippet that builds customer query to look for child jobs for the customer job Jacobsen, Doug:Kitchen. The query will return Jacobsen, Doug:Kitchen and any child jobs because those child jobs will have Jacobsen, Doug:Kitchen within their fullname.

```
SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN List Merge Sample"
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

Dim ListMerge_Set As IMsgSetRequest
Set ListMerge_Set = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 7, 0)
ListMerge_Set.Attributes.OnError = roeContinue

Dim custQuery As ICustomerQuery
Set custQuery = ListMerge_Set.AppendCustomerQueryRq
custQuery.ORCustomerListQuery.CustomerListFilter.ORNameFilter.NameFilter.MatchCriterion.setValue mcContains
custQuery.ORCustomerListQuery.CustomerListFilter.ORNameFilter.NameFilter.setValue "Jacobsen, Doug:Kitchen"

Dim ListMergeSampleResp As IMsgSetResponse
Set ListMergeSampleResp = SessionManager.DoRequests(ListMerge_Set)
```

### Changing the ParentRef of a customer job

If the customer query turns up child jobs, and you have child jobs in both merge-to and merge-from customer/jobs, you need to change the ParentRef in each merge-from child job so that it points to the merge-to customer. The following code snippet shows the CustomerMod used to change this.

```
SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN List Merge Sample"
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare
```

```

Dim ListMerge_Set As IMsgSetRequest
Set ListMerge_Set = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 7, 0)
ListMerge_Set.Attributes.OnError = roeContinue

Dim custMod As ICustomerMod
Set custMod = ListMerge_Set.AppendCustomerModRq
'We're modifying one of the child jobs
custMod.EditSequence.setValue "1197731900"
custMod.ListID.setValue "800000AA-1197731900"
'Changing the ParentRef to point to the merge-to customer/job
custMod.ParentRef.ListID.setValue "1F0000-933272658"

Dim ListMergeSampleResp As IMsgSetResponse
Set ListMergeSampleResp = SessionManager.DoRequests(ListMerge_Set)

```

## Building the ListMerge Request

After any child jobs have been moved over to the merge-to customer/job, you can invoke the ListMerge request, as shown in the following code snippet:

```

SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN List Merge Sample"
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

Dim ListMerge_Set As IMsgSetRequest
Set ListMerge_Set = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 7, 0)
ListMerge_Set.Attributes.OnError = roeContinue

Dim ListMergeAdder As IListMerge
Set ListMergeAdder = ListMerge_Set.AppendListMergeRq
ListMergeAdder.ListMergeType.setValue lmtCustomer
ListMergeAdder.MergeFrom.ListID.setValue "80000007-1188956785"
ListMergeAdder.MergeFrom.EditSequence.setValue "1188956785"
ListMergeAdder.MergeTo.ListID.setValue "80000002-1188956165"
ListMergeAdder.MergeTo.EditSequence.setValue "1188956165"

Dim ListMergeSampleResp As IMsgSetResponse
Set ListMergeSampleResp = SessionManager.DoRequests(ListMerge_Set)

```

## Merging Vendors

---

There aren't any tricks to merging vendors. Just supply the list IDs and the latest EditSequences to the ListMerge request.



# CHAPTER 28

## USING ASSEMBLY ITEM AND BUILDASSEMBLY FUNCTIONALITY

### **IMPORTANT**

If you are testing an application that uses assembly item and building assembly features, we recommend that you do not use the sample companies provided with QuickBooks. These sample companies have future dates in them that can yield unexpected results with regard to on hand quantities. You should create your own sample company with current dates.

Integrated applications running on Premier and Enterprise editions can use the SDK to add assembly items (`ItemInventoryAssemblyAddRq`) and then “build” those assembly items (`BuildAssemblyAddRq`). We put “build” in quotations because the `BuildAssembly` transaction does not actually build the assembly, of course, but simply causes the accounting transaction that enables a business to track finished goods inventory and the component item inventory accurately.

Although the SDK `ItemInventoryAssemblyAdd` (available since SDK 2.0) and `BuildAssemblyAdd` (available starting in QuickBooks 2006) works only on Premier and Enterprise, your application may be able run on other editions of QuickBooks with inventory features if your application simply views, edits, sells, or reports on existing assembly items or `BuildAssembly` transactions. (The API reference lists the required SDK spec version required for each of these `ItemInventoryAssembly*` and `BuildAssembly*` requests.)

In order to use the SDK to add assembly items and build assemblies, you first need to know a few things about item assemblies in QuickBooks. So we’ll start off with some background information before getting into creating and building assembly items, along with modifying and querying for them.

## Overview of QuickBooks Assembly Items and Build Assembly

An assembly item in QuickBooks is an inventory-tracked item made up of individual inventory items (inventory “parts” in the UI) and/or other assembly items as shown in Figure 28-1 on page 362. The items and/or assemblies that make up the assembly are called *components*. All of the components in an assembly must first be defined in the QuickBooks company as inventory items or assembly items before you can use them in an assembly. (Services cannot be used as a component part.)

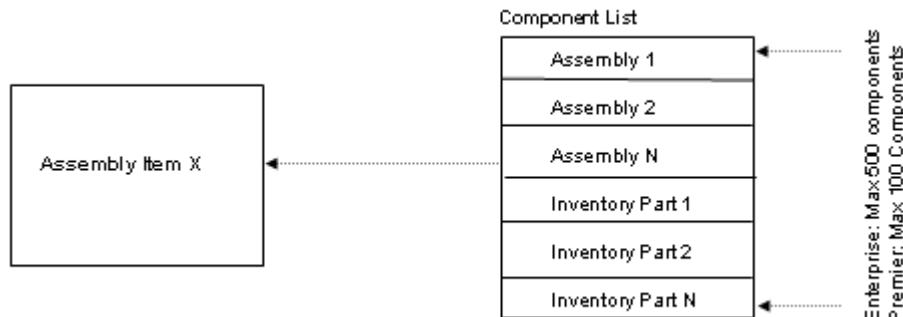


Figure 28-1 Assembly item and its component parts

How many components can an assembly have? For Premier, an assembly can have a maximum of 100 components. For Enterprise, the maximum is 500 components.

When you add an assembly item (ItemInventoryAssemblyAddRq in the SDK) you produce no affect on any inventory levels, since the assembly item serves as a “definition” that specifies how the assembly is to be built, which accounts are to be used, the sale price, and so forth. Inventory is not affected until you perform a Build Assembly transaction either via the QuickBooks UI or via the SDK BuildAssemblyAdd request.

As a result of the build assembly transaction, the assembly item units are incremented in inventory and the component parts or component assemblies are decremented from inventory.

**NOTE**

If you enter a quantity on hand in the New Item window while defining a new assembly item, this transaction is recorded as an inventory adjustment where assembly units are added to inventory but components are not deducted from inventory.

Notice that inventory permissions are required to add assembly items and build assemblies.

## You Must Have Sufficient Components for the BuildAssembly

In the QuickBooks UI, you have the option of creating a pending build if there aren’t enough components in inventory to build the assembly in the quantities specified. Beginning with qbXML 7.0 and QuickBooks 2008, you can also do this via the SDK using the `MarkPendingIfRequired`.

If you don’t use `MarkPendingIfRequired` and you invoke `BuildAssemblyAdd` with a quantity that would exceed the on-hand quantities of any component, you get a status code error of 3370 and a status message indicating that there are insufficient components for the request.

You will get the same status code error 3370 if you attempt to use BuildAssemblyMod to remove the pending status from a pending BuildAssembly transaction (created via the UI) if you lack sufficient component quantities, because this is effectively performing a BuildAssembly.

## **QB Activities that Change BuildAssembly Transactions into Pending**

---

There are circumstances where even a finalized BuildAssembly transaction can be changed into a pending transaction by other activities in QuickBooks, whether from the UI or from the SDK.

Finalized builds change to pending whenever the quantity of at least one component drops below the quantity needed to build the specified number of assemblies on the build transaction date.

This means that if a QB user or integrated application changes past inventory quantities or the dates of purchase orders, invoices, or sales receipts in ways that result in QuickBooks built assemblies lacking sufficient components on the build date, the affected assembly builds would change from finalized to pending.

## **Consequences of Modifying an Existing Inventory Assembly Item**

---

Assembly definition details, such as the list of and quantity of components, can be modified at any time either in the UI or via the SDK. If an assembly item is modified while there is a pending build for that assembly, at the time when the pending build is actually built QuickBooks prompts the user to build either with the most recent assembly definition or with the definition that is currently in effect for that build.

Keep in mind that such modifications to the assembly (revision history) is not tracked; if you need to build a previous version of an assembly, you need to modify the assembly again to reflect the desired component list. One feature that can help you reconstruct a previously used assembly item is to look up a past BuildAssembly transaction (BuildAssemblyQuery in the SDK) and use the component list from that transaction. The component list for the transaction is saved even if the assembly item's component list is changed subsequent to the BuildAssembly transaction. However, this approach requires the QuickBooks user or the integrated application to note and keep track of whichever BuildAssembly transaction (and thus its component list) is important for revision history purposes.

Finally, keep in mind that changing quantity on hand for assemblies adjusts the overall number of assembly units in inventory, but it does not change the quantity on hand of components (inventory part items or assemblies) used in the parent assembly.

## Impact of SalesReceipts and Invoices on Assemblies in Inventory

---

If a QB user or application attempts to sell via sales receipt or invoice more assembly units than are available in inventory, the UI behavior varies slightly from the SDK. In the UI, the user is warned that quantities are insufficient to fulfill the order: the user can respond by accepting or cancelling. In the SDK, the SalesReceiptAdd or InvoiceAdd simply adds the SalesReceipt or Invoice without the warning. But for both SDK and UI (assuming the UI user opts to continue with the transaction), the quantity on hand for the specified assembly changes to a negative value.

### **NOTE**

When assembly items appear on a UI form (for example, a sales receipt or an invoice) or a report, their component items are not displayed. Only the assembly name, description, and price are displayed.

Notice that if you modify the component list of an assembly and build that assembly while you still have a quantity of a previous version in stock, QuickBooks cannot distinguish between these two versions at the time you make a sale. The typical recommendation is to either sell out of one version before building another version, or “disassemble” the on hand inventory of the previous build. We’ll show you how to do that shortly.

Either approach enables a QB user or integrated application to track the versions by the sale date, if the user or application keeps track of this date.

## Disassembling Inventory Assemblies

---

As noted previously, in some instances you may need to disassemble inventory assemblies, for example, if you are changing the component list and want to maintain only one version of the assembly in inventory.

There are several ways to disassemble inventory assemblies and return component items to inventory. You can:

- Open the build transaction that built the assembly you want to disassemble and reduce the quantity to build in the Build Assemblies window. The result is the same as if you had only built the smaller number of assemblies in the first place. The quantity of assembly units in inventory decreases, and the quantity of component inventory parts is increased accordingly.

**Note:** Build transactions with changed amounts will display on the audit trail report.

- Adjust Quantity/Value on Hand for each assembly component and the assembly item.
- Delete the build transaction. The quantity of assembly units in inventory is decreased and the quantity of component inventory parts is increased accordingly. This method completely removes the build transaction from QuickBooks and should not be used if you want to maintain a record of the transaction.

## Getting BuildAssembly and Assembly Item Reports

---

You can use the SDK's CustomSummaryReportQuery or CustomDetailReportQuery to get BuildAssembly and item assembly reports. To get BuildAssembly reports, use the ReportTxnTypeFilter with the TxnFilter set to BuildAssembly. To get assembly item reports, use the ReportItemFilter with the ItemTypeFilter set to InventoryAndAssembly.

## Adding an Inventory Assembly Item

---

To get an idea of how to add an assembly item in the SDK, take a look at how it's done in the UI (see Figure 28-2 on page 366). The UI supplies the New Item form that allows the user to add a new assembly item. You can get there in the UI from the main QuickBooks menubar by selecting Lists->Item List->Item->New.

**Type**  
Inventory Assembly Use for inventory items that you assemble from other inventory items and then sell.  
[What's the difference between an Inventory Assembly and a Group?](#)

**Item Name/Number** MyAssembly **Subitem of**

I purchase this assembly item from a vendor

**Cost:** [What is this cost?](#) COGS Account  
0.00 Cost of Goods Sold

**Description**  
Cabinet fixture assembly

**Sales Price** 34.00 **Tax Code** Tax **Income Account** MyIncomeAccount

**Bill of Materials**

Item	Description	U...	Cost	Qty	Total
Bolt	big bolt	1...	1.00		1.00
Cabinets	Cabinets	1...	0.00		0.00
Widget B	Wa Scheme Top	A...	16.00		16.00

Total Bill of Materials Cost: 17.00

**Inventory Information**

Asset Account	Build Point	On Hand	Total Value	As of
Inventory Asset	10	0	0.00	12/15/2007

Figure 28-2 Understanding the New Assembly item form

In the upper left of the form, notice the item Type pulldown provided for the user to select from the various supported types: assembly item is shown as the chosen type in the figure. In the SDK however, if you want to add an assembly item, you use a request specific to assembly item: ItemInventoryAssemblyAdd.

The API Reference listing for ItemInventoryAssemblyAdd is shown in Figure 28-3 on page 367.

Tag	Type	Max	Implementation	Occurrences
ItemInventoryAssemblyAddRq				
ItemInventoryAssemblyAdd				1
Name	STRTYPE	31 Chars		1
IsActive	BOOLTYPE			0 - 1
ParentRef	IDTYPE		Makes the assembly a subitem of another assembly	0 - 1
ListID	IDTYPE			0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE			0 - 1
SalesTaxCodeRef				0 - 1
ListID	IDTYPE			0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	3 Chars		0 - 1
SalesDesc	STRTYPE	4095 Chars		0 - 1
SalesPrice	PRICETYPE			0 - 1
IncomeAccountRef				1
ListID	IDTYPE			0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars		0 - 1
PurchaseDesc	STRTYPE	4095 Chars		0 - 1
PurchaseCost	PRICETYPE			0 - 1
COGSAccountRef			Indicates that you also purchase this the assembly	1
ListID	IDTYPE			0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars		0 - 1
PrefVendorRef				0 - 1
ListID	IDTYPE			0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	41 Chars		0 - 1
AssetAccountRef				1
ListID	IDTYPE			0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars		0 - 1
BuildPoint	QUANTYPE			0 - 1
QuantityOnHand	QUANTYPE			0 - 1
TotalValue	AMNTYPE			0 - 1
InventoryDate	DATETYPE			0 - 1
ItemInventoryAssemblyLine				0 - n
ItemInventoryRef				1
ListID	IDTYPE			0 - 1
FullName	STRTYPE	159 Chars		0 - 1
Quantity	QUANTYPE			0 - 1
IncludeRetElement	STRTYPE	50 Chars	4.0.	0 - n

Figure 28-3 ItemInventoryAssemblyAdd API Reference Listing

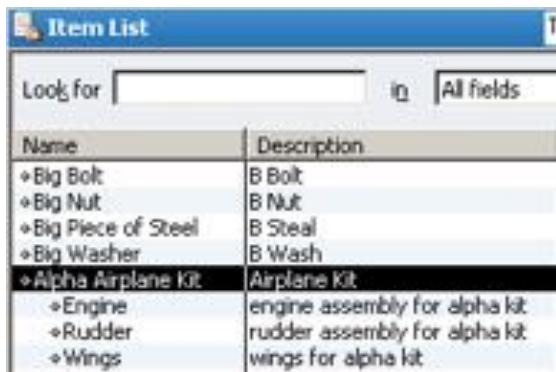
The SDK tags shown in the API Reference listing for ItemInventoryAssemblyAdd provide the same functionality as the UI's New Item form for assembly items. Most of these are straightforward: Name maps to the UI's Item Name/Number, IsActive maps to the UI's Item is Inactive checkbox, BuildPoint, QuantityOnHand, TotalValue, InventoryDate map to the Build Point, On Hand, Total Value, and As Of values in the UI, respectively.

Some other SDK elements might need a bit more explanation, so we'll describe some of the less obvious elements in the following sections.

## About the “Subitem Of” (ParentRef)

The ParentRef in the qbXML for adding an assembly item is the equivalent of the Subitem Of checkbox and its related item pulldown menu, which is activated when the user checks the checkbox. The difference is that the ParentRef (containing either the ListID or the FullName of the parent assembly) represents the choice of a parent assembly as well as the choice to make the new assembly a subitem of another assembly in the first place.

What is a subitem? It is simply a way to include your assembly in an assembly hierarchy that you want to be visible in QuickBooks lists and reports. For example, if you want the QuickBooks item list to display a main item listing of “Alpha Airplane Kit” with subitems of “Wings”, “Engine”, “Rudder” and so forth (see Figure 28-4 on page 368), you would make the Wings assembly a subitem of Alpha Airplane Kit, the Engine assembly a subitem of “Alpha Airplane Kit, and so forth.



The screenshot shows the QuickBooks Item List window. The title bar says "Item List". There is a search bar labeled "Look for" and a "All fields" button. The main area is a table with two columns: "Name" and "Description". The table contains the following data:

Name	Description
» Big Bolt	B Bolt
» Big Nut	B Nut
» Big Piece of Steel	B Steel
» Big Washer	B Wash
» Alpha Airplane Kit	Airplane Kit
» Engine	engine assembly for alpha kit
» Rudder	rudder assembly for alpha kit
» Wings	wings for alpha kit

Figure 28-4 Making assemblies visible as hierarchies in QB Lists

The main point to keep in mind is that checking “Subitem Of” or the (SDK equivalent ParentRef) is strictly used for list and report visibility purposes, to show logical arrangements of assemblies that, to QuickBooks, are otherwise internally unrelated assemblies. It does NOT make your new assembly a component of the another assembly. (We’ll show you how to do that shortly.) Your BuildAssembly of the parent assembly will not result in the building of any subitem assemblies.

## About the “I purchase...” Checkbox (PrefVendorRef, etc.)

The “I purchase this...from a vendor” checkbox is used if you have an assembly item you normally build, but occasionally need to purchase from a vendor, for example if you are short quantities of that assembly and need to acquire more quickly.

If you supply any one or any combination of the PrefVendorRef, the PurchaseDesc, or the PurchaseCost tags, you cause the same thing to happen in QuickBooks as occurs in the UI when a user checks the “I purchase this assembly item from a vendor” checkbox.

When the user does this in the UI, a frame appears that allows the purchase cost, purchase description, and preferred vendor to be specified. The tags already mentioned in the preceding paragraph allow you to fill out this same information in the SDK. Notice that you need not supply the purchase cost when you create the assembly item, since it can be added later when you receive the actual cost.

## Adding an ItemInventoryAssembly in qbXML

---

Listing 28-1 shows how to create a new assembly item. In the listing, the assembly named Widget G has a component list of the two existing items (Lrge Bolt and Lrge Nut) listed under the two ItemInventoryAssemblyLine tags. Our sample happens to use the optional sales tax tag and the default COGS account.

Listing 28-1 Adding an ItemInventoryAssembly

```
<?qbxml version="5.0"?>
<QBXML>
<QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
    <ItemInventoryAssemblyAddRq requestID = "2">
        <ItemInventoryAssemblyAdd>
            <Name>Widget G</Name>
            <SalesTaxCodeRef>
                <FullName>Tax</FullName>
            </SalesTaxCodeRef>
            <SalesDesc>Misc Widgets</SalesDesc>
            <SalesPrice>10.00</SalesPrice>
            <IncomeAccountRef>
                <FullName>Sales Income</FullName>
            </IncomeAccountRef>
            <COGSAccountRef>
                <FullName>Cost Of Goods Sold</FullName>
            </COGSAccountRef>
            <AssetAccountRef>
                <FullName>Inventory Asset</FullName>
            </AssetAccountRef>
            <BuildPoint>10</BuildPoint>
            <ItemInventoryAssemblyLine>
                <ItemInventoryRef>
                    <FullName>Lrge Bolt</FullName>
                </ItemInventoryRef>
                <Quantity>2</Quantity>
            </ItemInventoryAssemblyLine>
            <ItemInventoryAssemblyLine>
                <ItemInventoryRef>
                    <FullName>Lrge Nut</FullName>
                </ItemInventoryRef>
                <Quantity>2</Quantity>
            </ItemInventoryAssemblyLine>
        </ItemInventoryAssemblyAdd>
    </ItemInventoryAssemblyAddRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

## Adding an Assembly Item in QBFC

---

Listing 28-2 shows a self-contained procedure that opens a connection with QuickBooks, adds an assembly item to the currently open company, shows the results, and closes the connection.

The sample is straightforward except for one tricky part, which is appending the component items in the line item object as per the following lines:

```
Dim AssemblyLineItem As IItemInventoryAssemblyLine
'Append each line item of the component list separately. Append returns
'the line item object, which you then set with the values you want
Set AssemblyLineItem =
    ItemAssemblyAdd.ItemInventoryAssemblyLineList.Append
```

Notice that the Append method returns the line item object, which you then fill its key fields ItemRef and Quantity. What happens if you were to try it this way:

```
ItemAssemblyAdd.ItemInventoryAssemblyLineList.Append.Quantity.setValue(2)
ItemAssemblyAdd.ItemInventoryAssemblyLineList.Append.Quantity.setValue(2)
'NOPE! Invalid.
```

you'll get a runtime error because you just added *two* line items to the list, one of which has a valid ItemInventoryRef, and one that doesn't--with the faulty line having only a Quantity field. If you were print out the XML from this faulty attempt (using ToXMLString on the IMsgSetRequest object), here's what the resulting bad XML would look like:

```
<ItemInventoryAssemblyLine>
    <ItemInventoryRef>
        <FullName>Big Bolt</FullName>
    </ItemInventoryRef>
</ItemInventoryAssemblyLine>

<ItemInventoryAssemblyLine>
    <Quantity>2</Quantity>
</ItemInventoryAssemblyLine>
```

which won't work at all. Instead, as shown below (and in Listing 28-2), what you need to do is invoke Append on the Line Item list with the Append method returning the line item object. Then just set the ItemRef and Quantity properties on that line item.

```
Dim AssemblyLineItem As IItemInventoryAssemblyLine
'Append each line item of the component list separately. Append returns
'the line item object, which you then set with the values you want
Set AssemblyLineItem = ItemAssemblyAdd.ItemInventoryAssemblyLineList.Append
AssemblyLineItem.ItemInventoryRef.FullName.setValue ("Big Bolt")
AssemblyLineItem.Quantity.setValue (2)

Set AssemblyLineItem = ItemAssemblyAdd.ItemInventoryAssemblyLineList.Append
AssemblyLineItem.ItemInventoryRef.FullName.setValue ("Big Nut")
AssemblyLineItem.Quantity.setValue (2) '
```

## Listing 28-2 Adding Assembly Items in QBFC

```
Public Sub QBFC_AddItemInvAssembly()

Dim SessionManager As QBSessionManager
Set SessionManager = New QBSessionManager
SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN Add Item Inventory Assembly Sample"
SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

Dim requestMsgSet As IMsgSetRequest
Set requestMsgSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 5, 0)
' Initialize the message set request's attributes
requestMsgSet.Attributes.OnError = roeStop

' Add the request to the message set request object
Dim ItemAssemblyAdd As IItemInventoryAssemblyAdd
Set ItemAssemblyAdd = requestMsgSet.AppendItemInventoryAssemblyAddRq
' Set the properties in the assembly object
ItemAssemblyAdd.Name.SetValue ("Widget Y")
ItemAssemblyAdd.SalesTaxCodeRef.FullName.SetValue ("Tax")
ItemAssemblyAdd.SalesDesc.SetValue ("Misc Widgets")
ItemAssemblyAdd.SalesPrice.SetValue (10#)
ItemAssemblyAdd.IncomeAccountRef.FullName.SetValue ("Sales Income")
ItemAssemblyAdd.COGSAccountRef.FullName.SetValue ("Cost of Goods Sold")
ItemAssemblyAdd.AssetAccountRef.FullName.SetValue ("Inventory Asset")
ItemAssemblyAdd.BuildPoint.SetValue (10)

Dim AssemblyLineItem As IItemInventoryAssemblyLine
' Append each line item of the component list separately. Append returns
' the line item object, which you then set with the values you want
Set AssemblyLineItem = ItemAssemblyAdd.ItemInventoryAssemblyLineList.Append
AssemblyLineItem.ItemInventoryRef.FullName.SetValue ("Big Bolt")
AssemblyLineItem.Quantity.SetValue (2)

Set AssemblyLineItem = ItemAssemblyAdd.ItemInventoryAssemblyLineList.Append
AssemblyLineItem.ItemInventoryRef.FullName.SetValue ("Big Nut")
AssemblyLineItem.Quantity.SetValue (2)      '

Perform the request and obtain a response from QuickBooks
Dim responseMsgSet As IMsgSetResponse
Set responseMsgSet = SessionManager.DoRequests(requestMsgSet)
' Show the results
MsgBox responseMsgSet.ToXMLString

' Close the session and connection with QuickBooks.
SessionManager.EndSession
SessionManager.CloseConnection
End Sub
```

## Modifying an Existing Inventory Assembly Item

---

An assembly item, as mentioned earlier in this chapter can be edited at any time via the UI or the SDK, but any modifications to the assembly are not tracked. Accordingly, if you are making changes to the component list used, you may want to consider ways to make it easier to track the revision history yourself, perhaps by selling out of the existing stock first, or disassembling the existing assemblies before changing the component list.

### Modifying an Assembly Item in qbXML

---

Listing 28-3 shows a mod request that changes the BuildPoint of the specified assembly item.

Listing 28-3 Constructing an ItemInventoryAssemblyMod request in qbXML

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="5.0"?>
<QBXML>
<QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
    <ItemInventoryAssemblyModRq requestID = "0">
        <ItemInventoryAssemblyMod>
            <ListID>1B0000-1130277147</ListID>
            <EditSequence>1130433150</EditSequence>
            <BuildPoint>20</BuildPoint>
        </ItemInventoryAssemblyMod>
    </ItemInventoryAssemblyModRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

### Modifying an Assembly Item in QBFC

---

Listing 28-4 shows a self-contained procedure that

- Opens a connection with QuickBooks
- Queries for all inactive and active assembly items that contain “Panel” in the FullName, and that were modified within the specified date range.
- Arbitrarily picks the first assembly item from the query and saves its ListID and edit sequence for the upcoming mod request
- Issues a mod request using the ListID and edit sequence obtained in the query, modifying the memo and the quantity
- Shows the results, and closes the connection.

Notice that the query specifies that only ListID and EditSequence (via IncludeRetElement) is to be returned in the response because that is all we need from the query.

---

Listing 28-4 Constructing an ItemInventoryAssemblyMod request in QBFC

```
Public Sub QBFC_ModItemAssembly()
    Dim SessionManager As QBSessionManager
    Set SessionManager = New QBSessionManager
    SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN Mod Item Assembly Sample"
    SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

    Dim requestMsgSet As IMsgSetRequest
    Set requestMsgSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 5, 0)
    ' Initialize the message set request's attributes
    requestMsgSet.Attributes.OnError = roeStop

    'First we query QB for active and intact assemblies within
    'a date range with the fullname containing "Panel"
    Dim ItemAssmbyQuery As IItemInventoryAssemblyQuery
    Set ItemAssmbyQuery = requestMsgSet.AppendItemInventoryAssemblyQueryRq

    ItemAssmbyQuery.IncludeRetElementList.Add ("EditSequence")
    ItemAssmbyQuery.IncludeRetElementList.Add ("ListID")
    ItemAssmbyQuery.ORListQuery.ListFilter.ActiveStatus.setValue (asAll)
    ItemAssmbyQuery.ORListQuery.ListFilter.FromModifiedDate.
        setValue "2005-10-01", True
    ItemAssmbyQuery.ORListQuery.ListFilter.ToModifiedDate.
        setValue "2005-10-27", True

    ItemAssmbyQuery.ORListQuery.ListFilter.ORNameFilter.NameFilter.
        MatchCriterion.setValue (mcContains)
    ItemAssmbyQuery.ORListQuery.ListFilter.ORNameFilter.NameFilter.
        Name.setValue ("Panel")

    Dim responseMsgSet As IMsgSetResponse
    Set responseMsgSet = SessionManager.DoRequests(requestMsgSet)
    Dim response As IResponse

    ' Response list contains one response, because we made one request
    Set response = responseMsgSet.ResponseList.GetAt(0)

    'make sure there is data first
    If response.Detail Is Nothing Then
        MsgBox "No Detail available"
        Exit Sub
    End If

    'This is a query, so the Detail is a ret list
    Dim ItemAssmbyRetList As IItemInventoryAssemblyRetList
    Dim ItemAssmbyRet As IItemInventoryAssemblyRet
    Set ItemAssmbyRetList = response.Detail

    'Potentially many assemblies in the retlist: we get the first one
    'for convenience: you'll do something smarter or let the user pick
    Set ItemAssmbyRet = ItemAssmbyRetList.GetAt(0)
```

```

'Save the ListID and EditSequence: we need 'em for our mod request
Dim ListID As String
Dim EditSeq As String

ListID = ItemAssmbyRet.ListID.getValue
EditSeq = ItemAssmbyRet.EditSequence.getValue
'Clear out the message set so we can re-stuff it with our mod request
requestMsgSet.ClearRequests

'Add the request to the message set request object
Dim ItemAssmbyMod As IItemInventoryAssemblyMod
Set ItemAssmbyMod = requestMsgSet.AppendItemInventoryAssemblyModRq

'Set the properties in the BuildAssembly mod object
ItemAssmbyMod.ListID.setValue (ListID)
ItemAssmbyMod.EditSequence.setValue (EditSeq)
ItemAssmbyMod.BuildPoint.setValue (20)

'Perform the request and obtain a response from QuickBooks
Set responseMsgSet = SessionManager.DoRequests(requestMsgSet)

MsgBox responseMsgSet.ToXMLString

'Close the session and connection with QuickBooks.
SessionManager.EndSession
SessionManager.CloseConnection
End Sub

```

## Querying for Inventory Assembly Items

---

Figure 28-5 shows the query filters you can use. If you’re familiar with SDK queries, there is nothing special or tricky about this particular query. If you’re not familiar with SDK queries, you might want to take a quick look at Chapter 4, “Specifying Authorization Preferences,” which provides general information on queries, such as using iterators for large query returns, using `IncludeRetElement` to get only the data you need, using various types of filters, and so on.

The `ActiveStatus` filter is useful if you need to make your query retrieve any inactive assembly items. (By default only active items are returned in the query.) Specify the value “All” to get all assemblies, both active or inactive, or “`InactiveOnly`” to get only inactive items.

Tag	Type	Max	Im
<b>ItemInventoryAssemblyQueryRq {metaData , iterator , iteratorID}</b>			
BEGIN OR			
ListID	IDTYPE		
OR			
FullName	STRTYPE		
OR			
MaskReturned	INTTYPE		
ActiveStatus	ENUMTYPE		
FromModifiedDate	DATETIMETYPE		
ToModifiedDate	DATETIMETYPE		
BEGIN OR			
NameFilter			
MatchCriterion	ENUMTYPE		
Name	STRTYPE		
OR			
NameRangeFilter			
FromName	STRTYPE		
ToName	STRTYPE		
END OR			
END OR			
IncludeRetElement	STRTYPE	50 Chars	
OwnerID	GUIDTYPE		

Figure 28-5 ItemInventoryAssemblyQuery API Reference listing

## Querying for Assembly Items in qbXML

Listing 28-5 shows a sample query in qbXML, where we search for all active and inactive item assemblies that contain the name “Panel”, and that were last modified in the specified date range,

Listing 28-5 Constructing an ItemInventoryAssemblyQuery Request in qbXML

```

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="5.0"?>
    <QBXML>
        <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
            <ItemInventoryAssemblyQueryRq requestID = "0">
                <ActiveStatus>All</ActiveStatus>
                <FromModifiedDate>2005-10-01</FromModifiedDate>
                <ToModifiedDate>2005-10-27</ToModifiedDate>
                <NameFilter>
                    <MatchCriterion>Contains</MatchCriterion>
                    <Name>Panel</Name>
                </NameFilter>
            </ItemInventoryAssemblyQueryRq>
        </QBXMLMsgsRq>
    </QBXML>

```

## Querying for Assembly Items in QBFC

We've already shown an example of constructing an `ItemInventoryAssemblyQuery` and processing some of its response data in Listing 28-4.

## Adding a BuildAssembly Transaction

Adding new `BuildAssembly` transactions are supported in QuickBooks Premier and Enterprise. In the QuickBooks UI for these editions, you add a new `BuildAssembly` by clicking on the `Build Assembly` icon in the main navigator (Figure 28-6):



Figure 28-6 The Build Assemblies UI icon

Clicking on the icon displays the `Build Assemblies` form (Figure 28-7):

The screenshot shows the 'Build Assemblies' window in QuickBooks. At the top, there are buttons for 'Ask' and 'How Do I?' and standard window controls. The main area is titled 'Build Assemblies' with tabs for 'Previous' and 'Next'. The 'Assembly Item' dropdown is set to 'Metal Panel Assembly'. Below it, there are four status fields: 'Quantity on Hand: 0', 'Build Point: 10', 'Quantity on Sales Order: 0', and 'Quantity Reserved for Other Assemblies: 0'. The 'Quantity Available' field is also 0. A section titled 'Components Needed to Build Metal Panel Assembly' lists three components with their descriptions, types, quantities on hand, and quantities needed:

Component Item	Description	Type	Qty On Hand	Qty Needed
washers	small package of washers	Inv Part	1,000	30
Metal Screws	small package large sheet metal s...	Inv Part	10,000	30
sheet metal panels	4' x 2' panels	Inv Part	1,000	40

Below this, a note says 'Maximum number you can build from the quantity on hand: 250'. The 'Quantity to Build' field is set to 10. At the bottom, there are fields for 'Date' (10/25/2005), 'Build Ref. No.' (2), and a 'Memo' text area. On the right, there are buttons for 'Build & Close', 'Build & New', and 'Clear'.

Figure 28-7 The UI Build Assemblies form

In the upper left of Figure 28-7, notice the assembly item pulldown, from which the user selects the assembly to build. In the figure, the Metal Panel Assembly has been selected. Notice that the quantity data about this item is automatically filled in on the form. The user supplies only the quantity to build, possibly also the build reference number (if the user doesn't want the default number), the transaction date and any build notes in the Memo field.

The SDK provides functionality to duplicate most of the features on this particular form:

- `BuildAssemblyQuery` can be used in a selection list like the one here, with the quantity data (along with other data) returned in the query response for a selected assembly.
- `ItemAssembliesCanBuildQuery` returns the number of units you can build for the specified assembly.
- `BuildAssemblyAdd` causes the actual Build Assembly transaction to occur, once the required data is supplied.

However, as noted in the overview section of this chapter, the UI lets you do a pending build if there are not enough components to build the quantities specified, and in the SDK you can use the `MarkPendingIfRequired` to do the same thing. If you must use qbXML 6.0 or less because your application must work on versions of QuickBooks older than QB 2008, you can alternatively use the `ItemAssembliesCanBuildQuery` request before you attempt to invoke `BuildAssemblyAdd`.

Be careful when supplying your own Ref numbers when creating or editing the `BuildAssembly`. QuickBooks does not prevent the same Ref number from being assigned to more than one `BuildAssembly`.

## Adding a BuildAssembly Transaction in qbXML

Listing 28-6 shows a typical qbXML for building an assembly. The listing shows all of the possible tags used, if you take a look at the API Reference listing for `BuildAssemblyAdd` (see Figure 28-8).

Listing 28-6 QBXML Sample: Adding A BuildAssembly

```
<?qbxml version="5.0"?>
<QBXML>
<QBXMLMsgsRq onError="continueOnError">
  <BuildAssemblyAddRq>
    <BuildAssemblyAdd>
      <ItemInventoryAssemblyRef>
        <FullName>Metal Panel Assembly</FullName>
      </ItemInventoryAssemblyRef>
      <TxnDate>2005-10-26</TxnDate>
      <Memo>Built from component list 1</Memo>
      <QuantityToBuild>2</QuantityToBuild>
    </BuildAssemblyAdd>
  </BuildAssemblyAddRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

Tag	Type	Max	Implementation	Occurrences
<code>BuildAssemblyAddRq</code>				
<code>BuildAssemblyAdd</code> (defMacro)				1
<code>ItemInventoryAssemblyRef</code>				1
<code>ListID</code>	<code>IDTYPE</code>		Builds only one assembly item per request	0 - 1
<code>FullName</code>	<code>STRTYPE</code>	159 Chars		0 - 1
<code>TxnDate</code>	<code>DATETYPE</code>			0 - 1
<code>RefNumber</code>	<code>STRTYPE</code>	11 Chars		0 - 1
<code>Memo</code>	<code>STRTYPE</code>	4095 Chars		0 - 1
<code>QuantityToBuild</code>	<code>QUANTYPE</code>			1
<code>IncludeRetElement</code>	<code>STRTYPE</code>	50 Chars		0 - n

Figure 28-8 API Reference listing for `BuildAssemblyAdd`

Notice that you can perform a build of only one assembly item per BuildAssemblyAddRq, as indicated in the figure above.

The response from the qbXML sample above would be as shown in Figure 28-9. (Only part of the response is shown.)

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<QBXML>
<QBXMLMsgRq>
<BuildAssemblyAddRq requestID="0" statusCode="0" statusSeverity="Info" statusMessage="Status OK">
<TxnID>34-1130346773</TxnID>
<TimeCreated>2005-10-26T10:12:53-06:00</TimeCreated>
<TimeModified>2005-10-26T10:12:53-06:00</TimeModified>
<EditSequence>1130346773</EditSequence>
<TxnNumber>15</TxnNumber>
<ItemInventoryAssemblyRef>
<ListID>180000-1130277147</ListID>
<FullName>Metal Panel Assembly</FullName>
<ItemInventoryAssemblyRef>
<TxnDate>2005-10-26</TxnDate>
<RefNumber>5</RefNumber>
<Memo>Build from component list 1</Memo>
<IsPending>False</IsPending>
<QuantityToBuild>2</QuantityToBuild>
<QuantityCanBuild>236</QuantityCanBuild>
<QuantityOnHand>14</QuantityOnHand>
<QuantityOnSalesOrder>0</QuantityOnSalesOrder>
<ComponentItemLineRq>
<ItemRef>
<ListID>140000-1130277028</ListID>
<FullName>washers</FullName>
<ItemRef>
<Desc>small package of washers</Desc>
<QuantityOnHand>958</QuantityOnHand>
<QuantityNeeded>6</QuantityNeeded>
</ComponentItemLineRq>
```

Figure 28-9 Sample Response from BuildAssemblyAdd

Notice that the response contains the component list showing all the inventory items and assemblies, along with the quantities used in the built assembly transaction. Notice also that the IsPending field is set to False. It will always be False when you do a BuildAssemblyAdd because pending builds are not supported in this request.

Finally, notice the various Quantity fields: QuantityToBuild (what you just built in the BuildAssemblyAdd request), QuantityCanBuild (the max number that you could build of this assembly), QuantityOnHand, and QuantityOnSalesOrder. These last two quantities are important for determining how many assembly units are actually available: you subtract the on-sales order quantity from the on-hand quantity to get the number of units that are actually available, with all quantities snapshotted as of the TxnDate specified in the request.

## Adding a BuildAssembly Transaction in QBFC

---

Listing 28-7 shows a complete self-contained procedure that opens a connection with QuickBooks, builds the specified assembly item in the currently open company, shows the results, and closes the connection. The sample accepts the default ref number that will be assigned by QuickBooks, but specifies the build date.

### Listing 28-7 Building an Assembly in QBFC

```
Public Sub QBFC_AddBuildAssembly()
    Dim SessionManager As QBSessionManager
    Set SessionManager = New QBSessionManager
    SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN Add Build Assembly Sample"
    SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare
    Dim requestMsgSet As IMsgSetRequest
    Set requestMsgSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 5, 0)
    ' Initialize the message set request's attributes
    requestMsgSet.Attributes.OnError = roeStop

    ' Add the request to the message set request object
    Dim BuildAssmbyAdd As IBuildAssemblyAdd
    Set BuildAssmbyAdd = requestMsgSet.AppendBuildAssemblyAddRq

    'Set the properties in the BuildAssembly add object
    BuildAssmbyAdd.ItemInventoryAssemblyRef.FullName.SetValue ("Metal Panel Assembly")
    BuildAssmbyAdd.TxnDate.SetValue ("2005-10-26")
    BuildAssmbyAdd.Memo.SetValue ("Build from component list 1")
    BuildAssmbyAdd.QuantityToBuild.SetValue (2)

    ' Perform the request and obtain a response from QuickBooks
    Dim responseMsgSet As IMsgSetResponse
    Set responseMsgSet = SessionManager.DoRequests(requestMsgSet)
    MsgBox responseMsgSet.ToXMLString
    ' Close the session and connection with QuickBooks.
    SessionManager.EndSession
    SessionManager.CloseConnection
End Sub
```

## Modifying an Existing BuildAssembly Transaction

---

The API Reference listing below (Figure 28-10) shows the available modifications you can make to a BuildAssembly transaction.

Tag	Type	Max	Implementation	Occurrences
<b>BuildAssemblyModRq</b>				
<b>BuildAssemblyMod</b>				
<b>TxnID (useMacro)</b>	IDTYPE		Required in all mods	1
<b>EditSequence</b>	STRTYPE	16 Chars		1
<b>TxnDate</b>	DATETYPE			0 - 1
<b>RefNumber</b>	STRTYPE	11 Chars		0 - 1
<b>Memo</b>	STRTYPE	4095 Chars		0 - 1
<b>QuantityToBuild</b>	QUANTYPE			0 - 1
<b>RemovePending</b>	BOOLTYPE			0 - 1
<b>IncludeRetElement</b>	STRTYPE	50 Chars		0 - n

Figure 28-10 BuildAssemblyMod API Reference Listing

Notice that along with TxnID, every BuildAssemblyMod requires the edit sequence, which prevents accidental overwrites to data by ensuring you are saving the most recent version of the data. This means that before modifying any existing BuildAssembly transaction, you must first do a BuildAssemblyQuery--even if you already have the TxnID--to get the current EditSequence.

**IMPORTANT**

You'll also want to check for status code 3200 in the response to your mod request. This code indicates that someone has modified the transaction since you last retrieved the transaction from QuickBooks. You'll have to re-retrieve that transaction and apply your mods to that newer version.

If the transaction is pending, you can remove the pending status, effectively performing the build. This mod will work in the SDK only if there are sufficient components for the build on the TxnDate.

Any fields not explicitly modified in the BuildAssemblyMod request keep their existing values.

## Modifying a BuildAssembly in qbXML

Listing 28-8 shows a BuildAssemblyMod request that sets new values for the Memo and QuantityToBuild fields. The edit sequence was obtained from a previous BuildAssemblyQuery.

---

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 28-8 Constructing a BuildAssemblyMod in qbXML

```
<?qbxml version="5.0"?>
<QBXML>
<QBXMLMsgsRq onError="continueOnError">
    <BuildAssemblyModRq>
        <BuildAssemblyMod>
            <TxnID>25-1130282678</TxnID>
            <EditSequence>1130282678</EditSequence>
            <Memo>Built from component list 2</Memo>
            <QuantityToBuild>4</QuantityToBuild>
        </BuildAssemblyMod>
    </BuildAssemblyModRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>
```

## Modifying a BuildAssembly in QBFC

---

Listing 28-9 shows a self-contained procedure that

- Opens a connection with QuickBooks
- Queries for build assembly transactions that fall within the specified date range
- Arbitrarily picks the first transaction from the query and saves its TxnID and edit sequence for the upcoming mod request
- Issues a mod request using the TxnID and edit sequence obtained in the query, modifying the memo and the quantity
- Shows the results, and closes the connection.

Notice that the query specifies that only TxnID and EditSequence (via IncludeRetElement) is to be returned in the response because that is all we need from the query.

---

### Listing 28-9 Querying for a BuildAssembly Transaction and modifying it

```
Public Sub QBFC_ModBuildAssembly()

    Dim SessionManager As QBSessionManager
    Set SessionManager = New QBSessionManager
    SessionManager.OpenConnection "", "IDN Mod Build Assembly Sample"
    SessionManager.BeginSession "", omDontCare

    Dim requestMsgSet As IMsgSetRequest
    Set requestMsgSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 5, 0)
    ' Initialize the message set request's attributes
    requestMsgSet.Attributes.OnError = roeStop

    'First we query QB for build assembly transactions within a date range
    Dim BuildAssmbyQuery As IBuildAssemblyQuery
    Set BuildAssmbyQuery = requestMsgSet.AppendBuildAssemblyQueryRq
    BuildAssmbyQuery.IncludeRetElementList.Add ("EditSequence")
    BuildAssmbyQuery.IncludeRetElementList.Add ("TxnID")
    BuildAssmbyQuery.ORBuildAssemblyQuery.BuildAssemblyFilter.
        ORDateRangeFilter.TxnDateRangeFilter.ORTxnDateRangeFilter.
        TxnDateFilter.FromTxnDate.setValue ("2005-10-25")
    BuildAssmbyQuery.ORBuildAssemblyQuery.BuildAssemblyFilter.
        ORDateRangeFilter.TxnDateRangeFilter.ORTxnDateRangeFilter.
        TxnDateFilter.ToTxnDate.setValue ("2005-10-26")

    Dim responseMsgSet As IMsgSetResponse
    Set responseMsgSet = SessionManager.DoRequests(requestMsgSet)
    Dim response As IResponse

    ' ResponseList contains one response, because we made one request
    Set response = responseMsgSet.ResponseList.GetAt(0)
```

```

'Make sure there is data first
If response.Detail Is Nothing Then
    MsgBox "No Detail available"
    Exit Sub
End If

'This is a query, so the response detail is a ret list
Dim BuildAssemblyRetList As IBuildAssemblyRetList
Dim BuildAssemblyRet As IBuildAssemblyRet
Set BuildAssemblyRetList = response.Detail

'Potentially many transactions in the retlist: we get the first one
'for our convenience: you'll do something smarter or let the user pick
Set BuildAssemblyRet = BuildAssemblyRetList.GetAt(0)

'Save the TxnID and EditSequence: we need 'em for our mod request
Dim TransID As String
Dim EditSeq As String
TransID = BuildAssemblyRet.TxnID.getValue
EditSeq = BuildAssemblyRet.EditSequence.getValue
'clear the message set so we can re-stuff it with the mod request
requestMsgSet.ClearRequests

' Add the request to the message set request object
Dim BuildAssmbyMod As IBuildAssemblyMod
Set BuildAssmbyMod = requestMsgSet.AppendBuildAssemblyModRq

'Set the properties in the BuildAssembly mod object
BuildAssmbyMod.TxnID.setValue (TransID)
BuildAssmbyMod.EditSequence.setValue (EditSeq)
BuildAssmbyMod.TxnDate.setValue ("2005-10-25")
BuildAssmbyMod.Memo.setValue ("Build from component list 4")
BuildAssmbyMod.QuantityToBuild.setValue (5)

' Perform the request and obtain a response from QuickBooks
Set responseMsgSet = SessionManager.DoRequests(requestMsgSet)
MsgBox responseMsgSet.ToXMLString
' Close the session and connection with QuickBooks.
SessionManager.EndSession
SessionManager.CloseConnection
End Sub

```

## Querying for BuildAssembly Transactions

---

The BuildAssemblyQuery request provides functionality similar to the functionality found in the UI advanced Find feature, which is accessed by selecting (from the main QuickBooks menubar) Edit->Find->Advanced Find.

If you are familiar with QuickBooks queries in general, there is nothing tricky or special about this one. Notice however, that by default the component line items are included with each returned build assembly transaction.

## Querying For BuildAssembly Transactions in qbXML

---

Listing 28-10 shows a simple example of constructing a query in qbXML that queries for BuildAssembly transactions that were builds of the specified assembly item, that were built with the date range specified and that are currently not pending. For more information on building queries, including using iterators to manage large query returns, see Chapter 8, “Creating Queries.”

Listing 28-10 A simple BuildAssemblyQuery in qbXML

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="5.0"?>
  <QBXML>
    <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
      <BuildAssemblyQueryRq requestID = "0">
        <TxnDateRangeFilter>
          <FromTxnDate>2005-10-26</FromTxnDate>
          <ToTxnDate>2005-10-26</ToTxnDate>
        </TxnDateRangeFilter>
        <ItemFilter>
          <FullName>Metal Panel Assembly</FullName>
        </ItemFilter>
        <PendingStatus>NotPendingOnly</PendingStatus>
      </BuildAssemblyQueryRq>
    </QBXMLMsgsRq>
  </QBXML>
```

## Querying For BuildAssembly Transactions in QBFC

---

We’ve already shown an example of constructing a BuildAssemblyQuery and processing some of its response data in Listing 28-9.



# CHAPTER 29

## TAXES AND DISCOUNTS (US VERSIONS)

This chapter presents detailed information on how QuickBooks (United States) calculates sales tax. It also discusses how discounts (both taxable and nontaxable) are applied to sales tax calculations.

### Calculating Sales Tax

---

You can create a Sales Tax Group when you have one or more sales tax items to add to the group. When a Sales Tax Group is used for a transaction, the tax percentage displayed is the sum of all the tax percentages. However, using that group tax percentage to calculate sales tax doesn't necessarily reflect the correct total tax amount because of rounding that occurs when individual taxes are calculated. The following example illustrates this point.

As an example, suppose you have a state tax of 4 percent and a county tax of 1 percent. You create a Sales Tax Group to include both taxes. When that Sales Tax Group is used on an invoice, it is displayed as 5 percent.

Assume an invoice's taxable items total \$38.66. If you were to use the 5 percent tax value, you'd expect the tax to be \$1.9330, which would be rounded down to \$1.93. However, the invoice will actually show \$1.94, which is the correct amount. This number is correct because the state tax of 4 percent is \$1.5464, which rounds up to \$1.55. The county tax of 1 percent is \$0.3866, which rounds up to \$0.39. Adding the two taxes together, the total tax is \$1.94, which is the amount shown on the invoice.

Consequently, if your application computes sales tax, be sure to calculate each individual tax in a Sales Tax Group individually, then sum the individual results to obtain the correct total.

### Applying Multiple Taxes

---

This section discusses multiple taxes and invoices, but the discussion also applies to taxes on sales receipts.

In general, it's best to assign a tax item or tax group to an invoice and allow QuickBooks to apply the same tax to all taxable items on the invoice. In some situations, however, multiple taxes are required, so this method doesn't work. In such cases, you'll need to use techniques to apply the taxes as line items, and there are several important details to be aware of.

When you are applying taxes as line items, you can use only single tax items. Tax groups can be used only for the invoice as a whole. If you have multiple taxes that apply to all taxable items, plus one or more other taxes that apply only to some of the items on an invoice, it's better to use a tax group that applies to the entire invoice for the taxes that

apply to all taxable items. You can then apply the other taxes as line items within the invoice. Use the ItemSalesTaxRef aggregate to apply a tax or tax group to the entire invoice.

You can use subtotals to apply a single tax line to multiple items in an invoice, but the tax is only applied automatically for the first tax line after the subtotal line. You need to manually supply the tax amount for any other tax lines that need to be applied to the subtotal line. If you don't supply an amount, the amount comes out as zero and the tax line is useless. When you do supply an amount, the amount of tax on the subtotal also shows up in the rate column for that tax line. There isn't any way for the rate to show up as anything other than the amount of the tax.

For example, in the following invoice, Tax 1 (5%) is applied automatically. The rate shows up as 5% and the amount is calculated as \$15.00. Tax 2 (6%), however, is provided by you as an amount of \$18.00 (in the third column). The Rate also shows up as \$18.00, and is filled in by QuickBooks. There is no visual representation of the rate for the second tax (6%).

Item	Rate	Amount
Item 1	\$100.00	\$100.00
Item 2	\$200.00	\$200.00
Subtotal		\$300.00
Tax 1	5%	\$15.00
Tax 2	\$18.00 (QuickBooks fills in this value)	\$18.00

#### **IMPORTANT**

If you have a complicated tax situation where no single tax applies to all taxable items on the invoice, you must choose a zero percent tax to apply to the entire invoice. It is recommended that you name such a tax item "Tax Calculated on Invoice" so that it's clear that the tax is not being applied by QuickBooks to the entire invoice.

## Applying Discounts

Flat discounts are applied differently than percentage discounts are applied. In addition, nontaxable discounts are applied differently than taxable discounts are applied.

## Flat vs. Percentage Discounts

---

A *percentage discount* applies only to the line directly above it. As a result, all of the tax implications for a percentage discount apply only to that line. In contrast, *flat discounts* apply to all lines recorded above the discount. Flat discounts are pro-rated among the items they apply to.

In the following example, the \$20.00 discount is properly distributed to be half taxable and half nontaxable. The taxable amount for the discount is only \$10.00.

Item	Amount	Taxable?
Item 1	\$100.00	Nontaxable
Item 2	\$100.00	Taxable
Discount	\$20.00	Taxable

The following discussion shows how QuickBooks calculates both taxable and nontaxable flat discounts. A nontaxable discount is applied *after* sales tax. A taxable discount is applied *before* sales tax. Both taxes are prorated among the items they apply to.

## Nontaxable Flat Discount

---

Consider an invoice with the following items:

Item	Amount	Taxable?
Item 1	\$100.00	Taxable
Item 2	\$200.00	Taxable
Discount	\$30.00	Nontaxable

The sales tax (5%) in this example is calculated by QuickBooks as the sum of each

(line item \* tax)

which equals a total of \$315.00. The discount of \$30.00 is then subtracted, which yields a total due of \$285.

### **NOTE**

Do not use nontaxable discounts unless discounts in your state are never applied to sales tax.

## Taxable Flat Discount

---

A taxable discount is applied before sales tax is calculated. Using the previous example, the tax is calculated as follows:

$(\$100 - \$10) * .05 + (\$200 - \$20) * .05 = \$13.50$  sales tax

which equals a total due of \$283.50 on this invoice after discount and tax are applied.

-

# CHAPTER 30

## REMOTE DATA SHARING AND YOUR APPLICATION

This chapter describes what QuickBooks Remote Data Sharing (RDS) is, how to support it, and how to distribute it.

### What is Remote Data Sharing?

---

QuickBooks Remote Data Sharing is software that allows an integrated application to communicate transparently with QuickBooks company files on another machine in a network (typically a LAN). The communication is transparent because the application itself is not aware that it is accessing QuickBooks remotely.

The RDS software must be distributed with your application. It consists of two components: the RDS server and the RDS client. The RDS server must be installed on a machine on which QuickBooks is installed. (QuickBooks need not be running, depending on the access mode selected at the RDS server.) The RDS client must be installed on the machine that is running your application.

### Using RDS Client for Remote Access with QuickBooks Installed Locally

---

Beginning with qbXML 4.0, the RDS client can be running on a machine that also has QuickBooks installed. In this scenario, your application can access either the local QuickBooks or the remote RDS server, depending on how you invoke the OpenConnection2 call (available starting with qbXML 4.0).

OpenConnection2 accepts an additional parameter titled connType which has possible value of ctUnknown, ctLocalQBD, ctRemoteQBD, or ctLocalQBDLaunchUI. If your application is in a machine that runs RDS Client it could use ctRemoteQBD to set its connection to RDS Client. For QuickBooks, the value would be ctLocalQBD.

### RDS and Event Notification

---

RDS does not support event notification. That is, remote applications are not notified about events occurring at the remote company files. For more information, please see the chapter “Event Notification” elsewhere in this document.

## Compatibility with Older Versions of RDS

---

The SDK provides RDS installers for both the RDS 2.1 client and the RDS 3.0 client. The 3.0 client uses the new Request Processor QBXMLRP2 which supports the new QuickBooks SDK 3.0 features. The 2.1 client is provided to support developers who continue to use QBXMLRP.

## About the RDS Server

---

The RDS server sits along side QuickBooks and acts as its gatekeeper. Any integrated application on another machine (called a “remote application” in this chapter) that wants to access QuickBooks must first pass through the RDS server.

### **Installation and Setup**

The RDS server must be installed on the machine where QuickBooks resides. (See “Distributing RDS” for more information on how to install the RDS server.)

After the RDS server has been installed, it must be configured via the Setup dialog. This dialog can be displayed either automatically by the installer or manually by the user. (See “Distributing RDS” for more information on installation options.)

The Setup dialog enables the user to establish an RDS login and password. The RDS login and password, which are distinct from QuickBooks logins, serve to protect the user from unknown applications gaining access to QuickBooks. Only remote applications for which the user supplies the correct RDS login and password will have their requests forwarded on to QuickBooks. (See “Using the RDS Client” for information on entering the RDS login and password.)

#### **NOTE**

After setting up the initial RDS login/password pair, the user can create additional login pairs, or make changes to existing pairs, from the RDS server user interface.

### **Access Rights Within QuickBooks**

The RDS server acts as a proxy for all remote applications that access QuickBooks. As a result, the RDS server, itself, is considered an integrated application by QuickBooks. So, the first time the RDS server is started with a particular QuickBooks company file, it must be granted permission to access that file by the QuickBooks user.

In the process of granting the RDS server access to QuickBooks, the user also indicates whether or not to permit access to certain personal data, such as social security numbers. Since the RDS server acts on behalf of all remote applications, the access rights granted by the user to the RDS server apply to all remote applications.

**NOTE**

RDS access to some of this personal data can be limited in QuickBooks itself by unchecking the checkbox labeled "Allow this application to access Social Security numbers and other personal data." Notice that this setting will apply to all applications that access this QuickBooks company file via RDS.

## Access Modes and Company Files

The RDS server supports two access modes: one that uses the currently open company file with QuickBooks running and one that uses one or more specified company files directly, without QuickBooks running. You choose the access mode from the RDS server console by clicking Change Options and then selecting the desired access mode.

In the access mode where any of the list of specified company files can be used, one or more company files must be added to the list before remote applications can access them. The process of adding a company file to the list requires that company file to be open in QuickBooks and the RDS server must then be granted automatic login rights in that company file. (The company file name must be unique in that list.) Subsequent to this addition process, QuickBooks does not run, but remote applications use any company file in the list directly. In this access mode, the RDS server can be set up to start automatically whenever Windows starts.

## Using the RDS Server

If the access mode in effect is the one that requires a currently open QuickBooks company file, the user must explicitly start QuickBooks and open a company file, and then start the RDS server, (the user must have already authorized RDS access to the currently open QuickBooks company file) before the RDS server can begin handling requests from remote applications.

If the access mode in effect is the one that uses company files from the specified list without QuickBooks running, the RDS server must be running and then automatically provides access to any of the company files upon requests from remote applications.

Once the RDS server has been successfully started, it listens at the established port for incoming requests from remote applications until the user explicitly stops it. Notice that the port value can be changed (by the user). However, the use of the default is recommended.

**NOTE**

The default port address is the port officially registered for RDS. However, if the user must change the default port for some reason, such as conflicts, the user can change it to any available value.

If a remote application has specified the company file name in the Request Processor's BeginSession method, this name must match the name of the currently running company file, although the paths can be different, if the first access mode is in effect. If the second access mode is in effect, the company file name specified in the Request Processor's BeginSession method must match the name of a company file in the RDS server's list of company files.

## About the RDS Client

---

The RDS client enables the user to set attributes needed for the integrated applications on this machine to access QuickBooks on a remote machine. Furthermore, it makes sure that these integrated applications don't have to change in order to access QuickBooks remotely.

### **Installation and Setup**

The RDS client must be installed on each machine where your application is installed and running. For SDK 3.0 and greater, the RDS client can be installed on machines that have QuickBooks installed: for SDK 2.1, the RDS client installation continues to disallow installation if QuickBooks is installed on the same machine. For 2.1 RDS clients, if the user installs QuickBooks on the same machine after installing the RDS client, all integrated applications on this machine will simply use the local copy of QuickBooks, not the one on the remote machine.

#### **NOTE**

If QuickBooks Basic is installed, RDS will automatically be used, not QuickBooks Basic.

If the SDK 3.0 or greater RDS client is installed on a machine with QuickBooks, and the qbXML supported is 4.0 or greater, either the local QuickBooks can be used or RDS, depending on the connType parameter supplied in the call to OpenConnection2. (See "Using RDS Client for Remote Access with QuickBooks Installed Locally" (page 391) for more information.) If qbXML 4.0 and greater is not supported, the local QuickBooks will automatically be used.

After the RDS client is installed, it must be configured via the Setup dialog. This dialog can be displayed either automatically by the installer or manually by the user. (See "Distributing RDS" for more information on installation options.)

The Setup dialog enables the user to supply the network machine name and port of the machine where QuickBooks and the RDS server are running. If the RDS server is started, the user can try to retrieve this information by using the built-in server discovery mechanism. Or, this information can also be found on the RDS server's main window.

#### **NOTE**

The server port field contains a default value matching the default value in the RDS server installation. The user can change this, but shouldn't unless required to by conflicts or other such considerations.

### **Using the RDS Client**

Before the RDS client can be used by your application to send remote requests to QuickBooks, the user must start the RDS server on the host machine. In addition, if the access mode selected at the RDS server is for the “currently open company file” then the user must also start QuickBooks and open the company file.

Unlike the RDS server, however, the RDS client does not have to be started explicitly by the user. Instead, once the Setup dialog has been completed, the user simply runs your application. Then, when your application makes its initial call to QuickBooks, the user will be prompted to enter the RDS login and password.

If the user chooses to always allow access, then no further interaction with the RDS client is required. The exception to this is if the user changes any relevant information, such as the password. In a case like this, the user would have to enter the new information the next time your application calls QuickBooks, or before.

On the other hand, if the user chooses to allow access this time only, then a prompt to enter the RDS login and password will be displayed each time your application is run and it calls QuickBooks for the first time.

Although it's normally not the case, there are a few situations in which the user would want to explicitly run the RDS client, including:

- Changing the login and/or password to match a change on the RDS server.
- Changing the server name and/or port to reflect a change on the RDS server or a change of the server machine, itself.
- Changing the access level of a particular application (for example, from always allow access to prompt each time).

## **Distributing RDS**

The material on how to distribute your application is divided into two main sections:

- Background information on the SDK installers and merge modules, including legal requirements you *must* be aware of.
- Recommended and required features of your own implementation.

Please read both of these sections carefully before implementing your installation.

## How to Use the SDK Installers and Merge Modules

---

There are only two supported ways in which you can redistribute RDS components:

1. You can use the RDS standalone compressed-image installers that we provide.
2. You can use the RDS merge modules that we provide.

### **NOTE**

You can mix these methods if you want; for example, you can use the supplied RDS standalone installer for the server and the supplied merge module for the client, or vice versa.

### **IMPORTANT**

*It is a violation of your qbXML license agreement to redistribute RDS without using either our standalone installers or our merge modules.*

Automatic installation programs and packaging wizards, such as the wizard in Microsoft® Visual Studio®, will not do the right thing (even if you are using .NET). They will redistribute the qbxmlrp.dll file, which is against your license agreement and could also cause significant problems for your users.

### **Using the Standalone Installers**

If your install process does not support merge modules, you will need to use the standalone installers provided with the SDK. These installers will automatically do the right thing.

### **Using the Merge Modules**

### **IMPORTANT**

Make sure you have the Microsoft VC (VC\_CRT.msm), VC++ (VC\_STL.msm), and VC I/O (VC\_CRT\_IO.msm) runtime library merge modules, which are required because the SDK merge modules install components that depend on the Visual C and C++ version 7 runtime libraries. These Microsoft merge modules are included with most MSI-based install builders, or you can get them directly from Microsoft. When you add the VC\_CRT.msm, VC\_STL.msm, and VC\_CRT\_IO.msm modules to the installer you are responsible for configuring them to set their target directory to the Windows system directory.

If your install process supports Microsoft merge modules, you can use the merge modules that are provided with SDK.

## **What Is a Merge Module?**

The Microsoft Installer (MSI) service is built into Windows 2000 and XP. MSI solves a number of installation problems, such as getting clean uninstalls and protecting system components, and includes redistributable install engines that support Win98, WinNT, and Win ME. To get a “Designed for Windows” logo, your application must be installed using MSI.

Merge modules are a key part of MSI. They encode the logic and files needed to correctly redistribute shared components, which aren’t removed from a system until all of the applications that installed them are removed.

Any installation that is built for an MSI-engine installer can use merge modules. Many proprietary install tools that are not strictly based on MSI (for example, newer versions of InstallShield Professional) can also take advantage of merge modules.

## **How Do I Use a Merge Module from the SDK?**

The SDK merge modules are located in the `../tools/MergeModules` folder. Here’s how to use them:

1. Set your installation development tool to include the SDK’s `MergeModules` directory in the `MergeModule` search path.
2. Each MSI “feature” refers to components and/or merge modules. For any feature that installs components of your application that depend on the SDK capabilities provided by a merge module, specify that particular merge module as part of that feature. If a merge module is dependent on some other module, the other module will be added to your installer automatically.
3. Build your installation as usual. All the logic from the included merge modules will be merged into your install.

## **What Installation Logic Is Built into the Provided Merge Modules?**

The RDS merge modules do five things:

1. They provide the appropriate DLL files and executable files for the RDS Server or Client (as two separate merge modules) and register them appropriately.
2. They install a link to their configuration utility on the desktop and in the QuickBooks area of the Windows Start menu.
3. They check whether QuickBooks is installed.
  - > If the RDS Server is being installed, a version of QuickBooks that supports the SDK must already be installed.
  - > If the 2.1 RDS Client is being installed, QuickBooks must *not* be installed: for 3.0 RDS clients, the installation is performed whether QuickBooks is installed or not.
4. They verify that their counterpart (RDS Server or RDS Client) is not installed. (If it were possible to install both the RDS Server and Client, the user could create an infinite data-sharing loop that would never leave the system.)
5. The RDS merge modules contain a custom action to invoke the appropriate configuration UI for the RDS Server or Client but DO NOT add that custom action to the install sequence itself. If you create your own MSI installer that uses an RDS merge

module, you may want to add the configuration custom action to the install sequence or to invoke the action as the result of a button push in the install wizard. For example, the QBSDK installer invokes the appropriate configuration UI via a “DoAction” event when the “Finish” button is pressed if the “Configure RDS” checkbox on the final dialog is checked.

## Choices in Implementing Your Installer

---

You can use either the simple method, which is to use the standalone installers supplied with the QuickBooks SDK, or you can use the more flexible merge modules, which are also supplied with the SDK.

### **Simplest Method: Using the Standalone RDS Installers**

The simplest way to install RDS for users is for your installer to invoke the RDS client installer from your own application installer because the RDS client is installed on the same system as your application. Also, you should provide the RDS server installer on your own distribution CD with instructions for running the RDS server install on a machine running QuickBooks.

### **More Flexibility: Using the RDS Merge Modules**

If you require more flexibility than using the prebuilt standalone installers, and you are using a modern install tool such as InstallShield Express, InstallShield Developer, Wise Installer, and so on, you can use the RDS MSI merge modules provided in the SDK. Unlike many merge modules which simply install and register COM servers, the RDS merge modules offer considerably more pre-built capabilities as described in the following subsection.

All of the merge module behavior described is mirrored in the standalone installers. Furthermore, the .msi database for each standalone installer can be extracted from the RDSClient.exe or RDSServer.exe files and the tables can be examined to see precisely how the capabilities of the merge module are leveraged by the standalone installers.

### **Verifying Presence/Absence of QuickBooks**

For the RDS server install, the merge modules verify whether QuickBooks is already installed on the system. For the 3.0 client, there is no check for QuickBooks, as the installation succeeds whether QuickBooks is installed or not. For the 2.1 RDS client install there is a check to determine whether QuickBooks is already installed on the system: installation of the 2.1 client is not allowed if QuickBooks is installed. This is a mandatory step that the merge module forces into the install sequence. If the client and/or server merge module is included in an installer, then the QuickBooks verification custom action will set the property “QuickBooksInstalled” to 1 if QuickBooks is installed, otherwise it will either not be present at all or will not be set to 1.

Accordingly, an installer using either (or both) RDS merge module can determine whether QuickBooks is installed by checking the condition “QuickBooksInstalled=1” (to verify QuickBooks is there) or “NOT QuickBooksInstalled=1” (to verify QuickBooks is NOT there).

#### **Informing Users of Error Conditions via Error Dialogs**

The merge modules include dialogs explaining why the client or server cannot be installed because QuickBooks is (not) already installed. These are named “ClientQuickBooksInstalled” and “ServerQuickBooksNotInstalled,” respectively.

These dialogs should be inserted into the install UI sequence so that they appear either just before the main wizard sequence begins or just after. The “Next” button performs an EndDialog action with the return argument allowing the sequence to proceed normally, while the “Cancel” button performs an EndDialog action with the exit argument that reflects the user’s desire to quit the installation at that point.

#### **Using Custom Actions to Invoke Setup Dialogs**

The merge modules provide custom actions to invoke the client or server initialization/setup dialogs. These are called “ClientInitialize” and “ServerInitialize,” respectively. The intent here is for the “Finish” button on the last dialog of an install wizard sequence to include a “DoAction” event that conditionally (see “Verifying Presence/Absence of QuickBooks” above) invokes the appropriate custom action.

## **Supporting RDS**

---

In order to support RDS, you need to distribute it with your application, inform your customers about it, and be aware of certain new messages that appear with the use of RDS for existing QuickBooks HRESULTs.

### **What Your Application Must Do to Use RDS**

---

Applications need not be aware that they are using QuickBooks locally or remotely. Accordingly, you are not required to code your applications differently to use RDS. However, if you want your application to support a user’s choice of either accessing QuickBooks remotely (via the RDS server) or the local QuickBooks on the same machine, you can check for the user’s choice and invoke OpenConnection2 accordingly, as described under “Using RDS Client for Remote Access with QuickBooks Installed Locally” (page 391). Of course, using OpenConnection2 is only possible with QuickBooks 2005 and greater versions.

You must be aware that RDS is not made available directly to users. Instead, you must include the RDS software with your own application when you distribute it. Pre-built installation merge modules and standalone installers are included with the QuickBooks SDK for this purpose.

For more information on how to use the merge modules and installers, see “Distributing RDS.”

**NOTE**

Although no HRESULTs values have changed with the use of RDS, some of the HRESULTs may be slightly different when RDS is used. See “RDS-Specific HRESULTs Messages” in this chapter.

## Which Versions of QuickBooks Support RDS?

---

Any version of QuickBooks that supports the QuickBooks SDK will also support RDS.

## What You Need to Tell Your Customers about RDS

---

You should be aware that although your customers know about your application, they may not know about RDS. You may want to include mention of RDS and its behaviors in your documentation and online help. Otherwise, they may be confused when they see the RDS dialogs during the installation and use of your products.

In particular, you should be careful to warn them about the access granted to the RDS server and that it grants to all RDS clients the same QuickBooks access as that possessed by the logged in QuickBooks server, potentially to sensitive data such as payroll or other personal data.

## RDS-Specific HRESULTs Messages

---

The following table lists the existing HRESULTs that have new messages if the error occurs when RDS is being used. The table shows the existing HRESULT and the new messages for RDS.

<b>HRESULTs</b>	<b>New RDS-Specific Messages</b>
0x80040402	Remote QuickBooks access failed unexpectedly.
0x80040407	Error retrieving the QuickBooks remote server name and port.
0x8004040D	Remote QuickBooks access failed because the remote server name and/or port have changed.
0x80040414	A modal dialog box is showing in the QuickBooks Remote Data Sharing Client user interface. The application cannot access QuickBooks until the dialog is dismissed.
0x8004041A	Remote QuickBooks access failed because login and/or password do not match those on the server.
0x8004041D	The RDS server was not enabled to allow remote access for the requested company file.

<b>HRESULTs</b>	<b>New RDS-Specific Messages</b>
0x80040420	The user has denied remote access to QuickBooks.
0x80040421	Unable to establish a remote connection to QuickBooks.



# CHAPTER 31

## Error Recovery

This chapter provides details on the general error recovery mechanism provided by the QB SDK. The easiest recovery method is available via QBFC, if you are using that. QBFC automates most of what you need to do. However, in this chapter we'll cover both QBFC and qbXML methods.

## The General Error Recovery Mechanism

---

If your application adds, deletes, voids, or modifies data in the QuickBooks company file, you need to implement an error recovery routine. This routine enables your application to respond to and recover from conditions that interrupt normal processing of requests and responses. Examples of such error conditions include system crashes and power outages as well as internal system errors and out-of-memory conditions.

A simple error recovery routine asks QuickBooks to save its state, so that when a processing error occurs, you can ask QuickBooks to check its state and it can return status information to you about the request in question. For example, suppose your application sends a CheckAdd request to QuickBooks. The ProcessRequest method (or DoRequests method for QBFC) fails to return a response or result code. What should your application do? Does it assume the check was created? Does it assume the check wasn't created? Either assumption, if incorrect, will cause problems. The correct approach is for your application to invoke an error recovery routine that checks the status of the CheckAdd request and determines whether processing succeeded or failed before it asks QuickBooks to add the check a second time.

If your application is a read-only application (that is, the only requests it sends are query requests), then you do not need to implement an error recovery routine.

### When to Invoke Error Recovery

---

When you receive an error from QuickBooks that indicates an error in processing a request, or when you do not receive a response from QuickBooks at all, your application needs to invoke its error recovery routine. In addition, if your application adds, deletes, modifies, or voids data in the QuickBooks company file, it should invoke its error recovery routine upon startup, in case the previous session terminated before all outstanding requests were successfully processed.

### HRESULTS Returned by QuickBooks

---

Applications integrating with QuickBooks should invoke their error recovery routine when any of the following error conditions occurs:

- Your application did not receive a response from QuickBooks.
- Your application received one of the following `HRESULTS`:
  - > `0x80040402` (*Unexpected error. Check the `qbSDKLog.txt` file for possible, additional information.*)
  - > `0x8004040E` (*There is not enough memory to complete the request.*)
  - > `0x8004041C` (*An internal QuickBooks error occurred while trying to access the company data file.*)
- Your application received a response, but it did not include the qbXML response text stream that was expected.

## Automated Error Recovery in QBFC

QBFC automates the SDK error-recovery mechanism described later in this chapter (see “Using Error Recovery in qbXML-based Applications”) by automatically managing the new `MessageSetID` and `oldMessageSetID` attributes and by saving the request message set to disk. This enables your application to determine which request corresponds to the response status that the error-recovery feature returns.

*For QuickBooks*, QBFC error-recovery information is unique to a given integrated application (via a GUID specified by `ErrorRecoveryID`) and company file. As a result, a session must be started before certain QBFC error-recovery functions can be executed. (Only `EnableErrorRecovery`, `ErrorRecoveryID`, and `SaveAllMsgSetRequestInfo` can be executed before a session is started.)

### **NOTE**

QBFC automated error recovery is available only for *data* message sets (not for subscription and event messages).

## Implementing Automated Error Recovery

In general, these are the steps you need to follow to use QBFC’s automated error recovery in your application:

1. Set the error recovery ID, using the `ErrorRecoveryID` function.
2. Set `EnableErrorRecovery` to `true` to enable error recovery.
3. Set `SaveAllMsgSetRequestInfo` to `true` so the entire contents of the `MsgSetRequest` will be saved to disk. If `Save All MsgSetRequestInfo` is `false` (the default), only the `NewMessageSetID` will be saved.
4. Use `IsErrorRecoveryInfo` to check whether an unprocessed response exists. If `IsErrorRecoveryInfo` is `true`:
  - a. Get the response status, using `GetErrorRecoveryStatus`.
  - b. Get the saved request, using `GetSavedMsgSetRequest`.
  - c. Process the response, possibly using the saved request.
  - d. Clear the response status, using `ClearErrorRecovery`.

5. Send the current request set.
6. Process the response from the current request.
7. Clear the response status, using ClearErrorRecovery.

#### **Error Recovery and Query Requests**

Generally, error recovery is not used with query requests. If your application does not receive a response from a query request, you would usually just resubmit the query. We recommend that your application disable error recovery before querying, and then re-enable it before starting other requests.

## Using Error Recovery in qbXML-based Applications

---

If your application doesn't use QBFC, you'll have to do more work in implementing error recovery. You'll need to know a few things that are simply done automatically and behind the scenes for QBFC.

### Error Recovery Using Old and New Message IDs

---

The QuickBooks SDK error recovery mechanism employs two attributes: *newMessageSetID* and *oldMessageSetID*. Message set IDs need to be unique strings and are limited to 23 characters. (The colon, backward slash, and forward slash cannot be used in these IDs.) The *newMessageSetID* identifies the current message and enables the error recovery mechanism by signaling to QuickBooks that you want it to save the state of this message.

When you are sure QuickBooks has successfully processed a given message set, you send the message ID as the *oldMessageSetID* attribute, which has the effect of asking QuickBooks to clear that ID and associated data from its saved state.

Your application is responsible for generating the message set IDs, which must be unique within your application space. How you generate the value for the message ID is application-specific. For instance, you might use a language-dependent tool to generate the value. (The tool should ensure a unique value, not just a randomly generated one.)

### How to Clear All Error Recovery Information

---

In some circumstances, you may need to delete all error recovery information that applies to your applications. To do this, simply set the *oldMessageSetID* value to *ClearAllMessageSets*. (*oldMessageSetID* = *ClearAllMessageSets*).

### Steps for Using Error Recovery in qbXML-based Applications

---

The following steps outline a general procedure for implementing error recovery within your application. First, steps 1 through 6 describe what your application needs to do during normal, successful processing of a request.

1. Create a unique *newMessageSetID*.
2. Create the request message set, including the *newMessageSetID* attribute, and save the request message set in some persistent form. (Be sure to encrypt company file data or otherwise ensure that it is secure and not accessible from the file system.)
3. Send the request message set.
4. Receive the response and process it.
5. If the response is successfully processed, delete the persistent copy of the request message set.
6. Clear the *oldMessageSetID* (this is the “*newMessageSetID*” you used in Step 2).

If a crash or other processing error occurs, you will need to invoke your error recovery routine. Here are the general steps:

1. At startup, check for a saved request message set. (If the request message set is still save on disk—step 2, above—it was never cleared. This condition indicates some problem with normal processing outlined in steps 1 through 6.)

If a saved request message set is present, **resend** the request set. This action has the effect of performing a status check for the message set. (See Table 31-2.) If QuickBooks has already processed all or some of the request, it will return the status for it. If QuickBooks has not already processed the request, it will process it and send a response.

2. Based on the response from QuickBooks, you will need to fix the problem, if there is one. (If you just keep sending the same request without fixing problems, you’ll be in an endless loop.) After you’ve fixed or identified the problem, you need to generate a *new newMessageSetID*.
3. Repeat steps 2 through 6, (sending the revised request with its new *newMessageSetID* to QuickBooks).

## Example

---

Listing 31-1 shows an example of a CheckAdd request that includes a *newMessageSetID*. If an error in processing occurred and no response was received, the error recovery routine could send this same request again. If the request had been previously received, QuickBooks would interpret this second, identical request as a status check and would send back the response shown in Listing 31-2.

---

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 31-1 CheckAdd request with error recovery (newMessageSetID)

```
<QBXMLMsgsRq newMessageSetID = "DE9437D9-AA85-21E4-D643"
    onError="continueOnError">
    <CheckAddRq requestID = "1">
        <CheckAdd>
            <AccountRef>
                <FullName>Checking</FullName>
            </AccountRef>
            <PayeeEntityRef>
                <FullName>East Bayshore Auto Mall</FullName>
            </PayeeEntityRef>
            <TxnDate>2001-10-14</TxnDate>
            <Memo>Installment check</Memo>
            <ExpenseLineAdd>
                <AccountRef>
                    <FullName>Automobile</FullName>
                </AccountRef>
                <Amount>520.00</Amount>
            </ExpenseLineAdd>
        </CheckAdd>
    </CheckAddRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
```

---

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 31-2 Response to status check for CheckAdd request with error recovery (newMessageSetID)

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<QBXML>
    <QBXMLMsgsRs newMessageSetID="DE9437D9-AA85-21E4-D643"
        messageSetStatusCode="0">
        <CheckAddRs requestID="1" statusCode="0" statusSeverity="Info"
            statusMessage="Status OK"/>
    </QBXMLMsgsRs>
</QBXML>
```

---

## Message Set Status Code

A `messageSetStatusCode` is returned to your application in response to an error recovery request, such as a status check or a clear status. It is also returned if some specific error recovery operation is invoked and fails, such as a standard check for a valid message set ID; if the call fails, then a `messageSetStatusCode` is returned.

A `messageSetStatusCode` is not returned, for instance, if your application issues a check status request that returns successfully. It is good practice to test for this status code, regardless of the fact that in some cases it is not returned.

Table 31-1 shows the error recovery status codes and their meaning.

Table 31-1 Error recovery status codes returned in messageSetStatusCode

Code	Meaning
0	Success
600	The oldMessageSetID does not match any stored IDs, and no newMessageSetID is provided.
9001	Invalid checksum. The newMessageSetID specified matches the currently stored ID, but the checksum fails.
9002	No stored response was found.
9003	(Not used)
9004	Invalid MessageSetID (message set ID), greater than 24 characters was given.
9005	Unable to store response.

## Request ID

---

If you include a request ID in a request message, that ID will be returned in a status check request. This is a handy way to identify a request that was sent earlier. (See Listing 31-1 and Listing 31-2.)

## Comparing Requests (Performing a Checksum)

---

In certain cases when you send multiple requests with the same newMessageSetID, QuickBooks compares the two versions of the messages themselves by performing a checksum on them. If the messages do not match, QuickBooks returns an error (9001) because, even though the newMessageSetIDs were the same, the messages were different, so your intent is not clear. (If the messages match, then QuickBooks assumes you're performing a status check.)

## Status for Individual Requests within a Message Set

---

When a message set contains multiple requests, some of the requests may have been processed successfully before the error condition occurred. When error recovery is implemented (through use of newMessageSetID), applications integrating with QuickBooks receive individual status codes for each request within the message set, as shown in Listing 31-3.

---

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 31-3 Content of error recovery processing record returned by a status check

```
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRs newMessageSetID="DE9437D9-AA85-21E4=D643"
    messageSetStatusCode="0">
    <CheckAddRs requestID="345" statusCode="510"
      statusSeverity="Warning"
      statusMessage="Unable to return all data" />
    <AccountAddRs requestID = "346" statusCode = "0"
      statusSeverity = "Info"
      statusMessage = "Status OK" />
    <CustomerModRs requestID = "347" statusCode = "0"
      statusSeverity = "Info"
      statusMessage = "Status OK" />
    <CheckAddRs requestID="348" statusCode="3231"
      statusSeverity="error"
      statusMessage="This request has not been processed" />
  </QBXMLMsgsRs>
</QBXML>
```

Listing 31-3 contains the following status information:

- The `messageSetStatusCode` is 0, indicating that the status check for the request message set was successful.
- The response message set contains four response messages.
  - > `CheckAddRs` returned with a warning status (510).
  - > `AccountAddRs` completed successfully with a status code of 0 (success).
  - > `CustomerModRs` also completed with a status code of 0 (success).
  - > An error condition occurred while the last message in the request message set was being processed. Thus, the final `CheckAddRs` request was not processed. QuickBooks returned a status code of 3231 (with a status severity of `Error`). The associated message text explains that the request was not processed, so you know you would need to resend that request only.

---

## Clearing State (oldMessageSetID)

Once you know that a particular request has been processed successfully, you'll want to delete your saved copy of the request and send a message to QuickBooks to clear the old message set ID and associated status information that has been stored. Listing 31-4 shows one way to clear the `oldMessageSetID` and status information.

---

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 31-4 Clearing the oldMessageSetID

```
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq  oldMessageSetID = "DE9437D9-AA85-21E4-D643"
    onError = "continueOnError"/>
</QBXML>
```

Table 31-2 Summary: Use of New and Old Message Set IDs

If your request includes . . .	QuickBooks does this	<b>messageSetStatusCode</b> returned . . .
A brand new <b>newMessageSetID</b> .	Executes the request and stores state for this message ID	status=0.
A newMessageSetID that has already been sent in a previous message.	Status check. (Also does checksum on the two messages that use the same newMessageSetID.)	If checksum is OK, returns status=0. If checksum fails, returns status=9001.
<b>oldMessageSetID = newMessageSetID</b>  (Both are included in same request; ID has already been sent in a previous message.)	Status check.	status=0 (If ID can't be found, returns status 9002).
Only an <b>oldMessageSetID</b> .	Clears state for this message ID.	status=0 (If old ID can't be found, returns status=600;).
<b>oldMessageSetID = ClearAllMessageSets</b>	If you receive status code 9005, issue this request, which deletes all recovery records for this application.	status=0 if the records are deleted. (If no records exist to be deleted or an error occurs during deletion, returns status=600.)
<b>oldMessageSetID = XXX</b> <b>newMessageSetID = YYY</b>  (oldMessageSetID was sent previously and newMessageSetID is new.)	Clears state for the oldMessageSetID. Executes the request. Stores state for the newMessageSetID	status=0;

## Maintaining State within Your Application

---

What constitutes an application's internal state in regard to error recovery will vary from one application to another based on how the application uses and stores request and response data. For instance, many applications maintain temporarily the following information:

- A message ID of the most recent request message set sent
- Contents of the most recent message request
- The most recently received response

Although QuickBooks allocates the memory for the response object on behalf of the application, the application processes the content and then uses it according to its implementation and features. It may discard the response, it may preserve it in a database, it may display it to the user in some form. In any case, it is the application's responsibility to release the memory used for the response data.

The only hard and fast guideline is that you should not clear state too early in your process. Be certain that your application is finished with the request to which the internal state to be cleared pertains. Here are more extensive ideas:

- An application should preserve the `newMessageSetID` of a request message set until it has received a response from QuickBooks and processed the results of that response. Even though an error condition might not have occurred, for other reasons you might deem it useful for your application to check status in a request message set. In this case, you might want the application to avoid disposing of the message ID until just before it exits its error recovery routine.
- Recall that whenever a `ProcessRequest` (or `DoRequests` or `Post`) call is made to QuickBooks, it is subject to the possibility of an interruptive error condition. For this reason, some applications might consider preserving the message ID until after the clear state request returns successfully. An application not deleting the message ID until after clearing the processing state in QuickBooks would need to be careful not to misinterpret the message ID. That is, it must not mistakenly handle that message ID as if it were meaningful in any other context before actually deleting it.
- After sending a processing request, your application should always check returned status. If the returned status indicates problems, an application might call its handler routine for the condition.  
If the `ProcessRequest` call completed successfully, an application should process the returned response, handling all status codes and data.

## Clearing Error Recovery Records Maintained by QuickBooks

QuickBooks maintains a finite number of error recovery processing records for your application in association with the company file that your application is modifying. If an error condition occurs that interrupts processing, your application can retrieve this stored information because it is associated with the message ID you specified along with the request message set to be processed.

The best practice to follow is to always clear error recovery processing state information from QuickBooks when your application is entirely finished with the response to the request.

For all requests except the one during which the error condition occurred, an application should already have complete information on the processing state of the request. The application might either have received that information in a normal response from QuickBooks or it might have sent QuickBooks a check status request to obtain the information. Thus, the information stored in QuickBooks for these requests is no longer needed for error recovery.

If your application does not regularly clear the processing state for requests maintained by QuickBooks, QuickBooks will eventually delete older records to allow for addition of new ones. Just as an operating system must clear memory from time to time to free up system resources, QuickBooks must ensure that resources are available for addition of new error recovery processing state records to accommodate new requests.



# CHAPTER 32

## HOW TO USE THE QBFC CONVENIENCE LIBRARY

If you are comfortable using XML simply using the qbXML requests may be the way for you to implement your application. However, for many programmers, QBFC provides a faster and easier way to write an application.

This chapter describes the QBFC objects and methods you need to use to create and send requests to QuickBooks and to process the data returned. It points you to the API Reference for the details you need and also mentions how to use the API Reference to look up this information. Although the important objects and methods not covered in the API Reference are described in this chapter, you'll notice that this chapter does not list every possible object, property, and method. There are a couple of reasons for this approach:

- First, there is really no need to do this: the objects and methods are available in the type library and can be seen via an object browser (such as Microsoft's OLEView included with Visual Studio).
- Second, much of the information is redundant: most of what you need to know is already documented in the API Reference or in the relevant chapters in this programming guide.
- Third, such an approach is confusing, due to the plethora of objects in QBFC.

## Understanding QBFC Objects

---

If you try to understand the QBFC object model from the lengthy list of available objects, you're in for a long day's work. The QBFC library is a thin wrapper, which means there are a great many objects to wade through if you are just looking at objects.

### Objects, Objects Everywhere: Where Do I Start?

---

The best way to understand the QBFC objects is to consider the way in which the objects are used, starting with the central QBFC object: *QBSessionManager*. This object is used for all communication with QuickBooks, including:

- Making the initial QuickBooks connection
- Beginning the QuickBooks session,
- Creating requests
- Sending the requests to QuickBooks
- Returning responses from QuickBooks.

In this chapter, we are concerned mainly with the QBSessionManager's role in creating and sending requests and returning responses because most of the QBFC objects and data processing via those objects are exercised during these activities.

**NOTE**

For more information on QBSessionManager, see Chapter 3, "The Communication Model and Ways of Implementing It."

## Which Objects Do I Need to Create a Request?

As shown in Figure 32-1 on page 414, you use the QBSessionManager's CreateMsgSetRequest method to create an IMsgSetRequest object that will contain one or more requests that you want to send to QuickBooks. You add an empty request object to that IMsgSetRequest object via an Append method. As indicated in the figure, IMsgSetRequest has one Append method for each SDK request.

**IMPORTANT**

Only invoke an Append method once for each desired request! Each time you invoke an Append method, you are adding a new and separate request object to the request set.

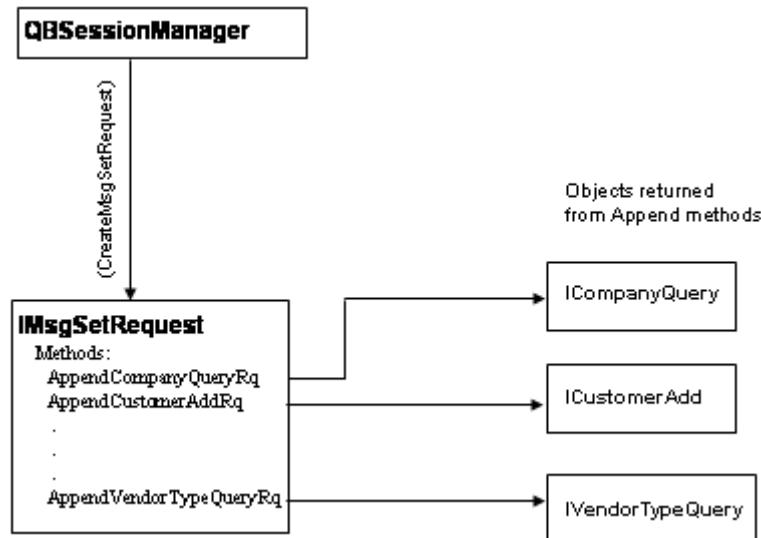


Figure 32-1 Objects used to build requests

In Figure 32-1 on page 414, notice that when you invoke an Append method, it returns you an empty object that you subsequently need to fully construct prior to sending the message set to QuickBooks. For example, AppendCustomerAddRq returns the ICustomerAdd object. Once you have this object, you can go to work constructing your request by filling in the properties for this object.

Notice that the various Append methods are not listed in the API Reference. If your programming environment supports Intellisense, you can see all of the Append methods in your code editor when you instantiate an IMsgSetRequest object. If you don't have this, and don't

have an object browser that can look into the QBFC library, you can easily construct the Append method name simply by looking at the request names listed in the API Reference: just put “Append” in front of each request name and “Rq” at the end of the request name.

**NOTE**

For each request in the API Reference, it provides code samples that show the construction in C# or VB.NET code. Simply click on the C# Code or VB.NET Code tabs in the QuickBooks Desktop API Reference.

## How Do I Use the API Reference to Fully Construct the Request?

You need to use the API Reference to program in QBFC, both to get an idea of what properties are required/available for a given request or response object, and for documentation of those properties. Figure 32-2 on page 415 shows the API Reference listing for the CustomerAdd request.

Tag	Type	Max (desk)	Max (QBDI)
ICustomerAdd			
Name	IQBStringType	41 Chars	100 Chars
IsActive	IQBBoolType		
ParentRef	IQBBaseRef		
ListID	IQBIDType		
FullName	IQBStringType		
CompanyName	IQBStringType	41 Chars	50 Chars
Salutation	IQBStringType	15 Chars	15 Chars
FirstName	IQBStringType	25 Chars	25 Chars
MiddleName	IQBStringType	5 Chars	25 Chars
LastName	IQBStringType	25 Chars	25 Chars
Suffix	IQBStringType		10 Chars
BillAddress	IAddress		
Addr1	IQBStringType	41 Chars	500 Chars
Addr2	IQBStringType	41 Chars	500 Chars
Addr3	IQBStringType	41 Chars	500 Chars
Addr4	IQBStringType	41 Chars	500 Chars
City	IQBStringType	31 Chars	255 Chars
Province	IQBStringType	21 Chars	

Figure 32-2 API Reference listing for CustomerAdd request

Notice the name directly under the Tag heading, circled in this figure, ICustomerAdd. This is the name of the QBFC object for the request or response, depending on whether the API Reference is showing requests or responses.

In your code, you need to create an object of this type by invoking the corresponding Append method that returns it, and then fill its fields as you want, using the field names listed under that object in the API Reference. For example, for a new customer, you would set the first name field like this if you were coding in Visual Basic:

```
Dim MyICustomerAdd as ICustomerAdd
Set MyICustomerAdd = MyRequestMsgSet.AppendCustomerAddRq
MyICustomerAdd.FirstName.SetValue("Fred")
```

## API Reference Has Everything You Need to Set Request Values

API Reference contains all the information you need to set request object values, including any available enumerated values. Figure 32-3 on page 416 shows the delivery method field for a customer, which is an enumerated value. To see the available values, click on the field type to the left of the field name. In our example, this would be

`IQBENDeliveryMethodType`

Clicking on the type displays the enumerated values, as in the circled area in the figure where the values displayed are `dmEmail`, `dmFax`, `dmPrint`.

<code>JobDest</code>	<code>IQBStringType</code>
<code>JobTypeRef</code>	<code>IQBBaseRef</code>
<code>ListID</code>	<code>IQBIDType</code>
<code>FullName</code>	<code>IQBStringType</code>
<code>Notes</code>	<code>IQBStringType</code>
<code>IsStatementWithAccount</code>	<code>IQBBooleanType</code>
<code>DeliveryMethod</code>	<code>IQBENDeliveryMethodType</code>
<code>CurrencyRef</code>	<code>IQBBaseRef</code>
<code>ListID</code>	<code>IQBIDType</code>
<code>FullName</code>	<code>IQBStringType</code>
<code>IsUsingCustomerTaxCode</code>	<code>IQBBooleanType</code>
<code>PriceLevelRef</code>	<code>IQBBaseRef</code>
<code>ListID</code>	<code>IQBIDType</code>
<code>FullName</code>	<code>IQBStringType</code>
<code>IncludeRetElementList</code>	<code>IBSTRList</code>

<code>IQBENDeliveryMethodType</code>
<code>typedef enum {dmEmail, dmFax, dmPrint} ENDeliveryMethod</code>

Figure 32-3 Looking up enumerated values in the API Reference

## Other Useful IMsgSetRequest Methods

The IMsgSetRequest Append methods are already covered in this document and in the API Reference. However, the request message set object has other methods you need to know about.

IMsgSetRequest Method/Property	Parameters	Description
HRESULT Attributes([out, retval] IAttributesRqSet**pVal);	-pVal Pointer to the returned IAttributeRqSet object	This property returns the IAttributeRqSet object, which you would need if you wanted to determine the current attribute settings in the request set. IAttributeRqSet contains the attributes that are currently in effect for all requests in the message set. QuickBooks supports several attributes, which are documented in the QuickBooks API Reference
HRESULT ClearRequests();	NA	Removes all requests currently appended to the request message set.
HRESULT RequestList([out, retval] IRequestList* *pVal);	pVal Pointer to the returned IRequestList object	You probably will seldom use this property. You would use this property if you wanted to get one or more requests from the request message set. The IRequestList object returned has a count and a GetAt method for returning individual IRequest objects from the list. Once you have the IRequest object, you can use its RequestID, Type, or Detail methods as desired. The Detail is processed exactly like its IResponse counterpart, which is thoroughly covered in Chapter 7, "Handling Responses Using QBFC or qbXML."
HRESULT ToXMLString([out, retval] BSTR* qbXMLRequest);	-qbXMLRequest Pointer to the returned string containing the request message set in qbXML format.	This method is very handy during diagnostics where you need to examine the complete XML representation of the requests that were built in QBFC. Useful for making sure you are getting the requests you expect.
HRESULT Verify([out] BSTR* errorMsg, [out, retval] VARIANT_BOOL* isOK)	errorMsg Contains an error message for every request that failed validation. If there is no failure, this string is empty.  isOk Returns True in VB and Variant_True in C++ if all the requests are valid. Returns False in VB and Variant_False in C++ otherwise.	The DoRequests method causes validation to be run automatically. However, if you need to validate the requests for proper construction before you invoke DoRequests, you can use this method.

## Which Objects Do I Need to Process a Response?

As shown in Figure 32-4 on page 418, you use the QBSessionManager's DoRequests method to send a request message set to QuickBooks. The input to this method is the IMsgSetRequest described earlier in this chapter. The return from this method is an IMsgSetResponse object.

The IMsgSetResponse has a property called ResponseList that returns the IResponseList object containing all of the responses to the requests that were made in the IMsgSetRequest. If all of the requests were successful, the number of responses will match the number of requests in the corresponding IMsgSetRequest, but this won't always be the case, due to the possible request errors.

Notice that the DoRequest method returns successfully without errors even if any or all of the requests fail. You can't use the method return to get information on whether requests were successful. To do this, you need to process the individual request objects (IResponse) contained in the ResponseList. Once you have the individual IResponse, you can query it for the StatusCode and StatusMessage you need to determine success or failure and get some idea of the nature of the failure.

We'll describe the IResponse methods later. But in the figure, notice the methods that are listed, such as Detail, StatusCode, and Type. You will use those every time you process a Response: you need to check the StatusCode for success, then you need to check the Type. You need the type because this determines what kind of object you need to use to receive the response Detail, and, in some languages, make an upcast to that type.

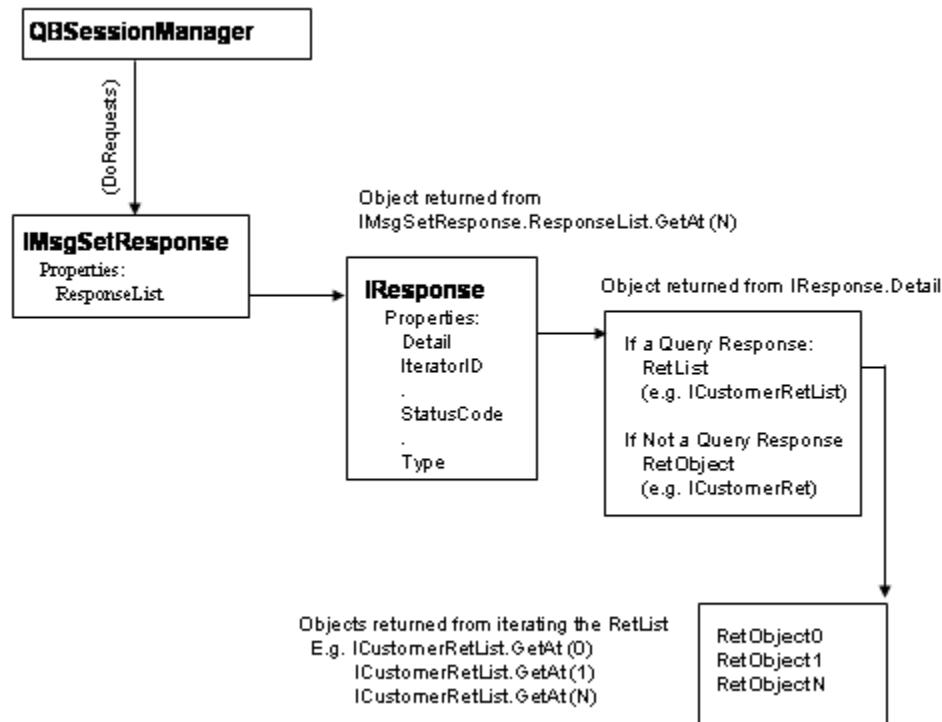


Figure 32-4 Objects used to process data from a response

As shown in the figure, the response Detail differs for queries. For non-query requests, the Detail contains a Ret object with the actual field values you are interested in. For query requests, the Detail contains a Ret list that contains the individual Ret objects.

An explanation of how to process Ret objects from this Ret list is described in Chapter 7, “Handling Responses Using QBFC or qbXML.” It is fairly straightforward, using the RetList object’s Count property to get the number of Ret objects and then using the GetAt method to return the individual Ret object from the RetList.

## Getting Data from the Ret Object

---

You can see the Ret object for each request in the API Reference by clicking on the Response link.

Figure 32-5 on page 419 shows the Ret object for the ICustomer object in the QuickBooks API Reference, with the object name circled. Remember that the API Reference contains primarily information about each request and Ret object property (field).

If you click on the C# or VB.Net links at the upper right of the API Reference, you’ll get context-sensitive source code samples that show how to get data from a response message set (IMsgSetResponse) that contains a customer Ret object.

Type	Max (desk)	Max (QBOE)
IQBStringType	41 Chars	100 Chars
IQBBoolType		
IQBBaseRef		
IQBIDType		
IQBStringType		
IQBStringType	41 Chars	50 Chars
IQBStringType	15 Chars	15 Chars
IQBStringType	25 Chars	25 Chars
IQBStringType	5 Chars	25 Chars
IQBStringType	25 Chars	25 Chars
IQBStringType		10 Chars
IAddress		
IQBStringType	41 Chars	500 Chars
IQBStringType	41 Chars	500 Chars
IQBStringType	41 Chars	500 Chars
IQBStringType	41 Chars	500 Chars
IQBStringType	31 Chars	255 Chars
IQBStringType	21 Chars	

Figure 32-5 The API Reference Response object (Ret object) for Customer

Just like the request object described earlier, the properties listed for each Ret object in the API Reference are the actual property names you need to supply in order to get the data for that property. For example, to get the Notes data from the customer Ret, you'd use this code in VB.Net:

```
MycustomerRet.Notes.GetValue ()
```

## Objects and Methods Used in Processing Response Data

The following tables list the objects described in the previous paragraphs, along with their methods and properties. The request and Ret objects are not listed here because they are documented fully in the API Reference.

### **IMsgSetResponse**

The following table shows the properties and methods for the message set response object:

<b>IMsgSetResponse Method/Property</b>	<b>Parameters</b>	<b>Description</b>
HRESULT ResponseList ([out, retval] IResponseList* *pVal)	-pVal Pointer to the returned IResponseList object.	You need to invoke this on every IMsgSetResponse object to get the response list.
HRESULT ToXMLString ([out, retval] BSTR* qbXMLResponse);	-qbXMLResponse Pointer to the returned string containing the response message set in qbXML format.	This method is very handy during diagnostics where you need to examine the complete XML representation of the responses that were returned from QuickBooks. Useful for making sure you are getting the results you expect.

### **IResponseList**

The following table shows the properties and methods for the IResponseList object.

<b>IResponseList Method/Property</b>	<b>Parameters</b>	<b>Description</b>
HRESULT Count ([out, retval] long *pVal)	-pVal Pointer to the returned number of IResponse objects contained in the list.	Useful for setting up a loop, with Count used as the loop limit.
HRESULT GetAt (long index, [out, retval] IResponse** retVal);	-index The supplied index specifying which IResponse object in the list is to be returned. -retVal Pointer pointer to the returned IResponse object.	The index is zero based, so the first IResponse on the list has the index of 0.

## IResponse

The following table shows the properties and methods for the IResponse object.

IResponse Method/Property	Parameters	Description
HRESULT Detail ([out, retval] IQBBase** pVal);	-pVal Pointer pointer to the response contents	This returned value must be upcast in most languages. For example, in VB.NET, for example, you would get the Response detail data into an ItemInventoryRet object like this:  itemInventoryRet = response.Detail as itemInventoryRet
HRESULT iteratorID ([out, retval] BSTR *pVal);	-pVal	The iteratorID is returned only for queries that use iterators to manage the amount of data returned. You would need to get this ID from the first response, then use it in the succeeding iterations of the query.
HRESULT iteratorRemainingCount ([out, retval] long *pVal);	-pVal	This property indicates the number of objects remaining to be iterated through. This is helpful in optimizing the MaxReturned value, among other things.
HRESULT retCount ([out, retval] long *pVal);	-pVal	This value is available if the response is a query response. It indicates the count of Ret objects in the list.
HRESULT StatusCode ([out, retval] long *pVal);	-pVal	Indicates success or the nature of any failure. The value 0 indicates success.
HRESULT StatusMessage ([out, retval] BSTR *pVal);	-pVal	A text message that provides more information than just the status code regarding the nature of the failure
HRESULT StatusSeverity ([out, retval] BSTR *pVal);	-pVal	The severity level of the error.
HRESULT Type ([out, retval] IResponseType** pVal);	-pVal	The type of RetList or Ret object contained in the IResponse. You need this to specify the object to receive the IResponse.Detail data.



# CHAPTER 33

## QBFC LANGUAGE REFERENCE

This chapter is a brief language reference for the main objects and object methods in the QBFC library. If you are not yet comfortable with QBFC programming, you should also read Chapter 32, “How to Use the QBFC Convenience Library,” Chapter 6, “Building Requests In QBFC and in qbXML,” and Chapter 7, “Handling Responses Using QBFC or qbXML.”

## QBSessionManager Object and Methods

The following table lists the QBSessionManager methods by functional area.

Table 33-1 QBSessionManager Methods/Properties Grouped by Functional Area

Functionality	Supporting Methods/Properties	Notes
Connection and session management.	BeginSession CloseConnection <u>CommunicateOutOfProcess</u> EndSession OpenConnection2 QBAuthPreferences	You need to invoke OpenConnection2 followed by BeginSession before you can send requests to QB. (When you're finished, you need to invoke EndSession to release resources.)  The optional QBAuthPreferences property returns the IQBAuthPreferences object that you can set to indicate the level of QB access that your application requires and the QB editions that your application supports.  The use of CommunicateOutOfProcess method is no longer recommended. QuickBooks and the QBSDK are not designed to run as a service and should be run in the context of a user.  An alternate implementation to the above is to implement a web service designed to communicate with QuickBooks via the QuickBooks Web Connector
Create message set request object.	CreateMsgSetRequest CreateSubscriptionMsgSetRequest	CreateMsgSetRequest creates an empty IMsgSetRequest object to which you then append your desired request objects.  CreateSubscriptionMsgSetRequest does a similar thing, but creates the special ISubscriptionMsgSetRequest object to which you append event subscription requests.

Functionality	Supporting Methods/Properties	Notes
Send requests to the request processor.	DoRequests DoRequestsFromXMLString DoSubscriptionRequests DoSubscriptionRequestsFromXMLString	DoRequests sends the fully constructed IMsgSetRequest object to QB. DoRequestsFromXMLString does the same thing, but uses a fully constructed qbXML message set instead of QBFC objects. DoSubscriptionRequests and DoSubscriptionRequestsFromXMLString are used only for event subscription.
Convert qbXML to QBFC objects	ToEventsMsgSet ToMsgSetRequest ToMsgSetResponse ToSubscriptionMsgSetResponse	All of these are convenience methods that take fully constructed qbXML message sets and constructs the appropriate QBFC objects.
Get context information.	ConnectionType GetCurrentCompanyFileName GetVersion QBXMLVersionsForSession QBXMLVersionsForSubscription	The optional ConnectionType property returns an indicator describing how the application is connected to QB: local QB, remote QB (RDS), or local QB with the UI launched.
Error recovery	ClearErrorRecovery EnableErrorRecovery ErrorRecoveryID GetErrorRecoveryStatus GetSavedMsgSetRequest IsErrorRecoveryInfo SaveAllMsgSetRequestInfo	Optional, but recommended properties and methods used to implement automated error recovery.

# QBSessionManager.BeginSession

IDL: HRESULT BeginSession ([in] BSTR qbFile, [in] ENOpenMode openMode)

VB: BeginSession(qbFile As String, openMode As ENOpenMode)

C#: void BeginSession ( System.String qbFile , Interop.QBFC5.ENOpenMode openMode )

Starts a session with the specified QuickBooks company file.

## Parameters

*qbFile* Full Pathname of the specified QuickBooks company file. QuickBooks need not be running if your application has been authorized for automatic logins. Supply *qbFile* as NULL or an empty string if you need to access the company file currently open in QuickBooks. The *qbFile* param must be supplied.

*openMode* The desired access mode. It can be one of three values:  
omSingleUser (specifies single-user mode)  
omMultiUser (specifies multi-user mode)  
omDontCare (accept whatever mode is currently in effect, or single-user mode if no other mode is in effect)

Notice that if the company file is already open in one mode, your application won't be able to specify a different mode in BeginSession. For this reason, you may want to consider the omDontCare param, unless you really need single-user mode.

For background information on these modes, see Chapter 3, "The Communication Model and Ways of Implementing It."

## IMPORTANT

If QuickBooks is currently running one company file, you cannot access a different company file with BeginSession. If one company file is already open in QB and you try to specify a different company file name in the call to BeginSession you will get an exception thrown or an HRESULT, depending on your programming environment

## Usage

Before invoking this method to start the session, your application must first invoke QBSessionManager.OpenConnection2 followed by BeginSession to open communication with QuickBooks. After successfully invoking OpenConnection2 and BeginSession, your application can then invoke DoRequests to access company data.

If you're in multi-user mode you may want to invoke this once and leave the session open for subsequent accesses of the company data. If you're in single-user mode, you may want to close the session when you're done with the current access, since no other application

will be able to access the current company file until you end your session. (Desktop editions of QuickBooks do not limit the number of times a company file can be accessed in a single session or the length of time a session can exist.)

Your application can change the mode from single user to multi-user if it is the only application accessing the file including the QuickBooks UI. Changing the file mode means that QuickBooks must close the file and re-open it. So if your app is the only one accessing it, you would call EndSession from one mode, wait a moment for the file to close down, then call BeginSession in the other mode.

Notice that your application must be authorized to access the specified company file. An unauthorized application requires the specified QuickBooks company file to be currently open in QuickBooks with the QuickBooks administrative user logged on, so that user can perform the required authorization. (If an application is not yet authorized, and QuickBooks is not running, BeginSession will fail.)

In auto-login mode it takes several seconds to start QuickBooks and return from a BeginSession call.

Table 33-2    HRESULT Error Codes

Error Code	Meaning
0x8004040A	Returned if there is already a company data file open and it is different from the requested one.
0x800040410	Returned if the company data file is currently open in a mode other than the one specified by your application.
0x80040414	Returned if QuickBooks is currently locked in a modal state and cannot be accessed.
0x8004041B	Returned if QuickBooks is unable to lock the necessary information to allow your application to access the specified company data file. Try again later.
0x80040422	Returned if your application is trying to access QuickBooks in single-user mode, but there is another application already accessing the specified company data file.

#### **BeginSession Code Sample**

The following code sample shows a complete session life cycle. Every application needs to use the QBSessionManager object as shown to open a connection and begin a session. Every application needs to create an IMsgSetRequest object as shown, fill it with requests, invoke DoRequests, and get the results from the returned IMsgSetResponse object.

Notice that this sample uses an empty customer query, which returns all customers, to keep the sample short and sweet. For most requests, appended to the IMsgSetRequest object, you would normally set more properties on the request. Also, the sample does nothing with the response object, which is not trivial to traverse and process. However, processing response data is covered in detail in Chapter 7, “Handling Responses Using QBFC or qbXML,” so we won’t cover it here.

Finally, we end the session and close the connection. You don't have to do this after every DoRequest, in fact, it is not efficient to program this way. But it does point out the necessity of ending the session and closing the connection at some point, at the very least when your application is shut down. If you don't end session and close connection when you close your application, the QuickBooks user will not be able to close the QuickBooks company.

```
Dim qbFile As String
qbFile = "C:\Program Files\Intuit\QuickBooks 2006\sample_product-based business.qbw"
Dim SessionManager As QBSessionManager
Set SessionManager = New QBSessionManager

SessionManager.OpenConnection2 "123", "Hello World", ctLocalQBDLaunchU
SessionManager.BeginSession qbFile, omDontCare

Dim RqMessageSet As IMsgSetRequest
Dim RespMessageSet As IMsgSetResponse

Set RqMessageSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 5, 0)
RqMessageSet.AppendCustomerQueryRq
Set RespMessageSet = SessionManager.DoRequests(RqMessageSet)

SessionManager.EndSession
SessionManager.CloseConnection
```

## QBSessionManager.ClearErrorRecovery

---

```
HRESULT ClearErrorRecovery();
```

This method is more or less a “Big Hammer” that clears the error table stored in the QuickBooks company file. This clear method impacts all integrated applications using the company file, not just the application invoking it. For that reason, this method should be called ONLY if you know or strongly suspect that the QuickBooks error table has become corrupted and therefore must be cleared. (For more information, see Chapter 31, “Error Recovery.”)

## QBSessionManager.CloseConnection

---

```
HRESULT CloseConnection ()
```

Closes the connection with QuickBooks. When the QBSessionManager object goes out of scope, QBFC will automatically call CloseConnection if it wasn't called explicitly before. (It also calls EndSession, if necessary.)

### **CloseConnection Code Sample**

See the sample provided under “BeginSession Code Sample.”

## QBSessionManager.CommunicateOutOfProcess

---

```
HRESULT CommunicateOutOfProcess(VARIANT_BOOL useOutOfProc)
```

### Parameters

*useOutOfProc* Specify True to communicate with QuickBooks out-of-process, or False for in-process communication.

The use of CommunicateOutOfProcess method is no longer recommended. QuickBooks and the QBSDK are not designed to run as a service and should be run in the context of a user.

This call is useful if your application must run as part of a windows service process and therefore does not communicate with QuickBooks in-process (the normal type of QuickBooks communication. You call this method prior to calling OpenConnection2 so the SDK knows which request processor to use (qbXMLRP2e, in this case).

### **IMPORTANT**

In order for this call to work, you must install and register (in the Windows registry) the redistributable program QBXMLRP2e.exe. This is located in the SDK install subdirectory \tools\access\QBXMLRP2e

### Usage

You cannot call this method if you currently have a connection open, as this will return an error (HRESULT 0x80040313).

If this method is invoked and there is some problem creating the COM component required for out-of-process communication, the error HRESULT 0x80040314 is returned.

You *do not* instantiate or reference QBXMLRP2E! All needed work is done for you simply by making this call.

## QBSessionManager.ConnectionType

---

```
HRESULT ConnectionType([out, retval] QBXMLRPCConnectionType* pVal);
```

### Parameters

*ConnectionType*      Pointer to the returned connection type indicating the currently opened connection. The type returned will be one of the following values: ctUnknown, ctLocalQBD, ctRemoteQBD, or ctLocalQBDLaunchUI.

The type returned will be one of the following values that reflect the way the connection was first opened:

- ctLocalQBD (local QuickBooks)
- ctRemoteQBD (RDS connection)
- ctLocalQBDLaunchUI (SDK application launched QuickBooks in interactive mode)
- ctUnknown

## QBSessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest

```
HRESULT CreateMsgSetRequest ([in] BSTR country,  
                           [in] short qbXMLMajorVersion,  
                           [in] short qbXMLMinorVersion,  
                           [out, retval] IMsgSetRequest** request)
```

Tells QBFC which version of qbXML your application is using, and receives the request message set object in return. Notice that starting with QBFC3, CreateMsgSetRequest requires all three parameters.

### Parameters

<i>country</i>	The country of the edition of QuickBooks to be used by your application. There are three valid values: "US", "CA", and " " (empty string). There is no default! so you must supply a value.
<i>qbXMLMajorVersion</i>	The major version of qbXML to be used by your application. (For example, if the version is 2.1, the major version is 2.)
<i>qbXMLMinorVersion</i>	The minor version of qbXML to be used by your application. (For example, if the version is 2.1, the minor version is 1.)
<i>request</i>	The request message set object, to which you will add one or more request messages.

### NOTE

QBFC4 supports qbXML versions 1.0, 1.1, 2.0, 2.1, 3.0, and 4.0 for the U.S. QBFC4 supports versions 2.0 and 3.0 for Canada.

### Usage

It is important to set the qbXML version appropriately:

- Make sure all your end-users have a version of QuickBooks installed on their computers that supports the qbXML version you specify.
- Note that you cannot use any qbXML functionality that was added since the version you specify.

### HRESULT Error Codes

- An error code of 0x8004030A will be returned if the given version of qbXML is not supported by the version of QBFC being used.

### Code Sample

See the code sample provided under “BeginSession Code Sample.”

## QBSessionManager.CreateSubscriptionMsgSetRequest

---

```
HRESULT CreateSubscriptionMsgSetRequest(
    short qbXMLMajorVersion,
    short qbXMLMinorVersion,
    [out, retval] ISubscriptionMsgSetRequest** request);
```

Creates and returns an interface pointer to `ISubscriptionMsgSetRequest`.

### Parameters

*qbXMLMajorVersion* The major version of qbXML to be used by your application. (For example, if the version is 4.0, the major version is 4.)

*qbXMLMinorVersion* The minor version of qbXML to be used by your application. (For example, if the version is 4.0, the minor version is 0.)

*request* The request message set object, to which you will add one or more subscription request messages.

## QBSessionManager.DoRequests

---

```
HRESULT DoRequests ([in] IMsgSetRequest* request,  
                    [out, retval] IMsgSetResponse** responseSet)
```

Sends the specified XML request to QuickBooks and returns a response.

### Parameters

<i>request</i>	The request message set object containing any number of requests to be processed by QuickBooks.
<i>responseSet</i>	The parsed response message set object, which will contain a list of responses, one for every request in the request message set.

### Usage

Before sending the request set to QuickBooks for processing, this method verifies the given request message set to make sure that all the mandatory fields in each of its requests have been set and that no two mutually exclusive fields have been set.

### HRESULT Error Codes

- An error code of 0x80040307 will be returned if there is an error verifying the requests in the request set.
- An error code of 0x8004040C will be returned if no valid session currently exists.
- An error code of 0x80040423 will be returned if the given version of qbXML is not supported by the QuickBooks SDK.

For more errors that DoRequests can return, see Appendix A, “Error Codes.”

### DoRequests Code Sample

What is difficult about DoRequests is the constructing of the request message set required prior to invoking DoRequests and the processing of the response that is returned from it. These are covered in Chapter 6, “Building Requests In QBFC and in qbXML,” and Chapter 7, “Handling Responses Using QBFC or qbXML.”

A code sample showing the invocation of this method is provided under “BeginSession Code Sample.”

## QBSessionManager.DoRequestsFromXMLString

---

```
HRESULT DoRequestsFromXMLString([in] BSTR qbXMLRequest,  
                                [out, retval] IMsgSetResponse** responseSet);
```

Sends an XML request as a string rather than in an `IMsgSetRequest` object (as happens in `DoRequests`).

### Parameters

<i>qbXMLRequest</i>	The request is not validated before it is sent. Any <i>requestIDs</i> within the request must start with 0 and continue with 1, 2, and so on.
<i>responseSet</i>	A parsed list of responses, one for every request in the request message set. The <i>responseSet</i> will contain errors if the <i>qbXMLRequest</i> string contains nonsequential requestIDs.

## QBSessionManager.DoSubscriptionRequests

---

```
HRESULT DoSubscriptionRequests(
    ISubscriptionMsgSetRequest* request,
    [out, retval] ISubscriptionMsgSetResponse** responseSet);
```

Sends the subscription request to the request processor and returns a response.

### Parameters

*request* The request message set object containing any number of subscription requests to be processed by QuickBooks.

*responseSet* The parsed response message set object, which will contain a list of responses, one for every subscription request in the message set.

### Usage

Before sending the request set to QuickBooks for processing, this method verifies the given request message set to make sure that all the mandatory fields in each of its requests have been set and that no two mutually exclusive fields have been set.

## QBSessionManager.DoSubscriptionRequestsFromXMLString

---

```
HRESULT DoSubscriptionRequestsFromXMLString(
    BSTR qbXMLSubscriptionRequest,
    [out, retval] ISubscriptionMsgSetResponse** responseSet);
```

Sends an XML request as a string rather than in an `ISubscriptionMsgSetRequest` object (as happens in `DoSubscriptionRequests`).

### Parameters

*qbXMLSubscriptionRequest*

Contains the subscription XML request. The request is not validated before it is sent.

*responseSet*

A parsed list of responses, one for every request in the request message set.

## QBSessionManager.EnableErrorRecovery

---

```
HRESULT EnableErrorRecovery([in] VARIANT_BOOL bEnable);
HRESULT EnableErrorRecovery([out, retval] VARIANT_BOOL* bEnable);
```

Turns the automated error-recovery feature of QBFC on or off. (By default, the error recovery feature is off.)

If error recovery is off (the default), requests are sent to QuickBooks without first checking if a response from a previous request was not processed. If error recovery is on, requests will *not* be sent to QuickBooks if an unprocessed response exists for a previous request.

## QBSessionManager.EndSession

---

```
HRESULT EndSession ()
```

Terminates the session with the current company data file. When the QBSessionManager object goes out of scope, QBFC will automatically call EndSession if it wasn't called explicitly before. (It also calls CloseConnection, if necessary.)

If a company file was opened in auto-login mode, EndSession will close the file and enable an interactive user to start QuickBooks on that computer.

### **EndSession Code Sample**

A code sample showing the invocation of this method is provided under “BeginSession Code Sample.”

## QBSessionManager.ErrorRecoveryID

---

```
HRESULT ErrorRecoveryID([out, retval] IQBGUIDType* *pVal);
```

Returns this application's error-recovery ID, which will be used to store the application's error-recovery information to disk.

## QBSessionManager.GetCurrentCompanyName

---

```
HRESULT GetCurrentCompanyName ([out, retval] BSTR* pFileName)
```

Returns the name (including path) of the QuickBooks company data file being accessed in the current session.

### **HRESULT Error Codes**

- An error code of 0x8004040C will be returned if no valid session currently exists.

For more errors that GetCurrentCompanyName can return, see Appendix A, “Error Codes.”

## QBSessionManager.GetErrorRecoveryStatus

---

```
HRESULT GetErrorRecoveryStatus(  
    [out, retval] IMsgSetResponse** responseSet);
```

Gets the response status of an unprocessed response. Sends a status check request to QuickBooks to get the status of the request that was stored to disk. The status check response will be returned in an IMsgSetResponse object.

## QBSessionManager.GetSavedMsgSetRequest

---

```
HRESULT GetSavedMsgSetRequest( [out, retval] IMsgSetRequest** requestSet);
```

Reads the error recovery information (the original message request) that was stored to disk into an IMsgSetRequest object and returns this object.

## QBSessionManager.GetVersion

---

```
HRESULT GetVersion ([out] short* majorVersion,  
                    [out] short* minorVersion, [out] ENReleaseLevel* releaseLevel,  
                    [out] short* releaseNumber)
```

Returns version and release information for the QBFC Library.

### Parameters

<i>majorVersion</i>	The major version for the QBFC Library. For example, for QBFC6 the major version is 6.
<i>minorVersion</i>	The minor version for the QBFC Library. For example, for QBFC6 the minor version is 0.)
<i>releaseLevel</i>	The release level for the QBFC Library. It can be one of four values: rlPreAlpha, rlAlpha, rlBeta, or rlRelease.
<i>releaseNumber</i>	The release number for the QBFC Library. It corresponds to a specific build of the product software.

## QBSessionManager.IsErrorRecoveryInfo

---

```
HRESULT IsErrorRecoveryInfo(
    [out, retval] VARIANT_BOOL* bIsErrorRecoveryInfo);
```

Returns true or false depending on whether error-recovery information is stored on the disk for this application/company-file pair.

## QBSessionManager.OpenConnection2

---

```
HRESULT OpenConnection2 ([in] BSTR appID, [in] BSTR appName, [in] ENConnectionType connType)
```

Establishes a connection between QuickBooks and the client application.

### Parameters

*appID* Normally not assigned. Use an empty string for *appID*.

*appName* The application name used in the log file, in the authorization dialog box, and in menu extensions. This parameter cannot be NULL or an empty string.

*connType* Specify a value of ctUnknown, ctLocalQBD, ctRemoteQBD, or ctLocalQBDLaunchUI.

### Usage

During the connection process, QuickBooks checks whether your application contains a valid digital signature, which indicates that the application has been certified as trusted.

Each call to OpenConnection2 has a small performance cost, so your application, when appropriate, should allow its users to run multiple sessions in a single connection.

QuickBooks does not limit the number of consecutive sessions that can be held in a single connection or the length of time a connection can exist.

### HRESULT Error Codes

- An error code of 0x80040308 will be returned if QBFC cannot communicate with the QuickBooks SDK.
- An error code of 0x80040309 will be returned if the QuickBooks SDK is a pre-release version.

For more errors that OpenConnection2 can return, see Appendix A, “Error Codes.”

### OpenConnection2 Code Sample

A code sample showing the invocation of this method is provided under “BeginSession Code Sample.”

## QBSessionManager.QBAuthPreferences

---

```
HRESULT QBAuthPreferences([out, retva] IQBAuthPreferences**  
ppAuthPreferences)
```

Returns the IQBAuthPreferences object to be used to set or get authorization preferences.

### Parameters

\*\*ppAuthPreferences

Pointer pointer to the returned preferences object.

You cannot call this on remote connections, such as via RDS. An error (0x8004042A) results if you attempt it.

## QBSessionManager.QBXMLVersionsForSession

---

```
HRESULT QBXMLVersionsForSession
    ([out, retval] SAFEARRAY (BSTR) * ppsa);
```

Indicates which versions of the qbXML specification are supported by the QuickBooks program to which your application is connected in this session. Note that this information might be different from the information returned by a HostQuery request, as described in the *Concepts Manual*. HostQuery returns the complete list of all qbXML versions supported by the *currently open connection*, which is usually the information your application will require.

### Parameters

*ppsa*      Array of qbXML version numbers that the QuickBooks Request Processor supports. For example, the array contains 1.0, 1.1, 2.0, 2.1, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, and 6.0 if your application is using the Request Processor from QuickBooks 2007 (U.S. edition). It contains CA2.0 if your application is using the Request Processor from the 2003 Canadian edition of QuickBooks.

### Usage

Your application is responsible for freeing the memory used for the *ppsa* array. For example, to release the memory for the array when using the C++ language, call SafeArrayDestroy(*ppsa*).

For sample code and a description of how to use QBXMLVersionsForSession, see Chapter 37, “Making Your Application Robust.”

## QBSessionManager.QBXMLVersionsForSubscription

---

```
HRESULT QBXMLVersionsForSubscription([out, retval] SAFEARRAY (BSTR)**  
ppsa);
```

Returns an array containing a list of qbXML versions that are available for subscription requests.

### Parameters

*ppsa* Pointer pointer to an array of binary strings that specify the versions of the qbXML specifications that support the SDK event subscription feature. Currently the possible values are 3.0 and 4.0.

### Usage

Your application is responsible for freeing the memory used for the *ppsa* array. For example, to release the memory for the array when using the C++ language, call `SafeArrayDestroy(ppsa)`.

## QBSessionManager.SaveAllMsgSetRequestInfo

---

```
HRESULT SaveAllMsgSetRequestInfo([in] VARIANT_BOOL bSaveAll);
HRESULT SaveAllMsgSetRequestInfo([out, retval] VARIANT_BOOL* bSaveAll);
```

Indicates whether the error-recovery feature of QBFC should save the entire set of information for a MsgSetRequest:

- If SaveAllMsgSetRequestInfo is true, the entire contents of the MsgSetRequest is saved to disk for error recovery.
- If SaveAllMsgSetRequestInfo is false (the default), only the NewMessageSetID is saved.

Get/Set – VARIANT\_BOOL which specifies whether to save the entire MsgSetRequest information.

Return – HRESULT

## QBSessionManager.ToEventsMsgSet

```
HRESULT ToEventsMsgSet(
    BSTR qbXMLEventsResponse,
    short qbXMLMajorVersion,
    short qbXMLMinorVersion,
    [out, retval] IEventsMsgSet** responseSet);
```

Parses the XML response and returns it in an IEventMsgSetResponse object.

### **IMPORTANT**

This method performs no version or qbXML validation. You are responsible for supplying a valid qbXML string.

### **Parameters**

#### *qbXMLEventsResponse*

The qbXML response document (as a string) sent from QuickBooks after a subscribed event occurs.

*qbXMLMajorVersion* The major version of qbXML to be used for this operation. (For example, if the version is 4.0, the major version is 4.)

*qbXMLMinorVersion* The minor version of qbXML to be used for this operation. (For example, if the version is 4.0, the minor version is 0.)

#### *responseSet*

The response message set object, which will contain a list of responses, one for every request in the request message set.

## QBSessionManager.ToMsgSetRequest

---

```
HRESULT ToMsgSetRequest(
    [in] BSTR qbXMLRequest,
    [out, retval] IMsgSetRequest** requestSet);
```

Takes qbXML request text and parses it into an IMsgSetRequest object. Reads the qbXML major and minor version numbers from the request.

# QBSessionManager.ToMsgSetResponse

```
HRESULT ToMsgSetResponse ([in] BSTR qbXMLResponse,
                           [in] BSTR country,
                           [in] short qbXMLMajorVersion,
                           [in] short qbXMLMinorVersion,
                           [out, retval] IMsgSetResponse** responseSet)
```

Parses the XML response and returns it in a response message set object.

## IMPORTANT

This method performs NO version or qbXML validation of the supplied XML string. You are responsible for supplying a valid string to this method call.

## Parameters

<i>country</i>	The country of the edition of QuickBooks.
<i>qbXMLResponse</i>	The qbXML response document (as a string) that gets returned from QuickBooks after processing a request message set sent via the qbXML request processor. Each response in the <i>qbXMLResponse</i> string must have a <i>requestID</i> attribute, and these <i>requestIDs</i> must be consecutive, starting at 0.
<i>qbXMLMajorVersion</i>	The major version of qbXML to be used for this operation. (For example, if the version is 6.0, the major version is 6.)
<i>qbXMLMinorVersion</i>	The minor version of qbXML to be used for this operation. (For example, if the version is 6.0, the minor version is 0.)
<i>responseSet</i>	The response message set object, which will contain a list of responses, one for every request in the request message set.

## NOTE

QBFC6 supports qbXML versions 1.0, 1.1, 2.0, 2.1, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0 and 6.0.

## HRESULT Error Codes

- An error code of 0x80040301 will be returned if there is an internal error interpreting *qbXMLResponse*.
- An error code of 0x8004030A will be returned if the given version of qbXML is not supported by QBFC.

## QQBSessionManager.ToSubscriptionMsgSetResponse

```
HRESULT ToSubscriptionMsgSetResponse(
    BSTR qbXMLSubscriptionResponse,
    short qbXMLMajorVersion,
    short qbXMLMinorVersion,
    [out, retval] ISubscriptionMsgSetResponse** responseSet);
```

Parses the XML response and returns it in an `ISubscriptionMsgSetResponse` object.

### **IMPORTANT**

This method performs no version or qbXML validation. You are responsible for supplying a valid qbXML string.

### **Parameters**

*qbXMLSubscriptionResponse*

The qbXML response document (as a string) that gets returned from QuickBooks after processing a subscription request message.

*qbXMLMajorVersion* The major version of qbXML to be used for this operation. (For example, if the version is 6.0, the major version is 6.)

*qbXMLMinorVersion* The minor version of qbXML to be used for this operation. (For example, if the version is 4.0, the minor version is 0.)

*responseSet* The response message set object, which will contain a list of responses, one for every request in the request message set.

## IQBAuthPreferences Object and Properties

The QBSessionManager has a QBAuthPreferences property that returns the IQBAuthPreferences object that you can set to indicate the level of QB access that your application requires and the QB editions that your application supports. The following table shows the properties you can use.

Table 33-3 IQBAuthPreferences Properties

Functionality	Property	Notes
Specify which QuickBooks editions your application supports.	PutAuthFlags	By default, QB Pro, Premier, and Enterprise are supported. If you want your application to support a subset of these, or support QB Simple Start edition, you need to set this property accordingly.
Is your application read-only, or does it also write to QB?	GetIsReadOnly PutIsReadOnly	
Does your application need to run in unattended mode?	GetUnattendedModePref PutUnattendedModePref	
Does your application need access to personal data in QB?	GetPersonalDataPref PutPersonalDataPref	
Is the IQBAuthPreferences object and properties supported by the QuickBooks currently running?	WasAuthPreferencesObeyed	

## IQBAuthPreferences.GetIsReadOnly

---

```
HRESULT GetIsReadOnly(VARIANT_BOOL *pIsReadOnly)
```

Returns the application's read-only access requirements from the IQBAuthPreferences object.

### Parameters

**pIsReadOnly	Pointer to the returned read-only preferences.
---------------	--

# IQBAuthPreferences.GetPersonalDataPref

---

```
HRESULT GetPersonalDataPref(ENPersonalDataPrefType *pPersonalDataPref)
```

Returns the application's personal data access requirements from the IQBAuthPreferences object.

## Parameters

pPersonalDataPref

Pointer to the returned preferences setting. Returns pdptRequired, pdptOptional, or pdptNotNeeded.

A value of pdptRequired means that your application will not run unless the administrative user grants access to personal data. A value of pdptOptional means that the application may use personal data, but can still run if the user does not grant it that access.

A value of pdptNotNeeded means that your application does not use personal data and the user will not have the opportunity to grant it that access. If your application attempts to access personal data, any personal data will be automatically filtered out and will not appear in the responses to requests.

## IQBAuthPreferences.GetUnattendedModePref

---

```
HRESULT GetUnattendedModePref (ENUnattendedModePrefType  
*pUnattendedModePref)
```

Returns the application's unattended mode requirements from the IQBAuthPreferences object.

### Parameters

`*pUnattendedModePref`

Pointer to the returned setting, which will be either `umptRequired` or `umptOptional`.

## **IQBAuthPreferences.PutAuthFlags**

---

```
HRESULT PutAuthFlags([in] long authFlags);
```

For a description on how to use this and how to construct authFlags, see Chapter 5, “Accessing Desktop QuickBooks Editions.”

## IQBAuthPreferences.PutIsReadOnly

---

```
HRESULT PutIsReadOnly(VARIANT_BOOL isReadOnly)
```

Invoked on the IQBAuthPreferences object to specify whether your application needs read-only access to the company file.

### Parameters

isReadOnly	Specify True if your application accesses QuickBooks only in read mode. Specify False if your application needs to write data to QuickBooks.
------------	--

If your application specifies True, then the user must authorize read-only access (and whatever other preferences are currently specified in the IQBAuthPreferences object). If your application subsequently attempts to write data to QuickBooks, it will not be allowed to write and an error will be returned in the responses that attempts to write data.

## IQBAuthPreferences.PutPersonalDataPref

---

```
HRESULT PutPersonalDataPref(ENPersonalDataPrefType personalDataPref)
```

Invoked on the QBAuthPreferences object to specify your application's requirements regarding access to personal data in the company file.

### Parameters

personalDataPref

Specify pdptRequired, pdptOptional, or pdptNotNeeded.

A value of pdptRequired means that your application will not run unless the administrative user grants access to personal data. A value of pdptOptional means that the application may use personal data, but can still run if the user does not grant it that access.

A value of pdptNotNeeded means that your application does not use personal data and the user will not have the opportunity to grant it that access. If your application attempts to access personal data, any personal data will be automatically filtered out and will not appear in the responses to requests.

## IQBAuthPreferences.PutUnattendedModePref

---

```
HRESULT PutUnattendedModePref (ENUnattendedModePrefType UnattendedModePref)
```

Invoked on the QBAuthPreferences object to specify whether your application needs unattended mode (auto-login) access to the company file.

### Parameters

UnattendedModePref

Specify umptRequired or umptOptional.

Specify umptRequired if your application must be able to run in unattended mode or umptOptional if such access is not required.

# IQBAuthPreferences.WasAuthPreferencesObeyed

---

```
HRESULT WasAuthPreferencesObeyed(VARIANT_BOOL *pWasAuthPreferencesObeyed)
```

Returns verification whether the current version of QuickBooks supports the IQBAuthPreferences object property and methods.

## Parameters

pWasAuthPreferencesObeyed

Pointer to the returned value. True means there is support for IQBAuthPreferences, False means there is no support.

This method is useful for determining whether the QuickBooks currently being accessed is capable of supporting the authorization preferences feature.

## IMsgSetRequest Object and Methods

The IMsgSetRequest object contains the requests to be processed by QuickBooks and is supplied in a QBSessionManager.DoRequests method invocation. The individual requests are appended to this object via the appropriate Append method.

Table 33-4 IMsgSetRequest Methods/Properties

Functionality	Supporting Methods/Properties	Notes
Append request to the message set.	AppendARRefundCreditCard AddRq . . . AppendVendorTypeQueryRq	This object has one Append* method for each request listed in the API Reference for QBFC.  The append method for a request appends an empty request object and returns that request object so that you can set its properties (fully construct it) as you want.  For example, AppendARRefundCreditCardAddRq returns the object IAppendARRefundCreditCardAdd, which is the top level object listed in the API Reference. This provides information on each property for that request object.
Set message set-level attributes that apply to all requests in the message set.	Attributes	This property returns the IAttributeRqSet object, which you would need if you wanted to determine the current attribute settings in the request set.  IAttributeRqSet contains the attributes that are currently in effect for all requests in the message set.  QuickBooks supports several attributes, which are documented in the API Reference.
Empty the message set so it can be re-used.	ClearRequests	Removes all requests currently appended to the request message set.
Get the requests contained in a message set object.	RequestList	You probably will seldom use this property. You would use this property if you wanted to get one or more requests from the request message set. The IRequestList object returned has a count and a GetAt method for returning individual IRequest objects from the list.  Once you have the IRequest object, you can use its RequestID, Type, or Detail methods as desired. The Detail is processed exactly like its IResponse counterpart, which is thoroughly covered in Chapter 7, "Handling Responses Using QBFC or qbXML."

<b>Functionality</b>	<b>Supporting Methods/ Properties</b>	<b>Notes</b>
Dump out the contents of the message set in qbXML.	ToXMLString	This method is very handy during diagnostics where you need to examine the complete XML representation of the requests that were built in QBFC. Useful for making sure you are getting the requests you expect.
Check the message set for validity.	Verify	The DoRequests method causes validation to be run automatically. However, if you need to validate the requests for proper construction before you invoke DoRequests, you can use this method.

## IMsgSetRequest.Append\*

---

```
HRESULT PutUnattendedModePref (ENUnattendedModePrefType UnattendedModePref)
```

Invoked on the QBAuthPreferences object to specify whether your application needs unattended mode (auto-login) access to the company file.

### Parameters

UnattendedModePref

Specify umptRequired or umptOptional.

Specify umptRequired if your application must be able to run in unattended mode or umptOptional if such access is not required.

## IMsgSetRequest.Attributes

---

```
HRESULT Attributes([out, retval] IAttributesRqSet**pVal);
```

Invoked on the QBAuthPreferences object to specify whether your application needs unattended mode (auto-login) access to the company file.

### Parameters

UnattendedModePref

Specify umptRequired or umptOptional. Specify umptRequired if your application must be able to run in unattended mode or umptOptional if such access is not required.

## IMsgSetResponse Object and Methods

---

The IMsgSetRequest object contains the requests to be processed by QuickBooks and is supplied in a QBSessionManager.DoRequests method invocation. The individual requests are appended to this object via the appropriate Append method.

Table 33-5 .IMsgSetResponse Methods/Properties

Functionality	Supporting Methods/Properties	Notes
Get the message set-level attributes that apply to all responses in the message set.	Attributes	This property returns the IAttributeRqSet object, which you would need if you wanted to determine the current attribute settings in the response set. IAttributeRqSet contains the attributes that are currently in effect for all requests in the message set. QuickBooks supports several attributes, which are documented in the API Reference
Get the responses contained in a message set object.	ResponseList	You need to invoke this on every IMsgSetResponse object returned from the DoRequests call to get the response list and begin processing the responses from QB. You need to get the individual IResponse objects from this response list, which contain the actual data. This entire process is thoroughly covered in Chapter 7, “Handling Responses Using QBFC or qbXML.”
Dump out the contents of the message set object in qbXML format.	ToXMLString	This method is very handy during diagnostics where you need to examine the complete qbXML representation of the responses that were built in QBFC. Useful for making sure you are getting the responses you expect.

## IRequest Object and Methods

---

Unlike the IResponse object, which is processed after the DoRequest invocation, the IResponse object is normally seldom processed. However several properties are available for your use if you need to process an IRequest. We won’t describe the processing of an IRequest as it is nearly identical to processing an IResponse, which is covered in detail in Chapter 7, “Handling Responses Using QBFC or qbXML.”

Table 33-6 IRequest Methods and Properties

Functionality	Method/Property	Notes
Get the RequestID	RequestID	
Determine the request type.	Type	<p>This property indicates the request type. For example, a customer query request would have the response type <code>rtCustomerQueryRq</code>.</p> <p>It should not be confused with the Detail object's <code>Type</code> property, which indicates the detail object type.</p>
Return the data in IRequest to the proper object type.	Detail	

## IResponse Object and Methods

Each IResponse object contained in the IResponseList is normally processed after the `DoRequest` invocation. The processing of IResponse is covered in detail in Chapter 7, “Handling Responses Using QBFC or qbXML.”

Table 33-7 IResponse Methods and Properties

Functionality	Method/Property	Notes
Did the request succeed? If not, why not?	StatusCode StatusSeverity StatusMessage	You need to check every IResponse for success before proceeding. A status code of 0 means the request succeeded.
Determine the response type.	Type	<p>This property indicates the response type. For example, a customer query request would have the response type <code>rtCustomerQueryRs</code>.</p> <p>It should not be confused with the Detail object's <code>Type</code> property, which indicates the detail object type.</p>
Return the data in IResponse to the proper Ret object type.	Detail	The response detail should always be checked for the presence of data BEFORE you do any further processing (in VB terms, <code>response.Detail</code> must not be <code>Nothing</code> ). Attempts to process an empty Detail object can result in a runtime crash.
Iterate through a large set of query results.	iteratorID iteratorRemainingCount	Supports the recommended method for iterating through a large set of query results. See Chapter 8, “Creating Queries.”
Get the approximate count of objects returned from a query.	retCount	The count is approximate because additions and deletions could occur after the time of the query that would affect the accuracy of the count.



# CHAPTER 34

## DIGITALLY SIGNING YOUR CODE

The QuickBooks SDK checks for the existence and validity of a digital code signature when your application undergoes the authorization process that is invoked whenever your application accesses QuickBooks.

This authorization process is implemented using Microsoft's Authenticode technology to determine the status of an application's code signature. Obtaining an Authenticode compatible certificate from an authority is described later in this chapter. Any certificate authority should work; however, we have had good results using Verisign, Equifax, and Thawte.

### Can I Sign ActiveX or Java Applications?

---

No. You cannot digitally sign ActiveX or Java applications. QuickBooks looks for the executable process that is connecting to it via COM and will not be able to find the signature. For example, if you use a java to COM bridge such as JACOB, you are going through a .dll so when QuickBooks traces back it's going to find the java virtual machine and not your signature.

### About Microsoft Authenticode

---

An application signed using Authenticode provides security to the QuickBooks user in two ways:

- **Authenticity:** the user can be confident that the code has indeed originated from you, the software publisher.
- **Integrity:** the code contained in your application has not been tampered with after it was published.

Notice that Authenticode does not guarantee to end users that it is safe to run the code signed and contained in your application. Neither does Authenticode provide copy protection for your software.

### What is a Digital Certificate?

---

A digital certificate is a set of data, which uniquely identifies you, an entity, and is issued by a certification authority (CA) only after that authority has verified your identity. It contains information including your (the owner's) public key, your name, an expiration date, the name of the Certification Authority that issued the certificate, and a serial number.

The data set includes your public cryptographic key. When you sign your code, Authenticode reads the public key that is retrieved from the certificate information contained in your signed code. This public key is used to verify your identity. (More information on the public key is provided later in this appendix.)

A digital certificate can come in various formats. Of these, the X.509 certificate format is an emerging standard that has been widely used for many years.

## The Certificate Authority

---

A Certificate Authority is an entity that is entrusted to issue certificates asserting that the recipient individual, machine or organization requesting the certificate fulfills the conditions of an established policy. The CA could be an external commercial CA, or it could be a CA run by your company.

Simply put, it is the Certificate Authority that issues digital certificates. A certificate authority such as VeriSign or Thawte can provide digital certificates.

## Code Signing

---

Once you develop and test your code, you can run it through a one-way hash function that produces a fixed-length "digest." The digest is then encrypted with your private key; and combined into a signature block with the name of the hash algorithm and the certificate.

As mentioned previously, the certificate holds information such as your name, the public key, and the name of the CA's certificate. This signature block is then inserted back into the portable-executable file format under a reserved section, and the code is then distributed.

When your application attempts to access QuickBooks, the authorization process that uses Authenticode is invoked. In this process, the signature is extracted, the CA that authenticated the certificate is determined and your public key distributed by that CA is read. Using this public key, the digest is decrypted. The specified digest is run on the code again, creating a new digest. If the code has not been modified since it was signed, the new digest should match the old one. If the two digests don't match, it implies that either the code was modified, or the public and private keys aren't a matched pair. In either case, the code becomes suspect and the QuickBooks user is warned about this fact.

The Internet Client Software Developer's Kit (Microsoft's Authenticode toolkit) provides the necessary utilities to make it easy to follow the code-signing process.

## Obtaining a Digital Certificate

---

You need to apply for a Software Publisher's Certificate from an appropriate Certificate Authority. As mentioned earlier, make sure that you are asking for a Software Publisher's Certificate that is compatible with Microsoft Authenticode technology. The actual application process may differ depending on which Certificate Authority you use.

Along with your application, you need to submit the details such as your company registration and organizational information to the Certificate Authority. This is required by the Certificate Authority to verify your identity.

## Commercial CA Entities You Can Use

---

The following are well-known Certificate Authorities that issue digital certificates compatible with Authenticode:

- VeriSign : <http://www.verisign.com>
- Thawte:<http://www.thawte.com>

## Obtaining the Certificate

---

When the Certificate Authority verifies the information that you submitted, it will inform you of this fact and provide you with guidelines to download the certificate. It may take about 3 to 5 days for the Certificate Authority to complete this step.

At this stage, you will have obtained the Certificate as a Software Publishing Certificate (.spc) file.

## Signing Your Code

---

This section describes the process of using a digital certificate to sign application code. It describes the process using QuickBooks, a sample application to be signed, and Microsoft's Internet Client Software Developer's Kit.

To perform code signing, you will be using the following:

- The private key stored as a .pvk file, generated during the certificate application process.
- The Software Publishing Certificate (.spc) file received from the Certificate Authority.

You may sign your code at a stage just preceding your code distribution process. Code signing is a quick process, not lasting more than a few minutes. You need to only sign your code once each time you rebuild or distribute your application.

## Do You Have Everything You Need?

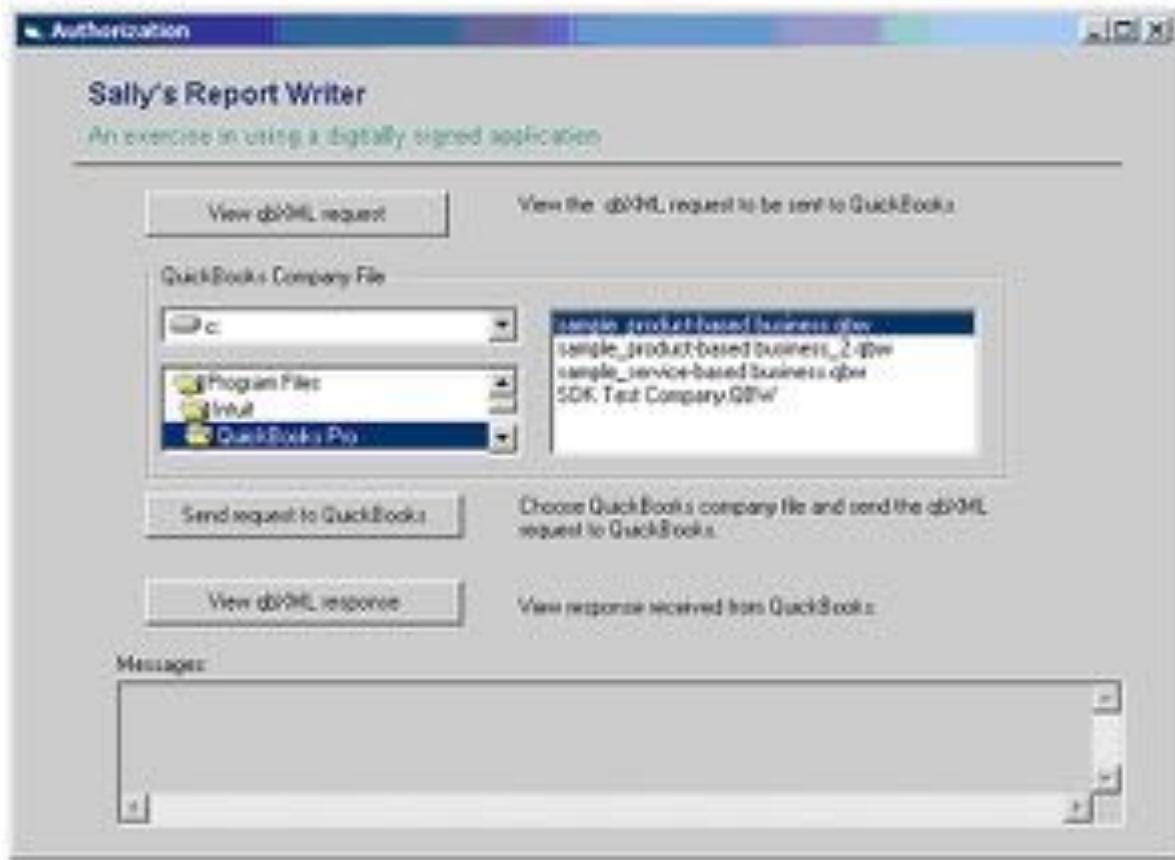
---

The following is a checklist of the items you will need to sign your application:

- A Software Publisher's Certificate compatible with Microsoft Authenticode.
- Internet Explorer (IE) version 4.0 or above.
- The Internet Client Software Developer's Kit downloaded from Microsoft's web site and installed on your system.

## An Example Using a Test Application

Suppose we have an application called Sally's Report Writer, represented by TestApp.exe. This application sends a qbXML request to QuickBooks, which contains a request for querying vendor information for reporting. Suppose the UI looks like this:



When "Send request to QuickBooks" is selected, QuickBooks goes through the authorization process. QuickBooks then displays the following information about the application:

The Application calls itself "Test Application". This application does not have a certificate. QuickBooks cannot verify the developer's identity.

This information is displayed in a dialog box to the QuickBooks user, as shown below:



Now, let's see what happens after we digitally sign this application and observe how QuickBooks displays information about the certification to the user.

## Signing Code With the Internet Client Software Developer's Kit

You use Internet Client Software Developer's Kit to sign the application. Notice that the following programs are installed as part of the Internet Client Software Developer's Kit (working with IE-5.X):

- MakeCert, which creates a test X.509 certificate.
- Cert2SPC, which creates a test SPC.
- SignCode, which signs a file.
- ChkTrust, which checks the validity of the file.
- MakeCTL, which creates a certificate-trust list.
- CertMgr, which manages certificates, certificate-trust lists, and certificate-revocation lists.

- SetReg, which sets registry keys that control the certificate-verification process.
- MakeCat, which creates a combined catalog of files to avoid multiple trust dialogs.

The installation process places these programs in \inetsdk\bin by default. The only one of these application that you absolutely need to use is SignCode.

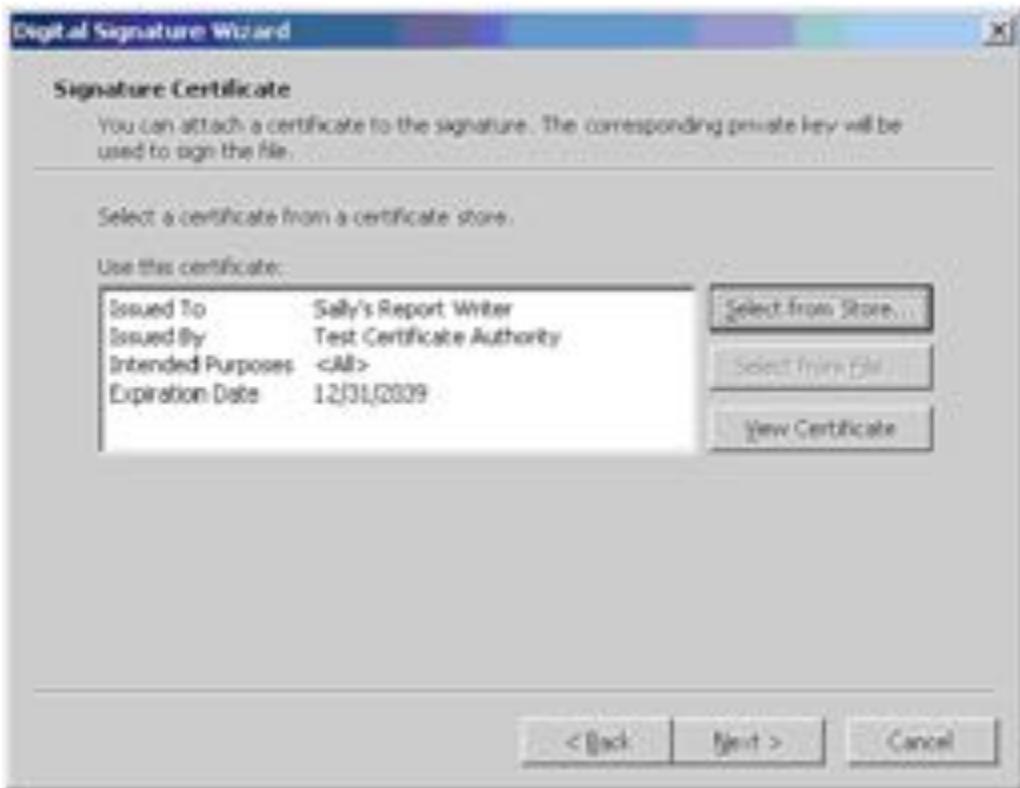
However, if you want to familiarize yourself with the signing process, you can create a test digital certificate and use this to sign your code. You may perform this test even before you apply for a digital certificate from a Certificate Authority of your choice, or while waiting for your request to be processed.

To create a test certificate, use the MakeCert, and Cert2SPC components of the Internet Client Software Developer's Kit. For additional information on creating a test certificate, refer to the Microsoft documentation.

## **Signing the test application**

Let us incorporate digital code signing in our application "Sally's report Writer", represented by TestApp.exe. We accomplish this by using the program SignCode. Follow these steps:

1. Run SignCode. This brings up the Digital Signature wizard.
2. In the wizard, click Next.
3. In the file selection dialog, browse for TestApp.exe, select it, and click Next.
4. In the next dialog, select Custom and then click Next.
5. Specify the location of the certificate file (.spc), then browse to the private key file (.pvk) when prompted.
6. Provide the private key password when prompted.
7. Select the "SHA1" Hash algorithm when prompted.
8. Select "All certificates in the certificate path including root" and "No additional certificates" when prompted.
9. Select "Select from Store" to display the list of certificates. You should see the certificate received from the Certificate Authority in the list.



10. Select the desired certificate and click OK.
11. Click Next to display details for this certificate.



12. Click View Certificate to view the details for the certificate.



13. Click Next. This is where you must specify an appropriate description of your application for display to the QuickBooks user. **This value must match exactly the application name you supply in the AppName parameter of the OpenConnection2 call!** For our purpose, let us specify the description as "Report Writer for QuickBooks Vendor Information", and the web URL as "http://www.SallysReports.com".
14. Click Next.
15. Leaving the timestamp box unchecked, click Next.
16. Click Finish. SignCode displays the message: "The Digital Signing wizard was completed successfully."

#### Testing the Digitally Signed Application

At this stage you have a digitally signed application TestApp.exe. If you run this with QuickBooks, you can observe the change in the User Interface for the authorization process in QuickBooks.

The certification information is displayed to the QuickBooks user. QuickBooks displays the Application Name "Report Writer for QuickBooks Vendor Information" and the Developer's Name "Sally's Report Writer". The fact that the Certificate Authority "Test Certificate Authority" has verified your identity is also displayed.



## Useful web site links

You may find the following web site links useful for additional reference:

### Certificate Authorities:

- <http://www.verisign.com>
- <http://www.thawte.com>

### Information on Authenticode

- <http://www.microsoft.com>

**Where to Obtain the Internet Client Software Developer's Kit**

- <http://msdn.microsoft.com>

# CHAPTER 35

## TIPS AND TECHNIQUES

This chapter describes “best practices” for programming with the QuickBooks SDK. It also suggests what to do when you encounter problems before you contact QuickBooks Intuit Developer Group (IDG) Developer Support.

### Best Practices

---

This section offers some friendly advice in the form of best practices with these intentions: to help safeguard your application against possible security exposures, errors, excessive data transport (how to use filters and purposeful construction of messages); and possibly to improve application performance. These best practices are suggestions, not requirements. They are the outcome of developer experience and are offered in the spirit of encouragement:

- Sign your code (using the digital signing process).

The QuickBooks SDK provides for application authentication through use of a digital signature within the application. A signed application offers your user greater confidence in the authenticity of your application. Your signed application is more secure from the users’ perspective in relation to their QuickBooks company file data.

- Store company file data in a secure manner.

For applications that store company file data, be certain to store the data in a secure manner using an internal database or file. If practical, encrypt data. Do not store QuickBooks company file data in the regular file system, exposing it to security breaches. Also, if you save qbXML text streams or discrete object requests between calls, store them in a secure manner. For instance, some applications integrate storage of qbXML within their databases removing the text stream only after they complete processing the response code and exit their message recovery routines.

- Be purposeful in your construction of messages:

- > Use well-defined filters in query requests. Consider this maxim: the briefer the request, the more verbose the response.

If an application is sending a query request and you don’t want all of the data of a certain type returned to you, use filters to limit the number of response objects returned and the data transported. The more verbose the request (the more filters), the briefer (more pertinent) the response.

- > For multiple, unbounded queries, issue separate requests to limit the amount of data transmitted in one request. Alternatively, use the `MaxReturned` filter in the query to limit the number of objects returned by a single call. See Chapter 8, “Creating Queries.”
  - > Do not include empty elements in requests without express intention and only in Modify requests or certain Add requests to clear the element value (see Chapter 10,

“Modifying and Deleting Transactions and List Objects,” on which values can be cleared in an Add request).

- > If you are using qbXML, pay attention to encoding issues. Be aware of your use of special characters, including ampersand (&), single quotes ('), double quotes ("), greater-than (>), and less-than (<) characters.
- Always run the qbXML Validator on your qbXML requests as you develop the code. Better yet, incorporate your own qbXML request validation routines in your code. For QBFC, use the Verify method to check the validity of your messages.
- Call GetCurrentCompanyName after BeginSession with *qbCompanyName* set to NULL.

If you pass in NULL for the company file name *qbCompanyName* in BeginSession because the file is already open, call GetCurrentCompanyName immediately after calling BeginSession to determine the identity of the file. Under these circumstances, before you modify any data in that company file, verify the company file name with the user through your application interface to ensure that your application acts on the intended company data file.

- Provide a mechanism for your user to run your application without having to provide a company file name to the BeginSession call.

This technique is useful in troubleshooting certain application problems and allows the user to continue using the software while a software problem is being investigated and resolved.

- Always parse the received response and analyze the status code and status severity for every response object.
- If you are using qbXML, provide your application with the ability to write application-generated qbXML routinely to a file for debugging purposes. Also, enable it with a debug switch that could be used during production time by your technical support organization to write application-generated qbXML to a file.
- Implement application features that provide your technical support organization with means of helping your users resolve problems. For instance, add a routine to compress and e-mail the log file to you.
- In your user interface, provide your users with a Browse button so that they may browse to select the company file. This approach is less prone to error than is entering the company file name and path by typing it in a window field.
- It is always good practice to test your application on a system equivalent to the machine and system you assess to be most like the target system of your customer. To ensure that your application is robust, run the application against a complex and large company data file. Use a target system that has an average amount of memory. Check your use of queries and filters against the company data file on that system. If the system thrashes or QuickBooks returns an out-of-memory error, enhance your application’s use of queries with additional, appropriate filters.
- Your code should always test for the *status code*, not the status message, since status messages are more likely to change from one release to the next.

## Validating Requests

---

The QuickBooks SDK includes an external Validator tool (*qbXMLValidator.exe*) that allows you to validate qbXML documents to ensure that their grammar and syntax adheres to the requirements of the qbXML specification. Similarly, the QBFC Library contains a Verify method for `IMsgSetRequest`, which allows you to verify requests before `DoRequests` is called.) The Validator tool is useful during the development cycle, since it helps you isolate invalid requests before you send them to be processed. The request format is also validated automatically when the call to `ProcessRequest` (or, in the case of QBFC, `DoRequests`) is made.

If you want more control over validating requests before they are sent to QuickBooks, you can build your own validator into your application. Be sure to validate your document before you report any problems to Intuit Developer Support.

## Investigating the Problem Thoroughly

---

In most cases, you will have undergone various processes in attempting to solve your development problem before you consider contacting IDG Support. However, here are some troubleshooting strategies to include in your investigation that you might not have considered. Try these approaches before you contact IDG support:

- If you are using qbXML, write out to a file the portion of qbXML that is causing the problem and check it thoroughly.
- Check the `qbsdklog.txt` file for additional detailed information pertaining to the error condition. This file is written to the directory where the QuickBooks executable file is installed.
- Ensure that you can recreate the problem using the SDKTest program. (The developer support engineer will want to know that this can be done and perhaps will also want to recreate the problem to investigate it further.)

## Building a Test Case to Make Available to Developer Support

---

Here are the guidelines to follow in building a test case:

- Create the smallest possible test case that will embody the problem. Let the test case simply point out the problem.
- Make the test case complete. If it requires the creation of any particular customers, vendors, accounts, invoices, and so on, create a setup file in addition to the one that shows the problem.
- Run the test case against one of the standard QuickBooks sample company files, and make the test case run successfully, if possible.

## Sending a Test Case and the Log File to Developer Support

---

If you must contact IDG Support, the developer support engineer will ask you to build a test case according to the guidelines. See “Building a Test Case to Make Available to Developer Support” for details. To proceed speedily in solving the problem, have the test case ready when you contact developer support. Send the test case as qbXML files to QuickBooks via the *SDKTest* program. Also send the portion of the log file (*qbsdklog.txt*) that pertains to the problem. (You do not have to send the entire *qbsdklog.txt* file.)

# CHAPTER 36

## SUPPORTING YOUR USER

This chapter suggests ways you can help users troubleshoot and resolve some problems without contacting technical support. In particular, it deals with ways your application can respond to error messages when it attempts to open a connection with QuickBooks and begin a session working on a company file. In many cases, your application can present windows that help users handle these problems themselves. Additional tips to help users avoid common pitfalls, which you may want to include in your documentation, are also outlined here.

### Using the SDKDiag Tool to Support Your User

---

For help with communication problems with QuickBooks, check out the IDG website for more information and a useful diagnostic tool called *qbSDKDiag*.

The *qbSDKDiag* tool turns on the maximum logging capability of QuickBooks and the SDK, gathers important registry data about QuickBooks, starts QuickBooks, and attempts to establish a connection with QuickBooks in interactive mode using QBXMLRP and QBXMLRP2.

Having successfully connected in interactive mode, the user is then asked to enable unattended access for the diagnostic tool and to close QuickBooks. The diagnostic tool then attempts to connect with both QBXMLRP and QBXMLRP2 using unattended mode. Finally, all the log files (qbsdklog.txt, qbinstancefinder.log, qbwin.log, and the diagnostic log itself) are zipped up for you to email to support personnel at a later time.

### Helping Users Troubleshoot and Resolve Problems

---

The most commonly occurring error conditions not resolvable by your application are

- Version incompatibility between the running version of QuickBooks and the version of QuickBooks your application requires
- Version incompatibility between the company data file and QuickBooks

In these cases, your application might need to inform the user about the nature of the problem and recommend an approach to its resolution. Otherwise, the user might wait for your application to recover from a situation it cannot resolve.

This section describes some of the kinds of problems your application should monitor for and the responsive actions it should take.

## Multiple Installed Versions of QuickBooks

---

If multiple versions of QuickBooks are installed, either of the following two cases might prevail:

- No version of QuickBooks is open.

*No problem:* In this case, when the user opens your application and your application attempts to connect to QuickBooks to begin processing, the Request Processor will locate and successfully launch the correct version of QuickBooks.

- A version of QuickBooks that is incompatible with the application is open.

*Problem:* In this case, when the user launches your application and your application calls the BeginSession method to connect to QuickBooks in response to a user action, your application will receive result code 0x80040404, which indicates that the version of QuickBooks currently running does not support the QuickBooks SDK.

*Response:* Your application should present the user with a window informing the user of the problem and the version of QuickBooks required. The window content should direct the user to quit the currently open version of QuickBooks and launch the correct version.

## Incompatible Versions: QuickBooks and Company File

---

*Problem:* The correct version of QuickBooks is installed and open, but the company data file specified by the user is incompatible with the current version of QuickBooks. Result code 0x80040409 is returned, which indicates that the version of QuickBooks currently running cannot work with the provided data file.

*Response:* Your application should present the user with a window describing the problem and direct the user to open the same company file in the correct version of QuickBooks (which will cause it to be converted to the correct format).

## Different Company File Is Already Open

---

*Problem:* If the user specifies the name of a company file that is different from the one already open in QuickBooks, your application will receive an error. QuickBooks returns a result code of 0x8004040A for the BeginSession method, which indicates that the data file already open is different from the requested one.

*Responses:* Your application should present the user with a window describing the problem. There are two possible resolutions, depending on the intention of the user. The resolution you recommend depends on your application.

- *Response 1:* If the user truly wanted to work in the new specified file, you could recommend that the user close the currently open company file and then repeat the action or command in your application, specifying the new company file name.
- *Response 2:* If the user meant to work in the currently open file, your application could allow the user to omit the company file name and use the currently open company file

by default. In this case, your application would specify NULL as the company file name in the BeginSession call. Then it would call GetCurrentCompanyName to obtain the name of the currently open file.

## Warn Your Users to Complete Error Recovery before Upgrading

---

Use of QuickBooks error recovery features allows you to protect against data loss and data duplication in the event of an error condition. This features requires that

- The version of QuickBooks that is currently running is the same as the version that was running when the error occurred (that is, the user has not upgraded QuickBooks).
- The version of your application that is currently running is the same version that was running when the error occurred (that is, the user has not installed a new version of your application).

If the user installed a new version of your application and it has the same name as the one used when the error condition occurred, error recovery is still possible.

The user might consider some problems more serious than others and think it is safer to replace a down-level version of an application with a new, improved one in the event of a serious condition such as a crash. It is important to convey to users that they must first start the installed versions of QuickBooks and your application and allow your application to restore its own data and the data it has modified in the QuickBooks company file. Then, if they want to, they can install the new software.

In addition to a window warning users of this requirement, you will probably also want to include a note in your documentation about this topic.

## Versions of Integrated Applications

---

An integrated application may be revised in between releases of QuickBooks. The name of the application may also be changed with each new release to differentiate the feature sets of each successive revision.

If your application changes its name, be aware that it may be represented as multiple applications in the QuickBooks preferred integrated applications list. Also, should an error condition exist, users should complete error recovery in one version of the application before they upgrade to the next version.

## Provide a Means for Breaking Out of Error Recovery

---

It is possible for an application to get locked into a error recovery loop, sending the same message repeatedly to QuickBooks. This condition might occur, for instance, if an application sent a request that caused an error condition to occur and in sending the request again as part of error recovery, the request caused the error condition to occur yet again.

With each recurrence, QuickBooks would respond with the same error recovery status response. Though perhaps an uncommon event, when this kind of loop occurs, there is no way for the user to interrupt the process. Therefore, as a safeguard, it is a good idea to put a “back door” into your application—a hidden keystroke sequence, perhaps—and inform your technical support organization about it.

You might also provide support for a control key set—Ctrl+<shift>+1 (for example)—that allows your user to break out of the loop and recover control of the application. You would tell your user support organization about this control key set. Your documentation might also mention it.

## Topics to Include in Your Documentation

---

The following sections suggest topics you may want to include in the documentation to help users avoid common pitfalls concerning permissions and error recovery.

### Permissions Required for Auto-Login

---

The auto-login option allows your application to integrate and run QuickBooks in unattended mode. Auto-login without the QuickBooks user interface can be efficient if your application needs to avoid the costly overhead entailed in updating the user interface management of lists and messages. For complete details on auto-login, see Chapter 3, “The Communication Model and Ways of Implementing It.”

You can use the `AuthPreferences` property and its `PutUnattendedModePref` method to specify whether your application needs auto-login (unattended mode) permissions. The appropriate authorization dialog will be presented to the user the next time your application calls `BeginSession`. (Notice that only the QuickBooks administrator can authorize this.)

However, in order for your application to run using the auto-login option, the QuickBooks administrator must first define the auto-login user in QuickBooks; see Chapter 3, “The Communication Model and Ways of Implementing It.” The administrator can specify that your application runs under any user, including the administrator.

### QuickBooks User Permissions

---

The QuickBooks administrator must configure each QuickBooks user that your application will log in under to have the permissions your application requires. For example, if your application deals with time sheets and time reports in QuickBooks, the administrator must grant your user Time Tracking permissions in QuickBooks when the administrator sets up the name and password for the new user.

Check the QuickBooks documentation to determine what permissions your application requires. Then, to ensure that things work properly, use the `AuthPreferences` property and its methods to prompt the user for the correct permissions. Also, include explicit directions in your documentation on how to set these permissions and why they are necessary.

## Application Access to Personal Data

---

The QuickBooks administrator must authorize an application to deal with personal data such as employee social security numbers, any field directly related to an employee's salary, and anything related to credit card numbers or bank account numbers. Click the Integrated Applications icon in QuickBooks, then Company Preferences, then Properties and be sure the administrator checks the box for allowing the application to access personal data.

### **IMPORTANT**

The application can use the `AuthPreferences` property and the `property` method `PutPersonalDataPref` to specify whether this access is required, optional, or not needed. This will cause the appropriate authorization dialog to be displayed to the user.

## Complete Error Recovery before Upgrading

---

As described in "Warn Your Users to Complete Error Recovery before Upgrading" (page 487), it is important that you include directions to your users to complete error recovery within the same version of the application used when the problems occurred. You should include this information in installation notes to upgrades of your product. If you find it warranted, you might also include it in your more formal documentation.



# CHAPTER 37

## MAKING YOUR APPLICATION ROBUST

This chapter describes how to create a robust application that responds appropriately to result codes and status codes received from QuickBooks. It covers the following major topics:

- *Types of error codes:* HRESULTs, HTTP errors, status codes
- *Log file:* using the `qbsdklog.txt` file to obtain more information on request processing
- *Software versions:* writing applications that run with all versions of QuickBooks
- *Error recovery:* dealing with error conditions where normal processing may have been interrupted
- *Synchronization:* dealing with status codes that indicate data synchronization problems between your application and QuickBooks

### Types of Error Codes

---

Your application needs to deal with two main categories of error codes:

- Error codes related to passing messages to and from QuickBooks
- Message set status code, which is a status code for the message as a whole
- Response status for each request sent to QuickBooks (status code, status message, and status severity)

To help you create an application that integrates successfully with QuickBooks, this chapter provides some pointers on particular result codes and status codes that are especially important to monitor. This material is meant to be a starting point for how your application should handle certain error conditions. Beyond that, of course, are many application-specific concerns that cannot be anticipated here.

### Appendix A for Status Code Information

---

Appendix A contains relevant error/status codes. It lists the status codes, status messages, and status severity, which are all returned as attributes in the response message for every request, and lists the HRESULTs that are returned by the COM API that enables your application to communicate with QuickBooks. Finally, the appendix lists the HRESULTs returned by the QBFC COM API, which are very similar to those sent by the qbXML Request Processor API.

## Monitoring HRESULTs and HTTP Errors

---

Error codes related to communicating with QuickBooks must be monitored and handled appropriately. The section in this chapter called “Synchronizing Data between Your Application and Quickbooks” describes a general strategy for implementing an error recovery routine that is invoked each time your application starts up. The error recovery routine checks for possible processing problems in the previous session. It is also invoked whenever certain error codes having to do with processing or communication problems are generated.

An example of an HRESULT returned by the qbXML Request Processor is:

```
0x80040416
If QuickBooks is not running, the company data file name must be supplied
to BeginSession.
```

## Monitoring Message Set Status Codes

---

This status code deals with the message set as a whole and is returned in response to a status check or clear status. It is also returned if some specific error recovery operation is invoked and fails, such as a standard check for a valid message set ID.

## Monitoring Status Codes

---

Status codes (and their accompanying status message and status severity) are included in the response for each request. This chapter provides special sections describing how your application might deal with status codes related to versioning issues, and with status codes related to problems in synchronizing company data between your application and QuickBooks.

An example of a status code is:

```
<CustomerAddRs requestID="2" status code="3231" statusSeverity="Error"
statusMessage="The request has not been processed."/>
```

## Using the Log File

When your application integrates with QuickBooks, QuickBooks creates a log file (*qb sdklog.txt*) in the Common Files directory. As your application interacts with QuickBooks, three categories of information are logged:

- Informational entries (I) report on activities, such as events beginning and ending.
- Warning entries (W) provide additional information about troublesome circumstances that have not stopped processing but should be addressed.
- Error entries (E) report on errors. They can also elaborate on errors returned to your program through qbXML COM HRESULT codes or status code errors, and messages returned in the attributes in the response message in the qbXML response text stream.

In some cases, the log file can help you to identify specific problematic fields (elements) in a request that raised an error. Sometimes the message will refer to a field or element that borders an area in error. This log information might occur, for instance, if the error occurred because a required field is missing. Table 37-1 shows an example of a log file.

Table 37-1 Example log file

<b>Date and time</b>	<b>Level</b>	<b>PID</b>	<b>SDK component</b>	<b>Event message</b>
20011107.145109	I	1884	RequestProcessor	Started Connection
20011107.145109	I	1884	RequestProcessor	Connection opened by app named 'SdkTest'
20011107.145109	I	1884	CertVerifier	The file does not contain an Authenticode signature.
20011107.145109	I	1884	RequestProcessor	Opening the file in the DoNotCare mode.
20011107.145120	I	1936	QB SDKProcessRequest	Application named 'SdkTest' starting requests (process 1884).
20011107.145122	I	1936	QB SDKMsgSetHandler	QUERY: Invoice
20011107.145128	I	1936	QB SDKMsgSetHandler	Request 234578 completed successfully.
20011107.145128	I	1936	MsgSetHandler	Finished.
20011107.145128	I	1936	QB SDKProcessRequest	Application named 'SdkTest' finishing requests (process 1884), ret = 0.
20020219.144648	I	393	SpecVersion	Current version of qbXML in use: 3.0
20011107.145129	I	1884	RequestProcessor	Connection closed by app named 'SdkTest'
20011107.145129	I	1884	RequestProcessor	Ended Connection

# Software Versions

---

The *Technical Overview* answers frequently asked questions about how to write an application that supports multiple versions of QuickBooks. See that document for a list of the different versions of QuickBooks and corresponding versions of the qbXML specification that are supported by QuickBooks.

## Checklist

---

The following checklist summarizes important tasks your application must address in order to work with multiple versions of QuickBooks:

1. Handle an error creating the qbXML Request Processor object (for example, an HRESULT of 0x80040404: *The version of QuickBooks currently running does not support qbXML.*).
2. After a session has begun, check the qbXML specification supported by the qbXML Request Processor object. (See “Checking the QuickBooks Version.”)
3. Reference the appropriate qbXML prolog for that specification. (See “Checking the QuickBooks Version.”)
4. Guard newer features to prevent their running against an older QuickBooks version. Be sure to consider both requests and responses. (Note that the prolog applies to all requests contained within the XML stream. You can’t mix 1.0, 1.1, 2.0, 2.1, and 3.0 requests in one stream.) (See “Dealing with Unsupported Features.”)

## Checking the QuickBooks Version

---

At runtime, your application needs to determine what versions of qbXML are supported by the version of QuickBooks that is processing your requests. Once it determines the current version, it should then load the appropriate prolog citing the correct version of the qbXML specification. (Or, if your application is using QBFC, it should create a message set request that corresponds to the correct version of the QuickBooks Request Processor.) The following two code examples (one for qbXML and one for QBFC) illustrate the tasks your application must complete in order to accommodate any version of QuickBooks that might be running when your application is launched.

### Example 1: qbXML

The following code excerpt contains two functions. The first function (qbXMLLatestVersion) shows using the HostQuery function to obtain the supported versions of the QuickBooks Request Processor that are currently running. It then loops through the versions to determine the highest supported version.

The second function (qbXMLAddProlog) then adds the qbXML prolog that corresponds to this latest version of the QuickBooks Request Processor.

```

Function qbXMLLatestVersion(rp As requestProcessor, ticket As String)
    As String
    Dim strXMLVersions() As String

    'Create a DOM document object for creating our request.
    Dim xml As New DOMDocument

    'Create the QBXML aggregate
    Dim rootElement As IXMLDOMNode
    Set rootElement = xml.createElement("QBXML")
    xml.appendChild rootElement

    'Add the QBXMLMsgsRq aggregate to the QBXML aggregate
    Dim QBXMLMsgsRqNode As IXMLDOMNode
    Set QBXMLMsgsRqNode = xml.createElement("QBXMLMsgsRq")
    rootElement.appendChild QBXMLMsgsRqNode

    Dim onErrorAttr As IXMLDOMAttribute
    Set onErrorAttr = xml.createAttribute("onError")
    onErrorAttr.Text = "stopOnError"
    QBXMLMsgsRqNode.Attributes.setNamedItem onErrorAttr

    'Add the HostQuery aggregate to QBXMLMsgsRq aggregate
    Dim HostQuery As IXMLDOMNode
    Set HostQuery = xml.createElement("HostQueryRq")
    QBXMLMsgsRqNode.appendChild HostQuery

    'Add a lowest-common-denominator prolog'
    Dim strXMLRequest As String
    strXMLRequest = _
        "<?xml version=""1.0"" ?>" & _
        "<!DOCTYPE QBXML PUBLIC '-//INTUIT//DTD QBXML QBD 1.0//EN' " _
        "'http://developer.intuit.com'>" & _
        rootElement.xml

    Dim strXMLResponse As String
    strXMLResponse = rp.ProcessRequest(ticket, strXMLRequest)
    Dim QueryResponse As New DOMDocument

    'Parse the response XML
    QueryResponse.async = False
    QueryResponse.loadXML (strXMLResponse)

```

```

        Dim supportedVersions As IXMLDOMNodeList
        Set supportedVersions =
        QueryResponse.getElementsByTagName("SupportedQBXMLVersion")

        Dim VersNode As IXMLDOMNode

        Dim i As Long
        Dim vers As Double
        Dim LastVers As Double
        LastVers = 0
        For i = 0 To supportedVersions.length - 1
            Set VersNode = supportedVersions.Item(i)
            vers = VersNode.firstChild.Text
            If (vers > LastVers) Then
                LastVers = vers
                qbXMLLatestVersion = VersNode.firstChild.Text
            End If
        Next i
    End Function

    'Get an XML prolog that is appropriate for the latest version of qbXML

    Function qbXMLAddProlog(supportedVersion As String, xml As String) As
    String
        Dim qbXMLVersionSpec As String
        If (Val(supportedVersion) >= 2) Then
            qbXMLVersionSpec = "<?qbxml version=""" & supportedVersion & """?>"
        ElseIf (supportedVersion = "1.1") Then
            qbXMLVersionSpec = "<!DOCTYPE QBXML PUBLIC '-//INTUIT//DTD QBXML QBD ' _"
            & supportedVersion & "/>EN' 'http://developer.intuit.com'>"
        Else
            MsgBox "You are apparently running QuickBooks 2002 Release 1, we
            strongly recommend that you use QuickBooks' online update feature to obtain
            the latest fixes and enhancements", vbExclamation
            qbXMLVersionSpec = "<!DOCTYPE QBXML PUBLIC '-//INTUIT//DTD QBXML QBD '"
            & supportedVersion & "/>EN' 'http://developer.intuit.com'>"
        End If
        qbXMLAddProlog = "<?xml version=""1.0""?>" & vbCrLf & qbXMLVersionSpec &
        xml
    End Function

```

## Example 2: QBFC

This example parallels Example 1 but uses QBFC syntax. The first function (QBFCLatestVersion) determines the highest version of QuickBooks that is currently running. The second function (GetLatestMsgSetRequest) creates a message set request for the current version of QuickBooks.

```

Function QBFCLatestVersion(SessionManager As QBSessionManager) As String
    Dim strXMLVersions() As String

    Dim msgset As IMsgSetRequest
    'Use oldest version to ensure that we work with any QuickBooks (US)

```

```

Set msgset = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest(1, 0)
msgset.AppendHostQueryRq
Dim QueryResponse As QBFC2Lib.IMPMsgSetResponse
Set QueryResponse = SessionManager.DoRequests(msgset)
Dim response As QBFC2Lib.IResponse

' The response list contains only one response,
' which corresponds to our single HostQuery request
Set response = QueryResponse.ResponseList.GetAt(0)
Dim HostResponse As IHostRet
Set HostResponse = response.Detail
Dim supportedVersions As IBSTRList
Set supportedVersions = HostResponse.SupportedQBXMLVersionList

Dim i As Long
Dim vers As Double
Dim LastVers As Double
LastVers = 0
For i = 0 To supportedVersions.Count - 1
    vers = Val(supportedVersions.GetAt(i))
    If (vers > LastVers) Then
        LastVers = vers
        QBFCLatestVersion = supportedVersions.GetAt(i)
    End If
Next i
End Function

```

'QBFC: Get a MsgSetRequest that supports the latest possible version 'of qbXML

```

Public Function GetLatestMsgSetRequest(SessionManager As QBSessionManager) As IMPMsgSetRequest
    Dim supportedVersion as String
    supportedVersion = QBFCLatestVersion(SessionManager)

    If (Val(supportedVersion) >= 3) Then
        Set GetLatestMsgSetRequest = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 3, 0)
        addr4supported = True
    ElseIf (Val(supportedVersion) >= 2) Then
        Set GetLatestMsgSetRequest = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 2, 0)
        addr4supported = True
    ElseIf (Val(supportedVersion) = 1.1) Then
        Set GetLatestMsgSetRequest = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 1, 1)
    Else
        MsgBox "You are apparently running QuickBooks 2002 Release 1, we strongly recommend
                that you use QuickBooks' online update feature to obtain the latest fixes and
                enhancements", vbExclamation
        Set GetLatestMsgSetRequest = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 1, 0)
    End If

```

## Dealing with Unsupported Features

---

If your application takes advantage of features added in later versions of QuickBooks that are unsupported in earlier versions (for example, transaction Modify requests), it needs to control what will happen when it is running against one of the earlier versions of QuickBooks that does not contain the later functionality.

### Branching When Versions Differ

The following QBFC function is an example of a useful way to test for support of a particular version and then branch according to the version support currently available. For example, you could place this function at the beginning of the application and then check the Boolean value set by the function when support for Version 2.0 is required. The CustomerAdd example included in the QuickBooks SDK uses this function to check whether Version 2.0 is supported. If it is, the application sets the value for Addr4 (a 2.0 feature). If not, it does not set the Addr4 value.

```
Dim booSupports2dot0 as boolean
booSupports2dot0 = False
Dim supportedVersion As String
supportedVersion = QBFCLatestVersion(SessionManager)
If (val(supportedVersion) >= 2.0) Then
    booSupports2dot0 = True
    Set requestSet = SessionManager.CreateMsgSetRequest("US", 3, 0)
End If
```

### Alerting the User of Version Issues

If your application requires use of a new feature, it should display an appropriate error message and deal gracefully with earlier versions of QuickBooks that do not contain the feature. The following qbXML example shows checking the version and exiting when appropriate QuickBooks support is unavailable.

```
Dim supportedVersion As String
supportedVersion = qbXMLLatestVersion(qbXMLRP, ticket)
If (val(supportedVersion) < 2.0) Then
    MsgBox "This sample requires support for qbXML 2.0 or later (QuickBooks
2003 or later) " & _
    "Expect a parsing error when attempting to send requests to QuickBooks",
    vbExclamation
End If
```

In most cases, an actual application would not need to take the drastic measure of exiting; it would deal gracefully with the version issues and alert the user that it cannot integrate successfully with QuickBooks.

## Error Recovery

---

An important feature of every robust application is error recovery. Details on implementing error recovery are provided in Chapter 31, “Error Recovery.”

## Synchronizing Data between Your Application and Quickbooks

---

If your application maintains a database or internal file that stores portions of data from the QuickBooks company file, the application needs to ensure that the two sets of data are synchronized with each other. Event notification, described in Chapter 14, “Event Notification,” is a useful way to maintain synchronization.

There are two main actions that lead to a lack of synchronization:

- The user restored the QuickBooks company file to an earlier version.
- The user pruned the company file, removing obsolete data and, possibly, data in the QuickBooks company file that had been modified by your application.

In the first case, your application might need to update the QuickBooks version of the company file to reflect the changes made by your application to that data. Before you update the QuickBooks file, be sure to query the user and obtain his or her approval.

In the second case, your application would need to update its own database to reflect the changes made in the QuickBooks company file.

## Monitor Status Codes

---

The following status codes indicate a problem with data synchronization. Your application also needs to check for these status codes and take appropriate action if it receives them.

- > 3120 Object not found. Object <value> specified in the request cannot be found.

Your application attempted to modify an object that it previously added to QuickBooks or that it obtained using a Query request, and the application received an error stating that the object doesn’t exist. At this point, your application might enter its synchronization routine to attempt to determine whether the object was intentionally deleted by the user or whether the company file was restored.

- > 3140 Reference not found or
- 3130 Parent reference not found

If your application received one of these messages and it had previously referenced the object successfully, there is the possibility that the object was intentionally deleted or that the company file was restored. Your application would need to take some action to ensure that the error condition didn’t occur again because the referenced object no longer exists.

- > 3240 Time creation mismatch. File has been restored.

If the company file was restored, your application could receive this message, for example, after issuing a modify request for an object that it previously added, specifying the `ListID` assigned to the object and returned by QuickBooks. Because the user restored a version the company file that pre-dates addition of the object, the `ListID` (and the object it pertains to) do not exist. This message unambiguously indicates that the user restored the company file. Your application needs to take appropriate action to re-sync its data with QuickBooks.

## Example of Synchronizing Data with QuickBooks

---

The following example outlines a useful procedure for keeping data in sync, based on the following requests:

- `CompanyActivityQueryRq`, which returns the date and time of the most recent restore of the QuickBooks company file
- The `FromModifiedDate` field of any list or transaction request, which returns the elements that have been added or modified
- The `FromDeletedDate` of the `ListDeletedQueryRq` or `TxnDeletedQueryRq`, which returns the elements that have been deleted.

Figure 37-1 summarizes the steps involved in this synchronization process.

Suppose an application requires a list of active customers and needs to keep this list in sync with the list contained in the QuickBooks company file. The application uses the `ListID` as the primary key of the customer records because the `ListID`, unlike the `FullName`, is guaranteed not to change.

The first time the application connects to QuickBooks, it needs to obtain the entire active customer list. Listing 37-1 shows this request. Immediately before this request, the application needs to obtain and record the date and time of this action. In this example, this date/time is referred to as the *“last sync datetime.”*

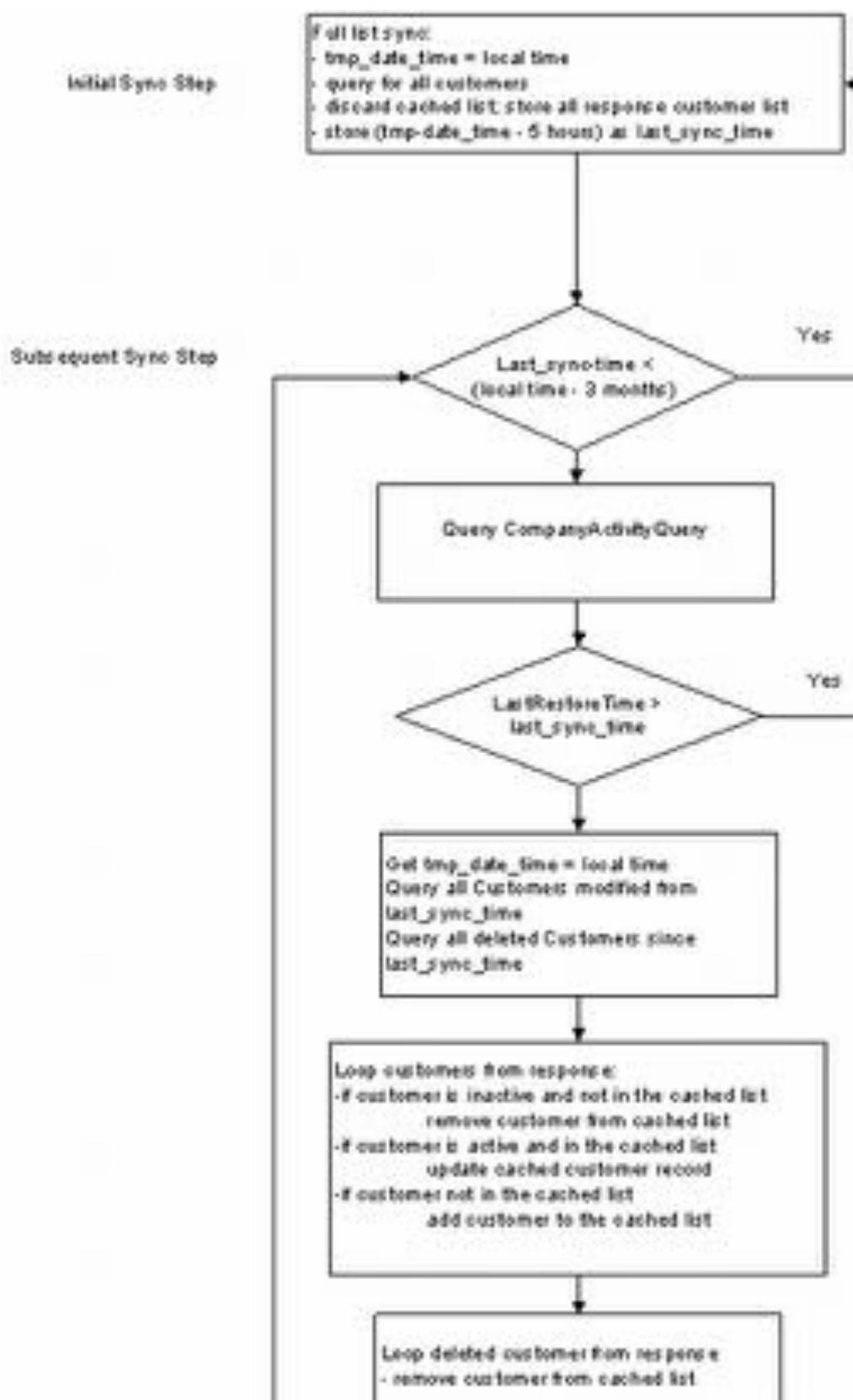


Figure 37-1 Steps for synchronizing application data with QuickBooks data

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 37-1 Obtaining the list of active customers

```
<CustomerQueryRq requestID = "UUIDTYPE">
    <ActiveStatus>ActiveOnly</ActiveStatus>
</CustomerQueryRq>
```

(Since the default ActiveStatus value is Active Only, that field could actually have been omitted from Listing 37-1.)

Periodically, the application needs to re-sync its data with QuickBooks. To do so, it first issues a Company ActivityQueryRq to obtain the LastRestoreTime:

- If the LastRestoreTime is more recent than the “last sync datetime,” then the application should refresh the entire cached list by querying for the entire list of active customers.
- If the LastRestoreTime is less recent than the “last sync datetime,” then the application should issue a request set with two requests to filter for the customers that have been added, modified, or deleted. Listing 37-2 shows an example of this request. Before sending this request, the application needs to obtain and record the date and time of the new “last sync datetime.”

\_\_\_\_\_ Listing 37-2 Checking for customers that have been added, modified, or deleted

```
CustomerQueryRq requestID = "1">
    <ActiveStatus>All</ActiveStatus>
    <FromModifiedDate> last sync datetime</FromModifiedDate>
</CustomerQueryRq>
<ListDeletedQueryRq requestID = "2">
    <ListDelType>Customer</ListDelType>
    <DeletedDateRangeFilter>
        <FromDeletedDate> last sync datetime </FromDeletedDate>
    </DeletedDateRangeFilter>
</ListDeletedQueryRq>
```

Based on the CustomerQuery response, the application needs to add or refresh existing customer records, matching ListIDs from the response to the cached list. Note that the response also contains the Inactive customers so that the customers that have changed status from Active to Inactive can be taken out of the list. The Inactive customers that are returned and not found in the cached list should be ignored, since the sample shows keeping the *active* customer list in sync. Next, based on the ListDeletedQuery response, the application needs to remove customer records that are no longer necessary.

## Three-Month Limit for ListDeletedQueryRq

---

There are a few considerations and limitations to the synchronization process described above. Be aware that ListDeletedQueryRq returns only elements deleted for the previous three months. If the most recent re-sync happened more than three months ago, a full synchronization is necessary.

## Modification Time

---

Unlike single-user mode, in multi-user mode, the QuickBooks recorded modification time is the time of the system where the data file resides, not the time of the system where QuickBooks is running. The clocks on these two systems (that is, the clock on the system where the data file resides and the clock on the system that runs the QuickBooks executable file and runs the SDK requests) may be out of sync. To account for such differences, it is strongly recommended that you expand the query time range and move the “last sync datetime” a few hours in the past. The application needs to be prepared to deal with response duplicates that have already been taken into account in the previous sync as a result of this time overlap.

## Cases Needing Complete Re-Sync

---

Depending on what data you want to keep in sync, you may need to re-fetch the entire list every time you want to re-sync because the list of list objects or transactions that have been modified since the given “last sync datetime” is not accurate. Examples are:

- *Account balances* are changed by different transactions, but these transactions don’t result in marking the affected account as modified at the time the transaction occurred.
- *Quantity on hand for inventory items*: Merging two inventory items modifies the quantity on hand for the remaining item, but the item doesn’t get marked as modified at the time of the merge. Transactions can also modify the quantity on hand, but the affected items are not marked as modified at the time of the transaction.
- *Transaction line items*: Merging two items causes changes to all the existing transaction line items to refer to the remaining item of the merge. However, the transactions are not marked modified at the time of the merge.

## Check with the User

---

Your application should always interact with the user before modifying the QuickBooks version of the company file as a result of synchronization problems. How you do this is application-dependent.

If your application ascertains that the QuickBooks company file has been restored, then you might want to prompt the user further to inquire whether the user would like you to update the company file in QuickBooks to reflect the more recent changes stored in your application's database. This interaction lets the user know about new information that might otherwise be confusing.

For instance, you might present a window that includes a question similar to this one:

Do you want to reinstate the changes made to the company file by this application before you restored it?

If the user answers yes, your application can update the QuickBooks company file to synchronize with its data.

# CHAPTER 38

## REDISTRIBUTING SDK COMPONENTS WITH YOUR APPLICATION

The QuickBooks SDK provides optional redistributable components for your application to distribute, either as separate installers or as merge modules that can be run within your own application install. These are optional because you need only to distribute the component that your application actually uses, for example, if you are using only QBFC you redistribute the QBFC component, not any of the others.

Any of the installers or merge modules within the QB SDK install subdirectory tools\Installers or tools\MergeModules can be redistributed. Currently these include QBFC, RDS, the QBO connector, and the web connector.

### **IMPORTANT**

You can never redistribute the request processor DLL (qbxmlrp.dll or qbxmlrp2.dll). This violates the license agreement and can lead to undesirable user experiences.

## Using the Installers and Merge Modules

If you are using the QBFC API, the Remote Data Sharing (RDS) feature, the QBO connector or the web connector in your application, there are only two supported ways in which you can distribute our redistributable components:

1. You can use the stand-alone compressed-image installers that we provide.
2. You can use the merge modules that we provide.

### **NOTE**

*It is a violation of your qbXML license agreement to redistribute QBFC, RDS, the QBO connector, or the web connector without using either our stand-alone installers or our merge modules.*

Do not use automatic installation programs and packaging wizards, such as the wizard in Microsoft® Visual Studio®. These will not install properly (even if you are using .NET), for the following reasons:

- Automatic solutions will redistribute the qbxmlrp.dll file. Redistributing this file is against your license agreement, and could also cause significant problems for your end users.
- Automatic solutions will redistribute the QBFC DLL file or files, but not the Xerces files that must go with them.

### **IMPORTANT**

The QBFC library requires the Microsoft system DLL ShFolder.dll to be installed on the system. Newer Microsoft operating systems (Windows ME, Windows XP, etc.) have this DLL pre-installed. This DLL is installed if needed by QuickBooks and by the QBFC stand-alone installer using the SHFolder.exe redistributable installer from Microsoft. If you plan to use the QBFC merge module in your installer *and* you want your application to work with RDS (where QuickBooks may not be installed on the machine where your application is installed) then your installer must include and execute the SHFolder.exe installer from Microsoft. Technical issues prevent us from including this action in the QBFC merge module itself.

## Using the Stand-Alone Installers

---

If your install process does not support merge modules, you will need to use the stand-alone installers provided with the SDK. These installers will automatically perform a proper installation.

To install the QBFC Library on your end-users' machines:

- Distribute the QBFC installer, QBFC\*\_0Installer.exe, located in the SDK install subdirectory /tools/installers. (Merge modules are in the SDK install subdirectory /tools/MergeModules.)
- Call the installer. Exactly how you call it depends on the underlying technology you are using to drive your installation.

QBFC1, QBFC2, QBFC2CA, QBFC2\_1, QBFC3, QBFC4, and QBFC5 can be installed side-by-side on the same computer. The stand-alone installer for QBFC4 will install QBFC4 and QBXMLRP2. (For more information about QBXMLRP2, see the *Technical Overview*.)

## Using the Merge Modules

---

If your install process supports Microsoft merge modules, you can use the merge modules that are provided.

### **What Is a Merge Module?**

The Microsoft Installer (MSI) service is built into Windows 2000 and XP. MSI solves a number of installation problems, such as getting clean uninstalls and protecting system components, and includes redistributable install engines that support Win98, WinNT, and Win ME. To get a “Designed for Windows” logo, your application must be installed using MSI.

“Merge modules” are a key part of MSI. They encode the logic and files needed to correctly redistribute shared components, which aren’t removed from a system until all of the applications that installed them are removed.

Any installation that is built for an MSI-engine installer can use merge modules. Many proprietary install tools that are not strictly based on MSI (for example, newer versions of InstallShield Professional) can also take advantage of merge modules.

## **How Do I Use a Merge Module from the SDK?**

The SDK merge modules are located in the /tools/MergeModules folder. Here’s how to use them:

1. Make sure you have the Microsoft VC (VC\_CRT.msm) and VC++ (VC\_STL.msm) runtime library merge modules, which are required because the SDK merge modules install components that depend on the Visual C and C++ version 7 runtime libraries.  
These Microsoft merge modules are included with most MSI-based install builders, or you can get them directly from Microsoft. When the VC\_CRT.msm and VC\_STL.msm modules are added to the installer, the install author is responsible for configuring them to set their target directory to the windows system directory.
2. Set your installation development tool to include the SDK MergeModules directory in the MergeModule search path.
3. Each MSI “feature” refers to components and/or merge modules. For any feature that installs components of your application that depend on the SDK capabilities provided by a merge module, specify that particular merge module as part of that feature. If a merge module is dependent on some other module, the other module will be added to your installer automatically. (For example, the various versions of the QBFC merge modules depend on various versions of Xerces, which are packaged in separate merge modules: the correct one is automatically added to the installation.)
4. Build your installation as usual. All the logic from the included merge modules will be merged into your install.

## **What Installation Logic Is Built Into the Provided Merge Modules?**

The QBFC merge modules provide QBFC DLL files and COM registration information for QBFC. The QBFC merge modules depend on the Xerces XML parser module and on the QBXMLRP2 merge module—in other words, installing QBFC installs the Xerces files and QBXMLRP2.



# APPENDIX A

## STATUS CODES FOR qbXML RESPONSES

This appendix lists the status codes returned in the qbXML `statusCode` attribute. This information is used by developers using qbXML for applications integrating with either QuickBooks, QuickBooks Canada, and QuickBooks UK.

Table A-1 shows the status code ranges and identifies their types.

Table A-1 Ranges of status codes and levels of severity

<b>Status Code Range</b>	<b>General Meaning of Codes in Range</b>
0–499	Info
500–999	Warnings
1000–1999	General Errors
2000–2999	Not Supported for QuickBooks.
3000 and beyond	Specific Errors

Table A-2 lists the status code, gives its meaning, and explains the condition that the code represents.

Table A-2 Status codes and conditions under which they appear

Code	Meaning	Explanation
0	The QuickBooks server processed the request successfully.	Status OK
1	No match.	A query request did not find a matching object in QuickBooks.
500	One or more objects cannot be found	The query request has not been fully completed. There was a required element ("fieldValue") that could not be found in QuickBooks.
501	Object not in this qbXML specification	Unable to represent objectName "fieldValue" in this version of the qbXML spec.
510	Object cannot be returned	Unable to return object.
530	Unsupported field	The field "fieldName" is not supported by this implementation.
531	Unsupported enum value	The enum value "fieldValue" in the field "fieldName" is not supported by this implementation.
550	Unable to save notes	The "objectName" object was saved successfully, but its corresponding Notes record could not be saved.
560	Deprecated field used.	Use of this field is no longer recommended. Although it is currently supported, it may be removed from a future release.
570	Cannot link to transaction	Unable to link to transaction "fieldValue" because it has already been closed.
600	No cleared state to return	(For error recovery; no message is returned.)
1000	Internal error	There has been an internal error when processing the request.
1010	System not available	System not available
1030	Unsupported message	This request is not supported by this implementation.
1060	Invalid request ID	The request ID "fieldValue" is invalid, possibly too long, max 50 chars.
2000	Authentication failed	Signon failed. QuickBooks error message: fieldValue
2010	Access not authorized	Not authorized to access the server.
3000	Invalid object ID	The given object ID "fieldValue" in the field "fieldName" is invalid.
3010	Invalid Boolean	There was an error when converting the boolean value "fieldValue" in the field "fieldName"

Table A-2 Status codes and conditions under which they appear (continued)

Code	Meaning	Explanation
3020	Invalid date	There was an error when converting the date value "fieldValue" in the field "fieldName"
3030	Invalid date range	Invalid date range: From date is greater than To date.
3031	Invalid string range	The "From" or "To" values in the provided fieldName are invalid.
3035	Invalid time interval	There was an error when converting the time interval "fieldValue" in the field "fieldName"
3040	Invalid amount	There was an error when converting the amount "fieldValue" in the field "fieldName"
3045	Invalid price	There was an error when converting the price "fieldValue" in the field "fieldName"
3050	Invalid percentage	There was an error when converting the percent "fieldValue" in the field "fieldName"
3060	Invalid quantity	There was an error when converting the quantity "fieldValue" in the field "fieldName"
3065	Invalid value for GUIDTYPE	There was an error when converting the GUID value XXX in the field "fieldName"
3070	String too long	The string "fieldValue" in the field "fieldName" is too long.
3080	Invalid string	The string "fieldValue" is invalid.
3085	Invalid number	There was an error when converting the number "fieldValue" in the field "fieldName"
3090	Invalid object name	There was an error when storing "fieldValue" in the "fieldName" field.
3100	Name is not unique	The name "fieldValue" of the list element is already in use.
3101	Resulting amount too large	Multiplying the rate and the quantity results in an amount that exceeds the maximum allowable amount.
3110	Invalid enum value	The enumerated value "fieldValue" in the field "fieldName" is unknown or invalid for the qbXML version in use.
3120	Object not found	Object "fieldValue" specified in the request cannot be found.
3121	OwnerID not found	Data Extension Definitions specified by OwnerID fieldValue not found for this object type.

Table A-2 Status codes and conditions under which they appear (continued)

Code	Meaning	Explanation
3130	Parent reference not found	There is an invalid reference to a parent "fieldValue" in the objectName list.
3140	Reference not found	There is an invalid reference to QuickBooks fieldName "fieldValue" in the objectName.
3150	Missing required element	There is a missing element "fieldName."
3151	Invalid element for request	Cannot use the element "fieldName" in this request.
3152	Invalid enum value for this request	The enumerated value "fieldValue" may not be used in the element "fieldName" in this request.
3153	Element conflict in request	This error is returned whenever there is a conflict in the elements in the request. Each element has valid value, but their combination becomes invalid.
3160	Object cannot be deleted	Cannot delete the object specified by the id = "fieldValue."
3161	Cannot delete before closing date	An attempt was made to delete a fieldValue with a date that is on or before the closing date of the company. If you are sure you really want to do this, please ask a user with Admin privileges to remove the password for editing transactions on or before to closing date (this setting is in the Accounting Company Preferences), then try again.
3162	Not allowed in multi-user mode	This operation is not allowed in multi-user mode.
3170	Object cannot be modified	There was an error when modifying a fieldValue.
3171	Cannot modify before closing date	An attempt was made to modify a fieldValue with a date that is on or before the closing date of the company. If you are sure you really want to do this, please ask a user with Admin privileges to remove the password for editing transactions on or before to closing date (this setting is in the Accounting Company Preferences), then try again.
3172	Cannot modify prior to last condense	An attempt was made to modify a fieldValue with a date that is on or before the last inventory condensed date.
3173	Related object deleted or modified	The related fieldName transaction object fieldValue was deleted or modified.

Table A-2 Status codes and conditions under which they appear (continued)

Code	Meaning	Explanation
3175	Object is in use	There was an error adding, modifying or deleting fieldValue because it is already in use.
3176	A related "object_type/transaction" is already in use, or failed to acquire the lock for this object.	This error occurs if an object is already in use or if QuickBooks is in a mode that prohibits any data modification requests. (In QuickBooks, certain features are "single-user" features, which lock out other add and modify requests. An example of a single-user feature is opening the "Adjust Quantity/Value on Hand" window within QuickBooks.)
3177	Duplicate AppliedToTxn IDs	The transaction object "fieldValue" may only be provided once in this request.
3180	Object cannot be added	There was an error when saving a fieldValue.
3185	Object cannot be voided	Cannot void the object specified by the id = "fieldValue"
3190	Cannot clear required element	Cannot clear the element in the fieldName field.
3200	Outdated edit sequence	The provided edit sequence "fieldValue" is out-of-date.
3205	Invalid address	There was an error when composing an address in "fieldValue"
3210	Other validation error	The "fieldName" field has an invalid value "fieldValue"
3220	Not authorized to perform this operation	There is no permission to perform this request, or the feature has been turned off in QuickBooks
3230	Status rollback	The request has been rolled-back.
3231	Status unprocessed	The request has not been processed.
3240	Time creation mismatch	Object "fieldValue" specified in the request cannot be found.
3250	Feature not enabled	This feature is not enabled or not available in this version of QuickBooks.
3260	Insufficient permissions	Insufficient permission level to perform this action.
3261	Application has no sensitive data permission	The integrated application has no permission to access sensitive data.
3262	Requires payroll subscription	In order to complete this request, the company data file has to be subscribed to the Intuit Payroll Service.

Table A-2 Status codes and conditions under which they appear (continued)

Code	Meaning	Explanation
3263	Not authorized for write access.	This request cannot be completed because the integrated application had requested read-only access. Have the integrated application request read/write access, and have the QuickBooks administrator grant this access.
3270	Missing posting account	Missing posting account.
3280	Item type mismatch	The item "fieldValue" cannot be used in this line item. It does not have a correct type.
3290	Item line out of order	The item lines in the request cannot be reordered.
3300	Could not open the window or form	Could not open the requested "formname" form or window
3301	Not allowed in unattended mode	Cannot perform this request unless an interactive QuickBooks user is logged in.
3310	Failed to save the Time Tracking transaction.	The employee "fieldName" provided in the TimeTrackingAdd request has the checkbox "Use time data to create paychecks" set to the Unknown state. Have your application ask the user whether or not to set time tracking for this employee. Then issue an EmployeeMod request to set this option to either UseTimeData or DoNotUseTimeData. If UseTimeData, activities will be transferred to paychecks.
3320	Could not create report	The required report could not be generated.
3330	GUID used in request is invalid	Cannot use the value XXX in the "fieldname" field in this request.
3340	This request cannot be processed from within a data event callback procedure	This request cannot be processed from within a data event callback procedure.
3350	Custom field list is full	Unable to define a new public data extension; the list of public extension definitions is full.
3351	Invalid type for custom field	The value or values provided for AssignToObject or RemoveFromObject may not be used for public data extension requests.
3352	Previously defined custom field definition can't be reused	The data extension named XXX was previously defined with a different, incompatible AssignToObject. Unable to use the AssignedToObject type in this request.

Table A-2 Status codes and conditions under which they appear (continued)

Code	Meaning	Explanation
3360	Callback application cannot be found	The callback application cannot be found from the CLSID or ProgID provided in the subscription request.
9000	Host processing request. Try later.	(For error recovery; no message is returned.)
9001	Invalid checksum	(For error recovery; no message is returned.)
9002	No stored response found	(For error recovery; no message is returned.)
9003	Reinitialization problem	(For error recovery; no message is returned.)
9004	Invalid message ID	(For error recovery; no message is returned.)
9005	Unable to store response.	The error recovery message cannot be saved.
9100	Macro name not unique	The macro name "fieldValue" is already in use; it may only be defined once.
9101	Macro name too long	The macro name "fieldValue" is too long.
9102	Macro name invalid	The macro name "fieldValue" contains invalid characters.
9103	Macro substitution failure	The request was unable to use a macro value, probably due to an earlier error encountered when defining the macro.

## HRESULTS from qbXML COM Methods

The qbXML COM methods return an HRESULT value. If the HRESULT variable does not specify S\_OK on return, then one of the result codes listed in Table A-1 is returned. These result codes report several kinds of errors: connection, parsing, or file I/O errors.

### **NOTE**

The QuickBooks qbXML COM interface supports the IErrorInfo interface, which allows you to obtain further information on error codes.

HRESULT error code	Message
0x80040400	QuickBooks found an error when parsing the provided XML text stream.
0x80040401	Could not access QuickBooks (Failure in attempt to connection).
0x80040402	Unexpected error. Check the <i>qbSDKLog.txt</i> file for possible additional information.
0x80040403	Could not open the specified QuickBooks company data file.
0x80040404	The version of QuickBooks currently running does not support qbXML.
0x80040405	qbXML components have not been installed.

<b>HRESULT error code</b>	<b>Message</b>
0x80040406	Could not determine the version of the QuickBooks company data file, or the data file has been modified and requires a newer version of QuickBooks.
0x80040407	The installation of QuickBooks appears to be incomplete. Please reinstall QuickBooks.
0x80040408	Could not start QuickBooks.
0x80040409	The current version of QuickBooks cannot work with the specified company data file.
0x8004040A	QuickBooks company data file is already open and it is different from the one requested.
0x8004040B	Could not get the name of the current QuickBooks company data file.
0x8004040C	BeginSession method has not been called or it did not succeed.
0x8004040D	The ticket parameter is invalid.
0x8004040E	There is not enough memory to complete the request.
0x8004040F	The OpenConnection method has not been called.
0x80040410	The QuickBooks company data file is currently open in a mode other than the one specified by your application.
0x80040411	Before calling the BeginSession method, you must call the EndSession method to terminate the current session.
0x80040412	You cannot make multiple successive calls to the OpenConnection method. Call CloseConnection before calling OpenConnection again.
0x80040413	QuickBooks does not support the rollbackOnError value of the onError attribute.
0x80040414	A modal dialog box is showing in the QuickBooks user interface. Your application cannot access QuickBooks until the user dismisses the dialog box.
0x80040415	A call to the OpenConnection method must include the name of your application.
0x80040416	If QuickBooks is not running, a call to the BeginSession method must include the name of the QuickBooks company data file.
0x80040417	If the QuickBooks company data file is not open, a call to the BeginSession method must include the name of the data file.
0x80040418	This application has not accessed this QuickBooks company data file before. Only the QuickBooks administrator can grant an application permission to access a QuickBooks company data file for the first time.
0x80040419	This application's certificate is invalid. An application must have a valid certificate to access QuickBooks company data files.
0x8004041A	This application does not have permission to access this QuickBooks company data file. The QuickBooks administrator can grant access permission through the Integrated Application preferences.
0x8004041B	Unable to lock the necessary information to allow this application to access this company data file. Try again later.
0x8004041C	An internal QuickBooks error occurred while trying to access the QuickBooks company data file.
0x8004041D	This application is not allowed to log into this QuickBooks company data file automatically. The QuickBooks administrator can grant permission for automatic login through the Integrated Application preferences.

<b>HRESULT error code</b>	<b>Message</b>
0x8004041E	This application's certificate is expired. If you want to allow the application to log into QuickBooks automatically, log into QuickBooks and try again. Then click <b>Allow Always</b> when you are notified that the certificate has expired.
0x8004041F	QuickBooks Basic cannot accept XML requests. Another product in the QuickBooks line, such as QuickBooks Pro or Premier, 2002 or later, is required.
0x80040420	The QuickBooks user has denied access.
0x80040421	The returned text is passed via the qbXML COM Request Processor directly from QuickBooks to your application and is not issued by the qbXML COM Request Processor itself. You may find it useful to copy the text verbatim to your message window.
0x80040422	This application requires Single User file access mode and there is already another application sharing data with this QuickBooks company data file.
0x80040423	The version of qbXML that was requested is not supported or is unknown.
0x80040424	QuickBooks did not finish its initialization. Please try again later.
0x80040425	Invalid parameter.
0x80040426	Scripts are not allowed to call QBXMLRP.
0x80040427	The QuickBooks application needs to be registered.
0x80040428	The version of QBXML that was requested is not supported by this version of the QBXMLRP library.
0x80040429	The message set requested cannot be processed through the API that was called.
0x8004042A	This call may not be made from a remote system.
0x8004042B	Unsupported interface.
0x8004042C	Certificate has been revoked.
0x8004042D	QuickBooks did not finish opening the data file while launching its UI, and we decided to give up. Perhaps the user did not complete the QuickBooks login process.
0x8004042E	This call cannot be made after calling "BeginSession" and before calling "EndSession".
0x8004042F	The requested connection type could not be found.



# APPENDIX B

## QUICKBOOKS DATA ACCESSIBLE VIA SDK OBJECTS/OPERATIONS

This appendix lists the operations and queries that are supported by the various editions of QuickBooks. It also lists some limitations that are in effect for some of these operations.

### Objects/Operations Supported by Desktop Editions

The following table lists the objects/operations supported by desktop editions, excluding Simple Start, which is listed later in this appendix.

Table B-1     Supported QB objects/ops for desktop versions

Object	Type	Query	Add	Modify	Delete	Void
Account	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
AgingReport	Report	yes	no	no	no	no
ARRefundCreditCard (not Canada/UK)	Txn	yes	yes	no	yes	yes
Bill	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Bill payment check	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Bill payment credit card	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Bill to pay	Txn	yes	no	no	no	no
BillingRate	List	yes	yes	no	yes	no
BudgetSummary-Report	Report	yes	no	no	no	no
BuildAssembly (not Canada/UK)	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Charge	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Check	Txn	yes	yes	no	yes	yes
Class	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Company	Special	yes	no	no	no	no
CompanyActivity	Special	yes	no	no	no	no
Credit card charge	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Credit card credit	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Credit memo	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Currency	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
CustomDetailReport	Report	yes	no	no	no	no
Customer	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Customer message	List	yes	yes	no	yes	no

Object	Type	Query	Add	Modify	Delete	Void
Customer type	List	yes	yes	no	yes	no
CustomSummary-Report	Report	yes	no	no	no	no
DataEventRecovery-Info	Event Notif.	yes	no	no	yes	no
DataEventSubscription	Event Notif.	yes	yes	no	yes	no
DataExt	Special	no	yes	yes	yes	no
DataExtDef	Special	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Date-driven terms	List	yes	yes	no	yes	no
Deposit	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Discount item	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Employee	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Entity	List	yes	no	no	no	no
Estimate	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Fixed asset item	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
GeneralDetailReport	Report	yes	no	no	no	no
GeneraSumaryReport	Report	yes	no	no	no	no
Group item	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Host application	Special	yes	no	no	no	no
Inventory adjustment	Txn	yes	yes	no	yes	no
Inventory assembly item	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Inventory item	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Invoice	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Item	List	yes	no	no	no	no
Item Receipt	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Job type	List	yes	yes	no	yes	no
JobReport	Report	yes	no	no	no	no
Journal entry	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
ListDisplay	UI Integration	no	yes	yes	no	no
Non-inventory item	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Non-wage payroll item (see Note at end of table)	List	yes	no	no	no	no
Other charge item	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Other name	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Payment item	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Payment method	List	yes	yes	no	yes	no
PayrollDetailReport (See Note below)	Report	yes	no	no	no	no

Object	Type	Query	Add	Modify	Delete	Void
PayrollSummary Report (See Note below)	Report	yes	no	no	no	no
Preferences	Special	yes	no	no	no	no
PriceLevel	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Purchase order	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Receive payment	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Receive payment to deposit	Txn	yes	no	no	no	no
Sales order (US Premier Edition and above)	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Sales receipt	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Sales rep	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Sales tax code	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Sales tax group item	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Sales tax item	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Sales tax payment check	Txn	yes	no	no	no	no
Service item	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Ship method	List	yes	yes	no	yes	no
SpecialAccount	List	yes	yes	no	yes	no
SpecialItem	List	yes	yes	no	yes	no
Standard terms	List	yes	yes	no	yes	no
Subtotal item	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Template	List	yes	no	no	no	no
Terms	List	yes	no	no	no	no
Time tracking	Txn	yes	yes	no	yes	no
TimeReport	Report	yes	no	no	no	no
To do	List	yes	yes	no	yes	no
TransactionQuery	Txn	yes	no	no	no	no
TxnDisplay	UI Integration	no	yes	yes	no	no
UIEventSubscription	Event Notif.	yes	yes	no	yes	no
UIExtensionSubscription	Event Notif.	yes	yes	no	yes	no
UnitOfMeasureSet	List	yes	add	no	yes	no
Vendor	List	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Vendor credit	Txn	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Vendor type	List	yes	yes	no	yes	no
Wage payroll item	List	yes	yes	no	no	no
WorkersCompCode	List	yes	yes	yes	no	no

**NOTE**

NOTE Requires that the company file being accessed is currently subscribed to a payroll service.

## SDK Requests Supported in QuickBooks Simple Start Edition

---

The following table lists all of the SDK requests for the US desktop editions of QuickBooks, and indicates whether each request is supported by QB Simple Start.

Additional notes follow the table.

Table B-2 SDK Requests Supported by QB Simple Start (US editions, desktop)

Request	Supported by QB Simple Start?
ARRefundCreditCardAdd (5.0)	Yes
ARRefundCreditCardQuery (5.0)	Yes
AccountAdd	Yes
AccountMod (6.0)	Yes
AccountQuery	Yes
AgingReportQuery (2.0)	Yes
BillAdd	No
BillMod (3.0)	Yes
BillPaymentCheckAdd (2.0)	No
BillPaymentCheckMod (6.0)	Yes
BillPaymentCheckQuery (2.0)	Yes
BillPaymentCreditCardAdd (2.0)	No
BillPaymentCreditCardQuery (2.0)	Yes
BillQuery	Yes
BillToPayQuery (2.0)	Yes
BillingRateAdd (6.0)	No
BillingRateQuery (6.0)	Yes
BudgetSummaryReportQuery (3.0)	Yes
BuildAssemblyAdd (5.0)	No
BuildAssemblyMod (5.0)	Yes
BuildAssemblyQuery (5.0)	Yes
ChargeAdd (2.0)	No
ChargeMod (3.0)	Yes
ChargeQuery (2.0)	Yes
CheckAdd	Yes
CheckMod (6.0)	Yes
CheckQuery	Yes
ClassAdd	Yes
ClassQuery	Yes
ClearedStatusMod (2.0)	Yes
CompanyActivityQuery (2.0)	Yes
CompanyQuery	Yes
CreditCardChargeAdd	Yes
CreditCardChargeMod (6.0)	Yes
CreditCardChargeQuery	Yes
CreditCardCreditAdd	Yes
CreditCardCreditMod (6.0)	Yes
CreditCardCreditQuery	Yes
CreditMemoAdd	Yes
CreditMemoMod (3.0)	Yes

<b>Request</b>	<b>Supported by QB Simple Start?</b>
CreditMemoQuery	Yes
CustomDetailReportQuery (2.0)	Yes
CustomSummaryReportQuery (2.0)	Yes
CustomerAdd	Yes
CustomerMod	Yes
CustomerMsgAdd	Yes
CustomerMsgQuery	Yes
CustomerQuery	Yes
CustomerTypeAdd	Yes
CustomerTypeQuery	Yes
DataEventRecoveryInfoDel (3.0)	No
DataEventRecoveryInfoQuery (3.0)	No
DataExtAdd (2.0)	Yes
DataExtDefAdd (2.0)	Yes
DataExtDefDel (2.0)	Yes
DataExtDefMod (2.0)	Yes
DataExtDefQuery (2.0)	Yes
DataExtDel (2.0)	Yes
DataExtMod (2.0)	Yes
DateDrivenTermsAdd	Yes
DateDrivenTermsQuery	Yes
DepositAdd (2.0)	Yes
DepositQuery (2.0)	Yes
EmployeeAdd	No
EmployeeMod	Yes
EmployeeQuery	Yes
EntityQuery	Yes
EstimateAdd	Yes
EstimateMod (3.0)	Yes
EstimateQuery	Yes
GeneralDetailReportQuery (2.0)	Yes
GeneralSummaryReportQuery (2.0)	Yes
HostQuery	Yes
InventoryAdjustmentAdd (2.0)	No
InventoryAdjustmentQuery (2.0)	Yes
InvoiceAdd	Yes
InvoiceMod (2.1)	Yes
InvoiceQuery	Yes
ItemAssembliesCanBuildQuery (5.0)	Yes
ItemDiscountAdd	No
ItemDiscountMod (3.0)	Yes

<b>Request</b>	<b>Supported by QB Simple Start?</b>
ItemDiscountQuery	Yes
ItemFixedAssetAdd (3.0)	No
ItemFixedAssetMod (3.0)	Yes
ItemFixedAssetQuery (3.0)	Yes
ItemGroupAdd	No
ItemGroupMod (3.0)	Yes
ItemGroupQuery	Yes
ItemInventoryAdd	No
ItemInventoryAssemblyAdd (2.0)	No
ItemInventoryAssemblyMod (3.0)	Yes
ItemInventoryAssemblyQuery (2.0)	Yes
ItemInventoryMod	Yes
ItemInventoryQuery	Yes
ItemNonInventoryAdd	No
ItemNonInventoryMod	Yes
ItemNonInventoryQuery	Yes
ItemOtherChargeAdd	Yes
ItemOtherChargeMod (3.0)	Yes
ItemOtherChargeQuery	Yes
ItemPaymentAdd	No
ItemPaymentMod (3.0)	Yes
ItemPaymentQuery	Yes
ItemQuery	Yes
ItemReceiptAdd (4.0)	No
ItemReceiptMod (4.0)	Yes
ItemReceiptQuery (3.0)	Yes
ItemSalesTaxAdd	No
ItemSalesTaxGroupAdd	No
ItemSalesTaxGroupMod (3.0)	Yes
ItemSalesTaxGroupQuery	Yes
ItemSalesTaxMod (3.0)	Yes
ItemSalesTaxQuery	Yes
ItemServiceAdd	No
ItemServiceMod	Yes
ItemServiceQuery	Yes
ItemSubtotalAdd	No
ItemSubtotalMod (3.0)	Yes
ItemSubtotalQuery	Yes
JobReportQuery (2.0)	Yes
JobTypeAdd	No
JobTypeQuery	Yes

<b>Request</b>	<b>Supported by QB Simple Start?</b>
JournalEntryAdd	Yes
JournalEntryMod (6.0)	Yes
JournalEntryQuery	Yes
ListDel (1.1)	Yes
ListDeletedQuery (2.0)	Yes
ListDisplayAdd (3.0)	Yes
ListDisplayMod (3.0)	Yes
OtherNameAdd	Yes
OtherNameMod	Yes
OtherNameQuery	Yes
PaymentMethodAdd	Yes
PaymentMethodQuery	Yes
PayrollDetailReportQuery (3.0)	Yes
PayrollItemNonWageQuery (3.0)	Yes
PayrollItemWageAdd (2.0)	No
PayrollItemWageQuery	Yes
PayrollSummaryReportQuery (3.0)	Yes
PreferencesQuery (1.1)	Yes
PriceLevelAdd (4.0)	No
PriceLevelMod (4.0)	Yes
PriceLevelQuery (4.0)	Yes
PurchaseOrderAdd	No
PurchaseOrderMod (2.1)	Yes
PurchaseOrderQuery	Yes
ReceivePaymentAdd (1.1)	Yes
ReceivePaymentMod (6.0)	Yes
ReceivePaymentQuery (1.1)	Yes
ReceivePaymentToDepositQuery (2.0)	Yes
SalesOrderAdd (2.1)	No
SalesOrderMod (3.0)	Yes
SalesOrderQuery (2.1)	Yes
SalesReceiptAdd	Yes
SalesReceiptMod (5.0)	Yes
SalesReceiptQuery	Yes
SalesRepAdd	No
SalesRepMod (3.0)	Yes
SalesRepQuery	Yes
SalesTaxCodeAdd	Yes
SalesTaxCodeQuery	Yes
SalesTaxPaymentCheckQuery (2.0)	Yes
ShipMethodAdd	No

<b>Request</b>	<b>Supported by QB Simple Start?</b>
ShipMethodQuery	Yes
SpecialAccountAdd (6.0)	Yes, but only the following accounts can be added: AccountsReivable UncategorizedExpenses UncategorizedIncome
SpecialItemAdd (6.0)	No
StandardTermsAdd	Yes
StandardTermsQuery	Yes
TemplateQuery (3.0)	Yes
TermsQuery	Yes
TimeReportQuery (2.0)	Yes
TimeTrackingAdd	No
TimeTrackingMod (6.0)	Yes
TimeTrackingQuery	Yes
ToDoAdd	No
ToDoQuery	Yes
TransactionQuery (4.0)	Yes
TxnDel (1.1)	Yes
TxnDeletedQuery (2.0)	Yes
WorkersCompCodeAdd (7.0)	No
WorkersCompCodeMod (7.0)	No
WorkersCompCodeQuery (7.0)	No
UnitOfMeasureSetAdd (7.0)	No
UnitOfMeasureSetQuery (7.0)	No

Request	Supported by QB Simple Start?
TxnDisplayAdd (3.0)	<p>Yes, with some caveats. You can invoke this only on transaction types supported by QB Simple Start, because QB Simple Start lacks the UI components for the unsupported types.</p> <p><b>Supported transaction types:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check</li> <li>CreditMemo</li> <li>Deposit</li> <li>Estimate</li> <li>Invoice</li> <li>JournalEntry</li> <li>ReceivePayment</li> <li>SalesReceipt</li> <li>SalesTaxPaymentCheck</li> </ul> <p><b>Unsupported transaction types:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bill</li> <li>BillPayment</li> <li>BuildAssembly</li> <li>Charge</li> <li>CreditCardCharge</li> <li>CreditCardCredit</li> <li>InventoryAdjustment</li> <li>ItemReceipt</li> <li>PurchaseOrder</li> <li>SalesOrder</li> <li>VendorCredit</li> </ul> <p><b>Important:</b> For the unsupported Bill, BuildAssembly, Charge, CreditCardCharge, CreditCardCredit, InventoryAdjustment, and ItemReceipt requests, invoking TxnDisplayAdd results in QuickBooks displaying the appropriate Add form to the user, which the user can fill out, but the user's attempt to save the data (perform the transaction) will fail with an error message stating that this feature is not available for this edition.</p> <p>For the unsupported BillPayment transaction, the above behavior is the same, but there is a different and potentially misleading error message. That is, the form is displayed in QuickBooks, but whether you do a payment by check or credit card, the transaction fails and the message simply says "there was a problem recording the bill payment for ...".</p> <p>Also, the attempt to display the add form for PurchaseOrder, SalesOrder, doesn't display any form in QuickBooks at all. Instead the TransactionDisplayAdd fails with a message stating that this feature is not supported by this edition (Simple Start).</p>

Request	Supported by QB Simple Start?
TxnDisplayMod (3.0)	<p>Yes, with some caveats. You can invoke this only on transaction types supported by QB Simple Start, because QB Simple Start lacks the UI components for the unsupported types.</p> <p><b>Supported transaction types:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bill</li> <li>BuildAssembly</li> <li>Charge</li> <li>Check</li> <li>CreditCardCharge</li> <li>CreditCardCredit</li> <li>CreditMemo</li> <li>Deposit</li> <li>Estimate</li> <li>InventoryAdjustment</li> <li>Invoice</li> <li>ItemReceipt</li> <li>JournalEntry</li> <li>ReceivePayment</li> <li>SalesReceipt</li> <li>SalesTaxPaymentCheck</li> <li>VendorCredit</li> </ul> <p><b>Unsupported transaction types:</b></p> <p>BillPaymentCheck, BillPaymentCreditCard, fail with an error stating that the check has been deleted, possibly by another user. However, doing a query on that same txnid is successful, and that txn is displayed in the simple start check register (bill payment check).</p> <p>PurchaseOrder and SalesOrder for Mod fail with the error message stating this is not available for this edition (simple start)</p>
TxnVoid (1.1)	Yes
VehicleAdd (6.0)	No
VehicleMod (6.0)	Yes
VehicleQuery (6.0)	Yes
VehicleMileageAdd (6.0)	No
VehicleMileageQuery (6.0)	Yes
VendorAdd	Yes
VendorCreditAdd	No
VendorCreditQuery	Yes
VendorMod	Yes
VendorQuery	Yes
VendorTypeAdd	Yes
VendorTypeQuery	Yes

## Additional Differences for SDK Support of QB Simple Start

The Inventory Stock Status by Vendor report is not accessible through the Simple Start UI. But when an end-user with Simple Start runs the report via SDK requests on a company file created by Premier or Enterprise that has inventory, the user will not be able to retrieve the

columns `QuantityOnSalesOrder` and `QuantityAvailable`. The `Inventory Stock Status by Vendor` report does not have columns `QuantityOnSalesOrder` and `QuantityAvailable` for `SimpleStart`.

Also, if you do a `PreferencesQueryRq` against `Simple Start`, the `PreferencesRet` will contain elements that cannot be directly controlled by the user. The preferences UI in `SimpleStart` is very different from the other editions.

# APPENDIX C

## qbXML SPECIFICATION FOR THE CANADIAN AND UK EDITIONS

This appendix contains CA and UK specific information. It is broken into two main parts: QB CA/UK and newer, and QB CA/UK 2007 and Older.

The reason for this division is that CA/UK 2007 and older versions support only up to CA/UK3.0 spec, while QB CA/UK 2008/2009 supports ONLY the new unified 6.0 spec, with newer specs (7.0, 8.0, etc) expected to be supported by subsequent new versions of QB for Canada and UK.

### Notes for QB CA/UK 2008 and Newer

---

The following items apply to Canada or UK as indicated.

#### Canada

---

Instead of accepting US states in the various “States” fields, only Canadian provinces are accepted in the SDK. The list of allowed values will be:

AB, BC, MB, NB, NL, NS, NT, NU, ON, PE, QC, SK, YT

These will be input via the <State> field provided in the spec.

Canada accepts a Social Insurance Number (SIN) in the <SSN> field provided in the spec.

The following transaction types are not supported

- SalesTaxPayment
- ARRefundCreditCard

The following fields are not supported:

Tax1Total, Tax2Total, Tax1Rate, Tax2Rate, Tax1Number, Tax2Number, ChargeTax1, ChargeTax2, TrackTax1Expenses, TrackTax2Expenses, Tax1ReportingPeriod, Tax2ReportingPeriod, AllowCustomerTaxCodes, AmountIncludesVAT, IsTax1Exempt and IsTax2Exempt

PST and GST taxes will need to be used, similar to the way the US handles taxes.

#### UK

---

TBD.

## Notes for QB CA/UK 2007 and Older

---

All of the information in the following sections apply only to pre-QB CA and UK versions, which support the CA/UK2.0 and CA/UK3.0 specs.

### **IMPORTANT**

While CA QB 2003-2007 supports qbXML CA3.0 & CA2.0 and the UK QB 2003-2006 supports qbXML UK 3.0 & UK2.0, these qbXML specs are NOT be supported by QB CA/UK 2008 and later. Instead those future releases will support only qbXML 6.0 and later.

The 2004 through 2007 Canadian and UK editions do not support the new functionality provided in the qbXML specs 4.0, 5.0, or 6.0. They do, however, support the v3.0 qbXML spec.

The v3.0 qbXML specification exists in several slightly different forms, one supported by Canadian editions of QuickBooks, one supported by U.S. editions, and one supported by UK editions of QuickBooks. See the QB SDK Release Notes for complete information on supported versions.

### **NOTE**

In the future we hope to provide a way for applications to make a single set of QuickBooks SDK calls that will work with U.S., Canadian and UK versions of QuickBooks. This may imply that code written to work with current or past versions of Canadian or UK editions of QuickBooks (e.g. to deal with with sales tax and/or multi-currency support) may need to be rewritten in the future before it can be used with future versions of these products.

## Differences Between the Canadian and UK Specs

---

The following table lists some of the spec differences.

Table C-1 Canadian and UK Spec differences

Canadian Spec	UK Spec
EmployeeAdd/Mod/Ret have SIN and Gender	EmployeeAdd/Mod/Ret have NiNumber, MaritalStatus, and Sex
VacationHours is made up of VacationPayAvailable, VacationPayUsed, RetainOrPayEveryPeriod, VacationPercentage, and a repeating PayrollItemVacationRef	VacationHours is made up of HoursAvailable, AccrualPeriod, HoursAccrued, MaximumHours, and IsResettingHoursEachNewYear
WageType has HourlyRegular, SalaryRegular, Bonus, and Commission	WageType has Commission, HourlyRegular, HourlySick, HourlyVacation, SalaryRegular, SalarySick, and SalaryVacation in the UK spec
Address, ShipAddress, LegalAddress, BillAddress, VendorAddress, OtherNameAddress, and CompanyAddressForCustomer have Province	Address, ShipAddress, LegalAddress, BillAddress, VendorAddress, OtherNameAddress, and CompanyAddressForCustomer have County
CustomerAdd/Mod/Ret have TaxCodeRef in a different location within the XML in the Canadian spec compared to the UK spec	CustomerAdd/Mod/Ret have TaxCodeRef in a different location within the XML in the Canadian spec compared to the UK spec
CompanyRet has BusinessNumber	CompanyRet does not have BusinessNumber
CustomerAdd/Mod/Ret and VendorAdd/Mod/Ret does not have BusinessNumber	CustomerAdd/Mod/Ret and VendorAdd/Mod/Ret have BusinessNumber
ExpenseLineMod/Ret and ItemLineMod/Ret does not have Tax1Amount	ExpenseLineMod/Ret and ItemLineMod/Ret have Tax1Amount
ReportsPreferences does not have ReportAmountsIncludeVAT	ReportsPreferences has ReportAmountsIncludeVAT
AmountIncludesVAT is not in any of the following:  ItemServiceAdd/Mod/Ret, ItemNonInventoryAdd/Mod/Ret, ItemOtherChargeAdd/Mod/Ret, ItemInventoryAdd/Mod/Ret, ItemInventoryAssemblyAdd/Mod/Ret, ItemDiscountAdd/Mod/Ret, InvoiceAdd/Mod/Ret, EstimateAdd/Mod/Ret, SalesReceiptAdd/Ret, CreditMemoAdd/Mod/Ret, PurchaseOrderAdd/Mod/Ret, BillAdd/Mod/Ret, ItemReceiptAdd/Ret, VendorCreditAdd/Ret, CheckAdd/Ret, CreditCardChargeAdd/Ret, and CreditCardCreditAdd/Ret	AmountIncludesVAT appears in all of the following  ItemServiceAdd/Mod/Ret, ItemNonInventoryAdd/Mod/Ret, ItemOtherChargeAdd/Mod/Ret, ItemInventoryAdd/Mod/Ret, ItemInventoryAssemblyAdd/Mod/Ret, ItemDiscountAdd/Mod/Ret, InvoiceAdd/Mod/Ret, EstimateAdd/Mod/Ret, SalesReceiptAdd/Ret, CreditMemoAdd/Mod/Ret, PurchaseOrderAdd/Mod/Ret, BillAdd/Mod/Ret, ItemReceiptAdd/Ret, VendorCreditAdd/Ret, CheckAdd/Ret, CreditCardChargeAdd/Ret, and CreditCardCreditAdd/Ret

**NOTE**

Althought TaxCodeAdd/Mod/Ret have TaxType in the UK spec, (not in the Canadian spec), this field is not supported in the current UK implementation.

## Differences Between the US and Canadian qbXML Spec

---

The Canadian/UK and U.S. forms of the qbXML specification are nearly identical. The biggest ways in which they differ is that the Canadian version accommodates Canadian/UK tax structures and the use of multiple currencies:

- Canadian/UK editions of QuickBooks include a *Tax Code list* that makes it easier to work with Canada or UK-specific taxes. Through the SDK you can add taxes to this list, modify the list, query the list, and delete tax codes from the list (using TaxCodeAdd, TaxCodeMod, TaxCodeQuery, and ListDel messages). You can also assign these tax codes to transactions (using TaxCodeRef and CustomerTaxCodeRef object references).
- Canadian/UK editions of QuickBooks include a *Currency list* that is available when the user has turned on the multicurrency preference. Through the SDK you can add currencies to this list, modify the list, query the list, and delete currencies from the list (using CurrencyAdd, CurrencyMod, CurrencyQuery, and ListDel messages). You can also include currency-related information in list and transaction objects.

The Canadian/UK and U.S. forms of the qbXML specifications differ in a number of other ways, too. The following tables summarize the differences.

### **NOTE**

For details about new elements and objects shown here, and information about how to use them, see the QuickBooks Desktop API Reference online at <https://developer.intuit.com/app/developer/qbdesktop/docs/api-reference/qbdesktop>

Canada qbXML does not include	Instead, Canada qbXML includes
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>any information related to sales taxes or sales tax codes.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>two new types of taxes, Tax 1 and Tax 2. Tax 1 is used for Goods and Services Tax, or GST; Tax 2 is used for Provincial Sales Taxes, or PST. (U.K. editions of QuickBooks use Tax 1 for Value Added Tax (VAT) and do not use Tax 2 at all.)</li> <li>the means to access the Tax Code list.</li> </ul> <p><b>Related new qbXML messages</b></p> <p>TaxCodeAdd TaxCodeMod TaxCodeQuery</p> <p><b>Related new qbXML object references</b></p> <p>TaxCodeRef CustomerTaxCodeRef DefaultCustomerTaxCodeRef Tax1AgencyRef Tax2AgencyRef</p> <p><b>Related new qbXML elements</b></p> <p>Tax1Rate and Tax2Rate Tax1Total and Tax2Total Tax1Number and Tax2Number ChargeTax1 and ChargeTax2 TrackTax1Expenses and TrackTax2Expenses Tax1ReportingPeriod and Tax2ReportingPeriod AllowCustomerTaxCodes AmountIncludesVAT IsTax1Exempt and IsTax2Exempt (Boolean values that are true for items exempt from Tax 1 or Tax 2) IsPiggyBackRate (Boolean value that is true when Tax 2 is partly determined by Tax 1)</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>information about social security numbers (SNNs).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>information about social insurance numbers (SINs).</li> </ul> <p><b>Related new qbXML element</b></p> <p>SIN</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>state information in addresses.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>province information in addresses.</li> </ul> <p><b>Related new qbXML element</b></p> <p>Province</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>information about 1099 forms.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>information about statement of income (T4A) forms.</li> </ul> <p><b>Related new qbXML element</b></p> <p>IsVendorEligibleForT4A</p>

### **Canada qbXML includes**

- a new data type, FLOATTYPE, used to describe international exchange rates.
- means to access the Currency list and also to include currency information in some list and transaction objects.

#### **Related new qbXML messages**

CurrencyAdd  
CurrencyMod  
CurrencyQuery

#### **Related new qbXML elements**

ExchangeRate  
Symbol  
Code  
CurrencyHotKey  
SymbolPos  
DecimalSep  
DecimalPlaces  
ThousandSep  
ForeignPrice

#### **Related new qbXML object references**

CurrencyRef  
HomeCurrencyRef (returned by PreferencesQuery message)  
ForeignCurrencyRef (returned by PreferencesQuery message)

- new currency information returned by PreferencesQuery messages.

#### **Related new qbXML elements**

IsUsingForeignPricesOnItems  
IsUsingMulticurrency  
IsUsingUnitsOfMeasure (See "About Units of Measure.")

#### **Related qbXML object references**

HomeCurrencyRef  
ForeignCurrencyRef

- a few U.K.-specific elements related to European currencies.

#### **Related new qbXML elements**

IsECVatCode  
IsEmu  
EmuRate

## Installation

---

The correct (country-specific) SDK-support files are installed automatically along with Canadian/UK and U.S. editions of QuickBooks. No extra installation is needed.

## About Units of Measure

---

A Units of Measure feature is available in Canadian/UK editions of QuickBooks, but you currently can't access it through the SDK. The SDK does already give you a way to find out whether a QuickBooks file has the Units of Measure preference turned on, however. To find out:

1. Send a PreferencesQuery request to QuickBooks.
2. Examine the returned PreferencesRet object. In the PurchasesAndVendorsPreferences aggregate, check whether the IsUsingUnitsOfMeasure element is `true`.

If the Units of Measure preference is turned on, an interactive user might specify inventory units, sales units, and purchasing units for inventory and assembly items, even though you cannot retrieve any of this information through the SDK. For example, imagine a QuickBooks file that has an inventory item called `soup` and is set up with this Units of Measure information:

- Inventory unit: case
- Sales unit: can, at 12 cans/case
- Purchasing unit: flat, at 2 cases/flat

Given this set up, an invoice selling 3 cans of soup would reduce inventory by .25 cases (based on the relationship of 12 cans per case). Purchasing 1 flat would increase inventory by 2 cases. But your application could not make sense of this data without the (irretrievable) background information about inventory units, sales units, and purchasing units. *This means an SDK query on transactions and items might return unpredictable results.*

For this reason, if your application relies on this kind of data from transactions, we recommend that you do the following:

1. Design your application to check (as described above) whether the Units of Measure preference is turned on.
2. If the Units of Measure feature *is* on, consider sending a message that asks your users not to use it.

## About UI Integration

If you have two versions of your application, one for Canadian/UK editions of QuickBooks and one for U.S. editions of QuickBooks, and you are integrating with the QuickBooks user interface, note these important limitations:

- It is possible that a user who selects your UI extension from within a Canadian/UK edition of QuickBooks will be taken to the U.S. version of your application, and vice versa. You cannot create a subscription on one machine such that a UI item added to U.S. editions of QuickBooks will invoke the U.S. version of your application while that same UI item in Canadian/UK editions of QuickBooks will invoke the Canadian/UK version of your application. Instead, each version of the application will overwrite any existing subscription, so that the last one installed “wins.”
- If you have a U.S.-only application, you cannot prevent your UI items from showing up in Canadian/UK editions of QuickBooks. Conversely, if you have a Canada-only application, you cannot have a UI item that only shows up in Canadian/UK editions of QuickBooks. UI extensions show up in all editions of QuickBooks.



# APPENDIX D

## qbXML REQUESTPROCESSOR METHOD REFERENCE

This chapter provides alphabetical reference pages for the methods included in the qbXML Request Processor COM API. These methods can be grouped into the following main categories:

- Methods used to establish and break down the *communication* between QuickBooks and your application
- Methods used to set and get preference information from the AuthPreferences property of the request processor (beginning in SDK 4.0).
- Methods used to *query* the Request Processor about its current state (for example, what version of the Request Processor is running and what company file is currently open). Table D-1 on page 539 and Table D-2 on page 540 summarize the methods that are included in this reference chapter.
- Methods used for event subscription activity.

Table D-1     Communication Methods and Properties for RequestProcessor2

Name	Description
AuthPreferences	This property returns the AuthPreferences object, on which you can invoke the various set/get methods described in Table D-2, "Authorization Preferences Methods for IAuthPreferences," on page 540.
OpenConnection2	Opens a connection between your application and QuickBooks, as specified in the connection type parameter. The older OpenConnection method used prior to SDK 4.0 is still supported for backward compatibility.
BeginSession	Begins a session operating on a specific company file
ProcessRequest	Sends a request message set to QuickBooks and returns with a response message set from QuickBooks
EndSession	Ends the session for a specific company file
CloseConnection	Closes the connection between your application and QuickBooks

Table D-2 Authorization Preferences Methods for IAuthPreferences

Name	Description
WasAuthPreferencesObeyed	Indicates whether the version of QuickBooks supports AuthPreferences.
GetUnattendedModePref	Retrieves the current AuthPreferences setting for unattended mode.
PutUnattendedModePref	Specifies whether your application requires unattended mode.
GetPersonalDataPref	Retrieves the current AuthPreferences setting for personal data requirement.
PutPersonalDataPref	Specifies whether your application requires access to personal data.
GetIsReadOnly	Retrieves the current AuthPreferences setting for read-only access
PutIsReadOnly	Specifies whether your application is a read-only application.
PutAuthFlags	Specifies the AuthFlags for your applications, such as which QuickBooks editions it supports and optionally forces the display of the Auth dialog to the end user.

Table D-3 Query Methods

Name	Description
GetCurrentCompanyName	Returns the name of the company file that is currently open (requires a ticket)
QBXMLVersionsForSession	Returns the versions of the qbXML specification supported by the QuickBooks product your application is currently connected to (requires a ticket)
ReleaseLevel	Returns the release description of the qbXML Request Processor (for example, <i>alpha</i> , <i>beta</i> , or <i>release</i> )
ReleaseNumber	Returns the release number of the qbXML Request Processor (for example, the release number for version 2.0 is 1)
MajorVersion	Returns the major version number of the qbXML Request Processor (for version 2.0, the major version number is 2)
MinorVersion	Returns the minor version number of the qbXML Request Processor (for version 2.0, the minor version number is 0)

Table D-4 Subscription Activity Methods

<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
QBXMLVersionsForSubscription	Identifies the qbXML spec versions supported for subscription activity.
ProcessSubscription	Sends the supplied qbXML subscription request (add, delete, query) to the request processor.

## AuthPreferences

---

```
HRESULT AuthPreferences([out, retval] IAuthPreferences**  
ppAuthPreferences);
```

Returns the AuthPreferences property object.

### Parameters

*ppAuthPreferences*    Pointer pointer to the returned IAuthPreferences object.

### Usage

This method is invoked on the RequestProcessor2 object to return the AuthPreference property object, in order for subsequent querying or setting of its preferences.

### Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLRP as QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2  
Dim prefs As qbXMLRP.AuthPreferences  
Set prefs = qbXMLCOM.AuthPreferences
```

# BeginSession

---

```
HRESULT BeginSession([in] BSTR qbCompanyName,
                     [in] QB FileMode qbOpen FileMode,
                     [out, retval] BSTR* ticket);
```

After a QuickBooks connection has been established, this method begins a session working on the specified QuickBooks company file in the specified mode. The returned session ticket is passed in to subsequent calls to `ProcessRequest`.

## Parameters

*qbCompanyName* Pathname of the specified QuickBooks company file.

If QuickBooks is already launched with an open company file, this value can be NULL or an empty string and your application will attach to this open company file. If no file is open, an error occurs. (If this call succeeds with NULL or an empty string for this parameter, you can obtain the name of the currently open company file by calling the `GetCurrentCompanyName` method.)

*qbOpen FileMode* Mode in which to open the company file:

*qbFileOpenSingleUser*

Single-user mode; grants your application exclusive access to QuickBooks for this company file.

*qbFileOpen*

Multi-user mode; allows your application to share access to the specified company file with other applications as well as with a user who is interacting directly with the company file through QuickBooks.

*qbFileOpenDoNotCare*

Allows either single-user or multi-user mode. If the specified company file is already open, QuickBooks allows the authentication process to proceed. If no company file is open, QuickBooks opens the company file in multi-user mode. If a different company file is already open, an error is returned.

*ticket*

Pointer to the returned session ticket. Your application must save this ticket (store it or keep it in memory) and pass it to any `ProcessRequest`, `GetCurrentCompanyName`, and `QBXMLVersionsForSession` calls made in this session only. When you are finished with the session for a specified company file, you release the ticket by passing it to the `EndSession` call that terminates the session. QuickBooks frees the memory allocated for the ticket when you return it.

### Usage

The *qbCompanyName* parameter can be specified explicitly for this method, or you can pass in NULL (or an empty string) to see if a company file is already open. If it is, you can call GetCurrentCompanyName to obtain the file name. If no company file is currently open (and you did not specify a company file), BeginSession fails and you will need to query the user to determine which company file to open.

Who started QuickBooks	Mode	Who may obtain access
Integrated Application	Single-user	No one else
Integrated Application	Multi-user	QB user on same machine = no access All other integrated applications = access QB users on other machines = access
QuickBooks User	Single-user	QB user already logged in Only one integrated application = access
QuickBooks User	Multi-user	QB users = access Integrated applications = access

### Using the SDKDiag Tool to Troubleshoot Connection Problems

For help with communication problems with QuickBooks, check out the IDG website for more information and a useful diagnostic tool called qbSDKDiag.

The *qbSDKDiag* tool turns on the maximum logging capability of QuickBooks and the SDK, gathers important registry data about QuickBooks, starts QuickBooks, and attempts to establish a connection with QuickBooks in interactive mode using QBXMLRP and QBXMLRP2.

Having successfully connected in interactive mode, the user is then asked to enable unattended access for the diagnostic tool and to close QuickBooks. The diagnostic tool then attempts to connect with both QBXMLRP and QBXMLRP2 using unattended mode. Finally, all the log files (qbsdklog.txt, qbinstancefinder.log, qbwin.log, and the diagnostic log itself) are zipped up for you to email to support personnel at a later time.

### Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLRP as QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
strTicket = qbXMLRP.BeginSession("", QBXMLRP2Lib.qbFileOpenDoNotCare)
```

## CloseConnection

---

```
HRESULT CloseConnection();
```

Closes the connection with QuickBooks.

### **Example (Visual Basic)**

```
Dim qbXMLRP as QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
qbXMLRP.CloseConnection
```

## EndSession

---

```
HRESULT EndSession([in] BSTR ticket);
```

Frees resources, closes the company file, and ends the session.

### Parameters

*ticket* Handle for the current session. This method releases the memory allocated for the ticket, and the ticket can no longer be used.

### Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLRP as QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
qbXMLRP.EndSession strTicket
```

# GetCurrentCompanyName

---

```
HRESULT GetCurrentCompanyName([in] BSTR ticket,  
                           [out, retval] BSTR* pFileName);
```

Returns the name of the currently open company file.

## Parameters

<i>ticket</i>	Handle for the current session.
<i>pFileName</i>	Pointer to the returned name of the currently open company file.

## Usage

This method can be used any time the application needs to display the name of the company file—for example, when it asks the user to confirm modification of the data contained in a particular company file. If you call `BeginSession` and do not explicitly specify a company file name (and the call succeeds), you should then call `GetCurrentCompanyName` to obtain the name of the company file that is currently open.

## Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLRP as QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2  
Dim strQBFileName as String  
strQBFileName = qbXMLRP.GetCurrentCompanyName(strTicket)
```

## GetIsReadOnly

```
HRESULT GetIsReadOnly
    ([in] BSTR ticket,
    [out, retval] VARIANT_BOOL* pIsReadOnly);
```

Gets the read-only preference currently in effect for the application.

## Parameters

*pIsReadOnly*      Pointer to the returned value.

## Usage

This method can be used only after the call to `BeginSession`.

## Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLCOM as QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
Dim prefs As QBXMLRP2Lib.AuthPreferences
Set prefs = qbXMLCOM.AuthPreferences
strTicket = qbXMLCOM.BeginSession(strCompanyFilename, openMode)
Dim BoolVal As Boolean
BoolVal = prefs.GetIsReadOnly(strTicket)
```

# GetPersonalDataPref

---

```
HRESULT GetPersonalDataPref
    ([in] BSTR ticket,
    [out, retval] QBXMLRPPersonalDataPrefType* pPersonalDataPref);
```

Returns the personal data access preference currently in effect for the application.

## Parameters

*ticket* Valid ticket returned from call to BeginSession.

*pPersonalDataPref* Pointer to the returned preference value. Possible values to be returned are: pdpRequired, pdpOptional, pdpNotNeeded.

## Usage

This method can be used after the call to BeginSession.

## Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLCOM As QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
Dim prefs As QBXMLRP2Lib.AuthPreferences
Set prefs = qbXMLCOM.AuthPreferences
strTicket = qbXMLCOM.BeginSession(strCompanyFilename, openMode)
Dim PrefType As QBXMLRPPersonalDataPrefType
PrefType = prefs.GetPersonalDataPref(strTicket)

If (PrefType = pdpNotNeeded) Then
    MsgBox "personal data not needed"
End If

If (PrefType = pdpRequired) Then
    MsgBox "personal data required"
End If

If (PrefType = pdpOptional) Then
    MsgBox "personal data optional"
End If
```

## GetUnattendedModePref

```
HRESULT GetUnattendedModePref(  
    [in] BSTR ticket,  
    [out, retval] QBXMLRPUnattendedModePrefType* pUnattendedModePref);
```

Returns the unattended mode access preference currently in effect for the application.

## Parameters

*pUnattendedModePref*

Pointer to the returned mode setting. Possible values to be returned are: `umpRequired`, `umpOptional`.

## Usage

This method can be used after the call to `BeginSession`.

## Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLCOM As QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
Dim prefs As QBXMLRP2Lib.AuthPreferences
Set prefs = qbXMLCOM.AuthPreferences
strTicket = qbXMLCOM.BeginSession(strCompanyFilename, openMode)
Dim PrefType As QBXMLRPUUnattendedModePrefType
PrefType = prefs.GetUnattendedModePref(strTicket)

If (PrefType = umpOptional) Then
    MsgBox "Unattended Mode optional"
End If

If (PrefType = umpRequired) Then
    MsgBox "Unattended Mode required"
End If
```

## WasAuthPreferencesObeyed

```
HRESULT WasAuthPreferencesObeyed
    ([in] BSTR ticket,
    [out, retval] VARIANT_BOOL* pWasAuthPreferencesObeyed);
```

Determines whether the QuickBooks version supports AuthPreferences.

## Parameters

*pWasAuthPreferencesObeyed*

Pointer to the returned value. Returns True if the version of QuickBooks supports AuthPreferences, False if it does not.

## Usage

In QuickBooks 2005 and later, the preferences set in AuthPreferences cause a corresponding QuickBooks authorization dialog to be displayed. If the administrative user does not respond by authorizing the requested access modes, then the application will not be able to access the QuickBooks company.

That is, the call to BeginSession will not succeed. If the authorization is granted, then the call to BeginSession will succeed. Notice that if you call WasAuthPreferencesObeyed, you must call it after you call BeginSession, hence, this method will always return True for QuickBooks 2005 and later. However, in QuickBooks versions prior to 2005, the AuthPreferences are ignored, and will always return False.

## Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLCOM as QBXMLRP2Lib2.RequestProcessor2
Dim prefs As QBXMLRP2Lib.AuthPreferences
Set prefs = qbXMLCOM.AuthPreferences
strTicket = qbXMLCOM.BeginSession(strCompanyFilename, openMode)
Dim WasObeyed As Boolean
WasObeyed = prefs.WasAuthPreferencesObeyed(strTicket)

If (WasObeyed = True) Then
    MsgBox "Preferences are supported"
End If

If (WasObeyed = False) Then
    MsgBox "Preferences not supported"
End If
```

# PutAuthFlags

---

```
HRESULT PutAuthFlags([in] long authFlags);
```

Specifies the AuthFlags for your application.

## Parameters

*authFlags* Specified as per below under “Usage”.

## Usage

This method is used before the call to BeginSession.

Internally, the editions are represented by the following enumerated value:

Behavior Needed	Value
SupportQBSimpleStart	0x1
SupportQBPro	0x2
SupportQBPremier	0x4
SupportQBEnterprise	0x8
ForceAuthDialog	0x80000000

The ForceAuthDialog value is included as a convenience: if you including it when you construct your AuthFlags, you cause QuickBooks to display the authorization dialog again for the user to change the permissions they may have already set for your application.

To specify support for each edition, you simply OR the values for each edition you are supporting. In the following VB snippet, we specify support for all of the QuickBooks editions and force the display of the auth dialog.

## Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim authFlags As Long
authFlags = 0
authFlags = authFlags Or &H8&
authFlags = authFlags Or &H4&
authFlags = authFlags Or &H2&
authFlags = authFlags Or &H1&
authFlags = authFlags Or &H80000000

Dim qbXMLCOM As QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
Dim prefs As QBXMLRP2Lib.AuthPreferences
Set prefs = qbXMLCOM.AuthPreferences
prefs.PutAuthFlags (authFlags)
```

# PutIsReadOnly

---

```
HRESULT PutIsReadOnly([in] VARIANT_BOOL isReadOnly);
```

Specifies the read and write access requirements for your application.

## Parameters

<i>IsReadOnly</i>	Specify a value of True if your application requires read-only access. Specify False if your application requires read and write access to QuickBooks.
-------------------	---

## Usage

This method is used before the call to BeginSession.

## Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLCOM as QBXMLRP2Lib2.RequestProcessor2
Dim prefs As QBXMLRP2Lib.AuthPreferences
Set prefs = qbXMLCOM.AuthPreferences
prefs.PutIsReadOnly True
```

## PutPersonalDataPref

---

```
HRESULT PutPersonalDataPref([in] QBXMLRPPersonalDataPrefType  
personalDataPref);
```

Specifies the personal data access requirements for your application.

### Parameters

*personalDataPref*      Specify pdpRequired if access to personal data is required, pdpOptional if you can use the data but don't require it, or pdpNotNeeded if you do not use personal data. Notice that if you specify pdpRequired, and your customer does not authorize that type of access, then your application will not be able to access QuickBooks.

### Usage

This method is used before the call to BeginSession.

### Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLCOM as QBXMLRP2Lib2.RequestProcessor2  
Dim prefs As QBXMLRP2Lib.AuthPreferences  
Set prefs = qbXMLCOM.AuthPreferences  
prefs.PutPersonalDataPref pdpOptional
```

## PutUnattendedModePref

---

```
HRESULT PutUnattendedModePref([in] QBXMLRPUnattendedModePrefType  
unattendedModePref);
```

Specifies the unattended mode access requirements for your application.

### Parameters

*unattendedModePref*

Specify `umpRequired` if your application must be able to run in unattended mode, `umpOptional` if it does not need to run in that mode. Notice that if you specify `umpRequired`, and your customer does not authorize that access, then your application will not be able to access QuickBooks.

### Usage

This method is used before the call to `BeginSession`.

### Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLCOM As QBXMLRP2Lib2.RequestProcessor2  
Dim prefs As QBXMLRP2Lib.AuthPreferences  
Set prefs = qbXMLCOM.AuthPreferences  
prefs.PutUnattendedModePref umpOptional
```

## MajorVersion

---

```
HRESULT MajorVersion([[out, retval] short* pMajorVersion);
```

Returns the major version number of the qbXML Request Processor.

### Parameters

*pMajorVersion* Pointer to the returned major version number of the qbXML Request Processor.

### Usage

For version 4.0, the major version number of the qbXML Request Processor is 4.

### Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLRP as QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
Dim iMajorVersion as integer
iMajorVersion = qbXMLRP.MajorVersion
```

# MinorVersion

---

```
HRESULT MinorVersion([out, retval] short* pMinorVersion);
```

Returns the minor version number of the qbXML Request Processor.

## Parameters

*pMinorVersion* Pointer to the returned minor version number of the qbXML Request Processor.

## Usage

For version 4.0, the minor version number of the qbXML Request Processor is 0.

## Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLRP as QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
Dim iMinorVersion as integer
iMinorVersion = qbXMLRP.MinorVersion
```

## OpenConnection2

---

```
HRESULT OpenConnection2([IN], BSTR appID,  
                      [IN], BSTR appName,  
                      [IN], BSTR connPref);
```

Opens a connection of the specified type between QuickBooks and the client application. During this process, QuickBooks checks whether your application contains a valid digital signature, which indicates that the application has been certified as trusted. Depending on whether the application is certified or not, QuickBooks presents a different login interface to the user.

### Parameters

<i>appId</i>	The <i>appId</i> enables QuickBooks to identify your application. This value can also be NULL or an empty string.
<i>appName</i>	Name that identifies the application. This parameter cannot be NULL or an empty string. The application name is always used in the log file.
<i>connPref</i>	The type of connection that is to be made. Specify <i>localQBD</i> if the connection is to QuickBooks running locally. Specify <i>localQBDLaunchUI</i> to launch the QuickBooks user interface (a user will be required to log in, if passwording is in effect). Specify <i>remoteQBD</i> if using RDS (this also allows you to force an RDS connection even if QuickBooks Pro or Premier is installed locally).

### Usage

For QuickBooks 2005 and later, QuickBooks uses the application name to identify your application during the QuickBooks authentication process whether your application is signed or unsigned.

#### NOTE

QuickBooks always uses the application name in the *qbsdklog.txt* log file, regardless of whether your application is certified.

For QuickBooks versions earlier than QuickBooks 2004, if your application *does not* have a digitally signed certificate, QuickBooks uses the application name to identify your application during the QuickBooks authentication process. If your application *does* have a certificate, QuickBooks instead uses the description from the certification whenever it needs to refer to your application.

When you are finished with all QuickBooks operations, you must call CloseConnection.

### Example (Visual Basic)

```
Set qbXMLCOM = New QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2  
qbXMLCOM.OpenConnection2 "MyAppID", "MyAppName", localQBD
```

# ProcessRequest

---

```
HRESULT ProcessRequest([in] BSTR ticket,
                      [in] BSTR qbXMLIn,
                      [out, retval] BSTR* qbXMLOut);
```

Sends the request message set to QuickBooks for processing and receives the corresponding response message set from QuickBooks.

## Parameters

<i>ticket</i>	Handle for the current session. (This ticket is returned by the <i>BeginSession</i> method.)
<i>qbXMLIn</i>	Text stream containing the qbXML request message set to be processed by QuickBooks.
<i>qbXMLOut</i>	Pointer to the returned qbXML response message set from QuickBooks. The memory for this string is allocated on behalf of your application; however, it is your application's responsibility to release the memory when it is finished using it.

## Usage

The *ProcessRequest* method sends the request message set to QuickBooks. It waits while QuickBooks validates your qbXML document, processes the requests, and creates the response qbXML document. Upon successful return of this method, the *qbXMLOut* parameter contains the response from QuickBooks.

You may want to validate the qbXML text stream contained in the *qbXMLIn* parameter before you issue this request. The SDK contains an example of an external qbXML validation tool that you can use during the design and development phases of your application. Later, you may want to build a qbXML validator into your application.

## Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLRP as QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
Dim strXMLResponse as String
strXMLResponse = qbXMLRP.ProcessRequest(strTicket, strXMLRequest)
```

# ProcessSubscription

---

```
HRESULT ProcessSubscription([in] BSTR qbXMLIn,
                           [out, retval] BSTR* qbXMLOut);
```

Sends the request message set to QuickBooks for processing and receives the corresponding response message set from QuickBooks.

## Parameters

<i>qbXMLIn</i>	Text stream containing the qbXML subscription request message set to be processed by QuickBooks. For information on how to build subscriptions, refer to the QuickBooks Desktop API Reference.
<i>qbXMLOut</i>	Pointer to the qbXML response message set returned from QuickBooks. The memory for this string is allocated on behalf of your application; however, it is your application's responsibility to release the memory when it is finished using it.

## Usage

The `ProcessSubscription` method does not require a session ticket because it does not require QuickBooks to be running. (But you must call `OpenConnection` or `OpenConnection2` before you call `ProcessSubscription`.) The subscription goes into effect the next time QuickBooks is started.

This method sends the subscription request message set to QuickBooks. It waits while QuickBooks validates your qbXML document, processes the requests, and creates the response qbXML document. Upon successful return of this method, the `qbXMLOut` parameter contains the response from QuickBooks.

You may want to validate the qbXML text stream contained in the `qbXMLIn` parameter before you issue this request. The SDK contains an example of an external qbXML validation tool that you can use during the design and development phases of your application. Later, you may want to build a qbXML validator into your application.

## Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLRP as QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
Dim strXMLResponse as String
strXMLResponse = qbXMLRP.ProcessSubscription(qbXMLIn)
```

# QBXMLVersionsForSession

---

```
HRESULT QBXMLVersionsForSession([in] BSTR ticket,  
                                [out, retval] SAFEARRAY (BSTR)** ppsa);
```

Returns an array containing the version numbers of the DTDs supported by the Request Processor. Note that this information may be different from the information returned by a Host Query request, as described in the *Concepts Manual*. HostQuery returns the complete list of all qbXML versions supported by the *currently open connection*, which is usually the information your application will require.

## Parameters

<i>ticket</i>	Session ticket (returned by BeginSession).
<i>ppsa</i>	Pointer pointer to an array of binary strings that specify the versions of the qbXML specification that are supported by the QuickBooks Request Processor. For example, the array contains 1.0, 1.1, 2.0, and 2.1, 3.0, 4.0, and 5.0 if your application is using QBXMLRP2 from QuickBooks 2006, U.S. edition. It contains “CA3.0” if it is using the Request Processor from the latest Canadian edition of QuickBooks.

## Usage

Your application is responsible for freeing the memory used for the *ppsa* array. For example, to release the memory for the array when using the C++ language, call `SafeArrayDestroy(ppsa)`.

## Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLRP as QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2  
Dim strXMLVersionsArray() as String  
strXMLVersionsArray = qbXMLRP.QBXMLVersionsForSession(strTicket)
```

# QBXMLVersionsForSubscription

---

```
HRESULT QBXMLVersionsForSubscription([out, retval] SAFEARRAY (BSTR) **  
ppsa);
```

Returns an array containing a list of the qbXML versions that are available for a subscription request.

## Parameters

*ppsa* Pointer pointer to an array of binary strings that specify the versions of the qbXML specification that are supported by QBXMLRP2. For example, QBXMLRP2 for QuickBooks 2005 would return 3.0 and 4.0. It contains “CA2.0” if it is using the Request Processor from the Canadian edition of QuickBooks version 2.0.

## Usage

See the QuickBooks Desktop API Reference for details about subscription versioning.

Your application is responsible for freeing the memory used for the *ppsa* array. For example, to release the memory for the array when using the C++ language, call `SafeArrayDestroy(ppsa)`.

## Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLRP as QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2  
Dim strXMLVersionsArray() as String  
strXMLVersionsArray = qbXMLRP.QBXMLVersionsForSession()
```

## ReleaseLevel

---

```
HRESULT ReleaseLevel
    ([out, retval] QBXMLRPReleaseLevel* pReleaseLevel);
```

Returns the release level of the qbXML Request Processor.

### Parameters

*pReleaseLevel* Pointer to the returned release level. This value can be *preAlpha*, *alpha*, *beta*, or *release*.

### Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLRP as QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
Dim ReleaseLevel as QBXMLRP2Lib.QBXMLRPReleaseLevel
ReleaseLevel = qbXMLRP.ReleaseLevel
```

## ReleaseNumber

---

```
HRESULT ReleaseNumber([out, retval] short* pReleaseNumber);
```

Returns the release number of the qbXML Request Processor.

### Parameters

*pReleaseNumber*      Pointer pointer to the number that identifies the release of the qbXML Request Processor.

### Usage

The release number varies with each build of the product software. A major bug fix or a new feature might be reflected in the release number. Your application may need to check the release number to determine if a certain feature is supported.

### Example (Visual Basic)

```
Dim qbXMLRP as QBXMLRP2Lib.RequestProcessor2
Dim iReleaseNumber as integer
iReleaseNumber = qbXMLRP.ReleaseNumber
```

## APPENDIX E

### ENTERPRISE EDITION AND SINGLE/MULTI-USER ISSUES

This appendix lists the Enterprise features that require single mode, and those that support multuser mode.

### Enterprise Features Requiring Single User Mode

The following table lists single mode features:

Backup
Condense
Accountant Review (import/export, create/merge, Use/continue/cancel)
Easy Step interview
Rebuild
IIF Import/Export
Change Employee List Sort
Change company info
Regen Item History
Timer Import/Export
Changing Company Prefs
Using TaxLink
Change Check Logo
Print 1099's
Setting Employee defaults
Finance charge settings
Online banking migration
Payroll checkup
Payroll payserv signup
Payroll payserv payroll setup
Common payroll setup
Change email/fax message template
HR signup
Create or restore Portable company file

## Enterprise List Operations Requiring Single User Mode

---

The following table shows the List operations that require single user mode:

Validate
Resort
Change sublevel
Change parent
Custom fields
Changes COGS account
Change post account
Change bal sheet account
Change inventory account
Change reimbursement account
Change expense account
Change payitem account
Change tax agency
Rearrange order
Change name
Select subcontractor for service
Make an account a subaccount
Change email/fax message template

## Enterprise Multi User Features

---

The following features support multiuser mode:

<b>Budgets</b>
Forecasts
Make deposits
Payroll
Print statements
Pay bills
Pay taxes
Assess finance charges
Online banking
Place standing txns
Write letters
Download payments
Inventory change
Reconcile by account
Print checks by account
Select PO by vendor

**Budgets**

- Item history by item
- Select estimate by customer
- Select sales order by customer
- Change inventory acct
- Item adjustment (i.e. Change QOH for inventory)
- Change sales tax rate
- List deletes
- Verify (unless verifying a single user feature)



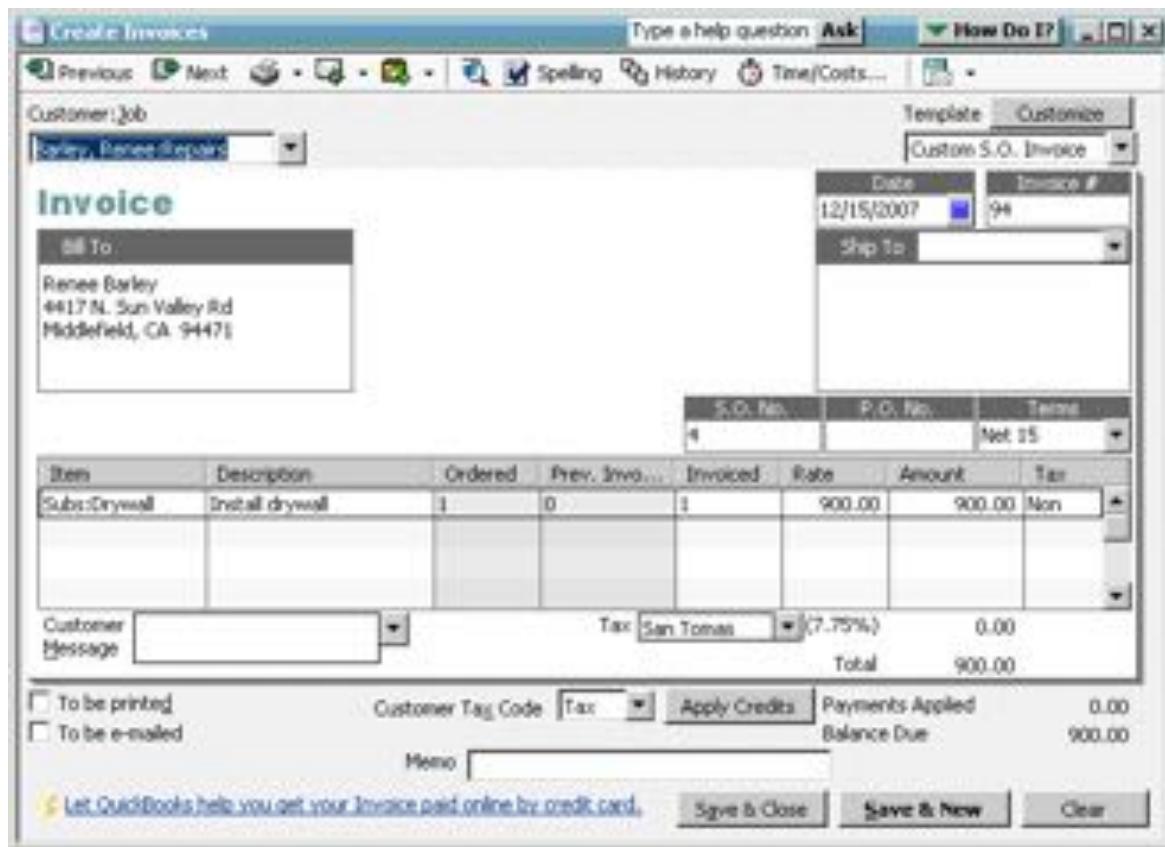
## APPENDIX F

## OVERPAYMENTS AND REFUNDS

This appendix contains an AlphaGeek article that contains information we think would be useful to repeat here in the Programmer's Guide. Enjoy!

### Overpayments and Refunds

Here's the scenario: Your client owns Rock Castle Construction. Renee Barley hired your client to do \$900 of work (installing drywall: a tedious job that she was happy to hire out ).



The screenshot shows the 'Create Invoices' window in QuickBooks. The 'Customer/Job' dropdown is set to 'Barley, Renee Repair'. The 'Invoice' section shows the following details:

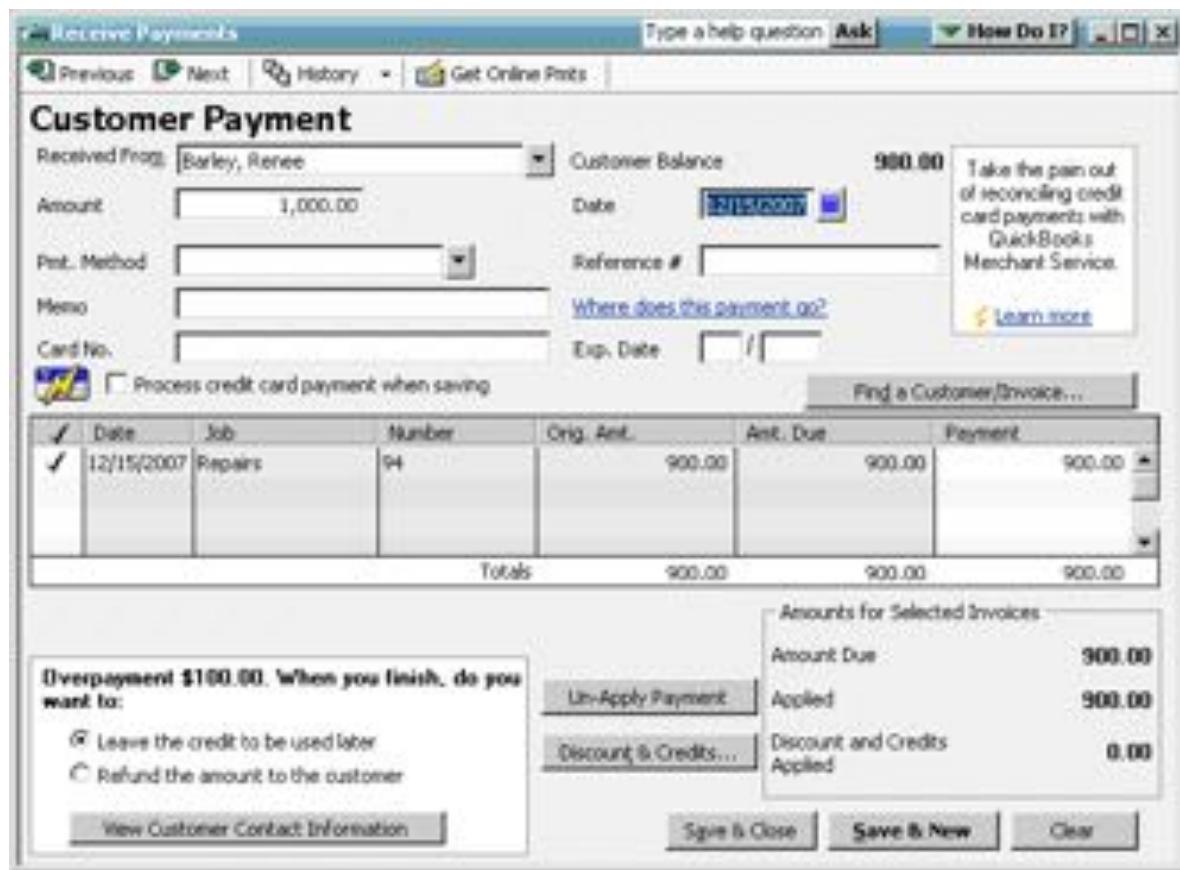
Item	Description	Ordered	Prev. Invoic...	Invoiced	Rate	Amount	Tax
Subs:Drywall	Install drywall	1	0	1	900.00	900.00	Non

Customer Message: [empty] Tax: San Tomas (7.75%) 0.00 Total: 900.00

Checkboxes at the bottom:  To be printed,  To be e-mailed

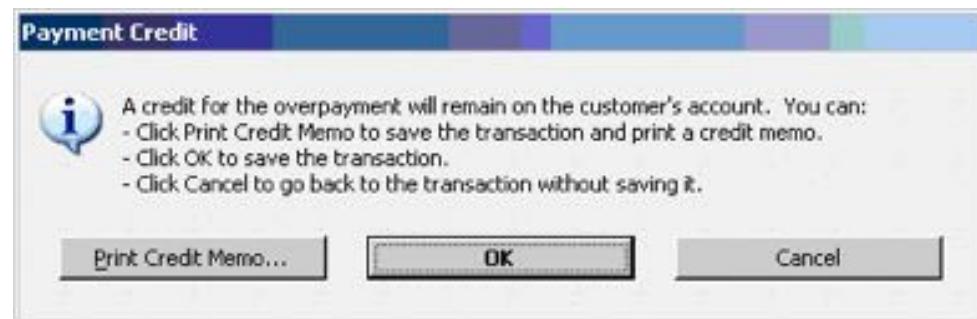
Buttons at the bottom: Save & Close, Save & New, Clear

Renee pays \$1000. Whoops, that's a \$100 overpayment:



Notice that QuickBooks points out the overpayment! We don't know what Renee had in mind, so we'll leave the overpayment as a credit. Notice that QuickBooks will offer to print a credit memo. It would be the right thing to do, but notice that even if you do choose to print a Credit Memo for Renee, you won't be able to find a credit memo transaction for Renee, what gets printed is just something that we can give Renee to ensure that she can remind us that she overpaid us by \$100.

That's because a QuickBooks credit memo transaction is, in the words of the QuickBooks help file for when a customer returns items for which you have already recorded an invoice, customer payment, or sales receipt and you or the customer wish to retain the value of the returned goods as a credit for use in future transactions (as opposed to refunding immediately). That's not the situation we have here, nothing is being returned. So regardless of how we respond to the following dialog:



Renee winds up with a \$100 credit:

SalesLogix Customer Center: Barley, Renee (All Transactions)

New Customer & Job • New Transactions • Print • Excel • Word

Customer Information

Customer Name: Barley, Renee Contact: Renee Barley  
 Customer Type: Residential Phone: 415-555-7262  
 Company Name: Billing Address: Renee Barley  
 Alt Phone: 4417 N. Sun Valley R.  
 Billing Address: Middlefield, CA 94467 Pay:  
 Email: renee@sample...  
 Terms: Net 15

Price Level:

Notes: Edit Notes...

Show: All Transactions Filter By: All Date: This Fiscal Year

Type	Num	Date	Account	Amount
Invoice	94	12/15/2007	Accounts Receivable	900.00
Payment		12/15/2007	Undeposited Funds	1,000.00

Customers & Jobs Transactions

View: Active Customers

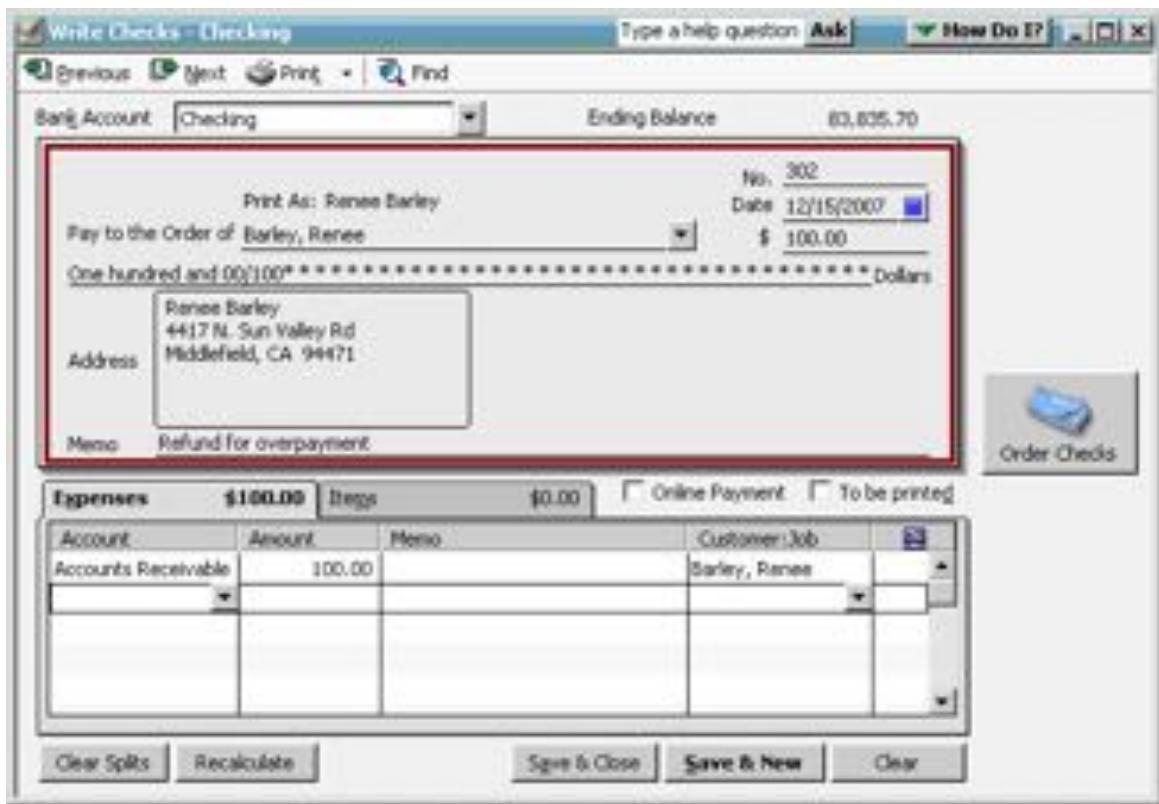
Name	Balance Total
Abercrombie, Kristy	0.00
+Family Room	0.00
+Kitchen	0.00
+Remodel Bathrooms	0.00
Baker, Chris	1,040.00
+Family Room	1,040.00
Balak, Mike	0.00
+Utility Shed	0.00
Barley, Renee	-100.00
+Repairs	0.00
Bolnski, Rafael	0.00
+2nd story addition	0.00
Bristol, Sonya	0.00
+Utility Shed	0.00
+Repairs	0.00
Burch, Jason	1,005.00
+Room Addition	1,005.00
Burney, Tony	0.00
+Repairs	0.00
Cook, Brian	7,812.63
+2nd story addition	5,003.30

## The Manual Solution

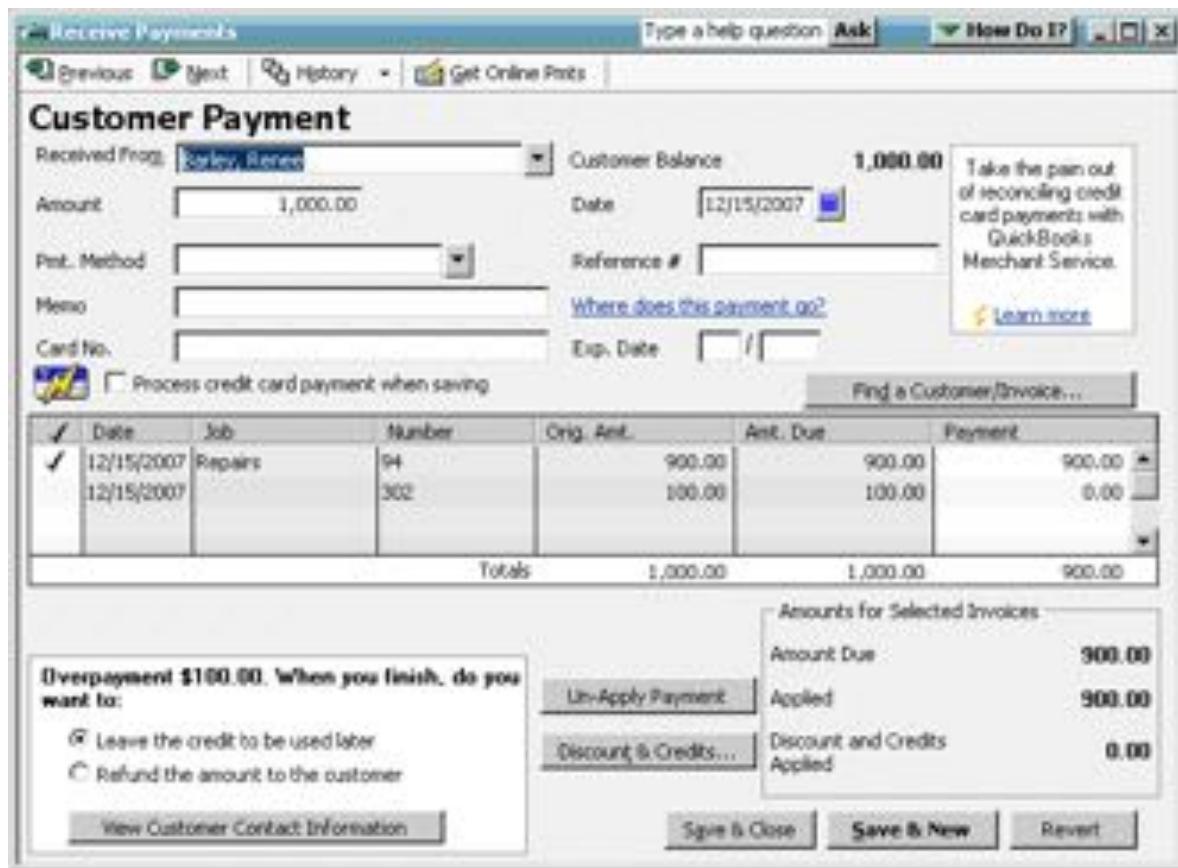
Rock Castle Construction now must refund this overpayment manually. In our example the payment is already deposited, so we can't delete the overpayment and try to correct the problem.

If you were to guess, you might guess that you could just create a credit memo now, after all it was the failure to do that which resulted in this problem. BUT, that's not the right answer. Doing so would give you a \$200 credit! That would be double the problem.

So instead, we go to the Write Checks window. Create a check to Renee Barley for \$100.00. Use an expense line with Account = Accounts Receivable and Customer:Job = Renee Barley.



This will do the right thing with the balance on Renee's account (it will return to \$0.00). However that this doesn't update the credit on the original payment transaction. Let's look at that payment:



Here in the QuickBooks user interface, what we really want is to apply the payment to the check transaction we see there by adding it to the payment receipt we have. We can just add a check mark to the refund check line in this payment receipt, but if the payment has already been deposited some accountants may take issue with the modification of this payment receipt.

So there's another way to patch up the QuickBooks confusion here by clearing out the discounts & credits. We start by creating a new Payment Receipt for Renee:

Receive Payments

Type a help question [Ask](#) [How Do I?](#) [X](#)

Previous [Next](#) History [Get Online Prints](#)

## Customer Payment

Received From:  Customer Balance **100.00**

Amount  Date

Print Method  Reference #

Memo [Where does this payment go?](#)

Card No.  Exp. Date

Process credit card payment when saving [Find a Customer/Invoice...](#)

Date	Number	Orig. Amt.	Amt. Due	Payment
12/15/2007	302	100.00	100.00	0.00
Totals		100.00	100.00	0.00

This customer has credits available. To apply credits click [Discount & Credits...](#)

Available Credits **100.00**

[Auto Apply Payment](#) [Discount & Credits...](#)

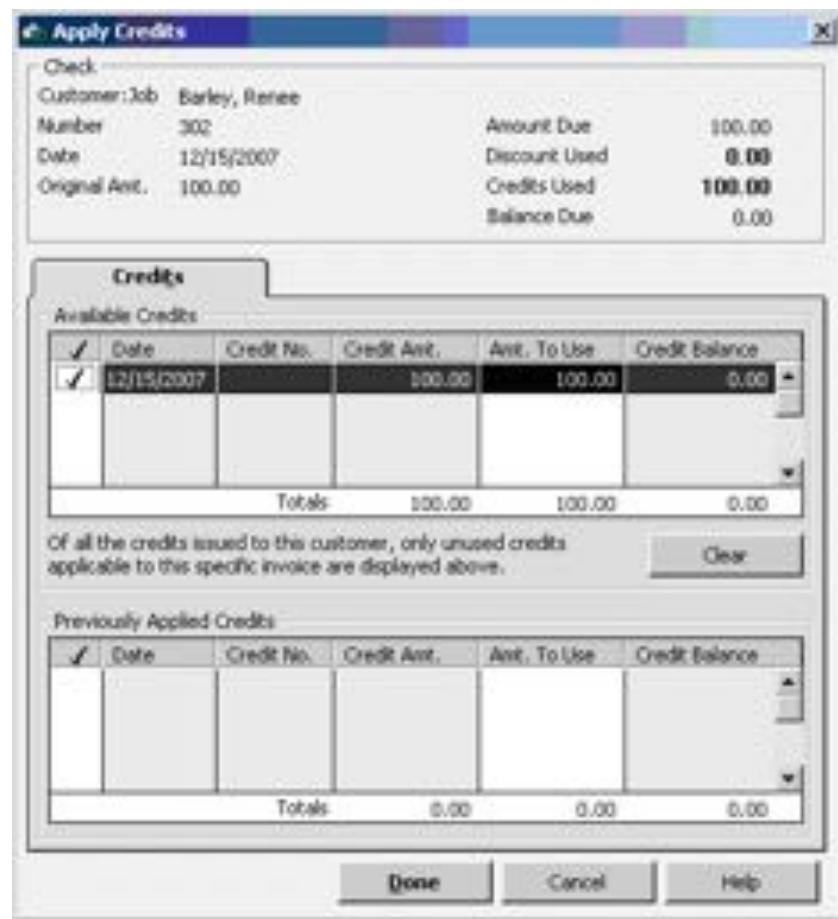
Amount Due **0.00**

Applied **0.00**

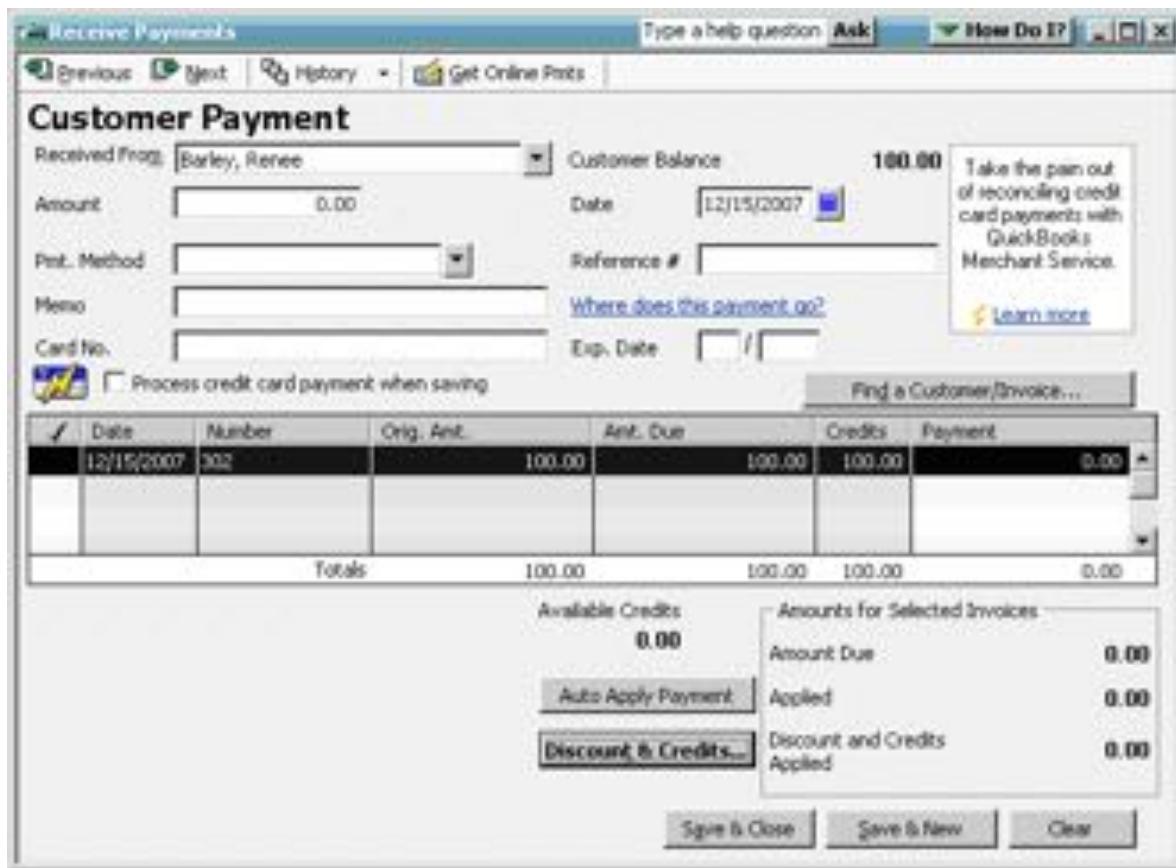
Discount and Credits Applied **0.00**

[Save & Close](#) [Save & New](#) [Clear](#)

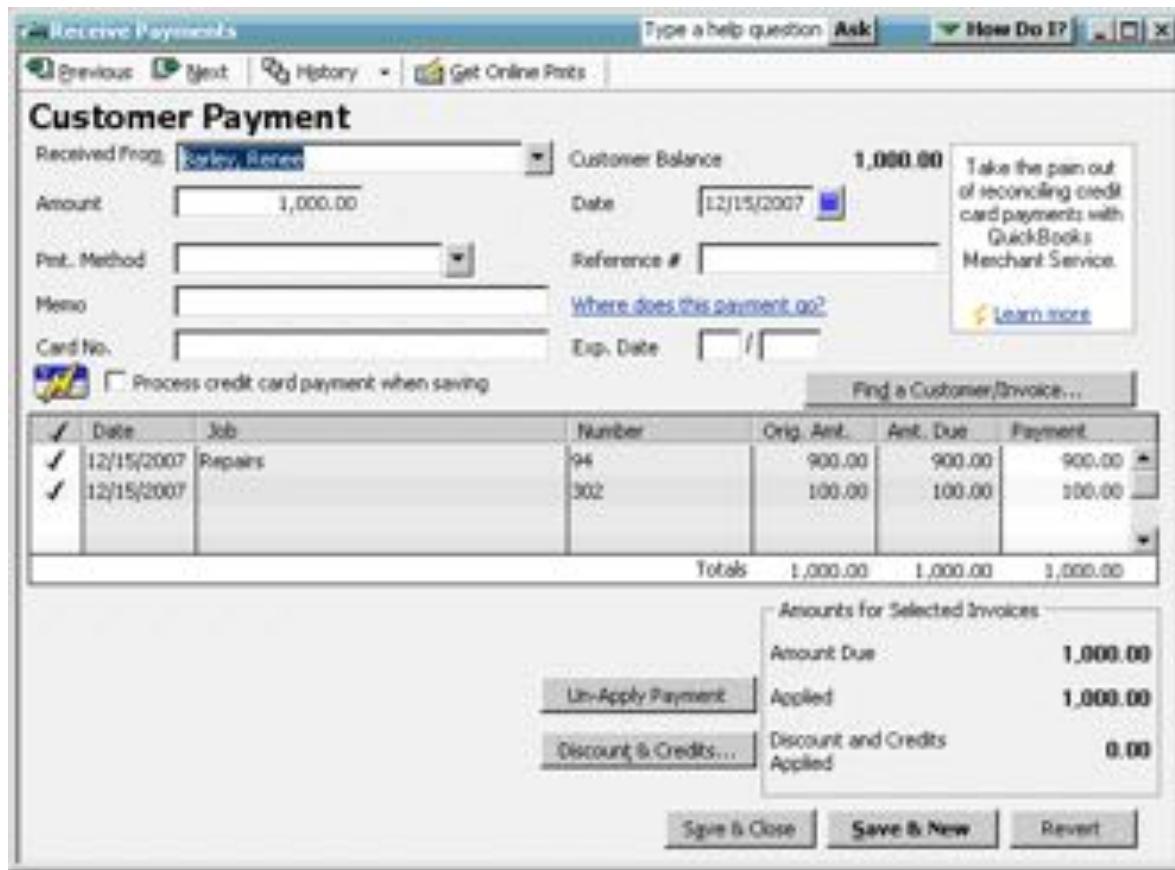
Note that QuickBooks correctly sees the refund check we wrote earlier for the Accounts Receivable expense. We want to apply the overpayment credit to this refund check so we click Discount & Credits:



The credit is already selected, so we just click Done.



We now have a payment for \$0 that applies to nothing, but notice that the Customer has credits available message is no longer present. Click Save & Close because this is a transaction for \$0.00 nothing actually posts, just like no credit memo was created earlier, no new payment receipt is created, but if we check the original transaction again, we can see that the credit that we refunded is now cleaned up:



Excellent, the overpayment portion is gone. Even more importantly, that extra receive payment we just did, which wasn't really a payment receipt won't show up on any transaction lists, it really just cleaned up a quirk of the QuickBooks business logic.

## Taking it to the SDK

Blissfully you think you've got this problem licked, so you charge into writing an application to solve this for your client. But the details of doing this programmatically are a little more exposed. And the functionality in this area has improved which means you need different solutions if you need to support older versions of QuickBooks L.

Lets start with QuickBooks 2005 since a good number of clients would have access to this functionality by now.. In QB2005 we have ARRefundCreditCardAdd (for credit card refund) and CheckAdd (for check refund). Let's see what happens when we use those.

```

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="2.0"?>
<QBXML>
    <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="stopOnError">
        <CheckAddRq>
            <CheckAdd>
                <AccountRef>
                    <FullName>Checking</FullName>
                </AccountRef>
                <PayeeEntityRef>
                    <FullName>Barley, Renee</FullName>
                </PayeeEntityRef>
                <TxnDate>2007-12-15</TxnDate>
                <Memo>Refund for overpayment</Memo>
                <IsToBePrinted>1</IsToBePrinted>
                <ExpenseLineAdd>
                    <AccountRef>
                        <FullName>Accounts Receivable</FullName>
                    </AccountRef>
                    <Amount>100.00</Amount>
                    <CustomerRef>
                        <FullName>Barley, Renee</FullName>
                    </CustomerRef>
                </ExpenseLineAdd>
            </CheckAdd>
        </CheckAddRq>
    </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

When we send this to the request processor with QB 2005 or greater we get:

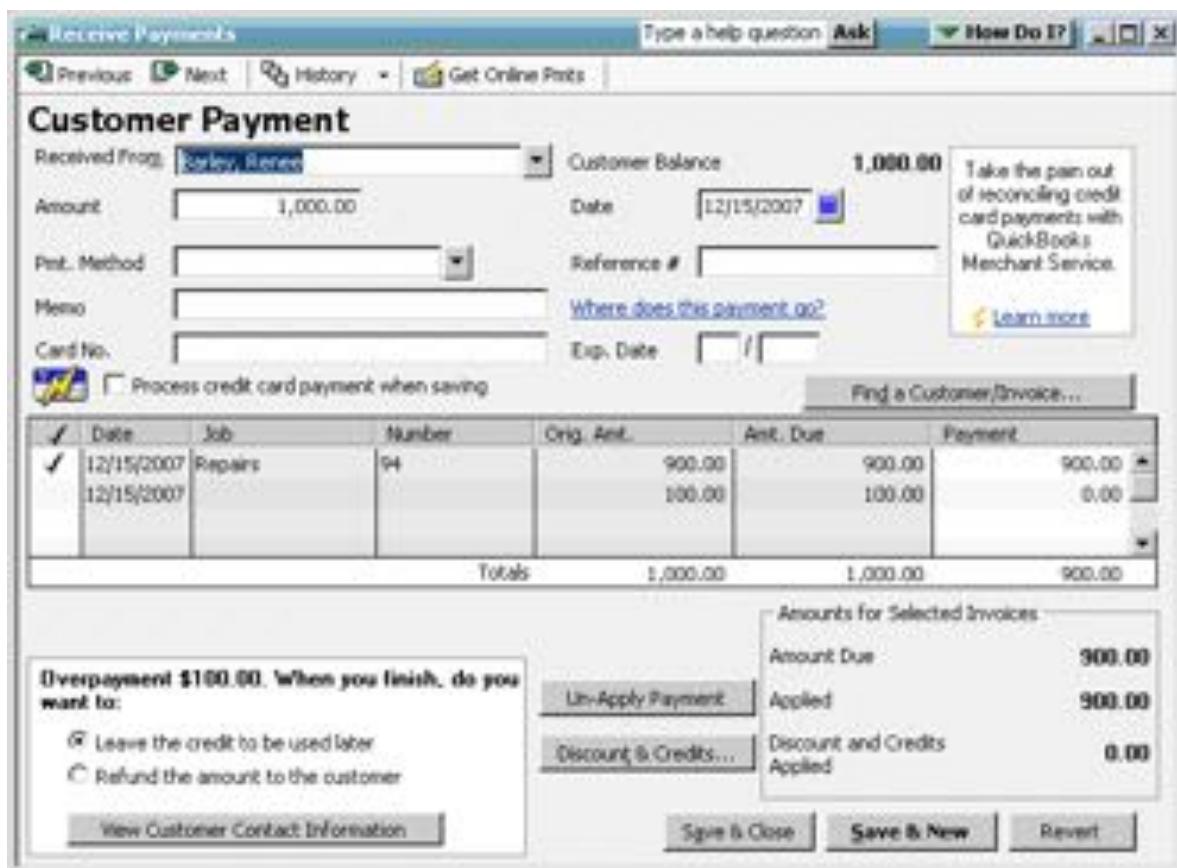
```

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<QBXML>
    <QBXMLMsgsRs>
        <CheckAddRs statusCode="0" statusSeverity="Info" statusMessage="Status OK">
            <CheckRet>
                <TxnID>5BBE-1197738754</TxnID>
                <TimeCreated>2007-12-15T09:12:34-08:00</TimeCreated>
                <TimeModified>2007-12-15T09:12:34-08:00</TimeModified>
                <EditSequence>1197738754</EditSequence>
                <TxnNumber>1261</TxnNumber>
                <AccountRef>
                    <ListID>20000-933270541</ListID>
                    <FullName>Checking</FullName>
                </AccountRef>
                <PayeeEntityRef>
                    <ListID>920000-1071506140</ListID>
                    <FullName>Barley, Renee</FullName>
                </PayeeEntityRef>
                <TxnDate>2007-12-15</TxnDate>
                <Amount>100.00</Amount>
                <Memo>Refund for overpayment</Memo>
                <Address>

```

```
<Addr1>Renee Barley</Addr1>
<Addr2>4417 N. Sun Valley Rd</Addr2>
<City>Middlefield</City>
<State>CA</State>
<PostalCode>94471</PostalCode>
</Address>
<IsToBePrinted>true</IsToBePrinted>
<ExpenseLineRet>
  <TxnLineID>5BC0-1197738754</TxnLineID>
  <AccountRef>
    <ListID>40000-933270541</ListID>
    <FullName>Accounts Receivable</FullName>
  </AccountRef>
  <Amount>100.00</Amount>
  <CustomerRef>
    <ListID>920000-1071506140</ListID>
    <FullName>Barley, Renee</FullName>
  </CustomerRef>
</ExpenseLineRet>
</CheckRet>
</CheckAddRs>
</QBXMLMsgsRs>
</QBXML>
```

But look at the Customer Payment:



Whoa! Look at that! Someone could still come along and issue a refund! The problem is the same as when we did it manually. It turns up we need that Apply Credits magic.

Those of you who remember our discussion of this situation in the QuickBooks UI will see that the problem for the SDK is that there's actually no transaction for that credit, even if we printed a credit memo, that means there's no TxnID we can use in the `ReceivePaymentAdd` request's `SetCredit` aggregate.

Before QuickBooks 2007, we really have only two options.

**Option 1:** Prevent the situation from happening in the first place by recognizing an overpayment before we recording it from our application and generate a refund check first, then record the payment receipt, applying the payment to the original invoice and the refund check all at once (note that in the example below we're also recording the invoice, that's just to provide a functional request that doesn't require the AlphaGeek to magically anticipate the TxnID of the invoice):

```

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="4.0" ?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
    <InvoiceAddRq requestID = "0">
      <InvoiceAdd defMacro="TxnID:INV1">

```

```

<CustomerRef>
    <FullName>Barley, Renee</FullName>
</CustomerRef>
<InvoiceLineAdd>
    <ItemRef>
        <FullName>Install Drywall</FullName>
    </ItemRef>
    <Quantity>1</Quantity>
    <Rate>900.00</Rate>
    <SalesTaxCodeRef>
        <FullName>Non</FullName>
    </SalesTaxCodeRef>
</InvoiceLineAdd>
</InvoiceAdd>
</InvoiceAddRq>
<CheckAddRq>
    <CheckAdd defMacro="TxnID:Check1">
        <AccountRef>
            <FullName>Checking</FullName>
        </AccountRef>
        <PayeeEntityRef>
            <FullName>Barley, Renee</FullName>
        </PayeeEntityRef>
        <Memo>Refund</Memo>
        <ExpenseLineAdd>
            <AccountRef>
                <FullName>Accounts Receivable</FullName>
            </AccountRef>
            <Amount>100.00</Amount>
            <CustomerRef>
                <FullName>Barley, Renee</FullName>
            </CustomerRef>
        </ExpenseLineAdd>
    </CheckAdd>
</CheckAddRq>
<ReceivePaymentAddRq>
    <ReceivePaymentAdd>
        <CustomerRef>
            <FullName>Barley, Renee</FullName>
        </CustomerRef>
        <TotalAmount>1000.00</TotalAmount>
        <AppliedToTxnAdd>
            <TxnID useMacro="TxnID:INV1" />
            <PaymentAmount>900.00</PaymentAmount>
        </AppliedToTxnAdd>
        <AppliedToTxnAdd>
            <TxnID useMacro="TxnID:Check1" />
            <PaymentAmount>100.00</PaymentAmount>
        </AppliedToTxnAdd>
    </ReceivePaymentAdd>
</ReceivePaymentAddRq>

```

```

        </AppliedToTxnAdd>
    </ReceivePaymentAdd>
</ReceivePaymentAddRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

**Option 2.** Recognize the situation has occurred and guide the user through fixing it by adding the refund check to QuickBooks, then use TxnDisplayMod to bring up the payment receipt in the QuickBooks user interface and ask the user to add a check mark next to the refund check in the apply to transaction list of the payment form.

## QuickBooks 2007 to the Rescue!

---

While the first solution proposed is reasonable if it is feasible for your application to detect the overpayment situation when its happening, the reality is that many times your application won't have the omniscient view of QuickBooks data and the user's intent that is required to apply it reliably.

Fortunately, the situation gets considerably better with QuickBooks 2007, we can record the payment as usual, applying it to the invoice and getting stuck with a \$100 credit balance for Renee:

```

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="6.0" ?>
<QBXML>
    <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
        <ReceivePaymentAddRq>
            <ReceivePaymentAdd>
                <CustomerRef>
                    <FullName>Barley, Renee</FullName>
                </CustomerRef>
                <TotalAmount>1000.00</TotalAmount>
                <AppliedToTxnAdd>
                    <TxnID useMacro="TxnID:INV1" />
                    <PaymentAmount>900.00</PaymentAmount>
                </AppliedToTxnAdd>
            </ReceivePaymentAdd>
        </ReceivePaymentAddRq>
    </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

Then at some later time we can record a check to refund Renee:

```

<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<?qbxml version="4.0" ?>
<QBXML>
    <QBXMLMsgsRq onError = "stopOnError">
        <CheckAddRq>

```

```

<CheckAdd defMacro="TxnID:Check1">
  <AccountRef>
    <FullName>Checking</FullName>
  </AccountRef>
  <PayeeEntityRef>
    <FullName>Barley, Renee</FullName>
  </PayeeEntityRef>
  <Memo>Refund</Memo>
  <ExpenseLineAdd>
    <AccountRef>
      <FullName>Accounts Receivable</FullName>
    </AccountRef>
    <Amount>100.00</Amount>
    <CustomerRef>
      <FullName>Barley, Renee</FullName>
    </CustomerRef>
  </ExpenseLineAdd>
</CheckAdd>
</CheckAddRq>
</QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

A quick TransactionQuery request shows us the situation as it stands with Renee at this point:

```

<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRs>
    <TransactionQueryRs statusCode="0" statusSeverity="Info" statusMessage="Status OK">
      <TransactionRet>
        <TxnType>Invoice</TxnType>
        <TxnID>5C29-1197706889</TxnID>
        <TimeCreated>2007-12-15T00:21:29-08:00</TimeCreated>
        <TimeModified>2007-12-15T00:21:29-08:00</TimeModified>
        <EntityRef>
          <ListID>920000-1071506140</ListID>
          <FullName>Barley, Renee</FullName>
        </EntityRef>
        <AccountRef>
          <ListID>40000-933270541</ListID>
          <FullName>Accounts Receivable</FullName>
        </AccountRef>
        <TxnDate>2007-12-15</TxnDate>
        <RefNumber>94</RefNumber>
        <Amount>900.00</Amount>
      </TransactionRet>
      <TransactionRet>
        <TxnType>ReceivePayment</TxnType>
        <TxnID>5C2D-1197706923</TxnID>
      </TransactionRet>
    </TransactionQueryRs>
  </QBXMLMsgsRs>
</QBXML>

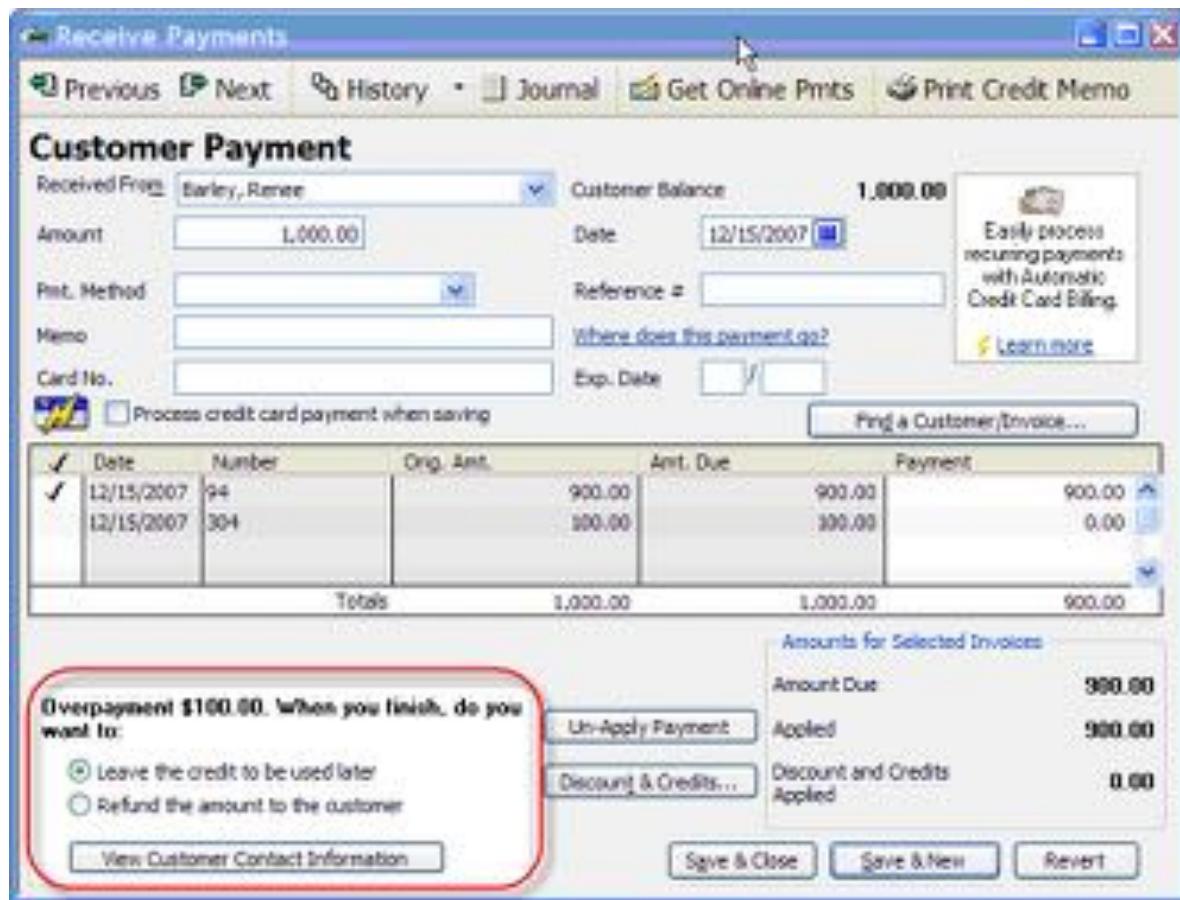
```

```

<TimeCreated>2007-12-15T00:22:03-08:00</TimeCreated>
<TimeModified>2007-12-15T00:22:03-08:00</TimeModified>
<EntityRef>
  <ListID>920000-1071506140</ListID>
  <FullName>Barley, Renee</FullName>
</EntityRef>
<AccountRef>
  <ListID>80000-933270541</ListID>
  <FullName>Undeposited Funds</FullName>
</AccountRef>
<TxnDate>2007-12-15</TxnDate>
<Amount>1000.00</Amount>
</TransactionRet>
<TransactionRet>
  <TxnType>Check</TxnType>
  <TxnID>5C32-1197706965</TxnID>
  <TimeCreated>2007-12-15T00:22:45-08:00</TimeCreated>
  <TimeModified>2007-12-15T00:22:45-08:00</TimeModified>
  <EntityRef>
    <ListID>920000-1071506140</ListID>
    <FullName>Barley, Renee</FullName>
  </EntityRef>
  <AccountRef>
    <ListID>20000-933270541</ListID>
    <FullName>Checking</FullName>
  </AccountRef>
  <TxnDate>2007-12-15</TxnDate>
  <RefNumber>304</RefNumber>
  <Amount>-100.00</Amount>
</TransactionRet>
</TransactionQueryRs>
</QBXMLMsgsRs>
</QBXML>

```

The set of transactions above get us into this situation:



QuickBooks 2007 and SDK 6.0 add a number of transaction mod requests, including, fortunately, `ReceivePaymentMod`, so we can use the SDK to modify that payment receipt (TxnID 5C2D-1197706923) to apply it to the check as well:

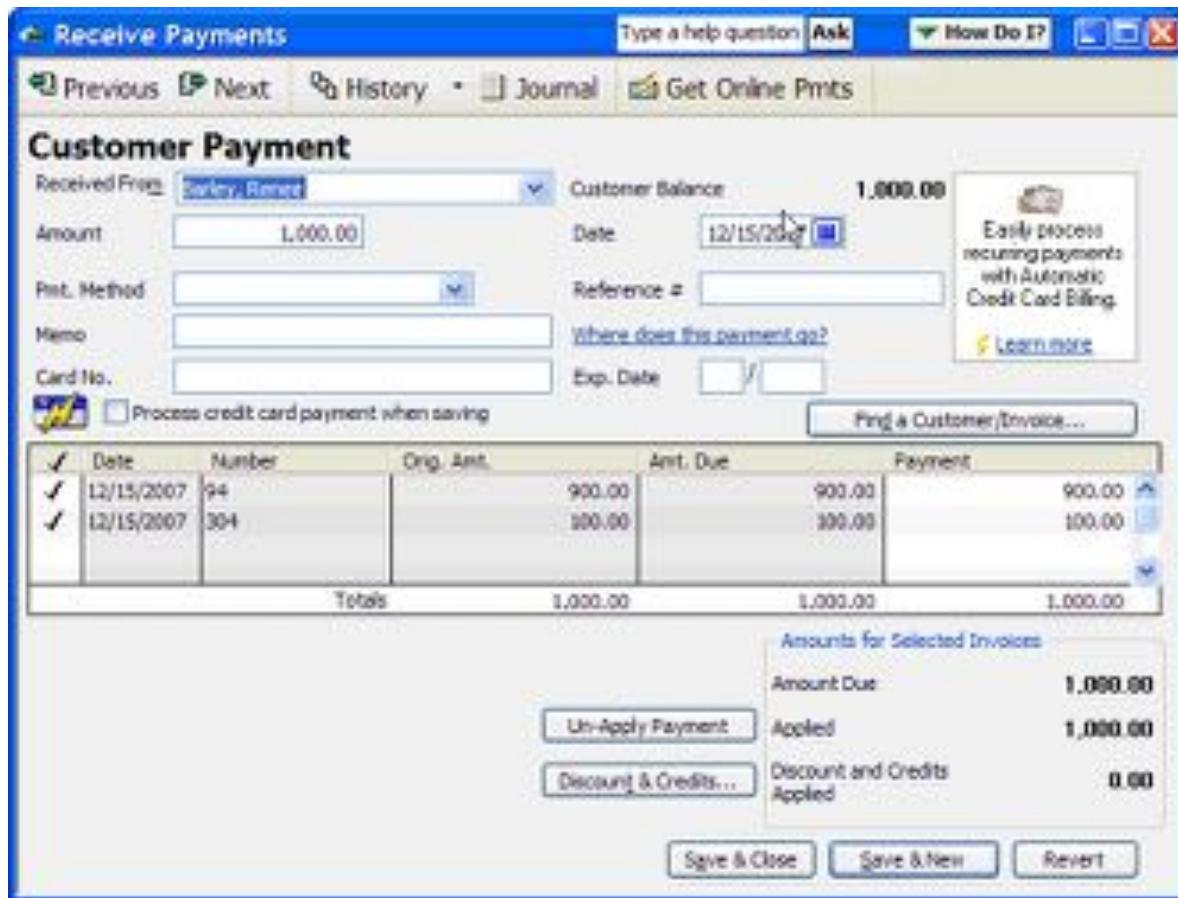
```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<?qbxml version="6.0"?>
<QBXML>
  <QBXMLMsgsRq onError="continueOnError">
    <ReceivePaymentModRq requestID="1">
      <ReceivePaymentMod>
        <TxnID>5C2D-1197706923</TxnID>
        <EditSequence>1197706923</EditSequence>
        <AppliedToTxnMod>
          <TxnID>5C29-1197706889</TxnID>
          <PaymentAmount>900.00</PaymentAmount>
        </AppliedToTxnMod>
        <AppliedToTxnMod>
          <TxnID>5C32-1197706965</TxnID>
          <PaymentAmount>100.00</PaymentAmount>
        </AppliedToTxnMod>
      </ReceivePaymentMod>
    </ReceivePaymentModRq>
  </QBXMLMsgsRq>
</QBXML>

```

```
</ReceivePaymentModRq>  
</QBXMLMsgsRq>  
</QBXML>
```

Checking the QuickBooks UI we see that we got exactly what we were after:



Which we can also see in the response from the ReceivePaymentMod request:

```
<QBXML>  
  <QBXMLMsgsRs>  
    <ReceivePaymentModRs requestID="1" statusCode="0" statusSeverity="Info"  
    statusMessage="Status OK">  
      <ReceivePaymentRet>  
        <TxnID>5C2D-1197706923</TxnID>  
        <TimeCreated>2007-12-15T00:22:03-08:00</TimeCreated>  
        <TimeModified>2007-12-15T01:01:10-08:00</TimeModified>  
        <EditSequence>1197709270</EditSequence>  
        <TxnNumber>1266</TxnNumber>  
        <CustomerRef>  
          <ListID>920000-1071506140</ListID>  
          <FullName>Barley, Renee</FullName>
```

```

        </CustomerRef>
        <ARAccountRef>
            <ListID>40000-933270541</ListID>
            <FullName>Accounts Receivable</FullName>
        </ARAccountRef>
        <TxnDate>2007-12-15</TxnDate>
        <TotalAmount>1000.00</TotalAmount>
        <DepositToAccountRef>
            <ListID>80000-933270541</ListID>
            <FullName>Undeposited Funds</FullName>
        </DepositToAccountRef>
        <UnusedPayment>0.00</UnusedPayment>
        <UnusedCredits>0.00</UnusedCredits>
        <AppliedToTxnRet>
            <TxnID>5C29-1197706889</TxnID>
            <TxnType>Invoice</TxnType>
            <TxnDate>2007-12-15</TxnDate>
            <RefNumber>94</RefNumber>
            <BalanceRemaining>0.00</BalanceRemaining>
            <Amount>900.00</Amount>
        </AppliedToTxnRet>
        <AppliedToTxnRet>
            <TxnID>5C32-1197706965</TxnID>
            <TxnType>Check</TxnType>
            <TxnDate>2007-12-15</TxnDate>
            <RefNumber>304</RefNumber>
            <BalanceRemaining>0.00</BalanceRemaining>
            <Amount>100.00</Amount>
        </AppliedToTxnRet>
    </ReceivePaymentRet>
</ReceivePaymentModRs>
</QBXMLMsgsRs>
</QBXML>

```

## Conclusion

---

The handling of overpayments has long been a topic of confusion for QuickBooks users and developers alike (not to mention the AlphaGeek). We hope that this in-depth exploration of the issues associated with overpayments in QuickBooks and how to handle them in the SDK will be helpful to everyone. ReceivePaymentMod is but one of many new requests from SDK 6.0, the AlphaGeek says Check it Out!



**A**

- Access Rights window 54
- access, to personal data 489
- account balances 503
- account filter
  - example of 88
- account filters 166
- account/subaccount elements 164
- AccountAdd object 168
- AccountAddRq 31, 168
- AccountAddRs 168
- AccountRet object 168
- AccountType filter 85
- accrual basis 107
- ActiveStatus 502
- ActiveStatus filter 82
- Add request
  - example 168
- Add response
  - example 169
- adding objects 168
- administrator, QuickBooks
  - and application authorization 35
  - and permissions 488
  - and personal data 489
- advantages, of single-user mode 55
- aggregate 31
- aggregates 31
- Aging reports 95, 104
  - valid options for 115
- AllowCustomerTaxCodes elements 535
- AmountIncludesVAT elements 535
- API
  - choice of 19, 31
- appID parameter (application ID)
  - in OpenConnection 446
- application
  - error handling 491
  - log file for 491
  - name 558
- AppliedToTxnAdd 219
- AppliedToTxnAdd aggregate 218, 220
- AppliedToTxnRet aggregate 221
- AppliedToTxnRet object 219, 227
  - lean vs. full forms of 219
- applying credits 217
- applying discounts 217
- applying payments 217
- applying payments automatically 220
- appName parameter
  - in OpenConnection 446
- attributes 31

**B**

- responseData 171
- Attributes. See also oldMessageSetID, newMessageSetID, onError, responseData, messageSet-StatusCode
- audience
  - for this manual 19
- authentication 543
- auto-applying payments 220
- auto-login
  - limitations for 53
  - permissions for 53, 488
  - user 488
- auto-login to QuickBooks 51
- automated error recovery
  - about 404
  - and query requests 405
  - steps for using 404
- balance 169
- bank account number, allowing access to 54
- basis
  - for reports 107
- BeginSession method 541
  - checks and tasks 47
- best practices 481
- bill 225
- bill credit objects 218
- bill payment
  - example of an error in 228
  - examples of 227
- bill payment objects 225
- bill payment transactions 217, 224
- BillPaymentCheckAdd 225
- BillPaymentCheckAdd request 217
- BillPaymentCreditCardAdd 225
- BillPaymentCreditCardAdd request 217
- bills 218
  - paying 224
- BillToPayQuery 90, 217, 225
  - example of 225
- BillTxnList 227
- BudgetSummaryReportQueryRq 99, 114

**C**

- Canadian edition, of QuickBooks 561, 562
  - about 532
  - Currency list in 536
  - Tax Code list in 535
- Canadian editions of QuickBooks
  - about 532
  - Tax Code list in 535
- Canadian form of qbXML 536

Canadian version  
    subscribing to UI events 200  
cash basis 107  
ChargeTax1 elements 535  
ChargeTax2 elements 535  
check 224  
CheckAdd request  
    with error recovery 406  
CheckAdd response  
    status check 407  
checking the version of QuickBooks 23  
checklist  
    for working with multiple versions of QuickBooks 494  
checks 220  
checksum 408  
children  
    of list elements 160  
class/subclass elements 164  
cleared status 157  
ClearedStatus column 110  
clearing error recovery records 411  
clearing state 409  
    in QuickBooks 405  
CloseConnection method 545  
closed transactions 135  
closing a bill 227  
closing date 135  
Code elements (currency code) 536  
ColData field 109  
column descriptor 107, 108  
column ID 107, 109  
column types 108  
    and corresponding data types (table) 105  
columns  
    number of 107  
COM API  
    for QBFC 31  
COM interface 45  
communicating with QuickBooks  
    methods for 539  
company 159  
company file 543, 547  
    problems opening 486  
    restoring 499, 500  
    storing data securely 481  
CompanyActivityQuery 90  
CompanyActivityQueryRq 500  
CompanyQuery 90  
comparing requests 408  
comparison of Balance and TotalBalance 169  
comparison of SDK APIs 24

concepts  
    for QuickBooks SDK 31  
contents  
    of this manual 19  
continueOnError 171  
CreateMsgSetRequest method 432  
creating links 219  
    example of 222  
credit 225  
    applying 223  
credit card 224  
credit card numbers, allowing access to 54  
credit memos 218  
credits 217, 219, 225  
    applying 217  
    creating vs. setting 218  
    setting 226  
credits, setting 221  
Currency list objects 536  
CurrencyHotKey elements 536  
Custom Detail reports 104  
custom reports 101  
    summary and detail 98  
CustomDetailReportQueryRq 98  
customer list  
    example of 165  
customer/job elements 164  
CustomerRef 219  
CustomSummaryReportQueryRq 98

**D**

data  
    synchronizing between QuickBooks and your application 499  
data row  
    in reports 109  
data types  
    and corresponding column types (table) 105  
DataEventSubscriptionAddRq 178  
DataExtAddRq 147  
DataExtDefDelRq 148  
DataExtDelRq 148  
DataExtModRq 147  
dataType 108  
date element  
    in custom reports 98  
date filters  
    for transactions 86  
date macro  
    in filters 87  
date range filter  
    example of 87, 89

dates range  
  for reports 100  
debits  
  general journal 220  
DecimalPlaces elements 536  
DecimalSep elements 536  
default reports 98  
deleting objects 134  
DepositAdd request 217, 230  
deposits 217, 230  
DepositToAccountRef element 231  
differences in time 503  
digital signature 481, 558  
digital signing  
  for an application 481  
disadvantages, of single-user mode 55  
discount  
  applying 223  
DiscountAccountRef 221  
DiscountAmount 221  
discounts 217, 219  
  applying 217  
  setting 227  
discounts, setting 221  
display conditions 209  
DisplayCondition  
  multiple criteria 210  
  visible vs. enabled states 210  
distributing payments 219  
distributing your application 396, 505  
documentation  
  for your application 488  
  provided with the SDK 23  
documentation roadmap 19  
DoRequests method 403, 411, 483  
DoRequestsFromXMLString method 435

## **E**

editing 135  
EditSequence 125, 168  
element 31  
elements  
  optional vs. required 168  
  that use macros 157  
employee's salary, fields for 54  
EmuRate elements 536  
encryption 481  
endless loop 406  
EndSession method 439, 546  
end-users  
  and error recovery process 486  
  informing of errors needing intervention 485

entity filter 115  
  example of 87, 89  
entity filters 87, 166  
error codes 491  
error codes (HRESULTs) 515  
error conditions 403  
error entries  
  in log file 493  
error recovery 169, 489  
  attributes for 172  
  clearing records for 411  
  completing before upgrading 487  
  example of 406  
  loop, breaking out of 487  
  rationale for including 403  
  routine 403  
  status codes and 408  
  steps for using 405  
  summary of 410  
  when to invoke 403  
error recovery (QBFC)  
  about 404  
  and query requests 405  
  steps for using 404  
error status message 173  
European currencies 536  
ExchangeRate elements 536  
exclusive access, to QuickBooks 55

## **F**

file access mode 47  
filters 76, 166, 170, 481  
  AccountType 85  
  ActiveStatus 82  
  by date modified 82  
  date 86  
  date macro in 87  
  date range 89  
  entity 87, 89  
  for lists 81  
  for reports 103, 104  
  for transactions 86  
  FullName 81  
  ListID 81  
  modification date 86  
  multiple 170  
  PaidStatus 90  
  reference number 89  
  TotalBalance 85  
FLOATTYPE data type 536  
ForeignPrice elements 536  
FromModifiedDate

in filters 82  
FromModifiedDate field 500  
FromReportDate field 100  
full version  
    AppliedToTxnRet 219  
FullName 162, 164  
    example of queries for 166  
    format of 164  
    in entity filters 87  
    maximum length of 164  
    vs. ListID 166  
FullName filter 81  
FullNameWithChildren 166  
functional groupings  
    for lists 160  
    for transactions 161

## G

General Detail reports 96, 101, 104  
    valid options for 117  
general journal 227  
general journal debits 220  
General Summary reports 94  
    valid options for 118  
generating reports  
    practical approach 99  
GetCurrentCompanyName 482  
GetCurrentCompanyName method 441, 487, 547  
GetVersion method 444

## H

helper queries 217  
helper query 225  
hierarchical lists 164, 165  
hierarchical relationships 167  
history  
    of a transaction 218  
host 159  
HostQuery 90  
HostQuery request 170  
HRESULT error codes table 515  
HRESULTs 491  
    requiring error recovery 403

## I

identifiers 162  
identifying requests 408  
IDs  
    for transactions 161  
IErrorInfo interface 515  
IncludeColumn field 104  
IncludeLineItems flag 90

IncludeLinkedTxns flag 90, 218, 223  
IncludeSubcolumns field 100, 101  
incompatible versions  
    of QuickBooks and application 485  
    QuickBooks and company file 486  
informational entries  
    in log file 493  
informative status message 172  
Integrated Applications icon, in QuickBooks 489  
integrated applications, changing name of 487  
integrating with QuickBooks 19  
interactive login to QuickBooks 51  
Intuit Developer Support 483  
inventory items 503  
inventory units, not supported via SDK 537  
invoice query  
    example of 87  
InvoiceAddRq 244, 347, 364  
InvoiceModRq 347  
InvoiceQueryRq 218  
InvoiceRet 218  
invoices 218, 220  
    by customer list 165  
invoking error recovery routine 403  
IsAutoApply 219  
IsAutoApply flag 220  
IsECVatCode elements 536  
IsEmu elements 536  
IsPiggyBackRate elements 535  
IsTax1Exempt elements 535  
IsTax2Exempt elements 535  
IsUsingForeignPricesOnItems elements 536  
IsUsingMulticurrency elements 536  
IsUsingUnitsOfMeasure elements 536  
IsVendorEligibleForT4A elements 535  
item filters 166  
item inventory query  
    example of 87  
ItemGroupAddRq 345  
ItemGroupModRq 345  
ItemGroupQueryRq 345  
ItemInventoryAddRq 345  
ItemInventoryAssemblyAddRq 345  
ItemInventoryAssemblyModRq 345  
ItemInventoryAssemblyQueryRq 345  
ItemInventoryModRq 345  
ItemInventoryQueryRq 345  
ItemNonInventoryAddRq 345  
ItemNonInventoryModRq 345  
ItemNonInventoryQueryRq 345  
ItemReceiptAddRq 347  
ItemReceiptModRq 347

ItemServiceAddRq 345  
ItemServiceModRq 345  
ItemServiceQueryRq 345

## J

Job reports 95  
  default values for 102  
  valid options for 115  
job/subjob elements 164  
JobEstimatesVsActualsDetail report 105  
JobProfitabilityDetail report 105  
JournalEntryQueryRq 223

## K

Kristy Abercrombie 165

## L

lean AppliedToTxnRet object 227  
lean version  
  AppliedToTxnRet 219  
line items 90  
linked transaction 90  
linked transactions 135, 218  
LinkedTxn aggregate 218  
links  
  creating 219, 222  
list elements  
  names for 164  
list filters 81  
  example of 82  
list IDs  
  unique groupings for 162  
ListDeletedQueryRq 500, 503  
ListID 125, 134, 162, 168  
  in entity filters 87  
  vs. FullName 166  
ListID filter 81  
ListIDWithChildren 166  
lists 159  
  hierarchical 164, 165  
  identifiers for 162  
  parent-child elements in 160  
  separate groupings for 164  
  types of 160  
locked transactions 135  
lockout 55  
log file 493  
  using 493  
logging in, problems related to 48  
login  
  mode access 55  
  modes 488  
login modes 488

login modes (in QuickBooks) 51

## M

macros 155, 167  
  elements that use 157  
  example of defining 156  
  example of using 155, 156  
  format of names for 155  
  name for 156  
  storage of 155  
  tagname for 156  
MajorVersion 170  
MajorVersion method 556  
match criterion  
  used in a query 88  
matching name strings  
  in queries 83  
MaxReturned 481  
memory 546  
  freeing 449, 561, 562  
merge modules 396, 397, 506  
message aggregate 31  
message set 30  
  status code for 491  
message set IDs 405  
messages 30  
messageSetStatusCode 407, 409  
methods, API reference for 539  
MinorVersion 170  
MinorVersion method 557  
MissingChecks report 105  
mode  
  single-user 135  
modes  
  login 488  
  single-user vs. multi-user 54  
  specifying in BeginSession 543  
modification date  
  in filters 86  
modification time  
  in multi-user mode 503  
Modify request  
  deleting element value in 125  
modifying objects 125  
monitoring  
  HRESULTs 492  
  HTTPS errors 492  
MSI (Microsoft Installer) 397, 506  
multicurrency 534  
multiple filters 170  
multiple sessions  
  versus single session 48

- when to use 49
- multi-user mode
  - and modification time 503
  - effects of 54
  - specifying in BeginSession 543
- multi-user session 53

## **N**

- name
  - for macros 156
- name, for application 558
- NameFilter 83
- NameRangeFilter 83
- names 165
  - filters for 83
- newMessageSetID 171, 405, 408
  - preserving 411

## **O**

- object 31
  - definition of 159
- object references
  - adding or modifying 167
  - purposes of 167
- object type 134
- objects
  - adding 168
  - deleting 134
  - modifying 125
  - querying for 170
  - voiding 136
- oldMessageSetID 171, 405
- onError attribute 171
- online banking 224
- API Reference 19, 24, 31, 76, 217
- OpenConnection method 446, 486
- operation 31
- operations
  - supported by SDK 167
- optional elements 168
- Order column
  - in reports 113
- out-of-memory conditions 403
- overpayment
  - example of 227
- Owner ID 81

## **P**

- packaging your application 396, 505
- PaidStatus filter 90
- parent references 167
- password 135
- paying a bill 227

- paying bills 224
- paying two bills
  - example of 229
- payment 225
  - applying 223
  - unused 223
- payment amounts
  - and TotalAmount 220
- payment method 225
- payments 217
  - applying 217
  - applying automatically 220
  - distributing explicitly 219
- PaymentTxnID element 230
- PaymentTxnLineID elements 230
- Payroll Detail reports 101, 104
- PayrollDetailReportQueryRq 97
- PayrollItemNonWageQueryRq 114
- PayrollItemWageQueryRq ( 114
- PayrollSummaryReportQueryRq 97, 114
- permissions 48, 488
  - for auto-login 488
- personal data
  - application access to 54, 489
  - in reports 113
- Post 411
- power outages 403
- preferences 135, 159
- PreferencesQuery 90
- PreferencesQueryRq 135
- prerequisites
  - for reading this manual 19
- preset reports
  - in QuickBooks 93
- PreviousPeriod subcolumn
  - in reports 103
- PreviousYear subcolumn
  - in reports 103
- problems
  - helping users to troubleshoot 485
  - logging in 48
  - opening company file 486
- processing state 171
- ProcessRequest method 403, 411, 483, 559
- ProductName 170
- Profit and Loss report 109
- Profit and Loss Standard report 99
- prolog
  - qbXML document 494
- Province elements 535
- PurchaseByVendorSummary report 105, 115
- PurchaseOrderAddRq 347

PurchaseOrderModRq 347  
purchasing units, not supported via SDK 537

**Q**

QBFC API 24  
QBFC Library 31  
qbsdklog.txt file 483  
qbsdklog.txt log file 493  
*qbsdklog.txt* log file 558  
qbXML 31  
    Canadian form of 536  
    setting which version a request will use 432  
    text stream, validating 559, 560  
qbXML Request Processor 45  
    *See also* Request Processor  
qbXML Request Processor API 491  
qbXML Request Processor Interface 23, 24  
qbXML specification 23  
qbxmllops20.xml 217  
qbxmllops20.xml sample file 23  
qbXMLValidator.exe 483  
QBXMLVersionsForSession method 561, 562  
queries 159  
    example with FullName 166  
    filters for rname ranges 83  
    for transactions 86  
    helper 217  
    match criterion for names 83  
    requesting additional data 90  
    ToDo 85  
query requests, disabling error recovery before 405  
querying for objects 170  
querying the Request Processor, methods for 539  
QuickBooks  
    Canadian editions of 532, 561, 562  
    checking version of 23  
    company file 45  
    integrating with 19  
    multiple installed versions of 486  
    version 47  
QuickBooks administrator  
    and application authorization 35  
    and permissions 488  
    and personal data 489  
QuickBooks Foundation Class (QBFC) Library 23  
QuickBooks Foundation Class (QBFC) Library.  
See QBFC Library  
QuickBooks Intuit Developer Group (IDG)  
Support 481  
QuickBooks Report Finder 93

**R**

ranges of names  
    filtering for in queries 83

RD

    client 394

RDS

    and new HRESULT messages 400  
    described 176, 391  
    distributing applications with 395  
    no special coding required 399  
    port 393  
    QuickBooks support for 400  
    server 392  
    what customers need to know 400

RDS (Remote Data Sharing)

*Remote Data Sharing (RDS)* 397

read-only application 403

receive payment 219  
receive payment transactions 217, 219  
ReceivePaymentAdd object 220, 222  
ReceivePaymentAdd request 217, 219  
ReceivePaymentAddRq 156, 347  
ReceivePaymentModRq 347  
ReceivePaymentRet object 223  
ReceivePaymentToDeposit 230  
ReceivePaymentToDeposit helper query 217  
ReceivePaymentToDepositQuery 90  
recommended practices 481  
redistributing SDK components 396, 505  
reference number filters 89  
reference numbers  
    for transactions 161  
    missing 89  
references  
    parent 167  
RefNumber 86, 136, 162  
RefNumberFilter 89  
RefNumberRangeFilter 89  
ReleaseLevel method 563  
ReleaseNumber method 564  
Remote Data Sharing. *See* RDS 391  
report request fields  
    correspondence with QuickBooks user interface 99  
ReportAccountFilter 103  
ReportCalendar field 100  
ReportClassFilter 103  
ReportDateMacro field 100  
ReportEntity filter 105  
ReportEntityFilter 103  
reporting 167  
ReportItemFilter 103

reports 75, 107, 159  
a practical approach to generating 99  
Aging 95, 104, 115  
calculating subcolumn values in 101  
categories of 93  
column titles in 107  
custom 101  
Custom Detail 104  
data row 109  
date range for 100  
default 98  
example of a request for 105  
example of a response 109  
example of field names in UI 108  
example of transaction detail report 111  
filters for 104  
General Detail 96, 101, 104, 117  
General Summary 94, 118  
how to begin using 93  
including personal data in 113  
Job 95, 115  
JobEstimatesVsActualsDetail 105  
JobProfitabilityDetail 105  
meta-data in responses 107  
MissingChecks 105  
Payroll Detail 104  
problems with data in 114  
problems with data returned 101  
PurchaseByVendorSummary 105  
PurchaseByVendorSummary 115  
report basis 107  
response data 107  
responses for 107  
setting up filters for 103  
subcolumns in 101  
text row 109  
Time 95  
time 116  
title for 107  
valid options for requests<tables> 115  
ReportTxnTypeFilter 104  
request ID 31, 169, 408  
request message set  
  resending for error recovery 406  
  saving persistent copy of 406  
Request Processor 45  
  COM API, methods for 539  
  release level of 563  
  release number of 564  
Request Validator utility 24  
requesting additional data  
  in queries 90

requests 30, 49  
  comparing 408  
  identifying 408  
  validating 483  
required elements 168  
response status 491  
responseData 171  
responses 30  
restoring the company file 499, 500  
result codes 515  
ReturnColumns field 100  
ReturnRows field 100  
roadmap  
  for documentation set 19  
RowData field 109  
rows  
  number of 107  
Rq suffix 31  
rules  
  for applying payments automatically 220  
  for applying credits and discounts 227

**S**

Sales By ItemSummary report 103  
sales units, not supported via SDK 537  
SalesOrderAddRq 347  
SalesOrderModRq 347  
SalesReceiptAddRq 255, 347, 364  
SalesReceiptModRq 266, 347  
SalesReceiptQueryRq 273  
sample applications for SDK 24  
saving state  
  in QuickBooks 405  
SDK, sample applications in 24  
SDKTest program 483  
SDKTest utility 24  
session 23  
  multi-user 53  
  ticket 543  
SetCredit aggregate 218  
setting credits 219, 221  
setting discounts 219, 221  
SIN elements 535  
single session, versus multiple sessions 48  
single-user mode 135  
  advantages and disadvantages of 55  
  effects of 54  
  specifying in BeginSession 543  
social security numbers, allowing access to 54  
software libraries included in the SDK 23  
special-character restrictions on menu-item names 208

SSNOrTaxID data 113  
stand-alone installers 396, 506  
startup 403, 406  
state 171  
    clearing 405, 409  
    maintaining within your application 410  
    saving 403, 405  
statement charges 220  
    applying discounts to 221  
status check  
    example of 409  
status code 172, 482  
status code 3120 499  
status code 3130 499  
status code 3140 499  
status code 3151 114  
status code 3152 115  
status code 3161 135  
status code 3175 135  
status code 3231 171, 409  
status code 3240 500  
status code 3260 136  
status code 3261 113  
status code 600 410  
status code 9001 408, 410  
status code 9002 410  
status code information  
    in Appendix A 491  
status codes 491  
    in messageSetStatusCode attribute 408  
    table of 509  
status codes, error recovery  
    listed 408  
status codes, qbXML  
    table of 509  
status information  
    types of 172  
status message 173  
status severity 172  
stopOnError 171  
subcolumns  
    calculating values for in reports 101  
    in reports 101  
subelements  
    for lists 160  
SubscriptionDelRq 180  
subscriptions  
    to UI events 200  
subtitle  
    for reports 107  
subtitle for 107  
subtotal row  
    in reports 109  
SummarizeColumnsBy field 100  
SummarizeRowsBy field 101  
Summary reports  
    default values for 102  
SupportedQBXMLVersion 170  
Symbol elements 536  
SymbolPos elements 536  
synchronization  
    special cases 503  
synchronization problems  
    status codes to monitor 499  
synchronizing data 499  
synchronous processing 49  
system crashes 403

**T**

tagname  
    for macros 156  
Tax1Number elements 535  
Tax1Rate elements 535  
Tax1ReportingPeriod elements 535  
Tax1Total elements 535  
Tax2Number elements 535  
Tax2Rate elements 535  
Tax2ReportingPeriod elements 535  
Tax2Total elements 535  
TaxCode objects list 535  
Technical Overview 134, 136, 494  
test case  
    how to build 483  
text row  
    in reports 109  
ThousandSep elements 536  
ticket 547, 559, 561  
time differences 503  
Time reports 95  
    default values for 102  
    valid options for 116  
Time Tracking permissions 488  
TimeCreated 136, 168  
TimeModified 136, 168  
title  
    for reports 107  
ToDo query 85  
ToModifiedDate  
    in filters 82  
ToMsgSetResponse method 453  
tools  
    for installing your application 397, 506  
ToReportDate field 100  
total row

in reports 109  
TotalAmount 219  
    and payment amounts 220  
TotalBalance 169  
TotalBalance filter 85  
TrackTax1Expenses elements 535  
TrackTax2Expenses elements 535  
transaction detail report  
    example of 111  
transaction filter  
    example of 87  
transaction history 218  
transaction ID 155, 219  
transaction line items 503  
transaction queries  
    filters for 86  
transaction type 219  
transactions 159  
    closed 135  
    date filters for 86  
    functional groupings for 161  
    general description of 161  
    identifiers for 162  
    linked 90, 218  
    locked 135  
    persistent IDs for 161  
    receive payment 219  
    reference numbers for 161  
TxnDeletedQueryRq 500  
TxnID 86, 134, 136, 162, 219, 221, 232  
    obtaining using reports 105  
TxnLineID 231  
TxnVoidRq 136  
TxnVoidRq message 136  
TxnVoidRs message 136  
TxnVoidType element 136  
types of lists 160

## U

U.K.-specific elements 536  
UI extensions  
    local support only 200  
UIEventSubscriptionAddRq 178  
UIExtensionSubscriptionAddRq 178, 206  
unattended mode (of QuickBooks login) 51  
Undeposited Funds account 230  
units of measure feature, not supported via SDK 536  
unused payment 223  
user  
    notifying before changing company file data 503

user interface in QuickBooks  
    and report request fields 99  
user, auto-login 488  
using the stand-alone installers 396, 506

## V

validating qbXML text stream 559, 560  
validating requests 483  
Validator 482  
Validator tool 483  
Validator utility 24  
vendor  
    paying multiple bills from same 224  
Verify method 483  
version incompatibility 485  
version, of QuickBooks 47, 486  
versions  
    of QuickBooks 494  
    of the QuickBooks SDK 494  
voiding objects 136

## W

warning status message 173  
warnings  
    in log file 493  
WorkersCompCodeMod-Modifying workers comp codes 125

## X

XML stream 494